

वीर सेवा मन्दिर
दिल्ली



3866

क्रम संख्या

415 NES

काल न०

खण्ड

English Grammar Series.

BOOK IV

**IDIOM, GRAMMAR, AND
SYNTHESIS**

**A MANUAL OF PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL
ENGLISH FOR HIGH SCHOOL AND
UNIVERSITY STUDENTS**

IN FIVE PARTS

**PART I — ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION
PART II — IDIOM IN WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS
PART III — THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES.
PART IV — WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION
PART V — FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, AND PROSODY**

BY

J C NESFIELD, M.A.

**MACMILLAN AND CO.
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON
BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA**

1898

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

PART I—ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION

CHAP.		PAGE
1	ANALYTICAL OUTLINE GENERAL DEFINITIONS	5
2	NOUNS	12
	Section 1 —The kinds of Nouns	12
	" 2 —Substitutes for a Noun	16
	" 3 —Gender	17
	" 4 —Case	21
	" 5 —Number	23
3	ADJECTIVES	31
	Section 1 —The kinds of Adjectives	31
	" 2 —The two Uses of Adjectives	35
	" 3 —Substitutes for Adjectives	36
	" 4 —Comparison of Adjectives	36
	PRONOUNS	38
	Section 1 —Personal Pronouns	39
	" 2 —Demonstrative Pronouns	42
	" 3 —Relative Pronouns	46
	" 4 —Interrogative Pronouns	49
	VERBS	51
	Section 1 —The kinds of Verbs	51
	" 2 —Transitive Verbs	51
	" 3 —Intransitive Verbs	54
	" 4 —Active and Passive Voices	57
	" 5 —Mood, Tense, Number, and Person	58
	" 6 —Indicative Mood	60
	" 7 —Imperative Mood	64
	" 8 —Subjunctive Mood	65
	" 9 —Infinitive Mood	67
	" 10 —Participles	68
	" 11 —Gerunds and Verbal Nouns	74
	" 12 —The Conjugation of Verbs	78
	" 13 —Auxiliary, Defective, and Anomalous Verbs	85
6	ADVERBS	93
	Section 1 —The kinds of Adverbs	93
	" 2 —Degrees of Comparison in Adverbs	96

CONTENTS

in

CHAP	PAGE
Section 3 —Forms of Adverbs	97
" 4 —Verbs compounded with Adverbs	99
" 5 —The two Uses of Adverbs	100
7 PREPOSITIONS	100
8. CONJUNCTIONS	104
Section 1 —Co-ordinative Conjunctions	104
" 2 —Subordinative Conjunctions	105
9 INTERJECTIONS	109
10 ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES	110
Section 1 —Analysis of Simple Sentences	110
" 2 —Analysis of Compound Sentences	117
" 3 —Analysis of Complex Sentences	121
11 THE SAME WORD IN DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH	130
12 SYNTAX WITH PARSING CHART	133
Section 1 —Relations of Words to one another	133
" 2 —Position of Words	142
13 PUNCTUATION	151

PART II —IDIOSM IN WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS

14 NOUNS AND PRONOUNS	159
15 ADJECTIVES	163
Section 1 —Uses of the various kinds of Adjectives	163
" 2 —Uses of Articles	168
" 3 —Adjectives used as Nouns	172
" 4 —Use of the Degrees of Comparison	174
16 VERBS	177
Section 1 —Uses of the Tenses of the Indicative Mood	177
" 2 —Further Uses of the Infinitive	181
" 3 —Reflexive Use of Verbs	184
" 4 —Ellipsis of Verbs or Clauses	187
" 5 —Sequence of Tenses	189
17 ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES	193
Section 1.—Special Uses of Simple Adverbs	193
" 2 —Adverbial Phrases	199
" 3 —Adverbs qualifying Prepositions	204
18. PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	206
Section 1 —Relations denoted by Prepositions	206
" 2 —On the Use or Misuse of Prepositions	216
" 3 —Words followed by Prepositions	220
19 CONJUNCTIONS AND CONJUNCTIONAL PHRASES	245
20. MISCELLANEOUS WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS	252

PART III —THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

CHAP	PAGE
21 DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION	287
22 THE TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES	296
23 THE SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES	330
Section 1 —To combine Simple Sentences into a Simple Sentence	331
,, 2 —To combine Simple Sentences into a Compound Sentence	340
,, 3 —To combine simple Sentences into a Complex Sentence	345

PART IV —WORD BUILDING AND DERIVATION

24 COMPOUND WORDS	353
Section 1 —Unrelated or Juxtapositional Compounds	353
,, 2 —Related or Syntactical Compounds	355
25 PRIMARY DERIVATIVES	358
26 SECONDARY DERIVATIVES	360
Section 1 —English Suffixes	360
,, 2 —English Prefixes	362
,, 3 —Latin and French Suffixes	363
,, 4 —Greek Suffixes	365
,, 5 —Latin and French Prefixes	365
,, 6 —Greek Prefixes	368
27 HISTORICAL OUTLINE LATIN AND GREEK ROOTS	373

PART V —FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, PROSODY

28 FIGURES OF SPEECH	393
29 POETRY, PROSODY, AND MEASURE	408
Section 1 —The Different kinds of Poetry	408
,, 2 —Prosody, or the Laws of Metre	406
,, 3 —Special Metres	412
30 POETIC DICTION	413
APPENDIX A —ON CERTAIN GRAMMATICAL TERMS	420
APPENDIX B —WORDS WITH DIFFERENT ACCENTS	421
APPENDIX C —ABBREVIATIONS	422
I INDEX OF SUBJECTS	424
II. INDEX OF WORDS AND PHRASES	425

PART I—ACCIDENCE, ANALYSIS, SYNTAX, AND PUNCTUATION

CHAPTER I

ANALYTICAL OUTLINE GENERAL DEFINITIONS

1 **A Sentence**—A combination of words that makes a *complete* sense is called a **Sentence**. The sense is not complete, unless something is said about something else

A ship went out to sea

2 There are five different kinds of sentences —

(1) Those which simply affirm or deny something are called **Assertive**

A man's success depends chiefly on himself (Affirmative)
He did not get much help from others (Negative.)

(2) Those which contain some command or prohibition are called **Imperative**.

Rely chiefly on your own efforts (Command)
Do not rely much on the help of others (Prohibition.)

(3) Those which inquire about something are called **Interrogative**

Have you finished that task ?

(4) Those which express some wish are called **Optative**.

God save the queen.

(5) Those which express some feeling of the mind in connection with the assertion made are called **Exclamatory**.

What a foolish fellow you have been !

3 **Subject and Predicate**—The word or words denoting the person or thing about which something is said are called the **Subject** of the sentence.

A ship went out to sea.

The word or words which say something about the person or thing denoted by the Subject, as "*went out*," are called the **Predicate**

Hence no sentence can be made without a Subject and a Predicate. These two things are necessary to make a *complete* sense

4 A Phrase—A combination of words that makes sense, but not a *complete* sense, is called a **Phrase**

On the river Through thick and thin A bird in the hand

5 A Clause—A sentence which is *part of a larger sentence* is called a **Clause**

This is the house | where we live

Here "where we live" is a sentence, because it has a subject "we" and a predicate "live" Similarly "this is the house" is a sentence, having "this" for its subject and "is" for its predicate But both are *parts of a larger sentence*, and hence each of them is called a clause

6 Nouns—A word used for *naming* anything is called a **Noun**, as "ship," "fox," "house," "man" Hence a noun is the *naming* word (The words "noun" and "name" are the same at bottom, but differently spelt)

7 Pronouns—A word used *instead of a noun* is called a **Pronoun** सर्वनाम

A ship went out to sea, and *she* had all her sails up

Here the pronoun "*she*" is used instead of the noun "ship," and saves its being mentioned twice Hence a pronoun is a *substitute* word, and its chief use is to *save the repetition of a noun*

8 Adjectives—If I wish to *qualify* (that is, add something to the meaning of) a noun, the word used for such a purpose is called an **Adjective** विशेषण

A *fine* ship went out to sea

The word *Adjective* means "adding," and is so called because it adds something to the meaning of a noun

9 Verbs—Words used for *predicating* (that is, saying something about some person or thing) are called **Verbs**.

A fine ship *went* out to sea

क्रिया

Here the word which predicates or says something about a ship is "*went out*" This is therefore a verb, and thus the *predicate of a sentence must be a verb*, or it must at least contain one.

10 Preposition with its Object.—In the phrase "*to sea*," the word "*to*" is called a **Preposition** This word

expresses the relation in which the thing denoted by "sea" stands to the event denoted by "went out."

The noun, pronoun, or other noun-equivalent that follows the preposition is called its **Object**.

The use of a preposition, then, is to show the relation in which the person or thing denoted by its *Object* stands to something else.

11 Conjunctions.—A Conjunction is a joining word. It joins words and phrases to one another, or one sentence to another sentence.

(a) He made himself mean *and* of no reputation.

(b) May he live long *and* (may he) die happily

In (a) the adjective "mean" is joined to the phrase "of no reputation" by the conjunction "and."

In (b) the sentence "may he live long" is joined by the same conjunction to the sentence "may he die happily"

12. Adverbs—These, like adjectives, are *qualifying* words. An adjective, as we have shown, qualifies a *noun*, an adverb qualifies *anything except a noun or pronoun*¹

That *very* fine ship has *already* sailed *half* through the Channel.

Here "very" is an adverb qualifying the adjective "fine", "already" is an adverb qualifying the verb "has sailed", and "half" is an adverb qualifying the preposition "through"

13 Interjections—These are not words connected, as other words are, with other parts of a sentence, but mere *sounds* standing by themselves and thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind.

My son, *alas!* is not industrious.

Here "alas" is a sound thrown into the sentence to express regret.

✓ **14. The Parts of Speech defined**—Words are divided into different kinds or classes according to the purpose that they are used for. The different kinds of words are called **Parts of Speech**. They are eight in number, and have been described already —

(1) A **Noun** is a word used for naming some person or thing

¹ In other Grammars an Adverb is defined to be "a word used to qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs." The inadequacy of this definition, which excludes Prepositions and Conjunctions from the qualifying power of adverbs, is further shown in § 233.

(2) A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun or noun-equivalent

(3) An Adjective is a word used to qualify a noun

(4) A Verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing

(5) A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or noun equivalent to show in what relation the person or thing denoted by the noun stands to something else

(6) A Conjunction is a word used to join words or phrases together, or one clause to another clause

(7) An Adverb is a word used to qualify any part of speech except a noun or pronoun

(8) An Interjection is a word or sound thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind

15 The Articles — The words "a" and "the" are called **Articles**. "The" is called the *Definite* Article, because it particularises a noun. "A" or "an" is called the *Indefinite*, because it does not particularise a noun, but generalises it.

The articles are not a distinct part of speech but merely adjectives. "A" or "an" is an abbreviated form of the adjective "one" while "the" is an abbreviated form of "this," "that," "these," "those."

16 Finite Verb Number and Person — Any part of a verb that can be used as the *Predicate* of a sentence is called **Finite**.

The word "finite" means "limited." A finite verb is so called, because it is limited to the same **Person** (*First, Second, or Third*) and to the same **Number** (*Singular or Plural*) as its Subject.

(a) I see him

(b) They see him

In both sentences the form of the verb "see" is the same. But in (a) the verb is in the First person, because its Subject "I" is in the first person, and in the Singular number, because its Subject is Singular. Similarly in (b) the verb is in the Third person, because its Subject "they" is in the Third person, and Plural, because its Subject is Plural.

17 Parts of a Verb not finite — There are some parts of a verb, which are not finite, that is, are not limited to any particular Number or Person, because they cannot be used with a Subject or be made the Predicates of a sentence.

Such parts are three in number — (1) the **Infinitive**

mood, as "I wish to retire", (2) a Participle, as "a retired officer", (3) a Gerund, as "I think of retiring"

18 **Double Parts of Speech**—Besides the eight parts of speech shown in § 14, there are three more which must be called double, or two parts of speech combined in one —

(1) **A Participle**—This is a verb and adjective combined

A retired officer lives next door

The word "retired" is a verb, because it is part of the verb "retire" It is also an adjective, because it qualifies the noun "officer" Hence a participle may be called a verbal adjective

(2) **A Gerund**—This is a verb and noun combined

I think of retiring soon from service

Here "retiring" is a verb, because it is part of the verb "retire" It is also a noun, because it is the object to the preposition "of" Hence a gerund has been called a verbal noun

(3) **A Relative Pronoun or Adverb**—A Relative pronoun such as *who*, *whom*, etc., or a Relative adverb such as *where*, *when*, etc., is a pronoun or adverb combined with a conjunction

This is the house *where* we live

Here "where" is an adverb, because it qualifies the verb "lives" It is also a conjunction, because it joins the two sentences Hence, relative adverbs have been sometimes called conjunctive adverbs¹ Similarly, relative pronouns have been called conjunctive pronouns

19 **Apposition of Noun with Noun**—A noun is said to be in apposition with another noun, or with a pronoun, when it refers to the same person or thing —

Noun —Philip, king of Macedon, was father to Alexander the Great.

Pronoun —I, the man you were looking for, am here

20 **Apposition of Sentence with Noun**—Whenever a sentence is in apposition with a noun, the sentence must be introduced by the conjunction "that"

The rumour *that you were coming* was generally believed

21 **Apposition of Noun with Sentence**—A noun can be in apposition with a sentence or with some implied

¹ "Conjunctive adverb" is the name given to these words by Mason in *English Grammar*, p 105, § 262 I have found it more convenient, however, to retain the name "relative adverb."

noun, which (if it were expressed) would denote the action of the verb

He killed his prisoners,—*a barbarous act* (Here “act” is in apposition with the implied noun, the *killing* of prisoners)

✓ **22 Forms of Subject**—The Subject to a sentence must be either a noun or a noun-equivalent. The principal forms in which a Subject can be expressed are as follows—

- (a) Noun *A ship* went out to sea
- (b) Pronoun *He* (some one previously named) was convicted
- (c) Infinitive *To err* (=error or proneness to error) is human
- (d) Gerund *Sleeping* is necessary to health
- (e) Phrase *How to do this puzzle* is all of us
- (f) Clause *Whoever was caught* was sent to jail

✱ **23 Transitive Verbs** **Verb and Object.**—A verb is **Transitive**, if the action or feeling denoted by the verb does not stop with itself, but is directed towards some person or thing. The word or words denoting such person or thing are called the **Object** to the verb.

That snake bit the man

24 Forms of Object—The various forms in which the Object can be expressed are the same as those in which the Subject can be expressed. See § 22

- (a) Noun *That snake bit the man*
- (b) Pronoun *That snake bit him*
- (c) Infinitive *We desire to succeed* (=success)
- (d) Gerund *He loves riding*
- (e) Phrase *We do not know how to do this*
- (f) Clause *We do not know what he wants*

✓ **25 Factitive Verbs** **Complement**—Those Transitive verbs which require not only an Object (as all Transitive verbs do), but also some other word or words to make the predication complete, are called **Factitive**.

Such word or words are called the **Complement**.

He put the school (object) *into good order* (complement)

That grief drove him (object) *mad* (complement)

They made him (object) *lough* (complement)

There is no sense in saying “he put the school,” “that grief drove him,” “they made him,” hence each verb must have a Complement.

✱ **26 Intransitive Verbs**—A verb is **Intransitive**, if the action or feeling denoted by the verb stops with itself, and is not directed towards anything else.

Fish swim Rivers flow All animals die.

27 Intransitive Verbs with Complement — But Intransitive verbs, though they do not require an Object, may require a Complement, as some Transitive verbs also do

Such verbs are called **Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication**

He became a good scholar

Sleep is necessary to health

✓ **28 Absolute use of Verbs** — A verb is said to be used absolutely, when it is not grammatically related to the rest of the sentence —

(a) **Participle** (further explained in § 285 and § 300) —

The sun having set, all went home. (*With Noun*)

Supposing we are late, the door will be locked. (*Without Noun*)

(b) **Infinitive Mood** (further explained in § 195 and § 196) —

To think that he should have told a lie. (*Simple*)

I am, — *to speak* plainly, — much displeased with you. (*Gerundial*)

(c) **Imperative Mood** (further explained in § 184) —

A few men, — *say* twelve, — may be expected shortly

✓ **29 Introductory Adverb** — When the subject to an Intransitive verb is placed *after* its verb, the verb is usually introduced by the adverb “*there*” In this relation “*there*” does not signify “in that place,” but merely serves *to introduce the verb*. It has no signification whatever

There are some men (subject) who never drink wine

There came a man (subject) to my door

30 Kinds of Phrases — The following kinds of phrases should be distinguished from one another —

(a) **Adverbial phrase**, or one which does the work of an adverb —

I hope you will work better *in future*

Bind him *hand and foot*, and take him away

(b) **Prepositional phrase**, or one which does the work of a preposition (Such phrases end in a simple preposition)

In the event of our father's death, we shall be left poor

He worked hard *for the sake of* a prize

✓ (c) **Conjunctive phrase**, or one which does the work

of a conjunction (Such phrases end in a simple conjunction)

I am tired *as well as* hungry

He took medicine *in order that* he might recover

(d) **Absolute Participial phrase**, see § 287

The sun having set, they all went home

(e) **Interjectional or exclamatory phrase**, see § 254 —

Well to be sure! *For shame!* *Good heavens!*

31 Accent, Emphasis — When we lay stress upon a single syllable, we call it **Accent**

Sup ply', sim' ply re' bel' (noun), re bel' (verb)

When we lay stress upon an *entire word*, we call it **Emphasis**

Silver and gold have I none

I appeal from Philip drunk to Philip sober

CHAPTER II — NOUNS

§ 1 — THE KINDS OF NOUNS

32 Noun defined — A Noun is a word used for naming some person or thing (§ 14)

33 Nouns are of five different kinds —

I Concrete	{	Proper	1
		Common	2
		Collective	3
		Material	4
II Abstract			5

Proper Nouns

34 A Proper Noun denotes *one particular* person or thing as distinct from every other, as *James* (a person), *Gulistan* (a book), *Lucknow* (a city), *India* (a country)

Note 1 — The writing of a Proper noun should always be commenced with a capital letter

Note 2 — A word or phrase is sometimes added to a proper noun to prevent ambiguity of reference. Thus we say, "*Alexander the Great*," or "*St Paul*," or "*Boston in America*," to show which Alexander, or which Paul, or which Boston is meant. For many different persons or places might be called by these names

Common Nouns

35 A Common Noun denotes no one person or thing in particular, but is *common to any and every person or thing of the same kind*, as "man," "book," "country."

Thus, *man* does not point out any particular man, such as James, but can be used for any and every man. *Book* does not point out any particular book, such as *Gulistan*, but can be used for any and every book. *Country* does not point out any particular country, such as India, but can be used for any country in any part of the world.

36 A Proper Noun is said to be "*used as a Common Noun*," when it denotes (a) some rank or office, or (b) some class of persons or things.

(a) Such words as *Cæsar*, *Caliph*, *Sultan*, *Khedive*, *Czar*, etc., are used as Common nouns, because they denote persons holding a certain rank or office: thus we can speak of "the twelve Cæsars," "the first four Caliphs," "the Sultan of Turkey," "the Czar of Russia."

(b) A Proper noun becomes a Common noun, when it denotes a class of persons or things and is used in a descriptive sense. "He is *the Newton* of the age,"—that is, the greatest astronomer of the age.

Collective Nouns

37 A Collective Noun denotes a *group* or *collection* of *similar individuals*, considered as one complete whole.

For instance, there may be *many sheep* in a field, but only *one flock*. Here "sheep" is a Common noun, because it may stand for any and every sheep, but "flock" is a Collective noun, because it stands for all the sheep at once, and not for any one sheep taken separately.

38 Every Collective Noun is also a kind of Common Noun.

Thus the term "flock" may stand for many different flocks (or groups of sheep), "class" for many classes (or groups of students).

39 Nouns of Multitude—A distinction is made between a Collective Noun and a Noun of Multitude.—

(a) A Collective noun denotes *one undivided whole*, and hence the verb following is singular (§ 16).

The jury *consists* of twelve persons.

(b) A noun of Multitude denotes the *individuals* of the group, and hence the verb is plural, although the noun is singular (§ 16).

The jury (the men on the jury) *were* divided in their opinions.

Nouns of Material

40 A Noun of **Material** denotes the *matter* or *substance* of which things are made

Thus "sheep" is a Common noun, but "mutton" (or the flesh of sheep) is a Material noun

41 The same word can be a Material noun or a Common noun according to the sense

Fish live in water. Fish is good for food.

In the first sentence the noun denotes individual fish or fishes and is therefore a Common noun. In the second it denotes the matter of which the bodies of fish are made, and is therefore a Material noun

Abstract Nouns

42 An **Abstract Noun** denotes some *quality*, *state*, or *action*, apart from anything possessing the quality, etc

Quality — Cleverness, height, humility, roguery, colour

State — Poverty, manhood, bondage, pleasure, youth

Action — Laughter, movement, flight, choice, revenge

The four kinds of nouns previously described all relate to objects of *sense*, that is, to things which can be seen, touched, heard, smelt, or tasted, and all such nouns are called **Concrete** nouns. But an Abstract noun relates to *qualities*, *states*, etc., which cannot be seen or touched, etc., and which are thought of *apart from* any object of sense

For example We know that a stone is *hard*. We also know that iron is *hard*. We also know that a brick is *hard*. We can therefore speak of *hardness* apart from stone or iron or brick or any other object having the same quality. "Abstract" means "drawn off" (abstracted in thought) from the object. Hence *hardness* is an abstract noun, while *stone* or *brick* or *iron* is a concrete noun

43 The same word may be an Abstract noun or a Common noun, according to the purpose for which it is used

When an Abstract noun is "*used as a Common or Concrete noun*," it may denote (a) the *person* possessing the quality, or (b) the *thing* to which the action, state, or quality belongs —

(a) *Examples of Persons*

<i>Justice</i>	{ 1	The quality of being just	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	A judge, or one who administers justice	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Beauty</i>	{ 1	The quality or state of being beautiful	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	A person possessing beauty	<i>Concrete</i>

<i>Authority</i>	{ 1	The power or right to command	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	A person possessing authority	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Nobility</i>	{ 1	The quality of being noble	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	Those who are of the class of nobles	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Witness</i>	{ 1	Evidence or testimony	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	One who gives the evidence	<i>Concrete</i>

(b) *Examples of Things*

<i>Judgment</i>	{ 1	The act or quality of judging	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	The verdict given by the judge	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Sight</i>	{ 1	The art or faculty of seeing	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	The thing seen "a fine sight"	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Speech</i>	{ 1	The faculty of speaking	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	The speech delivered the word spoken	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Wonder</i>	{ 1	The feeling of wonder or surprise	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	The wonderful event or object	<i>Concrete</i>
<i>Kindness</i>	{ 1	The quality of being kind	<i>Abstract</i>
	{ 2	The kind thing done	<i>Concrete</i>

44 The Gerunds and the Simple Infinitives of verbs (§ 195) are in fact, though not in form, kinds of Abstract nouns. The following sentences all mean the same thing —

Service is better than idleness (*Abstract Noun*)
Serving is better than idleness (*Gerund*)
To serve is better than idleness (*Infinitive Mood*)

45 An Abstract noun is used as a Proper noun, when it is **personified**,—that is, when it is spoken of as an individual person. It must then be commenced with a capital letter, as Proper nouns are

He is the favoured child of *Fortune*
 Let not *Ambition* mock their useful toil

46 There are two ways in which a Proper, Material, or Abstract noun can be used as (or changed into) a Common noun —(a) by putting an article ("a" or "the") before it, (b) by putting it into the plural number

*Proper Nouns**Common Nouns*

Daniel was a learned Jew

{ *A Daniel* come to judgment
 { There are more *Danields* than one.

Material Noun

Mango is my favourite fruit

{ Give me *the mango* in your hand.
 { Give me one of your *mangoes*

Abstract Noun.

Justice is a noble quality

{ He is *a justicer* of the peace
 { There are four *justices* present.

Point out the kind or use of each of the nouns occurring below —

Alexander the Great king of Macedon, was conqueror of Persia. A man ignorant of the arts of reading, writing, and ciphering is, in point of knowledge, more like a child than a man. The proper study of mankind is man. Cows are as fond of grass as men are of milk, or bears of honey. Health is one of the greatest blessings that a man or woman can hope to enjoy in this bodily existence. The Czar of Russia, although he is lord of the eastern half of Europe and the northern half of Asia, besides being master of a huge army and a large fleet, cannot live in peace and safety with his own subjects, and cannot leave his own palace without fear. Arjun was the bravest of the Pandavas. Kalidasa was the Homer of India, but his fame is not so widely known throughout the world as that of Homer is. Almost every Hindu belongs to some caste, but the bondage of rules founded on caste is in a state of decline. A shower of rain does not give so much trouble to a traveller as a fall of snow. The eleven of our school defeated an eleven selected from among the best cricketers of the town. Most kinds of food are not conducive to health, unless they are mixed with a certain amount of salt. The love of money is the root of all evil, but by a proper use of money men can do much good. He has done me so many kindnesses, that I shall always remember his name with gratitude. Cleon is a justice by rank and office, but he is not a genius in the science of law. Speech is one of the highest faculties with which man is endowed, but speech without goodness and purity may prove an evil rather than a blessing to its possessor. Daniel was a Jewish prophet. He is a Daniel in foresight. By the waters of Babylon we sat down and wept. There is no slate in the rocks of these hills. Give him the slate. Witchcraft is the art practised by a witch or wizard. Pan Science frowned not on his humble birth, but Melancholy marked him for her own.

§ 2—SUBSTITUTES FOR A NOUN

47 The following kinds of words or combinations of words can be used as substitutes for a Noun, see §§ 22, 24 —

(a) A Pronoun —

Your horse is white, mine is a black *one* (=horse)

(b) An Adjective used as a Noun or with some noun understood —

The blind (men) receive their sight.

The just (=justice) is higher than *the expedient* (=expediency)

(c) An Infinitive verb —

He desires *to succeed* (=success)

(d) A Gerund —

He was fond of *sleeping* (=sleep.)

(e) A Phrase —

No one knew *how to do this* (=the method of doing this)

(f) A Noun-clause, that is, a clause which does the work of a noun, (for the definition of "clause" see § 5)

Who steals my purse (=the stealer of my purse) steals trash

§ 3 — GENDER

48 What in nature is called the difference of sex is in grammar called the difference of **Gender**. The following are therefore the different kinds of genders —

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| (1) Nouns denoting <i>male</i> animals | Masculine |
| (2) Nouns denoting <i>female</i> animals | Feminine |
| (3) Nouns denoting animals of <i>either</i> sex | Common |
| (4) Nouns denoting things of <i>neither</i> sex,
that is, things without life | Neuter |

49 All Material and Abstract nouns must be of the Neuter Gender, since they denote things without life,—things of *neither* sex. All Collective nouns must be Neuter, since they denote groups, and groups as such have no life.

Nouns can therefore be classified according to gender in the following way —

<i>Gender</i>	<i>Nouns</i>
Masculine or Feminine	} Proper and Common nouns
Common (or Either Gender)	
Neuter (or Neither Gender)	} Common nouns

50 There are three different ways by which a Masculine noun is distinguished from a Feminine —

- I By a change of word ; as *bull*, *cow*
- II By adding a word, as *he-goat*, *she-goat*
- III By adding *ess* to the Masculine, as *priest*, *priestess*.

I *By a change of word*

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Bachelor	maid (or spinster)	Horse (or stallion)	mare
Boar	sow	Husband	wife
Boy	girl	King	queen
Brother	sister	Lord	lady
Buck	doe	Man	woman
Bull (or ox)	cow	Multer (fish)	spawner
Bullock (or steer)	heifer	Nephew	niece
Cock	hen	Papa	mamma
Colt	filly	Ram (or wether)	ewe
Dog	bitch (or slut)	Sir	madam (or dame)
Drake	duck	Sire	dam
Drone	bee	(father of colt)	(mother of colt)
Earl	countess	Sloven	slut
Father	mother	Son	daughter
Friar (or monk)	nun	Stag	hind
Gander	goose	Swain	nymph
Gentleman	lady	Uncle	aunt
Hart	roe	Wizard	witch

II *By adding a word*(a) *By adding a prefix*

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Billy goat	nanny goat
Buck rabbit	doe rabbit
Cock sparrow	hen sparrow
He goat	she goat
Jack ass	she ass
Man servant	maid servant

(b) *By a change of suffix*

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Grand father	grand mother
Great uncle	great aunt
Land lord	land lady
Pea cock	pea hen
Servant man	servant maid
Washer man	washer woman

III *By adding ess to the Masculine*

(a) *By adding ess to the Masculine without any change in the form of the Masculine —*

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Author	author ess	Patron	patron ess
Baron	baron ess	Peer	peer ess
Count	count ess	Poet	poet ess
Giant	giant ess	Priest	priest ess
God	godd ess	Prince	princ ess
Heir	heir ess	Prior	prior ess
Host	host ess	Prophet	prophet ess
Jew	Jew ess	Shepherd	shepherd ess
Lion	lion ess	Viscount	viscount ess

(b) By adding *ess*, and omitting the vowel of the last syllable of the Masculine —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Actor	actr <i>ess</i>	Negro	negr <i>ess</i>
Benefactor	benefactr <i>ess</i>	Porter	portr <i>ess</i>
Conductor	conductr <i>ess</i>	Songster	songstr <i>ess</i>
Director	directr <i>ess</i>	Tempter	temptr <i>ess</i>
Enchanter	enchantr <i>ess</i>	Tiger	tigr <i>ess</i>
Hunter	hunti <i>ess</i>	Traitor	traitr <i>ess</i>
Instructor	instructr <i>ess</i>	Volary	votar <i>ess</i>

(c) By adding *ess* to the Masculine in a less regular way —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Abbot	abbess	Master (boy)	miss (girl)
Duke	duchess	Mr	Mrs
Emperor	empress	Marquis }	marchioness
Governor	governess	Marquess }	
Lad	lass	Murderer	murderess
Master (teacher, etc.)	mistress	Sorcerer	sorceress

51 The following modes of distinction between Masculine and Feminine are exceptional —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Bridegroom	bride	Boy	vixen
Widower	widow	("Vixen" as Femin. of "fox" is now obsolete)	

52 Foreign Feminines —

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Administrator	administratrix	Hero	heroine
Beau	belles	Prosecutor	prosecutrix
Czar	czarina	Signor	signora
Don	donna	Sultan	sultana
Executor	executrix	Testator	testatrix

53 Double Feminines — The two examples of this are *songstress* and *seamstress*.

Originally *ster* was a Feminine suffix, as it still is in "spinster". But the Feminine force of *st r* in "songster" and "seamster" has been lost, and so the Feminine form is now shown by changing *er* into *ress*.

54 The following are examples of Nouns in the Common gender —

- Parent—father or mother
- Relation—male or female relation
- Friend—enemy—male or female friend or enemy
- Cousin—male or female cousin
- Bird—cock or hen
- Peafowl—peacock or peahen

Fowl—cock or hen
 Child—boy or girl, son or daughter
 Deer—stag or hind.
 Fallow deer—buck or doe
 Baby (or infant)—male or female baby (or infant)
 Servant—man servant or maid-servant
 Monarch—king or queen, emperor or empress.
 Person.—man or woman
 Pupil—boy student or girl student
 Orphan—boy or girl without parents.
 Pig—boar or sow
 Sheep—ram or ewe
 Elephant—male or female elephant
 Cat—male or female cat.
 Rat—male or female rat
 Mouse—male or female mouse
 Fox—male or female fox
 Cattle—cows alone, or cows and bulls mixed
 Swine—sows alone, or sows and boars mixed
 Spouse—husband or wife
 Foal—colt or filly
 Calf—bullock or heifer

55 There are some Masculine and some Feminine nouns, which, though they have a distinct form for the Feminine and Masculine respectively, can be used as nouns of the Common gender, provided that no question arises as to whether the animal named is a male or a female —*dog, duck, horse, bee, goose, colt*

That is a fine little *colt*
 That *horse* of yours is a splendid stepper
 A *goose* is a much bigger bird than a *duck*

56 **Personified Things**—Inanimate objects or qualities are sometimes spoken of as if they were persons. They are then said to be "personified" (see § 45). Such nouns are regarded as male or female, and admit therefore of being Masculine or Feminine

A noun, when it is thus personified, is commenced with a capital letter, and is used as a Proper noun

As a general rule things remarkable for strength, greatness, superiority, etc., are regarded as males, as the Sun, June, Summer, Winter, the Dawn, the Morn, Death, War, Majesty

On the other hand, states or qualities expressed by Abstract nouns, and whatever is supposed to possess beauty, fertility, grace, inferiority, etc., are regarded as females, as the Earth, Spring, Hope, Virtue, Truth, Justice, Merry, Charity, Peace, Humility, Jealousy, Pride, Fame, Modesty, Liberty, Flattery etc. The Moon is regarded

as *Feminine*, because she is an inferior luminary to her supposed brother, the Sun, from whom her rays are borrowed.

There is nothing in the *form* of these personifications which can show the genders. The gender is disclosed by the pronouns *he* or *she*, whenever such pronouns happen to be used instead of the nouns.

A ship, though it is not commenced with a capital letter, is always spoken of as *she*. The same is often said of a railway train.

§ 4 —CASE.

57 Case defined.—The *relation* in which a noun stands to some other word, or the *change of form* by which this relation is indicated, is called its **Case**.

58 There are three Cases in English,—the *Nominative*, the *Possessive*, and the *Objective*.

But the *Possessive* is the only case that is *now* indicated by a case ending or *change of form*. The other cases have lost their case-endings, and are indicated only by grammatical relation.

59 When a noun is used as the *subject* to a verb or for the sake of *address*, it is said to be in the **Nominative** case.

Rain falls. (*Nominative of Subject*.)

Are you coming, my friend? (*Nominative of Address*.)

60 When a noun is the *object* to a verb or to a preposition, it is said to be in the **Objective** case.

The man killed a *rat*. (*Object to Verb*.)

The earth is moistened by *rain*. (*Obj. to Prep.*)

61 The **Possessive** case is so called, because it usually denotes the *possessor* or owner. It is formed by adding *'s* (which is called *apostrophe s*) to the noun, as—

Singular—man's | *Plural*—men's

N.B.—The old inflection for the *Possessive* case was *es*. When the *e* was omitted, as it now always is, the absence of the *e* was indicated by the comma or apostrophe, as *moon*, *moones*, *moon's*.

62 There are three kinds of instances in which the apostrophe *s* is omitted —

(a) After all plural nouns ending in *s*, as—

Horses' tails, the *birds'* nests, the *dogs'* kennels.

(b) Whenever the last syllable of a *Singular* noun begins and ends with *s*, as—

Moses' laws. (But we must say *Venus's* beauty; *James's* hat, etc.)

(c) Whenever the last syllable of a Singular noun ends with *s* or *ce*, and the noun is followed by "sake", as—

Conscience's sake, for *goodness's sake* (But we must say—a *mouse's* skin, *James's* smile)

63 Nouns denoting *inanimate* objects are seldom put in the Possessive case. Thus we cannot say, "the *house's* roof", "the *town's* street", "the *garden's* fruit", *Bengal's* seaport", "human *life's* brevity", "the *cottage's* door"

Possession in such cases is indicated by the preposition "of", or the noun can sometimes be used as if it were an adjective.

The flowers *of* summer = the *summer* flowers

The door *of* the cottage — the *cottage* door

The light *of* a lamp — a *lamp* light

64 The Possessive case was once used with any kind of noun, but it is now restricted to those shown below —

(1) Nouns denoting *persons*, as—

Gopal's book, a *man's* foot (But we cannot say "a *library's* book," "the *mountain's* foot," since "library" and "mountain" are *inanimate* objects)

(2) Nouns denoting any kind of *living* thing other than man, as—

A *cat's* tail, a *horse's* head, a *bird's* feathers

(3) Nouns denoting *personified* things, as—

Fortune's favourite, *Sorrow's* tears, *England's* heroes

(4) Nouns denoting time, space, or weight, as—

Time—A *day's* journey, a *month's* holiday, three *weeks'* leave, a *year's* absence, at six *months'* sight, three *days'* grace

Space—A *boat's* length, a *hand's* breadth, a *hair's* breadth, a *razor's* edge, a *stone's* throw, a *needle's* point

Weight—A *pound's* weight, a *ton's* weight

(5) Nouns signifying certain dignified objects, as—

The *court's* decree, the *sun's* rays, the *moon's* crescent, *nature's* works, the *earth's* creatures, the *soul's* delight, *heaven's* will, the *law's* delays, *truth's* triumph, the *mind's* eye, the *ocean's* roar, *duty's* call, the *river's* bank, the *country's* good

Note—The Possessive is also used in a few familiar phrases, in which it has been retained for the sake of shortness—

Out of *harm's* way, at his *wife's* end, for *merry's* sake, he did it to his *heart's* content, the *ship's* passengers, at his *fingers'* ends, he got to his *journey's* end, the *boat's* crew.

65. Possessive Case in Apposition — When one Possessive

case is in Apposition with another (§ 19), the apostrophe *s* is added only to that noun which is mentioned last.

Herod married his *brother* Philip's wife

66 Possessive Case in Phrases—The *'s* may be added to the last word of a phrase, when the phrase is regarded as a Compound noun and denotes some person or persons

The Government of India's order

My son in law's house

The Duke of Sutherland's death

67 "Of" before a Possessive—This occurs in such phrases as "that book of James's," "that handsome face of my father's"

Three explanations have been offered —(1) "*Of my father's*" is an ellipse for "*of my father's faces*" Here "*faces*" is the Object to "*of*" This is good grammar, but it makes nonsense (2) "*Of my father's*" is a Double Possessive This is possible (3) The "*of*" merely denotes apposition, as in "*the continent of Asia*," which means "*the continent, namely Asia*" Similarly the phrase "*that face of my father's*" can mean "*that face, namely my father's (face)*"

The ambiguity of the preposition "*of*" is sometimes removed by placing a Possessive noun after it Thus, "*a picture of the Queen*," means a picture containing a likeness of the Queen But "*a picture of the Queen's*" means a picture of which the Queen is owner

68 A noun denoting some kind of place or building is sometimes omitted after a noun in the Possessive case

I will see you at the barber's (shop)

We found him studying hard at his tutor's (house)

§ 5 —NUMBER.

69 When *one* thing is spoken of, the noun is *Singular*, when *two* or *more* things are spoken of, the noun is *Plural*

The only kinds of nouns that (strictly speaking) admit of being pluralised are Common and Collective nouns

But Proper, Material, and Abstract nouns can also be put in the Plural number, when they are used as Common nouns (§ 46)

70 The general rule for forming the Plural number of a noun is by adding *s* to the Singular, as—

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Hand	hands	House	houses

But if the noun ends in *s*, *x*, *sh*, or *ch*, the Plural is formed by adding *es* to the Singular, as—

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Glass	glass-es	Brush	brush-es
Box	box-es	Bench	bench-es

71 If the noun ends in *y* and the *y* is preceded by a consonant, the Plural is formed by changing the *y* into *ies* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Duty	duties	Army	armies
Fly	flies	Lady	ladies

But if the final *y* is preceded by a vowel (as in *ay*, *ey*, or *oy*), the Plural is formed by simply adding *s* to the Singular (in accordance with the general rule given in § 70) —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Day	days	Monkey	monkeys
Play	plays	Toy	toys
Key	keys	Boy	boys

Note Nouns ending in *quy* form the Plural in *ies*, because *qu* (=kw) is regarded as a double consonant, as, *colloquy*, *colloquies*

72 If the noun ends in *o*, and the *o* is preceded by a consonant, the Plural is generally formed by adding *es* to the Singular —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Cargo	cargoes	Mango	mangoes
Hero	heroes	Potato	potatoes
Buffalo	buffaloes	Echo	echoes
Motto	mottoes	Tornado	tornadoes
Negro	negroes	Volcano	volcanoes

But all words ending in *oo*, all words ending in *io*, *eo*, or *yo*, and some words ending in *o* preceded by a consonant, form the Plural in *s*, and not in *es* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Bamboo	bamboos	Grotto	grottos
Cuckoo	cuckoos	Halo	halos
Portfolio	portfolios	Memento	mementos
Embryo	embryos	Proviso	provisos
Cameo	cameos	Tiro	tiros
Seraglio	seraglios	Piano	pianos
Hindoo	Hindoos	Canto	cantos
Curio	curios	Solo	solos

There are a few nouns ending in *o* which form the Plural both in *s* and *es* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Calico	calicos or calicoes
Mosquito	mosquitos or mosquitoes
Portico	porticos or porticoes

73 If the noun ends in *f* or *fe*, the Plural is generally formed by changing *f* or *fe* into *ves* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Wife	wives	Calf	calves
Knife	knives	Half	halves
Life	lives	Myself	ourselves
Sheaf	sheaves	Shelf	shelves
Leaf	leaves	Wolf	wolves
Thief	thieves	Elf	elves

But there are some nouns ending in *f* which form the Plural by simply adding *s* (in accordance with the general rule given in § 70) —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Reef	reefs	Wharf	wharfs
Chief	chiefs	Dwarf	dwarfs
Roof	roofs	Turf	turfs
Hoof	hoofs	Gulf	gulfs
Proof	proofs	Chiff	chiffs
Scarf	scarfs	Grief	griefs

There are at least three nouns ending in *fe* which form the Plural by simply adding *s* —

Safe—safes, strife—strifes, wife—wives.

74 There are eight nouns which form the Plural by a change of the inside vowel —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Man	men	Tooth	teeth
Woman	women	Louse	lice
Foot	feet	Mouse	mice
Goose	geese	Doimouse	dormice

There are four nouns which form the Plural in *en* or *ne* —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Ox	oxen	Brother	brethren (or brothers)
Child	children	Cow	kine (or cows)

75. A compound noun generally forms the Plural by adding *s* to the principal word —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Father in law	fathers in law	Maid servant	maid servants
Son in law	sons in law	Foot man	foot men
Mother in law	mothers in law	Washer man	washer men
Daughter in law	daughters-in-law	Knight-errant	knights-errant
Step son	step sons	Coat of mail	coats-of mail
Step-daughter	step-daughters	Court-martial	courts martial
Hanger-on	hangers-on	Commander-in-chief	commanders in chief
Looker-on	lookers-on		
Passer-by	passers-by		

There are four compound nouns which take a double Plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Man-servant	men servants	Lord justice	lords-justices
Woman servant	women servants	Knight Templar	Knights-Templars

In a phrase like "Miss Brown" two different forms are used for the plural. We may either say "the Miss Browns" or "the Misses Brown."

76 Foreign Plurals—These are some Plurals which have been borrowed direct from foreign nouns —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
	(Latin)		(Greek)
Agendum	agenda	Analysis	analyses
Addendum	addenda	Basin	bases
Datum	data	Crisis	crises
Dictum	dicta	Hypothesis	hypotheses
Effluvium	effluvia	Oasis	oases
Ovum	ova	Parenthesis	parentheses
Erratum	errata	Theatres	theatres
Memoirandum	memoranda	Phenomenon	phenomena
Medium	media	Criterion	criteria
Stratum	strata (or stratae)		(Italian)
Alumnus	alumni	Bandit	banditti (or bandits)
Focus	foci (or focuses)		(French)
Fungus	fungi	Beau	beaux (or beaux)
Genius	genii	Bureau	bureaux
Radius	radii	Monsieur	messieurs
Terminus	termini (or terminuses)	Madam	mesdames
Formula	formule (or formulas)		(Hebrew)
Genus	genera	Cherub	cherubim (or cherubs)
Stamen	stamina	Seraph	seraphim (or seraphs)
Axis	axes		
Index	indices		
Appendix	appendices		
Series	series		
Species	species		
Apparatus	apparatus		

77 There are some nouns, Singular in *form*, which are always used in a Plural *sense*

Cattle —These cattle are mine

Vermis —These vermin do much harm

Swine —These swine must be kept out of the garden.

People —These people have returned home

Note —When "people" is used in the sense of "nation," the Plural is "peoples"

78. There are some nouns which are either not used at all in the Plural, or are used in the Plural in some special sense.

Abuse.—He gave me much abuse (reproach) for no fault.

Information —He gave me all the information he had

Alphabet —He learnt the alphabet before he could read

Furniture —His house is full of good furniture

Offspring —These four children are my offspring

Poetry —He wrote very good poetry (poems)

Scenery —These hills are lovely scenery

Issue.—He had no issue (child or children)

Folk —The old folk have gone

Note —When "abuse" is used in the sense of *wrong use*, the plural is "abuses" When more than one language is spoken of, the plural of "alphabet" is "alphabets" When "issue" means *result*, its plural is "issues."

79 There are some nouns which have the same form for the Plural as for the Singular

(a) <i>Names of animals</i>	(b) <i>Nouns of Number</i>	(c) <i>Weight and Money</i>
Deer	Yoke (of oxen)	Stone (weight)
Sheep	Brace (of birds)	Hundredweight
Fish, rarely fishes	Dozen	Pice
Heathen	Score	

This deer, these deer That sheep, those sheep That fish, those fish (rarely fishes) Those heathen Nine brace of birds Four yoke of oxen Ten dozen books Three score men He weighs ten stone and a half That box weighs three hundredweight Three pice (Indian money)

80 Some nouns, which take the Plural form at ordinary times, retain the Singular form to express some specific quantity or number

A ten-rupee note A twelvemonth A three-foot rule An eight-day clock A six year old horse A fortnight (which is a contraction of "fourteen nights") Forty head of cattle Twelve pound weight.

81 There are some nouns which have two forms in the Plural,—each form with a separate meaning of its own.

Brother	{ Brothers, sons of the same mother Brethren, members of the same society
Cloth	{ Cloths, kinds or pieces of cloth Clothes, articles of dress.
Die	{ Dies, stamps for printing Dice, small cubes used in games
Genius	{ Geniuses, men of genius or talent Genn, fabulous spirits of the air
Index	{ Indexes, tables of contents. Indices, signs used in algebra

<i>Staff</i>	{ Staves,	<i>sticks or poles</i>
	{ Stalls,	<i>departments in the army</i>
<i>Shot</i>	{ Shot,	<i>little balls discharged from a gun</i>
	{ Shots,	<i>discharges, as, "he had two shots"</i>

82 Nouns which have one meaning in the Singular and another in the Plural —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Advice</i> , counsel	<i>Advices</i> , information
<i>Beef</i> , flesh of ox	<i>Beeves</i> , cattle, bulls and cows
<i>Compass</i> , range or extent	<i>Compasses</i> , an instrument
<i>Good</i> , benefit	<i>Goods</i> , movable property
<i>Iron</i> , a metal	<i>Irons</i> , fetters made of iron
<i>Physic</i> , medicine	<i>Physics</i> , natural science
<i>Return</i> , coming back	<i>Returns</i> , statistics
<i>Vesper</i> , evening	<i>Vespers</i> , evening prayers
<i>Sand</i> , a kind of matter	<i>Sands</i> , a tract of sandy land
<i>Force</i> , strength or energy	<i>Forces</i> , army
<i>Air</i> , atmosphere	<i>Airs</i> , demeanour

83 Nouns which have two meanings in the Plural against one in the Singular —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Colour</i> , colour	<i>Colours</i> { 1 Kinds of colour 2 Flag of regiment
<i>Custom</i> , habit	<i>Customs</i> { 1 Habits 2 Toll or tax
<i>Letter</i> { 1 Of alphabet. 2 Epistle	<i>Letters</i> { 1 Of alphabet. 2 Epistles 3 Learning
<i>Pain</i> , suffering	<i>Pains</i> { 1 Sufferings 2 Trouble, care
<i>Effect</i> , result	<i>Effects</i> { 1 Results 2 Goods and chattels
<i>Manner</i> , mode or way	<i>Manners</i> { 1 Modes, ways 2 Behaviour
<i>Number</i> , as in counting	<i>Numbers</i> { 1 As in counting 2 Poetry
<i>Part</i> , portion	<i>Parts</i> { 1 Portions. 2 Abilities
<i>Spectacle</i> , anything seen	<i>Spectacles</i> { 1 Things seen 2 Glasses to help the sight.
<i>Premise</i> , { a statement or pro position	<i>Premises</i> { 1 Propositions 2 Surroundings to a house
<i>Quarter</i> , a fourth part	<i>Quarters</i> { 1 Fourth parts. 2 Lodgings

84 True Singulars used as Plurals

By a "True Singular" we mean that the final *s* is part of the original Singular noun, and not a sign of the Plural

Such nouns, though Singular by etymology, are liable to be considered Plural on account of the final *s*, and two of them are now always used as if they were Plural

Summons — This noun is still correctly used as a Singular, as, "I received a summons to attend", "*this summons* reached me to-day" The Plural form is *summonses*

Alms — "He asked *an alms*" (New Testament) But now the word is generally used as if it were Plural, as, "I gave alms to the beggar, and for *these* he thanked me"

Eaves — The edge or lower borders of the roof of a house The word is now always used as a Plural, as, "The *eaves* are not yet finished"

Riches — This too is really a Singular, as, "In one hour is so great riches come to naught" (New Testament), but now on account of the final *s*, this noun is always used as a Plural, as, "Riches do not last for ever"

85 True Plurals used as Singulars

By "True Plurals" are meant nouns in which the final *s* is really a sign of the Plural

Amends — This is sometimes used as a Singular and sometimes as a Plural, as, "He made *an* amends" "I accept *their* amends"

Means — This is now almost always used as a Singular, as, "By *this* means"

News — This is now almost always used as a Singular, as, "Ill news *runs* apace"

Innings — This is a word used in cricket to denote the turn for going in and using the bat It is *always* used as a Singular, as, "We have not yet had *an* innings", "our eleven beat the other by *an* innings and ten runs"

Gallows — The frame work from which criminals are hanged This noun is used as a Singular, as, "They fixed up *a* gallows"

Odds — A word used in betting, to denote the difference of one wager against another "We gave him *a* heavy odds against ourselves."

86 There are some nouns which are never used in the Singular These are for the most part names of things, which imply plurality or consist of more parts than one —

- (a) Instruments or tools — *arms* (in the sense of weapons), *bellows*, *fettlers*, *pincers*, *scissors*, *longs*, *shears*, *snuffers*, *twocicers*
- (b) Articles of dress — *breeches*, *drawers*, *pantaloon*s, *trappings*, *trousers*, *hose*
- (c) Kinds of disease — *measles*, *measles*, *staggers*, *small pox* (originally spelt as *small-pocks*)

- (d) Parts of the body —*bowels, entrails, intestines, giblets.*
 (e) The names of sciences or subjects ending in *ics*, such as *physics, politics, ethics, metaphysics*, etc
 (These nouns are Plural, because the corresponding Greek words, from which they have been transliterated, are Plural)
 (f) Miscellaneous words, such as *ashes, annals, assets, dregs, embers, chattels, leas, nuptials, obsequies, shambles, statistics, victuals, hustings, proceeds, thanks, tidings, downs, suds, wages, chaps, auspices, billiards, environs, throws, mews, contents, credentials*, etc.

Parsing Model for Nouns

- (a) *Boys learn grammar in the class*

Boys—Common noun, plural number, masculine gender, nominative case, subject to the verb “learn”

Learn—Verb

Grammar—Abstract noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the verb “learn”

In—Preposition, having “class” for its object

The—Adjective qualifying “class”

Class—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the preposition “in”

- (b) *Cow's milk is often drunk by young children*

Cow's—Common noun, singular number, feminine gender, possessive case

Milk—Material noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, subject to the verb “is drunk”

Often—Adverb of time, qualifying the verb “is drunk”

Is drunk—Verb

By—Preposition, having “children” for its object

Young—Adjective qualifying “children”

Children—Common noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, after the preposition “by”

- (c) *The flock of sheep is eating grass in James's orchard*

The—Adjective qualifying “flock”

Flock—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case, subject to the verb “is eating”

Of—Preposition, having “sheep” for its object

Sheep—Common noun, plural number, common gender, objective case, after the preposition “of”

Is eating—Verb

Grass—Material noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the verb “is eating”

In—Preposition, having “orchard” for its object.

James's—Proper noun, singular number, masculine gender, possessive case

Orchard—Collective noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, after the preposition “in”

CHAPTER III —ADJECTIVES

§ 1 —THE KINDS OF ADJECTIVES

87 Adjective defined.—An Adjective is a word used to qualify a noun (§ 14)

In parsing an adjective this is the definition invariably used, and it is therefore convenient to retain it. But it needs explanation. An adjective, as we know, denotes a property of some kind or other. When we say that it qualifies or modifies a noun, we mean that it *restricts* the application of the noun to such persons or things as possess the property denoted by the adjective.

Every adjective, therefore, has a *restrictive* force, and it might be defined as "*a word used to restrict the application of a noun.*"¹

88 There are altogether six different kinds of Adjectives —

- (1) **Proper** describing a thing by some *Proper noun*
- (2) **Descriptive** showing of *what quality* or *in what state* a thing is
- (3) **Quantitative** showing *how much* of a thing is meant
- (4) **Numeral** showing *how many* things or *in what order*
- (5) **Demonstrative** showing *which* or *what* thing is meant
- (6) **Distributive** showing that things are taken *separately* or *in separate lots*

Proper Adjectives.

89 Proper Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as are included within the scope of some Proper name. (A Proper adjective must begin with a capital letter.)

The *Indian* plains = the plains of India

A *Chinese* pilgrim = a pilgrim from China.

The *Turkish* empire = the empire of the Turks

The *Gangetic* plain = the plain watered by the Ganges

The *English* language = the language of England

¹ This is an abridged form of the definition given by Mason, who, in *English Grammar*, p 37, § 88, defines an adjective thus :—"An adjective is a word which may limit (=restrict) the application of a noun to that which has the quality, the quantity, or the relation which the adjective denotes."

Descriptive Adjectives —Quality or State

90 Descriptive Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as possess the *quality* or *state* denoted by the adjective

A *brave* boy a *sick* lion , a *tame* cat , a *large* field , a *black* horse ,
an *industrious* student , a *careful* workman

Quantitative Adjectives —Quantity or Degree

91 Quantitative Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such things as are of the *quantity* or *degree* denoted by the adjective

The chief adjectives of this class are—*Much, little, no* or *now* , *some, any, enough* or *sufficient, all* or *whole, half*

He ate *much* (a large quantity of) bread

He ate *little* (a small quantity of) bread

He ate *no* bread I had *now*

He ate *some* (a certain quantity of) bread

He did not eat *any* (any quantity of) bread

He ate *enough* or *sufficient* bread

He ate *all* the (the *whole* quantity of) bread

A *half* holiday is better than *none*

Note —“*No*” is used when the noun that it qualifies is expressed
“*None*” is used when the noun is understood

92 Adjectives of Quantity are always followed by a *Singular* noun , and this noun must always be either a noun of *Material* or an *Abstract* noun , as “*much bread*” (noun of *Material*), “*much pain*” (a high degree of pain, *Abstract* noun)

Note —It is idiomatic to speak of a *quantity* of matter (*Material* noun), and a *degree* of some quality (*Abstract* noun) Hence adjectives of Quantity have also been called adjectives of Degree

Numeral Adjectives

93 Numeral Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to such persons or things as are of the *number* or *serial order* denoted by the adjective

Numeral Adjectives are subdivided into two main classes —

I Definite

II Indefinite

94 Definite numerals denote some *exact* number

Those which show *how many* things there are (as *one, two, three, four, etc.*) are called **Cardinals**

Those which show the *serial order* in which a thing stands (as first, second, third, etc.) are called **Ordinals**.

Those which show *how often* a thing is repeated are called **Multiplicative**

<i>Cardinals.</i>	<i>Ordinals</i>	<i>Multiplicatives</i>
One	first	one only, single, simple
Two	second	twofold, double
Three	third	threefold, treble, triple
Four	fourth	fourfold, quadruple (four times one)
Six	sixth	sixfold (six times one)
Seven	seventh	sevenfold (seven times one)

95 Indefinite numerals denote number of some kind without saying precisely what the number is —

All, some, enough, no or none, many, few, several, sundry.

*All men are mortal
No men were present
Many men are poor
Several men came*

*Some men die young
Ten men will be enough
Few men are rich
Sundry men went away*

A Definite numeral can be made Indefinite by placing the word *some* or *about* before it —

Some twenty men (= about twenty men, twenty men more or less) were present

96 The words “some,” “enough,” “all,” “no or none,” are adjectives of *Number* or adjectives of *Quantity*, according to the sense

If the noun qualified by such words is a Material or Abstract noun, the adjective belongs to the class of Quantity, as has been explained in § 92. But if the noun is a Common noun (or one used as a Common noun), and capable therefore of being in the Plural number, the adjective belongs to the class of Numeral —

<i>Quantitatives</i>	<i>Numerals</i>
<i>Much, he had much bread</i>	<i>Many, he had many loaves of bread,</i>
<i>Little, he had little bread</i>	<i>Few, he had few loaves of bread</i>
<i>Enough, he had enough bread</i>	<i>Enough, he had loaves enough</i>
<i>Some, he had some bread</i>	<i>Some, he had some loaves of bread</i>
<i>No, he had no bread</i>	<i>No, he had no loaves of bread</i>
<i>All, he had all the bread</i>	<i>All, he had all the loaves of bread</i>
<i>Any, have you had any bread?</i>	<i>Any, did you bring any loaves?</i>

Demonstrative Adjectives

97 Demonstrative Adjectives restrict the application of a noun to those persons or things that are intended to be pointed out by the adjective.

The word *Demonstrative* means “pointing out,”

98 Adjectives of this kind are subdivided (as Numeral adjectives are) into two main classes —

I. Definite.

II. Indefinite.

When a person or thing is pointed out *exactly*, as "this man," the adjective is called a **Definite Demonstrative**

When it is pointed out in a certain sense, but *not exactly*, it is called an **Indefinite Demonstrative** —

Definite		Indefinite	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
The	the	A, an	all
This	these	One, any	any
That, yon,	those, you,	A certain	certain
yonder	yonder		
Such	such	Such	such
The same, or	the same, or	Some	some
self same	self same		
The other	the other	Another, any	other, any
		other	other

Demonstrative adjectives are few in number, and all of them are given in the above list

99 The adjective "*the*" is sometimes called the **Definite Article**, and "*a*" or "*an*" is called the **Indefinite Article** (§ 15)

An is used before a vowel or silent *h*, as—

An apple, an egg, an ink bottle, an heir, an hour, an honest man, an ox

A is used before a consonant, before *u* sounded as *yoo*, and before *o* sounded as *wu* —

A kite, a cart, a bottle, a useful thing, a unit, a one-eyed man

Even before an aspirated *h* we use *an*, provided the accent is on the *second* syllable —thus, we say "*a his'tory*," because here the accent is on the *first* syllable "*his*", but we say "*an his'tor'ical* account," because here the accent is on the *second* syllable "*tor*"

Distributive Adjectives

100 Distributive Adjectives restrict the application of a noun by showing that the persons or things denoted by the noun are taken *singly*, or *in separate lots*

101 There are four Adjectives of this class —*each, every, either, neither*.

(a) **Each** —This means one of *two* things or one of any number *exceeding two* —

The *two* men had *each* a gun
 The *twenty* men had *each* a gun

(b) **Every**.—This is never used for one of two, but always for some number *exceeding two* —

Every man (out of the *twenty* present) had a gun

Note —“*Every*” is a stronger word than “*each*,” and means “*each without exception*” —“*all* the individuals of a group, taken *singly*”

“**Every six hours**” and similar expressions —This means *every period or space of six hours*, six hours being taken collectively as *one* period of time —

He came *every five hours* (=at the close of every space of five hours)

“**Every other**” —This means *every second* or *each alternate*, as—

He was attacked with fever *every other day* (=on every second day)

(c) **Either** —This has two meanings—(1) *one of two*, or (2) *each of two*—that is, *both*

(1) You can take *either* side, that is, one side or the other

(2) The river overflowed on *either* side, that is, on both sides

(d) **Neither** —This is the negative of “*either*,” and signifies “*neither the one nor the other*” —

“You should take *neither* side”, that is, *neither this side nor that, neither the one side nor the other*

§ 2 —THE TWO USES OF ADJECTIVES.

102 There are two different ways in which an Adjective can be used—(a) the *Attributive*, and (b) the *Predicative*

(a) *Attributive use* —An adjective is used *attributively*, when it qualifies its noun *directly*, so as to make a kind of compound noun —

A *lame* horse A *noble* character

All true adjectives can be used *attributively* But we cannot say “an *asleep* man,” because “*asleep*” and similar words are not adjectives, but adverbs (§ 236, 2)

(b) *Predicative use*.—An adjective is used *predicatively*, when it qualifies its noun *indirectly*—through the verb or predicate going before

That horse went *lame* His character is *noble*

An adjective so used is a form of Complement to the verb going before (§ 25), because it completes what the verb left unaid

§ 3—SUBSTITUTES FOR ADJECTIVES

103 Words that restrict a noun in the same way as an adjective would restrict it, are substitutes for an adjective —

- (1) A Participle (or Verbal adjective, § 18) —
A fading flower A fallen tree
- (2) An Adverb with some participle understood —
The then (reigning) king The down (going) train
- (3) A Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective —
*A river fish (=a fish living in rivers)
 A bathing place (=a place used for bathing)*
- (4) A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive case —
My book Their friendship My son's teacher
- (5) A Verb in the Infinitive mood —
A chair to sit on Water to drink
- (6) A Preposition with its object —
A man of virtue (=a virtuous man)
- (7) An Adjective clause, (see clause defined in § 5)
The book that you lent me will not be lost

§ 4—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

104 Most adjectives of Quality, two adjectives of Quantity, viz *much* and *little*, and two adjectives of Number, viz *many* and *few*, have degrees of comparison

All other adjectives of Quantity and Number, all Proper, Demonstrative, and Distributive adjectives, and a few Descriptive adjectives of such kind as *blue*, *square*, *circular*, *solar*, *lunar*, *oblong*, *annual*, *monthly*, *vegetable*, *mineral*, *milky*, *golden*, etc., cannot from the kind of meaning contained in them, have degrees of comparison

105 The degrees of comparison are three in number—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative

The **Positive** denotes the simple quality, as, "a *beautiful* horse"

The **Comparative** denotes a higher degree of the quality, as, "a *more beautiful* horse" This is used when *two* things of the same class are compared together Comparatives are followed by "than."

The **Superlative** denotes the highest degree of the quality, as, "the *most beautiful* horse" This is used when *one* thing is compared with *all other* things of the same class

106 In all adjectives of *more than two syllables*, and in most adjectives of two syllables, the Comparative is formed

by adding "*more*" and the Superlative by adding "*most*," as in the examples already given

107 But adjectives of one syllable and some adjectives of two syllables can also form the Comparative by adding *er* or *r*, and the Superlative by adding *est* or *st* —

(a) If the Positive ends in *two consonants*, or in a *single consonant* preceded by *two vowels*, *er* and *est* are added —

Small	smaller	smallest
Thick	thicker	thickest
Great	greater	greatest
Deep	deeper	deepest

(b) If the Positive ends in *one consonant*, and the consonant is preceded by a *short vowel*, the final consonant is doubled when *er* and *est* are added —

Thin	thinner	thinnest
Fat	fatter	fattest
Hot	hotter	hottest
Wet	wetter	wettest

(c) If the Positive ends in *e*, only *r* and *st* are added, and not *er* and *est* —

Brave	braver	bravest
Wise	wiser	wisest
True	trueer	truest

(d) If the Positive ends in *y*, and the *y* is preceded by a *consonant*, the *y* is changed into *i*, when *er* and *est* are added —

Happy	happier	happiest
Dry	drier	driest

(e) If the *y* is preceded by a *vowel*, the *y* is not changed into *i* —

Gay	gayer	gayest
Grey	greyer	greyest

108 Some adjectives form their Comparatives and Superlatives in an irregular way —

Bad, ill, evil	worse	worst
Fore	former	foremost, first
Good	better	best
Hind	hinder	hindmost
Late	later, latter	latest, last
Little	less	least
Much (quantity)	more	most
Many (number)	more	most
Nigh	nigher	nighest, next
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest

109 There are six words which are adverbs in the Positive degree, but adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative —

Forth	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest
In	inner	innermost, inmost
Out	outer, utter	utmost, outermost
Be neath	nether	nethermost
Up	upper	uppermost

The noun "top," used as an adjective, has the Superlative form "topmost" But it has no Comparative

110 Latin Comparatives — All of these end in *or*, and not in *er*, and all are followed by *to* instead of *than*

His strength	is	<i>superior to</i>	(greater than) mine
His strength	is	<i>inferior to</i>	(less than) mine
This event	is	<i>anterior to</i>	} (earlier than) that
This event	is	<i>prior to</i>	
This event	is	<i>posterior to</i>	(later than) that
This war	is	<i>senior to</i>	(older than) that
This man	is	<i>junior to</i>	(younger than) that

CHAPTER IV — PRONOUNS

111 Pronoun defined — A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun or noun-equivalent (§ 7)

The usefulness of pronouns is best seen by trying to do without them —

John saw a snake in the garden, *this snake John* thought would hurt *John*, unless *John* killed *the snake* with a stick, *this stick John* had in *John's* hand

The nouns in italics can all be replaced by pronouns, and the sentence can be much better expressed as follows —

John saw a snake in the garden, *which he* thought would hurt *him*, unless *he* killed *it* with a stick *which he* had in *his* hand

The chief use, then, of Pronouns is to save the repetition of nouns

112 Three facts follow from the above definition —

(a) Since a pronoun is used instead of a noun, it must be itself a noun or something equivalent to a noun

(b) Since a pronoun is intended to stand for some

noun going before, the pronoun should not as a rule be mentioned, until the noun has been mentioned.

(c) Since a pronoun is used instead of a noun, it must be of the same number, gender, and person as the noun it stands for.

113 There are four different kinds of Pronouns .—

- (1) **Personal** ; as, *I, thou, he, she*, etc
- (2) **Demonstrative** , as, *this, that, such, one*, etc
- (3) **Relative** , as, *which, who, that, as*, etc
- (4) **Interrogative** , as, *who? which? what?*

§ 1 —PERSONAL PRONOUNS .

114 The **Personal Pronouns** are so called, because they stand for the three persons, viz —

(a) The First, which denotes the person *speaking* , as, *I, we, myself* —

I (the person now speaking) will do all I can to win a prize at the end of the year

(b) The Second, which denotes the person *spoken to* , as, *thou, you, thyself* —

You (the person now spoken to) should leave off this habit of idleness

(c) The Third, which denotes the person or thing *spoken of* , as, *he, she, it, himself, herself, itself* —

He (the person already mentioned) did a good day's work with his tutor

115 **Forms of Personal Pronouns** —Personal Pronouns have the same differences of gender, number, and case that nouns have —

I *The First Person, Masculine or Feminine*

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i> .	I	We
<i>Possessive</i>	My, mine	Our, ours
<i>Objective</i> . .	Me	Us

II. *The Second Person, Masculine or Feminine*

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	Thou	Ye or you
<i>Possessive</i>	Thy, thine	Your, yours
<i>Objective</i>	Thee	You

III. *The Third Person, of all Genders*

Case	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
<i>Nominative</i>	He	She	It	They
<i>Possessive</i>	His	Her or hers	Its	Their or theirs
<i>Objective</i>	Him	Her	It	Them

116 Two Forms of Possessive—Most of the Personal pronouns have two forms for the Possessive —

Singular				Plural		
<i>First Form</i>	My	Thy	Hers	Ours	Yours	Theirs
<i>Second "</i>	Mine	Thine	Hers	Ours	Yours	Theirs

The first is used, when the Possessive is placed *before* its noun. It qualifies the noun like an adjective.

This is *my* book.

That is *their* house.

The second is used—(a) when the pronoun is separated from its noun by a verb coming between, (b) when the noun is understood, (c) when the pronoun is preceded by "of" —

(a) This book is *mine*. That house is *theirs*.

(b) My horse and *yours* (your horse) are both tired.

(c) That horse *of yours* is tired.

Note 1—"Here," "ours," "yours," "theirs" are in fact **Double Possessives**, the "s" being one sign of the Possessive, and the "s" another. In such phrases as "of yours," the "of" denotes apposition. See § 67.

Note 2—In poetry "mine" and "thine" are sometimes placed *before* their nouns, when the noun following begins with a vowel. This is done to separate the sounds of the two vowels.—

Look through *mine eyes* with *thine*—*Tennyson*.

Note 3—In poetry "mine" can be placed after its noun, as "mother mine" instead of "my mother."

117 Reflexive Personal Pronouns.—These are formed by adding "self" or "own" to a Personal pronoun.

I The First Person

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Myself	Ourselves
<i>Possessive</i>	My or mine own	Our own

II The Second Person

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Thyself	Yourselves
<i>Possessive</i>	Thy or thine own	Your own

III The Third Person

Case	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
<i>Nom. or Obj.</i>	Himself	Herself	Itself	Themselves
<i>Possessive</i>	His own	Her own	Its own	Their own

118. Uses of Reflexive Forms.—The Reflexive forms of Personal pronouns are used for two purposes—(a) to show that the person (or thing) does something to himself (or itself), (b) to make the pronouns more emphatic.

Examples of (a)

Singular
 I hid myself
 I hit my own head
 Thou lovest thine own work.
 The cat seated itself

Plural
 We hid ourselves.
 We hit our own heads
 You love your own work
 The cats seated themselves.

Examples of (b)

Singular
 I myself saw the horse
 Thou thyself sawest the horse
 He himself (or she herself) saw it
 The wall itself fell

Plural
 We ourselves saw it
 You yourselves saw it
 They themselves saw it
 The walls themselves fell

§ 2 — DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

119 A **Demonstrative Pronoun** is one that *points to* some noun going before, and is used instead of it. This noun is called the **Antecedent**

120 **Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns** — The chief pronouns belonging to the class of Demonstratives are — *this, that, these, those, one, ones, none, such*

The student will have observed that these words have appeared already in the list of **Demonstrative Adjectives**. Where, then, is the difference?

When they are followed by a noun, or require some noun to be understood after them, they are Adjectives

When they are used as substitutes for some noun previously mentioned, and cannot have any noun either expressed or understood after them, they are Pronouns

(a) He came to my house *one* day

Here *one* is an adjective (Indefinite Demonstrative) qualifying its noun "day"

(b) Your coat is black, mine is a white *one*

Here *one* is a pronoun, which is used as a substitute for the previously mentioned noun "coat," and is qualified by the adjective "white"

121 **He, she, it, they** — The simplest forms of Demonstrative pronouns are *he, she, it, they*

These have been hitherto called "Personal pronouns," partly because they exemplify the Third person as distinct from the First and Second, and partly because "he" and "she" and sometimes "they" do actually relate to *persons*, and not to things

Yet it is equally correct to call them **Demonstrative pronouns**, since they *point to* some noun going before and are *substituted* for it

- (1) My father has gone, we saw *him* start a short time ago (Here *him* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for its Antecedent noun "father")
- (2) My mother came yesterday, we were glad to see *her* (Here *her* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for its Antecedent noun "mother")
- (3) The sun has risen, *it* shines brightly (Here *it* is a Demonstrative pronoun used as a substitute for the noun "sun")
- (4) The travellers fell asleep as soon as *they* arrived (Here *they* is a Demonstrative pronoun substituted for the noun "travellers.")

122 *It*—This pronoun has three distinct modes of reference —

(a) To a *noun* going before In this sense it is merely a Demonstrative pronoun used in the ordinary way —

The sun has risen *it* (= the sun) shines brightly

(b) To a *clause* going before —

I have treated him as he deserved, and he knows *it* (Here "*it*" points to the clause "I have treated him as he deserved")

(c) To a *phrase* or *clause* coming after —

- { *It* is sad to hear such bad news (Phrase)
- { *It*—viz "to hear such bad news"—is sad
- { *It* is probable that it will rain to-day (Clause)
- { *It*—viz "that it will rain to day"—is probable

123 *This, that, these, those*—The uses of these words as *pronouns*, and not as *adjectives*, are as follows —

(a) When two nouns have been mentioned in a previous sentence or clause, "*this*" has reference to the *latter* and "*that*" to the *former* —

- (1) Work and play are both necessary to health, *this* (=play) gives us rest, and *that* (=work) gives us energy
- (2) Dogs are more faithful animals than cats, *these* (=cats) attach themselves to places, and *those* (=dogs) to persons

Observe that in the first of these sentences "*this*" does not specify *which* or *what* play is meant, and therefore it is not a Demonstrative Adjective. It is simply put as a *substitute* for the noun "play," and therefore it is a Demonstrative Pronoun

The same explanation holds good for the other examples

(b) The word "*that*," together with its plural form "*those*," is used as substitute for a single noun previously mentioned —

- (1) The air of the hills is cooler than *that* (=the air) of the plains
- (2) The houses of the rich are larger than *those* (=the houses) of the poor

Observe the word "that" in the first example does not qualify the noun "air" by saying *which* air or *what* air, and therefore it is not an Adjective. It stands for "air" in general, and is a *substitute* for the noun "air", and therefore it is a Pronoun.

(c) The words "this" or "that" can be used as substitutes for a *clause* or *sentence* previously mentioned —

- (1) I studied Greek and Latin when I was young, and *that* (= I studied Greek and Latin) at Oxford

Here by using the pronoun "*that*" as a substitute for the sentence "I studied Greek and Latin," we not only avoid repeating this sentence a second time, but we give some emphasis to the words "at Oxford"

- (2) Make the best use of your time at school, *that's* a wise boy

Here "*that*" = "one who makes the best use of his time at school." All this repetition is avoided by using the pronoun "*that*" as a substitute for the implied sentence

- (3) You paid your debts, and *this* (= the payment of your debts) is quite sufficient to prove your honesty

124. One, ones — When the antecedent noun is in the Singular number, we use "*one*", but when the antecedent noun is Plural, we use "*ones*"

- (1) He gained a prize last year, but he did not gain *one* (= a prize)
this term (*Singular*)
- (2) There were six lazy boys and four industrious *ones* (= boys) in our class (*Plural*)

125. Such, so — "Such" can be substituted for a noun in either number —

- (1) He is the judge appointed to hear this case, and *as such* (= as the appointed judge) you must not speak to him before the trial (*Singular*)
- (2) Kings are constituted *such* (= kings) by law, and should be obeyed (*Plural*)

"So" is sometimes used in places where we could also use "*such*", but "*so*" is a Demonstrative *Adverb*, and not a Demonstrative *Pronoun* —

My business is urgent, and I hope you will treat it *so* (= as urgent)
Is he an enemy? He *is so* (= an enemy)

Examples for Practice.

Show whether the words printed in italics are Demonstrative Adjectives or Demonstrative Pronouns —

This horse is stronger than *that*
Health is of more value than money, *this* cannot give such true happiness as *that*
I prefer a white horse to a black *one*

You will repent of this *one* day, when it is too late
 You have kept your promise, *this* was all that I asked for
 The faithfulness of a dog is greater than *that* of a cat.
One Mr. B. helped his friend in need, *that* was a true friend
 Return to your work, and *that* immediately
 Bring me *that* book, and leave *this* where it is
 The step you have taken is *one* of much risk
Such a book as yours deserves to be well read
 Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for *such* alone can be
 made to pay for it.
 Prosperous men are not always more happy than unlucky *ones*
 A pale light, like *that* of the rising moon, begins to fringe the
 horizon
 Will you ride *this* horse or *that*?
 A stranger could not be received twice as *such* in the same house
 The plan you have chosen does not seem to me to be a wise *one*
One man says *this*, another *that*, whom should I believe?

126 Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns — Sometimes Demonstrative pronouns are used *indefinitely*, that is, they are not used as substitutes for some noun expressly mentioned, but for some noun understood or implied

(a) *They* — This pronoun is sometimes used for *men in general*, or some person whose name is purposely concealed —

- (1) *They* say (=men in general say) that truth and honesty is the best policy
- (2) *They* told me (=some person or persons, whom I do not wish to name, told me) that you were guilty of theft

(b) *One* — This pronoun is often used in the sense of *any person* or *every person* —

One should take care of *one's* health
 = *A man* (any and every man) should take care of *his* health

Note 1 — Whenever “one” is the subject to a verb, it must be followed by “one” and not by “he” Thus we cannot say, “*one* must take care of *his* health”

Note 2 — “None” (=no one) should be followed by a Singular verb, when it is the Subject of the sentence —

None but the brave *deserves* the fair — *Dryden*

But when several persons or things are spoken of, the verb can be made Plural by attraction —

None of my lost books *were* found

(c) *It* — The indefinite use of this pronoun is against all rules of number, person, and gender.

Who is it? *It* is I. Is it you? No, *it* is he,

In such phrases as those shown below, "*it*" gives emphasis to the noun or pronoun following —

It was I who told you that *It* is the men who work hardest, not the women *It* was the queen who died yesterday *It* is little things that chiefly disturb the mind

Sometimes the noun, for which the word "*it*" is used, can be understood from the context —

It is raining = rain is raining or falling
It is blowing hard = the wind is blowing hard
It is fine to day = the weather is fine to day
It is hot = the air is hot *It* is cold = the air is cold
It is still early = the hour is still early
It is two miles from here = the distance is two miles
It was autumn = the season of the year was autumn

Sometimes the word "*it*" is used instead of some Personal pronoun to express endearment or contempt —

What a pretty little girl *it* is (=she is)! (*Endearment*)
 What an ass *it* is (=that man is)! (*Contempt*)

§ 3 —RELATIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

127 A Relative Pronoun not only refers to some noun going before (as a Demonstrative pronoun does), but it also joins two sentences together (which a Demonstrative pronoun does not do) It is therefore a Conjunctive pronoun (§ 18)

This is a good house, I live in *it* (*Demonstrative Pronoun*)
 This house, in *which* I live, is a good one (*Relative Pronoun*)

128 Who, which — The Relative pronoun is most commonly expressed by *who* or *which*

Case	Singular and Plural	Singular and Plural.
	Masculine and Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nominative</i>	Who	Which
<i>Possessive</i>	Whose	Whose or of which
<i>Objective</i>	Whom	Which

The most common form of the Possessive Neuter is "of which," but "whose" is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose

Note —The Masculine and Feminine forms are used for *persons* only. The Neuter forms are used for inanimate things and for all kinds of animals except persons (men and women)

129. Forms of Antecedent —The antecedent may take the form of a noun, a pronoun, or a clause —

You have paid your debts, which (=the fact that you have paid your debts) is a clear proof of your honesty (*Clause.*)

130 Antecedent understood. —When the antecedent is understood, the neuter Relative takes the form of “*what*,” while the Masculine and Feminine retain the form of “*who*”

(a) *Who* = *he who*, or *she who*, or *they who*

Who (=he who) steals my purse, steals trash —*Shakespeare*

Whom (=those persons whom) the gods love, die young —*Proverb*

(b) *What* = *the thing which*, or *the things which*

I cannot tell you now *what* (=the things which) then happened

The laws are *what* (=the things which) you say they are

(c) *So*, *ever*, or *soever* added to the Relative pronoun or to Relative adverbs (§ 18, 3) gives the meaning of totality —

Whosoever (=any and every person who) breaks this law will be punished, *wherever* (in any and every place where) he may live

Note 1 —“*What*” has been called a “Compound Relative,” because the antecedent is said to be contained in it. But this is not correct, for the antecedent is sometimes expressed, either (a) in a subsequent clause, or (b) immediately after the Relative itself —

(a) *What* I tell you in darkness, *that* speak ye in the light.

(b) Take *what* (or *whatsoever*) *help* you can get

Note 2 —Whenever the antecedent is placed after the Relative, as in example (b), the relative is not a *substitute* word, and therefore not a true pronoun, but an adjective

Take *whichever* book (=that book of all others which) you prefer

131 That. —The word “*that*” is often used for “*who*,” “*whom*,” or “*which*,” but never for “*whose*” —

This is the house *that* (=which) Jack built.

The man *that* (=whom) we were looking for has come

132 As —The word “*as*” can be used for a Relative pronoun, provided it is preceded by “*such*,” or “*as*,” or “*the same*” It may be in the Nominative or the Objective case, but not in the Possessive.

This is not *such* a good book as I expected

As many men *as* came were caught.

Yours is not *the same* book as mine (is)

After "such" and "as" the word "as" is always used. But after "the same" it is not less common to use "*that*"

This is *the same story that* (= which) I heard ten years ago.

This is *the same man that* (= whom) I saw yesterday

Note —The use of "*that*" or "*as*" after "the same" is guided by the following rules —(1) When a verb is *expressed* after it, we generally use "*that*", (2) When the verb is *understood*, we always use "*as*" —

(1) This is the same man *that* came yesterday (*Verb expressed*)

(2) This is not the same book *as* mine is (*Verb understood*)

133 But —The conjunction "*but*," when some *Demonstrative pronoun* is understood after it, is used in the sense of "who not" or "which not" (See p 249 (b) on this point.)

There was no one present, *but* saw (= but he saw = *who did not see*) the deed

There is no vice so simple, *but* may (= but it may = *which may not*) become serious in time

The two uses of Who and Which

134 Restrictive, Continuative —These words denote two distinct uses of "who" or "which" —

(a) *Restrict* —The man *who lived there* died yesterday

(b) *Contin* —I have seen my friend, *who recognised* me at once

In (a) the Relative clause does the work of an *adjective* to the noun "man," because it *restricts* the application of this noun to that particular man who is said to have "lived there"

In (b) the Relative clause "who recognised me at once" has no restrictive force on the noun "friend" It simply *continues* what was said in the previous clause —"I found my friend, *and he* (= who) recognised me at once"

Note —Besides the Restrictive and the Continuative, there are two more senses of "who" and "which,"—one implying a *Cause*, and the other a *Purpose* —

(c) *Cause* { Balbus, *who* had been found guilty, was hanged
= Balbus, *because he* had been found guilty, was hanged

(d) *Purpose* { Envoys were sent, *who* should sue for peace
= Envoys were sent, *that they* might sue for peace

In (c) and (d) the Relative clause is neither Restrictive nor Continuative, since (c) implies the *cause* of something already done, and (d) the *purpose* for which something is going to be done

135 Who, that. —"Who" and "which" are the only Relatives that are ever used in the sense of Continuation, Cause, or Purpose The other, viz "*that*," is invariably used in a Restrictive sense, and much more commonly so than "who" or "which,"

§ 4 — INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

136 An Interrogative Pronoun is one which asks a question

137 Forms of Interrogatives — The Interrogative pronoun has five different forms

- Who* spoke? (Nominative to the verb)
 Of *whom* did he speak? (Objective after preposition)
What did he say? (Objective after verb "say")
Whose book is that? (Possessive Case)
Which of these boys will win the prize?

138 Which, what, who — (a) "Which" is used in a *selective* sense, (b) "who" or "what" is used in a *general* sense —

- (a) *Which* of these books do you prefer?
 (b) *What* is the name of that book? *Who* wrote it?
 (c) *What* book is that? *Which* book do you like best?

In the examples in (c) "*what*" and "*which*," since they are followed by nouns, are Interrogative adjectives, in the same way as a Demonstrative can be either an adjective or a pronoun (see § 120) according to the context

139 The student should observe the different meanings of the Interrogatives used in the following sentences —

- (a) *Who* is he?
 (b) *What* is he?
 (c) *Which* is he?

In (a) the "who" inquires about the name or parentage of some person that has been named

In (b) the "what" inquires about his calling or social status "What is he?" A pleader

In (c) the "which" inquires about some particular person out of a definite group of persons "The man who stole my purse is among the prisoners here present which is he? Point him out"

140 Whether — The word "*whether*," when it signifies one of two persons or things, is now almost obsolete

Whether of them twain (= *which* of these two men) did the will of his father? — *New Testament*

141 Exclamatory Pronoun — The Interrogative "*what*" may be used in an exclamatory sense.

What folly! *What* a foolish man he is!

Parsing Model for Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

The man, that shot four tigers from an elephant's back on his first day of sport, received much praise, which gave him the greatest delight

The—Definite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun "man"

Man—Common noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, subject to the verb "received"

That—Relative pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "man," nominative case, subject to the verb "shot"

Shot—Verb

Four—Numeral adjective, cardinal, qualifying the noun "tigers"

Tigers—Common noun, masculine gender, plural number, objective case after the verb "shot."

From—Preposition, having "back" for its object

An—Indefinite demonstrative adjective, qualifying the noun "elephant's"

Elephant's—Common noun, common gender, singular number, possessive case, qualifying the noun "back" (§ 103, 4)

Back—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "from"

On—Preposition, having "day" for its object

His—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, possessive case, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "man" Qualifies the noun "day" (§ 116)

First—Numeral adjective, ordinal, qualifying the noun "day"

Day—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "on"

Of—Preposition, having "sport" for its object

Sport—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "of"

Received—Verb

Much—Adjective of quantity, positive degree, qualifying the noun "praise"

Praise—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the verb "received"

Which—Relative pronoun, neuter gender, singular number, third person, having the clause "received much praise" as its antecedent (§ 129), nominative case, subject to the verb "gave." Used in a Continuative sense (§ 134)

Gave—Verb

He—Personal pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent "man," objective case after the verb "gave" (Indirect object, see § 148)

Greatest—Adjective of quality, superlative degree, qualifying the noun "delight."

Delight—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, second objective to the verb "gave." (Direct object, see § 148)

CHAPTER V — VERBS

§ 1 — THE KINDS OF VERBS.

142 Verb defined — A Verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing (§ 14)

Verbs are subdivided into three main classes —

I Transitive II Intransitive III Auxiliary

Verbs which are not used in all the moods and tenses are called "Defective"

143 A verb is Transitive, if the action does not stop with the agent, but passes from the agent to something else

(1) The man killed a *snake*

(2) I do not know *whether he has come*

The word or words denoting that person or thing, to which the action of the verb is directed, are called the **Object** to the verb. The various grammatical forms in which the Object can be expressed have been shown in § 21, and will be shown again in § 116

144 A verb is Intransitive, when the action stops with the agent, and does not pass from the agent to anything else

Men sleep to preserve life

Sleep what? This is nonsense. No word or words can be placed as object to such a verb as "sleep"

145 An Auxiliary verb is one which helps to form the tenses or modify the sense of some other verb

I *may* sleep. I *will* work. You *can* swim. Did you speak?
He *should* learn. He *would* learn if he could.

Note — The verb that is helped or modified by the Auxiliary is called the **Principal verb**. Thus "sleep" (in the first of the above examples) is the Principal verb, and "may" is the Auxiliary.

§ 2 — TRANSITIVE VERBS.

146 Forms of the Object — Most Transitive verbs take a *single* object. The object to a verb may be expressed in various different forms, the chief of which are the following (§ 24) —

(a). **Noun** — The man killed a *snake* with his stick.

(b). **Pronoun** — The man lifted *me* up out of the water.

- (c) **Infinitive** —He desires *to leave* us to-morrow
 (d) **Gerund** —He disliked *sleeping* in the daytime
 (e) **Phrase** —No one knew *how to make a beginning*
 (f) **Clause** —We do not know *who has come*

147 Position of the Object—A noun denoting the object to a verb is usually placed *after* the verb to which it belongs. But when the object is a Relative or Interrogative pronoun, or when emphasis is thrown on the noun used as object, the object is placed not after, but before the verb.

Relative—The man *whom* I saw yesterday has come back to day.
Interrogative—*What* did you say? *Whom* were you looking for?
Emphasis—*Silver and gold* have I none, but *what* I have give I unto thee.—*New Testament*

148 The Double Object—Some Transitive verbs take two objects after them, one of which is usually the name of some *thing*, and the other of some *person* or *other animal*.

The *thing* named is called the **Direct object**, the *person* or *other animal* named is called the **Indirect**.

Note—Another way of distinguishing the two objects is by observing that the Indirect object always stands first. If the Indirect is placed after the Direct, it must be preceded by the preposition “*for*” or “*to*” —

He taught Rachel (*Direct*) to his sons (*Indirect*).

Point out the Direct and Indirect objects in the following —

Bring me that book. I forgave him his faults. We allowed him two ruples. We envy him his good luck. He taught me English. He refused me the loan of a book. I have asked you a question. You answered me nothing. They gave the boy a prize. They sent the boy a book. They lent me ten ruples. They fined him ten ruples. He owed me twelve ruples. The man told me the story. He showed me the way. He left them all his wealth. They played him a trick. He promised me his help. He saved me much grief. They sold him two horses. He did me a great kindness. He made me a handsome present. This man bears me a grudge. This affair caused him much trouble, and ruined him up enemies.

149 Factitive Verbs—Those Transitive verbs which take *one* object only, but still require some word or words to make the predication *complete*, are called **Factitive** (§ 25).

The additional word or words by which the predication is made complete are called the **Complement**.

The Complement may be in seven different forms — a noun, an adjective, a participle, a preposition with its object, an Infinitive verb, an adverb, or a noun-clause —

	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Complement</i>
<i>Noun</i>	—They	made	him	king
<i>Adjective</i>	—The judge	set	the prisoner	free
<i>Participle</i>	—They	found	her	still weeping
<i>Prep with</i>	} This plot	filled	us all	with terror
<i>Object</i>				
<i>Infinitive</i>	—I	like	a rascal	to be punished
<i>Adverb</i>	—They	found	the man	asleep
<i>Clause</i>	—We	have made	him	what he is

Note —The necessity of adding a Complement to certain verbs, in order to make the predication complete, can be seen at once from the example, "I like a rascal to be punished." If you merely say, "I like a rascal," you are saying the opposite to what you intended for you do not like a rascal, but a rascal to be punished, or the punishment of a rascal.

150 Omission of the Relative as Object —This occurs in two kinds of sentences—(a) When the verb is Transitive, (b) when the verb is Intransitive, but followed by a preposition.

This never occurs, however, when the Relative is used in a Continuative sense (see § 134)

- (a) The books I bought cost three rupees
 The house we occupied has fallen down.
 The man I engaged has now come.
 He was not careful about the air he breathed
- (b) The house we lived in has fallen down
 The chairs we sat on are ten in number
 We have at last got the thing we fought for
 I have brought the book you spoke about

Supply the Relative pronoun that is understood in each of the above sentences.

151 Transitive Verbs used Intransitively —There are two ways in which Transitives can become Intransitive —

(a) When the verb is used in such a general sense that no object or objects are thought of in using it —

Men eat to preserve life
 A new born child sees, but a kitten is born blind

(b) When the Reflexive pronoun is omitted —

He drew (himself) near me. Move (yourself) forward

§ 3 — INTRANSITIVE VERBS

152 Intransitive Verbs of Complete Predication.—

This is the name given to any Intransitive verb, which makes a complete sense by itself, and does not require any word or words to be added to it for this purpose —

Rivers flow Winds blow Horses run, or walk, or graze, or lie down Birds fly All animals sleep All animals die

153 Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication —

This is the name given to those Intransitive verbs, which do not make a complete sense by themselves, but require a Complement to supply what the verb left unsaid (§ 27)

The Complement to Intransitive verbs may be in the same kinds of form as the Complement to Factitive verbs —

	Subject	Verb	Complement
Noun	{ A horse	is	a four legged animal
	{ That beggar	turned out	a thief
Adjective	{ The man	has fallen	sick
	{ The dog	went	mad
Participle	{ The man	appears	pleased
	{ The stag	continued	running and jumping
Prep with	{ You coat	is	of many colours
Object	{ That book	proved	of no use
	{ The flower	seems	to be fading
Infinitive	{ You	appear	to have forgotten me
Adverb	{ The man	has fallen	asleep
Clause	{ The results	are	what we expected

Note 1 — When the Complement comes after an Intransitive verb, it is called a **Subjective Complement**, because it relates to the Subject

But when it comes after a Factitive verb in the *Active* voice, it is called an **Objective Complement**, because it relates to the Object

Note 2 — The Complement usually stands *after* its verb, but for the sake of emphasis it may be placed *before* it —

Strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it — New Testament

154 The Cognate Object — An Intransitive verb, though it is never followed by a noun denoting an *outside* or foreign object, may sometimes be followed by a noun *already implied more or less in the verb itself*

Thus we can say “he has lived a sad *life*,” where the noun *life* is implied already in the verb “lived,” and is in fact part of its meaning. Such objects are called **cognate** or “kindred,” because the noun denoting them is of kindred meaning to that of the verb itself

There are five different forms of Cognate object —

(a) *Cognate noun formed directly from the verb*

He laughed a hearty <i>laugh</i> .	He slept a sound <i>sleep</i>
He died a sad <i>death</i> .	He prayed an earnest <i>prayer</i>
He lived a long <i>life</i>	He sighed a deep <i>sigh</i>
He fought a good <i>fight</i>	He sang a fine <i>song</i>

(b) *Cognate noun of similar meaning*

He went a long <i>way</i>	He ran his own <i>course</i> .
He fought a good <i>battle</i>	It blows a brisk <i>gale</i> .
He struck a deadly <i>blow</i>	The bells ring a merry <i>peal</i>

(c) *A noun descriptive of the Cognate noun understood*

They shouted *applause* = they shouted a *shout* of applause
 He served his *apprenticeship* = he served his *service* as an apprentice
 He ran a great *risk* = he ran a *course* of great risk
 He played the *fool* = he played the *part* of a fool

(d) *An adjective qualifying the Cognate noun understood*

He shouted his loudest (shout) He ran his fastest (run or pace)
 He fought his best (fight) She sang her sweetest (song) He
 breathed his last (breath) He tried his hardest (trial or attempt)

(e) *Cognate noun expressed by "it"*

We must fight *it* (= the fight) out to the end
 We have no horse, so we must foot *it* (that is, go the distance on foot)
 Lord Angelo dukes *it* (= acts the part of a duke) well — *Shakespeare*

155 The Reflexive or Personal Object. — In older English, Intransitive verbs were often followed by a personal pronoun, either reflexive or used reflexively

A few of such verbs have survived to the present day —

His *thee* home Fare *thee* well Haste *thee* away They sat *them*
 down He over-ate *himself* To over sleep *oneself* Vaulting
 ambition which o'erleaps *itself* — *Shakespeare*

156 Intransitive Verbs in a causal sense. — If an Intransitive verb is used in the sense of causing a thing to be done, it becomes Transitive. Of these there are only a few examples in English —

<i>Intransitive</i>	<i>Causal</i>
The horse trotted out.	They trotted out the horse (= caused it to trot out)
Water boils	He boils the water (= causes it to boil)
The prisoners walk out.	He walks out the prisoners (= causes them to walk out)
A thorn ran into his hand	He ran a thorn (= caused it to run) into his hand.

Intransitive

The kite flew into the air
 The soldiers march out.
 Wheat grows in the field
 The boat floated
 He talks hoarsely

Causal,

He flew the kite (= caused it to fly)
 He marches out the soldiers
 He grows wheat in the field
 He floated the boat
 He talks himself hoarse, (= he makes himself hoarse by talking)

157 There are a few Intransitive verbs, in which the causal sense is indicated by *some change of vowel*

Intransitive

The tree falls
 The sun will rise at six
 The cow lies on the grass
 We must not sit here
 He dives into the water
 The enemy quails
 Water drips from the jug

Transitive or Causal

He falls the tree with an axe
 I cannot raise or rouse this boy
 The man lays down his coat
 He set the books in order
 He dips the sponge into the water
 He quells the enemy
 He drops water from the jug

In the same way *drench* = causes to drink, *soak* = causes to suck

158 **Prepositional Verbs** — An Intransitive verb can be made Transitive by having a preposition added to it

Such verbs may be considered to be real Transitives, provided they can be used in the Passive voice

We act on this rule (*Active*)
 This rule is acted on by us (*Passive*)

Note 1 — When the verb is in the Passive voice, the *on* cannot be parsed as a preposition, since there is no object to it. It must therefore be parsed as part of the verb itself

Note 2 — In prepositional verbs, the preposition is almost always placed after the verb, but "*with*" and "*over*" are often placed before it —

He withstood (stood against, endured) the attack.
 He was overcome (defeated) by the enemy
 The banks were overflowed (inundated) with water
 The field is overgrown (covered) with weeds
 The boundary has been overstepped (transgressed)

All these verbs, when they are used apart from the preposition, are Intransitive. It is the *preposition which makes them Transitive*

159 **Summary** — There are thus two ways in which an Intransitive verb can become Transitive—(1) when it is used in a causal sense (§ 156), (2) when it is connected with a preposition so closely that the verb, compounded with the preposition, can be made Passive (§ 158)

Similarly, there are two kinds of objects which can come after an Intransitive verb, although the verb itself continues to be Intransitive—(1) the Cognate object (§ 154), (2) the Reflexive or Personal object (§ 155)

§ 4 — ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES

160 A *Transitive* verb has two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive**

161 *Active voice* — Here the person or thing denoted by the Subject is said to *do something to something else* —

Rām *kills* a snake (Here the person denoted by the Subject, namely Rām, *does something to a snake*)

Passive voice — Here the person or thing is said to *suffer something from something else* —

A snake *is killed* by Rām (Here the thing denoted by the Subject, namely a snake, *suffers something from Rām*)

162 An *Intransitive* verb is not used in the **Passive** voice, unless it takes a **Cognate** object in the **Active** . —

I have fought the good fight (*Active*)

The good fight has been fought by me (*Passive*)

163 When a sentence is changed from the **Active** form to the **Passive**, the object to the **Active** verb becomes the subject to the **Passive** verb

Object to Active Verb
Brutes cannot make tools
Brutes do not possess hands

Subject to Passive Verb
Tools cannot be made by brutes
Hands are not possessed by brutes

164 **Retained Object** — Verbs which take *two* objects after them in the **Active** voice (§ 148) can still retain *one* in the **Passive** This object may be either—

(a) The **Indirect** object of the **Active** verb, as—

Active Verb
I forgave *him* his fault
We allowed *him* two rupees

Passive Verb
The fault was forgiven *him* by me
Two rupees were allowed *him* by us

or (b) the **Direct** object of the **Active** verb, as—

Active Verb
I forgave him his *fault*
We allowed him *two rupees*

Passive Verb
He was forgiven *his fault* by me
He was allowed *two rupees* by us

Note — It has now been shown that there are five different kinds of objects which can be used with verbs —

- (1) **Direct** (with **Trans.** verbs) — He taught *Euclid* (§ 143)
- (2) **Indirect** (with **Trans.** verbs) — He taught *his sons* *Euclid* (§ 148)
- (3) **Retained** (with **Pass.** verbs) — *His sons* were taught *Euclid* (§ 164)
- (4) **Cognate** (with **Intrans.** verbs) — The fever must run its *course* (§ 154)
- (5) **Reflexive** (with **Intrans.** verbs) — He sat *himself* down (§ 155)

165 Whenever a Factitive verb is changed from the Active voice to the Passive, the Objective Complement becomes a Subjective one.

Active voice	Complement to Object	Passive voice	Complement to Subject
They proclaimed him <i>king</i>		He was proclaimed <i>king</i> by them	
They did not crown him <i>king</i>		He was not crowned <i>king</i> by them	

166 Verbs Active in form, but Passive in sense — Transitive verbs are sometimes used in a Passive sense without being put into the Passive voice —

(a) Verbs with a Complement —

The stone *feels* rough (is rough when it is felt)
 Honey *tastes* sweet (is sweet when it is tasted)
 The milk *smells* sour (is sour when it is smelt)
 Your blame *counts* for nothing (is worth nothing when it is counted)
 Your composition *reads* well (sounds well when it is read)
 The house *does* not *let* (is not taken when it is meant to be let)
 The horse *does* not *sell* (is not taken when it is meant to be sold)
 That cloth will *wear* thin (will become thin when it is worn)

(b) Verbs without a Complement —

The house *is building* (= is in a state of being built)
 The trumpets *are sounding* (= are being sounded)
 The cannons *are firing* (= are being fired)
 The drums *are beating* (= are being beaten)
 The house *is finishing* (= is being finished)
 The book *is printing* (= is being printed)
 The cows *are milking* (= are being milked)

Note — A Gerund in the Active form can be similarly used in a Passive sense —

This house was three years in *building* (= being built)

§ 5 — MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, AND PERSON

167 Mood defined — A Mood denotes the *manner* or *manner* in which a statement is made by the verb —

168 Names of the Moods — There are four Moods, three Finite and one Infinitive —

(a) Three Finite moods —

1 Indicative 2 Imperative 3 Subjunctive

(b) The Infinitive mood

169 Characters of the Moods — In the Indicative mood we *assert* or *indicate* an action as a *fact* as, “he comes,” “he came,” “he will come”

In the Imperative mood we *command* or *advise* an action , as, "come thou," "come you," or "come "

In the Subjunctive mood we *suppose* an action , as, "if he come or should come "

The Infinitive mood is usually formed by putting "*to*" before the verb , as, "to come "

170 Number and Person —The number and person of a Finite verb depend upon the nature of its Subject

Number	{	If the subject is Singular, the verb must be Singular , as, Rain <i>is</i> falling
		If the subject is Plural, the verb must be Plural , as, Randrops <i>are</i> falling
Person	{	If the subject is in the First person, the verb must be in the First person , as, I love We come
		If the subject is in the Second person, the verb must be in the Second person , as, Thou lovest You come
		If the subject is in the Third person, the verb must be in the Third person , as, He loves The teacher <i>has</i> come

Hence arises the following rule —*A Finite verb must be in the same number and person as its Subject*

Note —All nouns and noun equivalents take verbs in the Third person All pronouns excepting the First Personal and the Second Personal take verbs in the Third person

Point out the number and person of every verb in the following sentences —

The cow *is* a quiet and useful animal Oxen *draw* the plough. I *see* four men coming They *see* the sun rising We *see* the hills in the distance Thou *art* the wisest man in the room. The horse *carries* its rider Four men *carry* the palanquin That the horse *is* lame *is seen* by all of us How to do this was not understood

171 Tense defined —Tense denotes the *time* of an action

The verb may tell you —

(1) That an action *is done* at the Present time , as, "he sees a star "

(2) That an action *was done* in the Past time , as, "he saw a star "

(3) That an action *will be done* in the Future time , as, "he will see a star "

A verb, then, has three main times or tenses, viz the Present, the Past, and the Future.

172 To each tense there are four different forms —

I **Indefinite**, which denotes Present, Past, or Future time in its simplest form, as, "I love," "I loved," "I shall love"

II **Continuous**, which denotes that the event (in Present, Past, or Future time) is still *continuing* or not yet completed, as, "I am loving," "I was loving," "I shall be loving"

Note — This tense is sometimes called the **Imperfect**, because it denotes an event which is imperfect or not completed

III **Perfect**, which denotes that the event (in Present, Past, or Future time) is in a completed or *perfect* state, as, "I have loved," "I had loved," "I shall have loved"

IV **Perfect Continuous**, which combines the meanings of the two preceding forms, as, "I have been loving," "I had been loving," "I shall have been loving"

§ 6 — INDICATIVE MOOD

Forms of the Tenses, Indicative Mood

173 The three Tenses and twelve forms of a verb in the Indicative Mood are shown in the following table —

I — *Active Voice*

Form	Present Tense	Past Tense	Future Tense
1 <i>Indefinite</i>	I love	I loved	I shall love
2 <i>Continuous</i>	I am loving	I was loving	I shall be loving
3 <i>Perfect</i>	I have loved	I had loved	I shall have loved
4 <i>Perfect Continuous</i>	I have been loving	I had been loving	I shall have been loving

II — *Passive Voice*

Form	Present Tense.	Past Tense	Future Tense
1 <i>Indefinite</i>	I am loved	I was loved	I shall be loved
2 <i>Continuous</i>	I am being loved	I was being loved	(<i>Wanting</i>)
3 <i>Perfect</i>	I have been loved	I had been loved	I shall have been loved
4 <i>Perfect Continuous</i>	(<i>Wanting</i>)	(<i>Wanting</i>)	(<i>Wanting</i>)

174 The Present, Past, and Future tenses (Indefinite) are declined in the following form, for all numbers and persons —

I — *Active Voice**Present Tense*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I love	We loved
2nd "	Thou lovest	Ye or you loved
3rd "	He loves or loveth	They loved

Past Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I loved	We loved
2nd "	Thou lovedst	Ye or you loved
3rd "	He loved	They loved

Future Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I shall love	We shall love
2nd "	Thou wilt love	Ye or you will love
3rd "	He will love	They will love

N B —(1) The Singular forms of the Second person (thou lovest, thou lovedst, thou wilt love) are now seldom used except in poetry. They have been superseded by the Plural forms (you love, you loved, and you will love), which, though Plural in fact, are used in a Singular sense as well as in a Plural sense, as, "Have you come, my son?" "Have you," being addressed to "son," is used in a Singular sense, and may be parsed as Singular.

(2) The form "he loveth" is now seldom used except in poetry.

II — *Passive Voice**Present Tense*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I am loved	We are loved
2nd "	Thou art loved	Ye or you are loved
3rd "	He is loved	They are loved

Past Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I was loved	We were loved
2nd "	Thou wast loved	Ye or you were loved
3rd "	He was loved	They were loved

Future Tense.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I shall be loved	We shall be loved
2nd "	Thou wilt be loved	Ye or you will be loved
3rd "	He will be loved	They will be loved

175 Do and Did.—The Present Indefinite in the Active voice can also be formed by "*do*," and the Past by "*did*."

Present Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I do love	We do love
2nd "	Thou dost love	Ye or you do love
3rd "	He does love	They do love

Past Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I did love	We did love
2nd "	Thou didst love	Ye or you did love
3rd "	He did love	They did love

This form is used for three different purposes —

(a) For the sake of emphasis, as, "I *do* love," "I *did* love"

(b) For the sake of bringing in the word "not", as, "I *do not* love" (which is better than saying "I love not"), "I *did not* love" (which is better than saying "I loved not")

(c) For the sake of asking a question, as, "Does he love?" "Why *did* he love?" "Did he not love?"

176 Whenever *do* or *did* is used for asking a question, the noun or pronoun used as subject to the verb is placed after the *do* or *did*, and not before it, as—

Do I love? Did he not love? (*Question*)

But whenever *do* or *did* is used for the sake of emphasis or with "not," the noun or pronoun stands before the verb, and not after it, as—

I *do not* love (*Negative*) : I *do* love (*Emphasis*)

Correct the following —

Loved he not? Came he? He not saw this book. He reads not his book with care. They not slept long last night. They broke not the slate, but he broke it. You not read your book well. This letter came for me to day or yesterday? It came not to day, but yesterday. You not yet finished reading the letter?

177 *Has come, is come* — These two forms have not the same meaning, and do not belong to the same tense

(a) In the form "I *have come*," the *time of the action* is prominent. Since this is the Present Perfect tense, it denotes *present time*. By what time was the coming completed? By the present time. The word "come" is here *part of a tense*

(b) In the form "I *am come*," the *state of the agent* is

prominent, and not the time of the action. In what state is the agent? The state of having come. In the form "I am come" the word "come" is *not* part of a tense, but is the *Past Participle* used as Subjective Complement to the verb "am."

"The flower *is* faded." In what state is the flower? Faded.

No prominence is given to *the time of the fading*.

"The flower *has* faded." By what time was the fading of the flower completed? By the present time.¹

178 Shall and will—These (as the student has learnt already) are the two Auxiliary verbs by means of which the Future tense is formed in both voices.

One of the puzzles in English is to know when to use "*shall*" and when to use "*will*."

With a view to clearing up this matter it should be understood that there are *three* senses in which the future tense can be used—

- (a) To express *merely future time*, and nothing more
- (b) To combine future time with an implied *command*
- (c) To combine future time with an implied *intention*

(a) *Merely future time*

When nothing but future time is intended—*mere futurity*, with out any idea of command or intention being mixed up with it—*shall* must be used for the *First* person, and *will* for the *Second* and *Third* persons, as below—

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	I <i>shall</i> go	We <i>shall</i> go
2nd „	Thou <i>will</i> go	You <i>will</i> go
3rd „	He <i>will</i> go	They <i>will</i> go

(b) *An Implied Command, Promise, or Threat*

Whenever we desire to express, not merely future time, but some *command*, or *promise*, or *threat* in addition, *shall* is put for *will* in the *Second* and *Third* persons, as—

You *shall* be hanged (by some one's command)
 You *shall* receive your prize to-morrow (promise)
 If you do this, you *shall* be hanged (threat)

(c) *An Implied Intention*

When the speaker wishes to express some intention of his own, then *will* is put for *shall* in the *First* person—

I *will* call on you to day, and I *shall* then say good-bye

Here the first verb denotes the *intention* of calling, while the second one denotes *merely future time*.

¹ It is therefore incorrect to say (as is commonly done) that "has come" and "is come" are equivalent, and that the use of "is" and "was" for "has" and "had" is limited to verbs of motion.

§ 7.—IMPERATIVE MOOD

179 The Imperative mood is used only in the Present tense, and only in the Second person —

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Speak, or speak thou	Speak, or speak you, or speak ye

180 To express the *First* and *Third* persons of this mood, we use the Auxiliary verb *let*, which is itself the Second person (Singular or Plural) of the Imperative mood of the verb "to let", as—

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	Let me speak	Let us speak
3rd "	Let him speak	Let them speak

N B—Here *speak* is in the Infinitive mood with the "to" left out. In older English, however, and sometimes even to this day in poetry, but very rarely in prose, the First and Third persons of the Imperative can be expressed without the help of "let", as—

Every soldier *kill* (= is ordered to kill) his prisoners — *Shakespeare*
Thither our path lies, *would we* (= let us wind) up the height —
R. Browning

The Third person of the Imperative has survived in the common phrase *suffice it*, which means, "let it suffice" —

Suffice it to say that all the prisoners were acquitted

181 The chief uses of the Imperative mood are to express (a) *command*, (b) *precept*, or (c) *entreaty* —

(a) *Command* —

Speak, —or I *hrt.*
Awake, arise, or be for ever fallen — *Milton*

(b) *Precept or Invitation* —

Go to the ant, thou sluggard, consider her ways and be wise — *Old Testament*

(c) *Entreaty or Prayer* —

Give us this day our daily bread, and forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us — *Lord's Prayer*

182 When the verb is negative, that is, prohibitive, the Imperative is now formed by the Auxiliary "do"

<i>Older Form</i>	<i>Present Form</i>
Fear not	Do not fear
Taste not that food.	Do not taste that food

Sometimes, even when the verb is affirmative, the Imperative is formed by "do," in order to give more emphasis to an entreaty. This, however, occurs only in colloquial English

Do leave off making that noise
Do help me to lift this box

183 The Imperative mood is sometimes used to express a **Supposition** —

Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves
(= If you take care of the pence, the pounds will, etc)

Resist the devil, and he will flee from you (= If you resist the devil, he will flee, etc)

184 Sometimes, but very rarely, the Imperative mood is used **absolutely**, see § 28 (c)

A large number of men, *say* a hundred, are working on the railroad
Behold, thus dreamer cometh — *Old Testament*

§ 8 — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

185 The **Subjunctive** mood is so called, because it is generally *subjoined* to some other sentence, and seldom stands alone

186 The Present, Past, and Future tenses (Indefinite) are declined as follows in the Active voice —

<i>Present Tense</i>		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I love	If we love
2nd "	If thou love (<i>not lovest</i>)	If you love
3rd "	If he love (<i>not loves</i>)	If they love
<i>Past Tense</i>		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I loved	If we loved
2nd "	If thou lovedst	If you loved
3rd "	If he loved	If they loved
<i>Future Tense</i>		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I should love	If we should love
2nd "	If thou shouldst love	If ye or you should love
3rd "	If he should love	If they should love

But the forms *thou love*, *he love* are getting more and more out of use, and the forms of the Indicative mood are now generally used in their place, as, "if thou lovest" (instead of "*if thou lov*"), "if he loves" (instead of "*if he love*")

187 The verb "*to be*" has retained the Subjunctive forms more completely than any other verb —

<i>Present Tense.</i>		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I be	If we be
2nd "	If thou be	If ye or you be
3rd "	If he be	If they be

Past Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I were	If we were
2nd "	If thou wert	If ye or you were
3rd "	If he were	If they were

Future Tense

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st Person	If I should be	If we should be
2nd "	If thou shouldst be	If ye or you should be
3rd "	If he should be	If they should be

The forms of the Past and Future tenses are still in common use. The forms of the Present tense are not so common, and those of the Indicative mood are sometimes used instead of them.

188 The forms for the Continuous and Perfect tenses in the Active voice are shown below —

	<i>Continuous</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
Present	If I be loving	If I have loved
Past	If I were loving	If I had loved
Future	If I should be loving	If I should have loved

189 In the Passive voice the Indefinite and the Perfect are the only tenses of the Subjunctive mood which are in ordinary use —

	<i>Indefinite</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
Present	If I be loved	If I have been loved
Past	If I were loved	If I had been loved
Future	If I should be loved	If I should have been loved

The Uses of the Subjunctive Mood

190 The Indicative mood expresses a *fact*, the Imperative mood expresses an *order*, the Subjunctive mood expresses a *purpose*, a *wish*, a *condition*, or a *doubt*

(1) A Purpose

In this case the verb in the Subjunctive mood is preceded by the conjunction *that* or *lest* (*lest*=*that not*). The Auxiliary verbs "*may*" and "*might*" are used after "*that*," and "*should*" after "*lest*."

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive, Purpose</i>
Present	I give you a prize,	that you <i>may</i> work well again
or	I shall keep your book,	{ lest you <i>should</i> lose it
Future	I gave you a prize,	{ that you <i>may</i> not lose it
		{ that you <i>might</i> work well again.
Past	I kept your book,	{ lest you <i>should</i> lose it.
		{ that you <i>might</i> not lose it.

(2) *A Wish or Order*

Thy kingdom *come* = *may* thy kingdom *come*.
 I wish that he *were* as clever as his sister
 God *save* the queen Long *live* the king
 Far *be* it from me to say anything false
 My sentence is that the prisoner *be* hanged.

(3) *Condition and its Consequence*

When the verb expresses a *condition*, it is generally preceded by the conjunction "*if*." The verb expressing the *consequence* is expressed by the auxiliary "*would*."

<i>First Sentence</i>	<i>Condition</i>	<i>Second Sentence</i>	<i>Consequence</i>
<i>Present</i>	{ If he <i>should meet</i> me, or If I <i>were</i> in his place,	he <i>would know</i> me at once	
<i>Future</i>		I <i>would pay</i> the rupee	
<i>Past</i>	{ If he <i>had met</i> me,	he <i>would have known</i> me	
	{ If I <i>had been</i> in his place,	I <i>would have paid</i> the rupee	

Sometimes the *if* is left out. In this case the *should*, or the *had*, or the *were* must be placed before its subject —

<i>Present</i>	{ <i>Should</i> he <i>meet</i> me, or <i>Were</i> I in his place,	he <i>would know</i> me at once.	
<i>Future</i>		I <i>would pay</i> the rupee	
<i>Past</i>	{ <i>Had</i> he <i>met</i> me,	he <i>would have known</i> me	
	{ <i>Had</i> I <i>been</i> in his place,	I <i>would have paid</i> the rupee	

Sometimes the Conditional sentence is left out or understood, and only the Consequent sentence is expressed —

He *would* never agree to that ('if you asked him,' understood)
 He *would* be very thankful to you for this kindness ('if you were to do him the kindness,' understood)

(4) *A Doubt or Supposition*

A verb in the Subjunctive mood, preceded by some conjunction, implies some *doubt* or *supposition*, whereas the Indicative mood expresses a *fact*

Murder, *though* it *have* no tongue, will speak
 If he *but speak*, I will shoot him
Whether he *allow* me or not, I will go to him
Provided he *confess* his fault, I will pardon him
Unless he *consent*, we can do nothing

Note — There is, however, a growing tendency in English to substitute the Indicative mood for the Subjunctive, even when the sentence is intended to convey a doubt or supposition

§ 9 — INFINITIVE MOOD

191 The Infinitive mood is not combined with any Subject, and therefore it has *no number* and *no person*.

This mood names the action, without naming the doer

The student will remember that verbs in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative moods are called *Finite*, because they are limited by the number and person of their subject (§ 16 and § 170)

What we have now to consider are those parts of a verb which are not Finite, viz the Infinitive, the Participle, and the Gerund (§ 17)

192 The forms of the Infinitive mood are four in number, and all are in the Present tense —

Form.	Active Voice	Passive Voice
<i>Indefinite</i>	To send	To be sent
<i>Continuous</i>	To be sending	(<i>Wanting</i>)
<i>Perfect</i>	To have sent	To have been sent
<i>Perfect Continuous</i>	To have been sending	(<i>Wanting</i>)

There is no Past and no Future tense in the Infinitive mood

The Future tense of the Infinitive can be expressed only by some phrase, as, "to be about to send", "to be on the point of sending", "to be going to send",

193 Omission of "to" The word "to" is usually the sign of the Infinitive mood But it is sometimes omitted

(a) The "to" is left out after the following Principal verbs —

Please do this = please to do this
I hear thee speak (to speak) of a better land
I saw him take (to take) aim with his bow
You need not send (to send) those books to me
I feel the cold air strike (to strike) against my face
He dared not say (to say) this in open day
He made me come (to come) and sit (to sit) beside him
I let him go (to go) back to his own house
They bade me tell (to tell) them the right road
We watched him go (to go) and come (to come)
We beheld the fish rise (to rise)
I have known him laugh (to laugh) for nothing

Note —The "to" is not always omitted after "dare," when this verb is Affirmative as, "he dares to go"

(b) The "to" is also left out after all the Auxiliary verbs —

I shall go	equals	I intend to go
I should go	"	I ought to go
I can or could go	"	I am or was able to go
I must go	"	I am compelled to go
I may or might go	"	I am or was permitted to go
I will or would go	"	I am or was willing to go
I do or did go	"	I go or I went

(c) The "to" can be left out after the adjective "better" —

Better be with the dead —*Shakspeare*,

(= To be with the dead (would be) better)

Better dwell in the midst of alarms —*Cowper*.

(d) The "to" is also left out after the verb "had," in such phrases as "had better," "had rather," "had sooner," "had as soon as"

You had better not *remain* here
I had rather *take* this than that
I had sooner *run* than *walk*
I had as soon *run* as *walk*

Note — "Had" is here used in a Subjunctive sense = would have
"I had better not remain here," means "I would have (it) better not to remain here", that is, "It would be better for me not to remain"

(e) The "to" is left out after the conjunction "than" —

He is better able *to walk* than *run* = (than he is able *to run*)

(f) The "to" is left out after the preposition "but," provided it is preceded by the verb "do" —

He *did* nothing but *laugh* (= to laugh)

The two kinds of Infinitive

194 There are two kinds of Infinitives, the forms of which are identical, though their uses are so different as to represent different parts of speech —

I The Noun-Infinitive, sometimes called the Simple

II The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive

Note — In Old English the Simple Infinitive was a *Noun* and had no such word as "to" before it, while a *Gerund* in the sense of purpose was expressed by the preposition "to," followed by an inflected case of the Noun Infinitive. This accounts for the names "Noun Infinitive" and "Gerundial Infinitive." But the "to" is now usually given to the Noun Infinitive also

195 The Noun-Infinitive may be used—(a) as Subject to a verb, (b) as Object to a verb, (c) as Complement to a verb, (d) as Object to certain prepositions, or (e) as a form of exclamation —

(a) Subject to a verb —

To err (= error) is human, *to forgive* (= forgiveness) is divine

(b) Object to a verb —

They expect *to succeed* (= success)

A good man does not fear *to die* (= death)

(c) Complement to a verb —

He appears *to be* a wise man (*Intransitive*)

They ordered him *to be punished* (*Transitive*.)

I can go, I should go, I may go, I might go, etc (*Auxiliary*)

(d) Object to the prepositions named below —

He was *about* (=near) *to die* (=death)

They came *for to see* (=for seeing) the sport.

They desired nothing *except or but to succeed* (=success)

He did nothing else *than laugh*.

Note —Such a phrase as “for to see” is now obsolete, though it occurs in the New Testament. The “for” is now always omitted, and the Noun-Infinitive then becomes the Gerundial.

(e) As a form of exclamation —

Foolish fellow! *to suppose* that he could be pardoned!

Note —In this construction the Infinitive is absolute (§ 28, b)

196 The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive can be used (a) to qualify a verb, (b) to qualify a noun, (c) to qualify an adjective, (d) to introduce a parenthesis —

(a) To qualify a verb, in the sense of *purpose, cause, or result* —

He came *to see* (for the purpose of seeing) the sport (*Purpose*)

He wept *to see* (for cause of seeing) that sight (*Cause*)

He worked hard only *to be* (with the result of being) defeated at last (*Result*)

(b) To qualify a noun, in the sense of *purpose*. The Infinitive may be either attributive or predicative (§ 102)

{ A house *to let* (*Attributive use*)

{ This house *is to let* (*Predicative use* Complement to Verb)

{ Give him a chair *to sit on* (*Attributive use*)

{ Your condition *is to be pitied* (*Predicative use*)

Note —Whenever the verb is Intransitive, as “*sit*,” it must always be followed by a preposition. We cannot say “a chair *to sit*.”

(c) To qualify an adjective, in the sense of *respect or purpose* —

Quick *to hear* and slow *to speak*

“Quick” in what respect or for what purpose? To hear. “Slow” in what respect or for what purpose? To speak.

(d) To introduce a **Parenthesis**, that is, a phrase thrust into the middle of a sentence by way of comment on something said —

I am,—*to tell* you the truth,—quite tired of this work.

They were thunderstruck,—*so to speak*,—on hearing this news.

Note —In (a) and (c) the Gerundial Infinitive does the work of an adverb. In (b) it does the work of an adjective. In (d) it is absolute; see § 28 (b).

§ 10 — PARTICIPLES.

197 The forms of the different Participles are as shown below —

<i>Transitive Verbs</i>		
	<i>Active Voice</i>	<i>Passive Voice</i>
<i>Present or Continuous</i>	Loving	Being loved
<i>Past</i>	(<i>Wanting</i>)	Loved
<i>Perfect</i>	Having loved	Having been loved
<i>Intransitive Verbs</i>		
<i>Present or Continuous</i>	Fading	
<i>Past</i>	Faded	
<i>Perfect</i>	Having faded	

198 **Double Character of Participles** — It was shown in § 18 that a Participle is a double part of speech—a verb and an adjective combined. We have now, therefore, to describe it in each of these characters —

- (1) As part of a Finite verb
- (2) As an Adjective qualifying some noun

I *As part of a Finite verb*

199 The student will have seen already that many of the tenses of English verbs are formed with the help of the Past or Present Participle

Thus all the tenses of the Passive voice are formed out of the verb "to be" followed by the Past Participle, as, "I am loved," "I was loved," "I shall be loved."

Again, all the Continuous tenses in the Active voice are formed out of the verb "to be," followed by the Present Participle, as, "I am loving," "I was loving," "I shall be loving."

Again, the Perfect tenses in the Active voice are formed out of the verb "to have," followed by the Past Participle, as, "I have loved," "I had loved," "I shall have loved."

II *As an Adjective*

200 A Participle, when it is an adjective, belongs to the class of Descriptive (§ 90). Like other such adjectives, it can (a) qualify a noun, (b) be qualified by an adverb, (c) admit of degrees of comparison, (d) be used as a noun —

- (a) *Being tired of work, the men went home*
- (b) *The man was picked up in an almost dying state*
- (c) *This flower is more faded than that*
- (d) { *I am much pleased with my surroundings*
None are so soon forgotten as the dead.

201 Since a Participle is a verb as well as an adjective, it can take an Object, which may be of five kinds (§ 164) —

Having shot *the tiger*, he returned home (*Direct Obj*)

He is here, teaching *his sons* Greek (*Indirect Obj*)

Having been taught *Greek*, he was a good scholar (*Retained Obj*)

He was fighting a hard *battle* (*Cognate Obj*)

Having sat *himself* down, he began to eat (*Reflexive Obj*)

202 Past Participle — The use of such participles depends upon whether the verb is Transitive or Intransitive —

(a) If the verb is *Transitive*, the Past Participle is never used in the Active voice, but only in the Passive —

This much *praised* man proved to be a rogue

Gold is a metal *dig* out of the earth

(b) If the verb is *Intransitive*, the Past Participle is not used at all in most verbs. But whenever it is used—(a matter depending entirely on custom), it must *precede* its noun, and not follow it —

The *faded* rose A *failed* candidate A *retired* officer The
returned soldier The *dead* horse The *fallen* city The
risen sun A *withered* flower A *departed* guest

If the speaker or writer desires to place the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb *after* its noun, he must insert the Relative pronoun and change the participle into a Finite verb, as—

The horse of Mr A, *proceeded* to England, is for sale (This is wrong. The sentence should be—"The horse of Mr A, *who has proceeded* to England, is for sale.")

Correct the following —

There is now no scent in the rose *faded* this morning

Lamps are lighted from oil *ruen* out of the earth

This was the sword of the soldier *returned* to his country

I am sorry for the candidate *failed* in the last examination

But the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb is sometimes put *after* its noun in poetry

A Daniel *come* to judgment. — *Shakespeare*

Mourn for the brave—the brave that are no more,

All *sunk* beneath the wave, hard by their native shore — *Crowper*

Even in prose the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb is sometimes, but very rarely, placed after its noun —

In times *past* = in times which have passed

He is a man *descended* from a high family

These are very exceptional cases and should not be imitated

203 The Past Participle of verbs is sometimes used to express some *permanent habit, state, or character* —

A well *read* man = a man who has read much and read well

A well *behaved* man = a man whose habitual behaviour is good

An out *spoken* man = a man who habitually speaks out his mind

A *retired* man = a man who makes a habit of retiring from public notice, a man of a retiring disposition

From this use of the Past Participle has arisen a large class of Adjectives, which are formed from nouns by adding "*ed*" to the end of the noun

An evil-*heart ed* man A hot *head ed* man A *land ed* proprietor

A long *tail ed* ape A smooth-*skin ned* cat His *saint ed*

mother A red-*colour ed* rose A rough *face d* youth A

hood *ed* snake A long *leg-ged* spider A purple *crest ed* helmet

A many *page d* book A long *arm ed* monkey A thickly-

wood ed hill A noble *mind ed* man A warm-*blood ed* animal

204 Meanings implied in Participles — Participles must be parsed as Verbal Adjectives qualifying their nouns. But sometimes there is a further *meaning* implied in them, which can be more fully expressed by changing the participial phrase into a clause

The implied meanings are (a) Time, (b) Cause or Reason, (c) Condition, (d) Concession or Contrast

(a) *Time*

Walking along the street (= *while* I was walking) I met a friend

Having met my friend (= *after* I had met my friend), I went back with him to his house

(b) *Cause or Reason*

Being tired with the toil (= *because* he was tired), he sat down to rest

The letter, *having been addressed* (= *because* it was addressed) to the wrong house, never reached me

(c) *Condition*

Turning to the left (= *if* you turn to the left), you will find the place you want

(d) *Concession or Contrast*

Admitting (= *though* I admit) what you say, I still think that you made a mistake

He *being* dead (= *although* he is dead), yet speaketh — *New Testament*

§ 11 —GERUNDS AND VERBAL NOUNS

205 A Gerund has four forms—two for the Active voice and two for the Passive

	Active	Passive
Present or Continuous	Loving	Being loved
Perfect	Having loved	Having been loved

206 The forms of a Gerund, then, are the same as those of a Participle, and both are parts of a verb. What, then, is the difference? A Gerund is a kind of *Noun*, but a Participle is a kind of *Adjective*. So in spite of the resemblance in form, they are quite distinct in nature¹

The reason of the resemblance in form is a matter of history. In Old English the forms of the Verbal Adjective and Verbal Noun were quite distinct.

Participle	<i>Writende</i>
Gerund	<i>Writung</i>

In later English the two suffixes, *ende* and *ung*, both gradually took the form of *ing*, and hence we have now only one form instead of two for the two parts of speech.

Participle	<i>Writing</i>
Gerund	<i>Writing</i>

207 Double character of Gerunds—It was shown in § 18 that a Gerund is a double part of speech—a noun and verb combined. We have now therefore to describe it in each of these characters—

- (1) As a kind of Noun
- (2) As part of a Verb

Since a Gerund is a *kind of noun*, it must be the subject to some verb (Transitive or Intransitive), or the object to some verb (Transitive), or the complement to some verb (Intransitive or Factitive), or the object to some preposition, as—

Subject to a verb—*Sleeping* is necessary to life.

Object to a verb—He enjoyed *sleeping* in the open air.

Complement to a verb—His almost constant habit was *sleeping*.

Object to a preposition—He was fond of *sleeping*.

In the following sentences say whether the words noted below are Gerunds or Participles—

¹ In some grammars the Gerund is called a Participial noun. This name should be avoided, since a Noun is one part of speech and a Participle is another.

The rice will grow well in the *coming* rains. We heard of his *coming* back to-day Did you hear of his *having won* a prize? The boy *having won* a prize was much praised. She was fond of *being admired* *Being admired* by all she was much pleased. The cow *having been killed* by a tiger yesterday could not be found. The boy was ashamed of *having been beaten* in class by his sister. I am tired of *doing* this work. *Doing* this work every day you will soon improve. *Spelling* is more difficult than *writing*. He was in the habit of *boasting* of his cleverness. A *boasting* man is much despised.

208 A Gerund an Abstract Noun—It has been explained already in § 44, that a Gerund is a kind of Abstract noun, and has the same meaning as an Abstract noun proper or as a Noun-Infinitive —

Gerund —*Sleeping* is necessary to health

Noun Infin - *To sleep* is necessary to health

Abstract Noun —*Sleep* is necessary to health

209 Gerund with an Object—Since a Gerund is a part of some verb, it can take an object after it, which may be of any of the five kinds shown in § 164, *Note*.

Direct (with Trans) —He is clever at teaching *Euclid*

Indirect (with Trans) —He is clever at teaching *his sons Euclid*

Retained (with Passive) —He is pleased at being taught *Euclid*

Cognate (with Intrans) —He is proud of having fought a good *fight*

Reflexive (with Intrans) —He is in the habit of oversleeping *himself*

210 Gerund with Possessives—A noun or pronoun, provided it denotes a person or other animal, must be in the Possessive case, when it is placed before a Gerund —

I was pleased at *his coming* to day (It would be wrong to say,

"I was pleased at *him coming* to day")

He was displeased at the *barber's not coming* (It would be wrong to say, "He was displeased at the *barber not coming*")

It is a common mistake of Indian students to say —"I ask *you* favour of doing this" This is not in correct idiom. The sentence should be—"I ask the favour of *your doing* this"

Note 1—The following use of a Gerund preceded by a Possessive noun or pronoun sometimes occurs —

This was a work of *my doing* (=done by me)

Note 2—Sometimes the letter "a" (an abbreviation of "on") is placed before a Gerund in a prepositional sense —

This set him *a* (=on) *thinking*

Note 3—The Possessive "*its*," even though its antecedent denotes an inanimate object, should always be used with a Gerund. The use of "*it*" would be wrong

The *wall fell*, I am vexed at *its having fallen*.

211 Gerundive use of Participles — Such participles are not Gerunds, but participles used in a Gerundive sense —

I depend on the wall *being built* immediately

Now if "wall" could be put into the Possessive case, we should say, "I depend on the *wall's* being built immediately" But as this cannot be done (see § 64), we are compelled to say—

I depend on the wall *being built* immediately

How are we to parse "being built" in such a connection? It is not enough to say that it is an ordinary participle, for it does more than qualify the noun "wall" The sentence does not mean "I depend on the wall," but "I depend on the wall *being built* immediately," that is, "on the immediate *building* of the wall" There is therefore a gerund or gerundial noun implied in the participle "being built," and hence such participles can be called Gerundive Participles

Note 1 — A Gerundive Participle denotes *future* time, — something still to be done It does not denote either present time or past time —

I depend on the fact or promise that the wall *will be built* immediately

Note 2 — The Gerundive Participle can also be used with Intransitive verbs, and with these too it denotes *future* time

(a) What do you think of my horse *running* to day?

That is, "What do you think of the plan or proposal that my horse *shall run* to day?"

(b) What do you think of my horse *running* to day?

That is, "What do you think of the style or pace at which my horse *run* to day?" Here "running" is not a participle used gerundively but a real gerund preceded by a Possessive noun Observe too that this gerund denotes *past* time ("ran"), while the gerundive participle in (a) denotes *future* time ("shall or will run")

212 A Verbal noun proper is not the same thing as a Gerund proper

A Verbal noun is preceded by the Definite article and followed by the preposition "of", whereas a Gerund has no article preceding it and no preposition following it —

(a) I am engaged in *the* reading *of* a book (*Verbal Noun*)

(b) I am engaged in reading a book (*Gerund*)

In (a) the word "reading" is a *single* part of speech, — a noun and nothing more In (b) "reading" is a *double* part of speech, — a noun and verb combined

Parsing Models for Verbs.

(1) *The horse was taken to the stable*

Was taken—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past tense (indefinite), indicative mood, passive voice of the verb "to take," agreeing with its nominative case or subject "horse "

(2) *The man and his friend walked into the field*

Walked—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past tense (indefinite), indicative mood of the verb "to walk," agreeing with its two subjects "man" and "friend "

(3) *I have long been absent from home*

Have been—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, present perfect tense, indicative mood of the verb "to be," agreeing with its subject "I "

(4) *I shall go home, but you will stop here*

Shall go—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, future tense, indicative mood of the verb "to go," agreeing with its subject "I "

Will stop—Verb intransitive, second person, singular number, future tense, indicative mood of the verb "to stop," agreeing with its subject "you "

(5) *Take a seat on this bench*

Take—Verb transitive, second person, singular number, imperative mood of the verb "to take," agreeing with its subject "thou" or "you" understood

(6) *Were I in his place, I would pay the rupee*

Were—Verb intransitive, first person, singular number, past tense, subjunctive mood of the verb "to be," agreeing with its subject "I "

Would pay—Verb transitive, first person, singular number, past tense, subjunctive mood of the verb "to pay," agreeing with its subject "I "

(7) *You need not send those books to me*

Send—Verb transitive, infinitive mood

(8) *Having found his friend he was much pleased*

Having found—Verb transitive, perfect participle of the verb "to find," qualifying the pronoun "he "

(9) *He was much pleased at having found his friend*

Having found—Verb transitive, perfect form of gerund of the verb "to find," object to the preposition "at."

§ 12 — THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

213 To "conjugate" a verb is to show its chief parts.

Note — The term "conjugation" is sometimes used in a wider sense to denote the formation of *all* the inflections and combinations that are employed to indicate Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person

The chief parts of a verb in English are the Present tense, the Past tense, and the Past Participle, all the other parts, Active and Passive, can be easily formed from these three

214 There are two main kinds of Conjugation —

I The *Strong* or older kind (now much less numerous than it once was), which forms the past tense by changing the inside vowel of the present, as, *sing, sang, sung*

II The *Weak* or new kind (now much more numerous than the Strong), which forms the past tense by adding *ed* or *t* to the present without any change of the inside vowel, as, *love, loved*

Besides these there is a third kind, which may be called *Mixed*, being partly Weak and partly Strong¹

1 The Strong or Older Conjugation

215 The Strong verbs are conjugated by internal changes, the nature of which is too various to be reduced to a single rule

The most general process consists in (1) changing the inside vowel for the Past tense, and (2) adding *en, n, or ne* for the Past Participle

216 Formerly *all* verbs of the Strong Conjugation formed the Past Participle by adding *en, n, ne*, but many of them have now laid aside this suffix

Hence the Strong verbs, as they now exist, fall into two main groups —

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (1) Those which have retained | } the <i>en, n, or ne</i> in the |
| (2) Those which have lost | |
| | Past Participle |

¹ Some grammarians distinguish verbs into Regular and Irregular. The Regular answer to the Weak, and the Irregular to the Strong. But these names are misleading, for in point of fact the Strong conjugation is the older of the two, and therefore it cannot be an "irregular" deviation from the Weak

The Strong conjugation contains no verbs but such as are of the primary Anglo Saxon stock. All the verbs belonging to this conjugation (except a few that have had a prefix added to them) are monosyllabic.

Group I

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Arise	arose	arisen
Bear (produce)	bore	born
Bear (carry)	bore	borne
Begot	begot, begat	begotten, begot
Bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Bind	bound	*bounden, bound
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Chide	chid	chidden, chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave (split)	cleve, cleft	*cloven, cleft
Crow	crew, crowed	crowed, rarely crown
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	*drunken, drunk
Drive	drove, drove	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore	forborne
Forget	forgot	forgotten
For sake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get	got	*gotten, get
Give	gave	given
Go, wend	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Know	knew	known
Lie	lay	lain
Ride	rode	ridden
Rise	rose	risen
See	saw	seen
Shake	shook	shaken
Shrink	shrank	*shrunken, shrunk
Sink	sank	*sunk, sunk
Slay	slaw	slain
Slide	slid	slidden, slid
Smite	smote	smitten, smit
Speak	spoke	*spoken
Steal	stole	stolen
Stride	strode	stridden
Strike	struck	*stricken, struck
Strive	strove	striven
Swear	swore	sworn
Take	took	taken
Tear	tore	torn
Thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Throw	threw	thrown
Tread	trod	trodden, trod
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Write	wrote	written

Note —The seven participles marked (*) are now chiefly used as verbal adjectives only, and not as parts of some tense —

Verbal Adjective

Our *bounden* duty

A *drunken* man

A *sunken* ship

A *stricken* deer

The *shrunken* stream

Ill *gotten* wealth

A *lowen* hoof

Part of some Tense

He was *bound* by his promise

He had *drunk* much wine

The ship had *sunk* under the water

The deer was *struck* with an arrow

The stream has *shrunk* in its bed

He has *got* wealth by ill means

The tree was *clef* by lightning

Group II

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Awake	awoke	awoke
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld, beholden ¹
Clung	clung	clung
Come	came	come
Dug	dug	dug
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Fling	flung	flung
Grind	ground	ground
Hang ²	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Hold	held	held
Hang	rang	rung
Run	ran	run
Shine	shone	shone
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	sat	sat
Sling	slung	slung
Shuk	shunk	shunk
Spin	spun	spun
Spring	sprang, sprung	sprung
Stand	stood	stood
Stave	stove, staved	stove, staved

¹ "Beholden" means "indebted"

² The *Intransitive* verb is conjugated in the Strong form only. The *Transitive* verb is conjugated both in the Weak and in the Strong form. "Hanged" (Weak form) means "killed by hanging". as, "The dog was hanged." "Hung" (Strong form) is used in a general sense, as, "He hung up his coat."

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Stick	stuck	stuck
Stang	stung	stung
Stink	stank	stunk
String	strung	strung
Swim	swam	swum
Swing	swung	swung
Win	won	won
Wind	wound	wound
Wring	wrung	wrung

The Mixed Conjugation

217 Verbs of *Mixed Conjugation* fall into two main groups —

(1) Those which (like Weak verbs) form the Past tense and the Past Participle by adding *d* or *t* to the Present, but (like Strong verbs) change the inside vowel, as, “seek, sought, sought.”

(2) Those which (like Weak verbs) form the Past tense in *d* or *t* without changing the inside vowel, but (like Strong verbs) form the Past Participle by adding *en* or *n*, as, “show, showed, shown.”

Group I

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Beseech	besought	besought
Bring	brought	brought
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Teach	taught	taught
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Work	worked	*wrought, worked
Owe	ought, owed	owed
Dare	durst or dared	dared
Can	could	(<i>Wanting</i>)
Shall	should	(<i>Wanting</i>)
Will	would	(<i>Wanting</i>)
May	might	(<i>Wanting</i>)

Group II

Beat	beat	beaten
Do	did (<i>irregular</i>)	done
Grave	graved	*graven, graved
Hew	hewed	hewn
Lade	laded	laden
Melt	melted	*molten, melted
Mow	mowed	mown
Rave	raved	riven

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Seethe	seethed	*sodden, seethed
Shave	shaved	shaven
Shear	sheared	*shorn, sheared
Sow	sowed	sown
Swell	swelled	swollen
Show	showed	shown
Sew	sewed	sewn
Rot	rotted	*rotten, rotted
Straw	strewed	strewn or strown
Prove	proved	† proven, proved
Saw	sawed	sawn
Shap	shaped	† shapen, shaped
Writhe	writhe	† writen, writhed

Note 1 —The participles marked * are now chiefly used as Verbal adjectives, and not as parts of some Tense —

<i>Verbal Adjective</i>	<i>Part of some Tense</i>
<i>Wrought iron.</i>	The horse is <i>worke</i> d too hard
<i>A graven image</i>	The image was <i>engrave</i> d with letters
<i>A molten image</i>	The image was <i>melte</i> d with heat
<i>A rotten plank</i>	The plank was <i>rotte</i> d by water
<i>The sodden flesh</i>	The flesh was <i>seethe</i> d in hot water
<i>A shorn lamb</i>	The lamb was <i>shear</i> d to day

Note 2 —The participles marked † are now seldom seen except in poetry

The Weak Conjugation

218 All verbs, except those shown in the preceding lists, belong to the Weak or new Conjugation, in which the process of forming the Past tense and Past Participle consists in adding *ed* or *t* to the Present

219 The mode of adding the suffix "*ed*" is not uniform, and the two rules given below should be observed —

(1) If the verb ends in *e*, then *d* only is added, and not *ed*, as—

Live, lived (not *lived*d)
Cloth, clothed (not *clothed*d)

To this rule there is no exception

(2) The final consonant is doubled before *ed*, provided (a) that the final consonant is *single*, (b) that it is *accented*, (c) that it is preceded by a *single vowel*, as—

Fan, fanned (not *fand*d), *drop, dropped* (not *drop*d)
Compel, compelled, *control, controlled*

But in a verb like *lengthen*, where the accent is not on the last syllable, the Past tense is *lengthened*, in a verb like *boil*, where the vowel is not single, the Past tense is *boiled*, and in a verb like *fold*, where the last consonant is not single, the Past tense is *folded*

To this rule there are very few exceptions. One exception occurs in the final *l*. The final *l* is doubled, even when it is not accented, as, travel, travelled (not traveled). But the final *l* is not doubled, if it has two vowels going before it, as, travel, travelled (not travelled).

220 Some verbs of the Weak Conjugation form the Past tense in "t," and if the vowel of the Present is a long one, they shorten it —

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Croup	crept	crept
Sleep	slept	slept
Sweep	swept	swept
Keep	kept	kept
Weep	wept	wept
Burn	burnt	burnt
Deal (dēl)	dealt	dealt
Dream (drēm)	dreamt or dreamed	dreamt or dreamed
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt
Feel	felt	felt
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Smell	smelt	smelt
Spell	spelt	spelt
Lean (lēn)	leaned or leant	leaned or leant
Mean (mēn)	meant	meant
Spill	spilt	spilt
Spoil	spoilt or spoiled	spoilt or spoiled

Exceptional Verbs — Make, made, made. Have, had, had. Hear, heard, heard. Leave, left, left. Clove, cleft, cleft. Lose, lost, lost. Die, died, dead. Shoe, shod, shod. Flee, fled, fled. Say, said, said. Lay, laid, laid. Pay, paid, paid.

221 Verbs ending in *d* or *t* in the Present tense have discarded the *ed* in the Past

(a) Some verbs in this group have the three forms (Present tense, Past tense, and Past Participle) all exactly alike —

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Burst	burst	burst
Cast	cast	cast
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Let	let	let
Put	put	put
Rid	rid	rid
Set	set	set
Shed	shed	shed
Shred	shred	shred
Shut	shut	shut
Slit	slit	slit

	<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
	Spit	spit or spat	spit
	Spht	spht	splht
	Spread	spread	spread
	Sweat	sweat	sweat
	Thrust	thrust	thrust
	Bet	bet	bet
Two { forms {	Quit	quit or quitted	quit or quitted
	Knit	knit or knitted	knit or knitted

(b) Other verbs in this group end in *d* in the Present tense, but form the Past tense and Past Participle by changing *d* into *t* (There are at least nine such verbs in English.)

	<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
	Bend	bent	bent
	Build	built	built
	Gild	gilt, gilded	gilt
	Gird	girt, girded	girt
	Lend	lent	lent
	Rend	rent	rent
	Send	sent	sent
	Spend	spent	spent
	Wend	went	(Wanting)

(c) Other verbs of this group have the three forms all alike except that they shorten the vowel in the Past tense and Past Participle —

	<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
	Bleed	bled	bled
	Breed	bred	bred
	Feed	fed	fed
	Speed	sped	sped
	Meet	met	met
	Lead	led	led
	Read	read	read
	Light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
	Shoot	shot	shot

Note —The following differences in the use of participles as adjectives or as parts of a tense should be noted, in addition to the two lists already given in pages 80 and 82 respectively —

Verbal Adjective

A *hewn* log
A *hidden* meaning
A *lighted* candle
Roast meat.
A well *sewn* cloth

Part of Some Tense

The log is *hewed* or *hewn*
The meaning is *hid* or *hidden*
The candle is *lit* or *lighted*
The meat is *roasted*
I have *sewed* or *sewn* it

§ 13 — CONJUGATION OF AUXILIARY, DEFECTIVE, AND ANOMALOUS VERBS

(1) Be

		Singular			Plural
<i>Present</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	1 am	2 art	3 is	1 2 3 are
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	be	be	be	be
<i>Past</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	was	wast	was	were
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	were	wert	were	were

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To be	be	being	having been

This verb is used in three different ways —

(a) As an Intransitive verb of *Complete* Predication, in the sense of mere existence —

God *is* = God exists

There *are* many men, who, etc = Many men exist, who, etc

(b) As an Intransitive verb of *Incomplete* Predication —

A horse *is* a four legged animal

This coat *was* of many colours

(c) As an Auxiliary verb —

All the tenses in Passive verbs and all the Continuous tenses in Active ones are formed by the help of the verb *to be*

(2) Have

		Singular			Plural
<i>Present</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	1 have	2 hast	3 has	1 2 3 have
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	have	have	have	have
<i>Past</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	had	hadst	had	had
	<i>Subjunctive</i>	had	hadst	had	had

Infinitive.	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle.
To have	have	having	having had

This verb is used in two different senses —

(a) As a Transitive verb, denoting possession In this sense it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses —

We have (= we possess) four cows and twenty sheep

(b) As an Auxiliary verb —

All the Perfect tenses, in all the Moods, Active and Passive, are formed by the help of this verb

(3) Shall

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 s
<i>Present</i>	shall	shalt	shall	shall
<i>Past</i>	should	shouldst	should	should

There are no other tenses, and there is no Infinitive mood to this verb It is used in three different senses —

(a) As an Auxiliary verb, in a merely *Future* sense —

The *first* person of the Future Indicative is formed by *shall*, and any person of the Subjunctive can be formed by *should*, as, "I shall go," "if he should go" (see § 178, a, and § 186)

(b) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *command* —

In the *second* and *third* persons of the Future Indicative *shall* implies a command, as, "thou *shalt* not steal" (see § 178, b)

(c) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *duty* —

"Should," and not "shall," is used in the sense of duty (Here the force of the verb is not Subjunctive, but Indicative)

Present — I *should* do (= it is my duty to do) this

Past — I *should have done* this, (it was my duty to do this, but I neglected to do it)

In the following sentence "*should*" is used in the sense of inference, rather than in that of duty —

He *should* have arrived by this time

That is, "It may be inferred, according to the ordinary course of events, that he has arrived by this time"

(d) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of purpose, but only after the conjunction "*lest*," and only in the form of "*should*" (see § 396, Note) —

He worked hard *lest* he *should* fail

(4) Will

	Singular			Plural
<i>Present</i>	1 will	2 wilt	3 will	1 2 3 will
<i>Past</i>	f would l would	wouldst willedst	would willed	would willed

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To will		willing	having willed

This verb is used in several different senses —

(a) As an Auxiliary verb, in a merely *Future* sense —

The *second* and *third* persons of the Future Indicative are formed by *will*, and any person of the Subjunctive can be formed by *would* (see § 178, a, and § 190, 3)

(b) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *intend* (see § 178, c) —

I *will* not steal = I do not intend to steal

To will is present with me, but what I *will* (= wish or intend to do) I do not, and what I *will not*, that I do — *New Testament*

Note —The phrase "*would be*" is elliptical, and is used as an adjective —

A *would be* murderer (a man who wished or intended to be a murderer, but was prevented)

(c) As an Auxiliary verb, in the sense of *habit* or *disposition*. In this sense "*will*" has the force of a Present Indicative, and "*would*" of a Past Indicative

When frightened, an elephant *will* burst (= is in the habit of bursting) away with a rush

He *would* come (= was in the habit of coming) every day

(d) As a Principal verb (Transitive), in the sense of leaving property by a written document or "*will*" In this sense the Past tense is *willed*, and not *would* —

He *willed* (= decided by his written will or testament) that all his property should go to his daughter

(5) Do

	Singular			Plural
<i>Present</i>	1 do	2 dost	3 does	1 2 3 do
<i>Past</i>	did	didst	did	did

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To do	do	doing	having done

This verb is used in three different senses —

(a) As a Principal verb (Transitive) in the sense of "perform". In this sense it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses —

I am now *doing* what you *have done* already

(b) As an Auxiliary verb, declined only in the Present and Past tenses —

Do and *did* are used as auxiliaries to the Present and Past tenses, Indicative, of other verbs for the sake of *emphasis*, for the sake of using a *negative*, and for the sake of *asking a question* (see examples given in § 175)

On the uses of *do* in the Imperative, see § 182

(c) As a Pro verb or Substitute-verb, to avoid the repetition of a previous verb. In this sense it can be used in any mood or tense —

You need not work so hard as you *did* (= worked) yesterday

(6) May

	Singular			Plural
<i>Present</i>	1 may	2 mayest	3 may	1 2 3 may
<i>Past</i>	might	mightest	might	might

This verb is used in four different senses —

(a) In the sense of permission —

You *may* leave (=are permitted to leave) the room.

(b) In the sense of possibility —

I might (= I could perhaps) do it, if I tried

The rains *may* yet come (= perhaps the rains will yet come)

Maybe (= it may be, or perhaps) you will succeed after all

(c) In the sense of a wish —

May heaven (= I pray or wish that heaven will) protect thee

(d) In the sense of purpose —

I worked hard that *I might* win

(7) Can

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
<i>Present</i>	Can	canst	can	can
<i>Past</i>	Could	couldst	could	could

This verb is used in two different senses —

(a) In the sense of permission —

You *can* (= are permitted to) go or not, as you like

(b) In the sense of power or ability —

He *cannot* (= is unable to) run as fast as you

He *could* (= is able to) do this, if he tried

Note — The verbs *may* and *can* are always Auxiliary, — that is, they never stand alone as Principal or independent verbs. Hence in some grammars they are said to constitute a separate mood, which is called the *Potential*

(8) Ought

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
<i>Present or Past</i>	Ought	oughtest	ought	ought

This verb is, in its origin, the Past tense of the verb *owe*, as, "you *ought* (= owed) him a thousand pounds." In modern English the form "ought" is used only in the sense of *duty*

Present — You *ought to do* this, (and you are expected to do it)

Past. — You *ought to have done* this, (but you did not do it).

(9) **Must**

This verb has now no varieties of form

It is, in its origin, the Past tense of an old verb *motan*, "to be obliged," which is now obsolete.

"Must" now relates, not to Past, but to Present or Future time, and is used in four different senses —

(a) In the sense of necessity or *compulsion* —

What *must* come, *must*

(b) In the sense of a very strong *intention* —

I *must* finish this, before I go

(c) In the sense of *certainly* or a very strong *inference* —

He *must* be dead by this time

(d) In the sense of *duty* or a very strong *obligation* —

We *must* pay our debts

(10) **Dare**

	Singular			Plural
	1	2	3	1 2 3
<i>Present</i>	dare	darest	{ dare dare	dare
<i>Past</i>	{ durst dared	{ durst dared	{ durst dared	{ durst dared

Infinitive	Imperative	Present Participle	Perfect Participle
To dare	dare	daring	having dared

This verb is used in two senses —

(a) As a verb of Incomplete Predication in the sense of *having courage*. In this sense the Third present Singular is "dare," and not "dares," provided it is followed by a Negative —

He *dare* not (= has not the courage to) leave the room (*Negative*)

He *dars* to leave the room (*Affirmative*)

In the Past tense, provided it is followed by a Negative, "durst" is used, and sometimes "dared" —

He *durst* not (or *dared* not) leave the room

But if the verb is affirmative, we use "dared" and not "durst." The idiom "I dare say" simply means "perhaps"

(b) As a Transitive verb in the sense of *challenging* When the verb is used in this sense, it is declined regularly in all the moods and tenses —

He *dares* me (=challenges me) to fight
He *dared* me (=challenged me) to my face

(11) Quoth.

This verb is the Past tense of an old verb, which is now obsolete except in the compound form of *be-queath*

It means "says," or "said," and therefore stands equally for Past and Present time It is used only in the Third person and only in the Singular number It always stands *before* its subject —

"Let me not live," *quoth* he —*Shakespeare*

(12) Need

This is a Principal or independent verb, signifying "require," "want" As such it is declined regularly in all its moods and tenses

The Third person Singular is *need*, and not *needs*, just as *dare* is used for *dares*, provided it is followed by a Negative —

He *need* not (=is under no necessity to) do any more work

In such a phrase as "he must *needs* do this," *needs* is really a Possessive case, with the apostrophe before the *s* omitted So *needs* = need's = of need = of necessity = necessarily *Needs* has therefore become an Adverb (see § 235)

(13) Worth

This verb occurs in such a phrase as "woe *worth* the day," which means "woe be to the day" The noun "day" is in the Objective case.

Worth is here the Subjunctive mood (in the sense of wish, see § 190, 2) of an old verb signifying "to become"

(14) Wit.

This verb signifies "to know" Only a few of its forms have survived, the rest have become obsolete

(a) The Infinitive form *to wit*, in the sense of "namely" This is much used in legal documents at the present day —

He left me by will all his land, *to wit*, the three farms

(b) The Present Participle has survived in the negative adverbial form of *unwittingly*, which means "unknowingly"

You cannot blame him for this, since he did it *unwittingly*

(c) Two forms of the Indicative have survived —

Present — He *wot* neither what he babbles nor what he means —

Tyndall

Past — They *wist* not what had become of him — *New Testament*

(15) Beware

This is compounded of *be* + *were* "Ware" is an old form of the adjective "wary," and is complement to the verb "be."

The form "*beware*" is the only one used. It can be preceded by auxiliary verbs, or by "to," as "to beware"

(16) Wont

This is the Past Participle of an obsolete verb, which signified "to continue." Hence "*wont*" means "accustomed"

(17) Hight

The Past Participle of an obsolete verb, which signified "to call or name"

(18) Yclept

The Past Participle of the obsolete verb "*clepe*," to call or name. The *y* is a prefix without meaning

(19) Impersonal Verbs

Verbs are said to be **Impersonal**, or to be used impersonally, when they take "it" for their subject, and are followed by some Personal pronoun in the Objective case —

It shames *me* to hear this = I am ashamed to hear this

It repents *me* of my folly = I repent of my folly

It behoves *me* to do this = I ought to do this

There are three instances in which the *it* is omitted, and the pronoun in the Objective case is placed *before* the verb instead of after it —

Me thinks = it thinks *me* = I think

Me seems = it seems to *me*

Me lists = it seems to *me*, or it pleases *me*

The following phrase is elliptical —

So please your Majesty — *Shakespeare*

This means, "If *it* so please your Majesty", that is, "if your Majesty so please or so desire"

CHAPTER VI —ADVERBS

§ 1 —THE KINDS OF ADVERBS

222 Adverb defined —An Adverb is a word used to qualify any part of speech except a noun or pronoun (§ 12)

Note —The definition given in other grammars is —“An adverb is a word used to qualify a verb, adjective, or other adverb”¹

But this is evidently wrong, since an adverb may, and very often does, qualify Prepositions and Conjunctions —

(a) Prepositions —

The bird flew *exactly over* the sleeper's head
He paid the money *quite up to* date
This mistake was made *entirely through* your fault
He was sitting *almost outside* the door
He arrived *long before* the time
He wept *partly through* sorrow and *partly through* anger

(b) Conjunctions —

A man is truly happy *only when* he is in sound health
I dislike this place *simply because* the air is too hot
I wish to know *precisely how* it happened
They locked the door *shortly before* the thieves came
The watch was found *long after* the thieves had been caught
He has been ill *ever since* he left us

It is immaterial whether we say that the adverb qualifies the *Preposition only* or the *entire phrase* introduced by the preposition. Similarly, we could say with equal truth that the adverb qualifies the *Conjunction only* or the *entire clause* that follows it

Note —If for an adverb proper we substitute an adverbial phrase, we find that such a phrase can qualify a preposition or a conjunction in the same way as an adverb proper does —

Preposition —He arrived *a few hours after* midnight

Conjunction —He recovered *ten days after* he had been taken ill.

223 An Adverb can qualify not merely individual words, but an entire Assertive sentence (§ 2, 1) *In this case it must stand first in the sentence*

¹ Angus and Barn both admit that the qualifying power of adverbs is not limited to adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs, but both have none the less adhered to the old definition. The same admission, but without any departure from the old definition, is made by Mason, who in a footnote to page 166 of *English Grammar*, ed 1891, points out that “an adverb sometimes modifies a preposition.” Since the old definition is admittedly wrong, it is better to put a more accurate one in its place

Unfortunately the thief was not caught
Evidently you were much distressed at the news

We could rewrite these sentences in the following form —

It is unfortunate that the thief was not caught
It was evident that you were much distressed

224 Adverbs do not qualify Nouns or Pronouns This is the work of adjectives

The apparent exceptions to the above rule can all be explained —

(a) I am *sincerely yours* That book is *certainly mine*

Here the words "yours" and "mine" are the Possessive forms of "you" and "I," and are, therefore, equivalent to *adjectives* (§ 116)

(b) A by path, a lone taste, an out house

Here the adverbs do not qualify the several nouns, but are compounded with them, so that each compound makes a *single word*

(c) In the following examples the adverb that precedes the noun does not qualify the noun, but some participle or adjective understood —

The then king = the king then *reigning*

The late king = the king lately *reigning*

The above account = the account *given* above

A far country = a country far *distant*

An up mail = an up *going* mail

(d) In the following example the adverb "almost" does not qualify the noun "drunkard," but the verb "is" —

He is *almost* a drunkard

To say, "He is an almost drunkard," would be incorrect

225 Adverbs are subdivided into three distinct classes

I Simple

II Interrogative

III Relative

226 Simple Adverbs — These can be distinguished from one another according to their meaning —

(a) **Time** —

He did this *before*, and you have done it *since* He will *soon* arrive He was taken ill *yesterday*

The chief adverbs of this class are — *Now, then, before, since, ago, already, soon, presently, immediately, instantly, early, late, afterwards, yesterday, to day, to morrow*

(b) **Place** —

We must rest *here*, and not *there*

The chief adverbs of this class are — *Here, there, hence, thence, hither, thither, in, out, within, without, above, below, inside, outside, far, near, etc*

(c) **Number** —

He did this *once*, but he will not do it *again*

The chief adverbs of this class are — *Once, twice, thrice, again, seldom, never, sometimes, always, often, firstly, secondly, thirdly, etc*

(d) **Manner, Quality, or State** —

He did his work *slowly*, but *surely*

To this class of adverb belong — *Thus, so, well, ill, amiss, badly, probably, certainly, conveniently, etc*

(e) **Quantity, Extent, or Degree** —

He is *almost*, but not *quite*, the cleverest boy in the class

To this class of adverb belong — *Very, much, too, quite, almost, little, a little, rather, somewhat, half, partly, wholly, so, etc*

Note 1 — **Thus, so the** — These have been distinctively called *Demonstrative* adverbs, because they are akin to *Demonstrative* adjectives, — “*thus*” and “*the*” being akin to “*this*” or “*that*,” and “*so*” to “*such*” They all denote either *manner* or *extent*

Thus — He did it *thus* (in this or that manner)

So — He loved her *so* (in such a manner or to such an extent)

The — He worked *the* (to that extent) harder, because he had been encouraged

Note 2 — The adverb “*the*” is quite distinct from the *Definite Article*. It represents an old inflection of the *Demonstrative*, and is never used except before an adjective or adverb in the *Comparative* degree

(f) **Affirming or Denying** —

He did *not* come after all

Examples — *Yes, no, not, yea, nay, not at all, by all means, etc*

227 Interrogative Adverbs — This is the name given to those adverbs that are used for asking questions —

(a) **Time** —

When did he come? *How long* will he remain here?

(b) **Place** —

Where did he stop? *Whence* has he come? *Whither* is he going?

(c) **Number** —

How often did the dog bark?

(d) **Manner, Quality, or State** —

How did he do this? *How* (in what state of health) is he to day?

(e) **Quantity or Degree** —

How far (to what extent) was that report true?

(f) **Cause or Reason** —

Why (for what reason) did he do this? *Wherefore* did she weep?

228. The adverb "*how*" is sometimes used in an exclamatory sense —

How kind of you to do that !

How often have you been cautioned !

"*What*" in the sense of quantity or degree is similarly used in an exclamatory sense —

What a foolish fellow you are !

What clever sons you have !

229 Relative Adverbs—These are the same in form as Interrogative adverbs, but instead of asking questions, they join two sentences together. Hence a Relative adverb is a double part of speech,—an adverb and conjunction combined, as was pointed out in § 18 (3)

These adverbs are called *Relative* for two reasons—(1) Because they relate to some antecedent, expressed or understood, as Relative pronouns do, (2) because they are formed from Relative pronouns —

(a) *The antecedent understood*

This is *where* (=the place in which) we dwell

Let me know *when* (=the time by which) you will come

(b) *The antecedent expressed*

This is the place *where* we dwell

Let me know the time *when* you will come

230 "The" as a Relative Adverb—The word "*the*" is a *Relative* adverb of Quantity, and is always followed by its antecedent "*the*," which is a *Demonstrative* adverb of Quantity.

The more (wealth) men have, *the* more they desire

The sooner he comes, *the* better for him

Note 1—The first "*the*" is the *Relative* adverb, and the second one is the *Demonstrative* adverb — "*To what extent* men have more wealth, *to that extent* they desire more"

Note 2—This pair of adverbs is never used except in combination with some adjective or other adverb in the *Comparative* degree

Note 3—The *Relative* "*the*" is never used unless it is followed by its antecedent, the *Demonstrative* "*the*" But the *Demonstrative* "*the*" can be used alone —

He worked *the* (to that extent) harder, because he had been encouraged by his teacher

§ 2 —DEGREES OF COMPARISON IN ADVERBS

231 Some Adverbs have degrees of comparison like adjectives, and these are formed in the same kind of way —

(a) If the Adverb is a word of *one* syllable, the Com-

parative is formed by adding *er* and the Superlative by adding *est* —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Soon	sooner	soonest
Long	longer	longest
Loud	louder	loudest
Late	later	latest or last
Near	nearer	nearest

(b) Some Adverbs form the degrees of comparison in an irregular way —

Well	better	best
Ill or badly	worse	worst
Much	more	most
Little	less	least
Forth	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest

(c) Adverbs ending in *ly* form the Comparative by adding *more* and the Superlative by adding *most* —

Wisely	more wisely	most wisely
Beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully

Note —The adverb “*early*,” however, has “*earlier*” for its Comparative

§ 3 —THE FORMS OF ADVERBS

232 Some Adverbs have the same form as the corresponding Adjectives, as—

<i>Adverb</i>	<i>Adjective</i>
He was <i>much</i> pleased	There is <i>much</i> sickness here
He stayed <i>long</i>	He went on a <i>long</i> journey
He spoke <i>loud</i>	There is a sound of <i>loud</i> voices
He came <i>early</i>	He woke up at an <i>early</i> hour
Stand <i>near</i> while I speak	He is my <i>near</i> relation
He was a <i>little</i> tired	There is a <i>little</i> hope now
He came <i>only</i> once	This is my <i>only</i> son
He has slept <i>enough</i>	He has eaten <i>enough</i> bread

233. Adverbs in “*ly*”—Most Adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ly* (a corruption of *like*), and there is generally an Abstract noun which can be placed between the adjective and the adverb —

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Abstract Noun</i>	<i>Adverb</i>
Wise	wisdom	wisely
Poor	poverty	poorly
High	height	highly
Short	shortness	shortly

Note —Adverbs can also be formed from Participles, as, *devotedly*, *knowingly*, *surprisingly*, etc.

- (3) A preposition followed by an adjective —Some noun is understood after the adjective —*In general, in particular, in short, at large, in vain, on high, of old, after all, at first, at last, at least, at all, at most, at best, in future, at present*
- (4) A preposition amalgamated with an adjective —Here, as before, some noun is understood after the adjective —*Below, beyond, behind, abroad, anew, awry, across, along, aloud, etc*
- (5) A noun qualified by an adjective —*Meantime, meanwhile, mad way, yesterday, etc* (On the Adverbial objective, see § 287, 5)
- (6) An Adverb compounded with a preposition —*Forthwith, within, without, forever, at once, before, beneath*
- (7) Miscellaneous phrases —*By all means, by no means, by the by* (something said in passing), *by the way* (the same meaning as *by the by*), *once on a time, inside out, upside down, to be sure* (certainly), *head foremost* (with the head in front), *head downwards, topsy turvy, head over heels* (the head being thrown over the heels)

237 Adverbs sometimes go together *in pairs*, the one being connected with the other by the conjunction “and” —

He is walking *up and down, to and fro*
 He is walking *here and there, hither and thither*
 The mice run *in and out, backward and forward*
 He comes here *now and then* (occasionally)
 He works *off and on* (irregularly)
 You will see him *by and by* (in a short time)

§ 4 —VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH ADVERBS

238 A Verb is said to be compounded with an Adverb, when the two words are so habitually used together, that one is considered to be a part of the other

Such Adverbs are almost always (except in poetry) placed *after* the verb, as “speak out,” “rise up.” Here the *out* should be parsed as part of the verb “speak,” and *up* as part of the verb “rise.”

But in forming the corresponding noun, the adverb is put first —

Verb	Noun
The crops will <i>come out</i> well	The <i>outcome</i> was a good crop
No profits will <i>come in</i>	His <i>income</i> is small
Cholera did not <i>break out</i>	There was no <i>outbreak</i> of cholera
He <i>set out</i> on his journey	He had no trouble at the <i>outset</i>

Similar instances are —*Set off* (verb), *offset* (noun), *put out* (verb), *output* (noun), *fit out* (verb), *outfit* (noun), *shoot off* (verb), *offshoot* (noun), *spring off* (verb), *offspring* (noun), *shoot up* (verb), *upshot* (noun), *turn out* (verb), *outturn* (noun), *cast out* (verb), *outcast* (noun), *set on* (verb), *onset* (noun), *lay out* (verb), *outlay* (noun), *look out* (verb), *outlook* (noun), *draw in* (verb), *indrawn* (noun), *let out* (verb), *outlet* (noun), *let in* (verb), *inlet* (noun).

Note —“Set off,” “turn out,” and a few more are also used as nouns.

§ 5 —THE TWO USES OF ADVERBS

239 As in the case of Adjectives (see § 102), there are two different ways in which Adverbs can be used, viz (a) the *Attributive*, (b) the *Predicative*

(a) *Attributive use* —An Adverb is used attributively, when it qualifies its word in the ordinary way,—that is, when it is placed as close as possible before it or after it —

He is *entirely* wrong He *shouted* loudly He *did* his work *very* badly *Half* through the door I dislike him *only* because he is lazy

(b) *Predicative use* —An Adverb is used predicatively, when it is made part of the Predicate of a sentence, or in other words, when it is used as the Complement of the verb going before it —

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement, etc</i>
My son	is	<i>well</i> (in good health) to day
He	will be	<i>better</i> (in better health) soon.
He	was turned	<i>adrift</i> (to go where he could)
The two boys	are	much <i>alike</i> (like to each other)
The bear	was caught	<i>alive</i> (in a living state)
Those men	are	<i>aware</i> (conscious) of their faults
The game	is	<i>over</i> (finished)
Some money	was	still <i>over</i> (remaining)
The results	are	<i>out</i> (published)
The stars	are	<i>out</i> (visible)
He	was heard	<i>out</i> (to the very end)
The bargain	is	<i>off</i> (cancelled)
The train	is	<i>off</i> (started)
He	is	<i>well off</i> (in good circumstances)
Our side	is	<i>in</i> (having the innings)
The late minister	is	<i>in</i> (holding office) again

CHAPTER VII —PREPOSITIONS

240 *Preposition defined* —A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or noun equivalent to show in what relation the person or thing denoted thereby stands to something else (§ 14) The noun or noun-equivalent is called the *Object*

I place my hand *on* the table.

Here if the word "on" is omitted, there is no sense The hand might be placed *on* the table, or *under* the table, or *above* the table Until some preposition has been inserted, the relation between the hand and the table is not known

241 (a) *Adverbs as Objects*.—Some adverbs of Time

or Place can be used as objects to prepositions denoting relations of Time or Place —

We must be ready by *then* (=that time) By *far* the best.
 He has worked hard from *then* to *now*
 He walks about from *here* to *there*
 I have heard of worse things being done before *now*
 Until *now* it has not ceased raining
 Many strange things may happen between *now* and *then*
 You must go at *once* This will last for *ever*

(b) **Phrases as Objects** — Certain adverbial phrases (that is, phrases which do not end in a preposition or a conjunction, see § 30 and § 236) can, like Simple Adverbs, be used as objects to a preposition —

The day spring 'rom *on high* hath visited us
 Ho has come from *beyond the seas*
 He did not return till *about ten days afterwards*
 He did not see her till *within a few weeks of his death*
 These books are sold at *over one rupee* each
 I bought this for *under half its value*

(c) **Noun-clause as Object** — A noun-clause (see § 47, f) can be the object to a preposition in the same way as a noun or pronoun can be

This depends upon | whether he will consent or not
 He told every one of | what he had heard
 Go whenever you like except | that you must not go in the rain

242 Omission of Object. — There are two cases of this —

Relative Pronoun — The man (*whom* or *that*) we were looking for

Demonstrative Pronoun — A chair to sit on (*it*) (See § 198, b)

243 Forms of Prepositions — Prepositions have six different forms — (1) Simple, (2) Double, (3) Compound, (4) Participial, (5) Phrase prepositions, (6) Disguised prepositions

(1) The Simple prepositions are — *At, by, with, on, in, to, for, of* or *off, from, through, up, till, over, under, after*

(2) Double prepositions (that is, any two of the Simple prepositions written either separately or in combination) are used when a Simple preposition is not sufficient to express the sense —

The dog ran *into* the house The lamp fell *onto* the table One man was chosen *from among* the rest The seed has sprouted *from under* the ground. The cart stands *over against* the bank A live coal was taken *from off* the fireplace He came *from within* the house

(3) **Compound prepositions**—These are formed from some noun, adjective, or adverb compounded with the preposition “*be*” (= *by*) or “*a*” (= *on*) —

Across (= *on cross*), *along*, *amidst* (= *on middle*), *behind* (= *by + hind*), *about* (= *on + by + out*), *above* (= *on + by + up*), *before* (= *by + fore*), *within*, *without*, *below*, *beneath* (= *by + neath*), *beside*, *between* (= *by + twain*), *beyond* (= *by + yonder*), *amongst* (= *on + geming*, in a multitude)

(4) **Participial prepositions**—These were originally Present or Past Participles used absolutely, sometimes (*a*) with the noun expressed, and sometimes (*b*) with some noun understood —

(*a*) **The noun expressed** (see § 285, 5)

Pending fresh orders = fresh orders *pending* or not yet being given
During the summer = the summer *during* or enduring or still lasting
Notwithstanding his anger = his anger not *withstanding* or not preventing it

All *except* one = all, one being *excepted*

All *save* one = all, one being *saved* or reserved

The hour *past* sunset = the hour, sunset *having passed*

(*b*) **Some noun understood** Impersonal absolute (see § 300, Note 2)

Considering your age you have done very well

Owing to the long drought the crops have failed

Inform me *concerning*, *touching*, or *regarding* this matter

(5) **Phrase prepositions**—Two or more words habitually thrown together and ending with a Simple preposition may be called *Phrase prepositions* or *Prepositional phrases* (see § 30, *b*) —

By means of, *because of*, *in front of*, *in opposition to*, *in spite of*, *on account of*, *with reference to*, *with regard to*, *for the sake of*, *on behalf of*, *instead of*, *in lieu of*, *in the place of*, *in prospect of*, *with a view to*, *in the event of*, etc

Note—The phrases “*on this rule*” and “*on board*” do not take a Simple preposition after them, as—

On this side the river *On board* the ship

Similarly the noun “*despite*” can be used as a preposition for the prepositional phrase “*in spite of*” —

Despite his riches, power, and self — *Scott*

(6) **Disguised prepositions**—It has been shown already how “*by*” can be changed into “*be*” and “*on*” into “*a*,” as a prefix to certain nouns or adjectives.

Similarly “*of*” can be changed into “*o*,” as in “four o'clock,” “Jack o’ lantern,” etc

To the same class belong such phrases as the following —

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *a rupee*
 He called to see me once *a week*
 He gave the coolies four annas *a piece*

The “a” looks so much like the Indefinite Article, that by a false analogy “the” is sometimes used in its place, as—

Wheat sells at sixteen seers *the rupee*

244 Than—This word has been used as a Preposition by the best English writers —

No mightier than thyself or <i>me</i>	<i>Shakspeare</i>
A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty, but a fool's wrath is heavier than <i>them</i> both	<i>Old Testament</i>
She suffers hourly more than <i>me</i>	<i>Swift</i>
Lined with giants deadlier than <i>them</i> all	<i>Pope</i>
For thou art a girl as much brighter than <i>he</i> ,	
As he was a poet sublimer than <i>me</i> .	<i>Prior</i>

These are not schoolboy errors, and “than” is still used as a Preposition in conversation. But in recent books on Grammar its prepositional character has been either overlooked or denied. The best course to take is to parse it as a Conjunction, whenever it is possible to do so by adding a clause after it —

No animal is larger than a whale
 No animal is larger than a whale (is large)

But in such examples as the following “than” must still be parsed as a Preposition, because there is no omitted clause which could make it a Conjunction —

I will not take less than <i>ten rupees</i>	} <i>Kind of Object</i>
No one other than a <i>graduate</i> need apply	
Here is my son, than <i>whom</i> a better does not exist	} <i>Noun.</i>
He did nothing else than <i>laugh</i>	
I will suffer myself rather <i>than</i> (that) he should suffer	} <i>Rel Pron</i>
He got more <i>than</i> (what) he asked for	
	} <i>Noun Infjn</i>
	} <i>Noun clause</i>

245 But—In such examples as the following “but” must be parsed as a Preposition. Otherwise it is a Conjunction. (On its uses as a Conjunction see p 249.)

All *but* (except) one fulfilled their promises
 He was all *but* (=everything except) ruined. (Here “ruined” is an elliptical form of the Gerund “being ruined”, and this Gerund is the object of the preposition “but”)

But for your help (=except on account of your help, =if you had not helped me) I should have been ruined. (Here the phrase “for your help” is object to the preposition)

I cannot *but* fear (=I cannot do anything except fear) that you are ill. (Here the Noun Infinitive “fear” is the object.)

CHAPTER VIII — CONJUNCTIONS

246 A **Conjunction** is a word for *joining*, and for no other purpose

A Conjunction is never connected with an *object*, as a preposition is

A Conjunction never *qualifies* a word, as an adverb does
It simply *joins* words or sentences

Hence the same word can be an adverb in one place, a preposition in another, or a conjunction in another —

I have seen this man *before* (*Adverb*)

He stood *before* the door (*Preposition*)

The rain fell *before* we reached home (*Conjunction*)

247 Conjunctions are sub-divided into two main classes —

I **Co-ordinative**, so called because they join sentences of co-ordinate (that is, of *equal*) rank

II **Subordinative**, so called because they join a *sub-ordinate* or dependent sentence to a *principal* sentence (that is, to a sentence of *higher* rank)

§ 1 — CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

248 Sentences are said to be of **Co-ordinate** or **equal rank** when they assert facts which are independent of each other

249 Sentences of equal rank can be combined together in four different ways, and this gives rise to four different kinds of Co-ordinative Conjunctions —

(a) **Cumulative** — By these one statement or fact is simply *added* to another

(b) **Alternative** — By these an alternative or *choice* is offered between one statement and another

(c) **Adversative** — By these conjunctions one statement or fact is *contrasted* with or set against another

(d) **Illative** — By these conjunctions one statement or fact is *inferred* or proved from another

(a) Cumulative (addition)

And. — The one received a prize, *and* the other was promoted

Both and — He was *both* degraded *and* expelled

Also — He is guilty, and you *also*

Too — He is an idler, and a gambler *too*

As well as —He *as well as* you is guilty
No less than —He *no less than* you is guilty
Not only but also —He was *not only* accused, *but also* convicted
Now —They preferred Barabbas to Jesus, *now*, Barabbas was a robber
Well —You have done the work very skilfully, *well*, I did not expect it of you

(b) **Alternative** (choice)

Either or —*Either* this man sinned *or* his parents
Neither nor —He was *neither* an idler *nor* a gambler
Otherwise, else, or —Leave the room, *or* you will be caught.

(c) **Adversative** (contrast)

But —He is sad, *but* hopeful
Still, yet —He is very rich, *still* or *yet* he is not contented
Nevertheless —All men were against him, *nevertheless* he persevered
However —All men were against him, he stuck, *however*, to his point
Whereas, while — Wise men love truth, *whereas* or *while* fools shun it.
Only —Go where you like, *only* do not stay here

(d) **Illative** (inference)

Therefore —He was found guilty, and *therefore* he was hanged
Then, so, so then. —It is time to go *so* or *so then* let us start, or let us start *then*
For —He will die some day, *for* all men are mortal

§ 2 —SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

250 One sentence is said to be *subordinate* to another, when it depends upon the other for its meaning, and does not convey a complete meaning by itself

The Dependent sentence is that to which some Subordinative Conjunction is prefixed

The Principal sentence is that on which the subordinate or inferior sentence depends

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Conjunction</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
I will read that book,	if	you advise me

251. What are the different modes in which one sentence can be made to depend on another?

The chief modes of dependence are nine in number --

- (a) Apposition, (b) Causation, (c) Effect, (d) Purpose,
- (e) Condition, (f) Concession or Contrast, (g) Comparison,
- (h) Extent or manner, (i) Time

(a) **Apposition**¹ (this is the simplest mode of dependence) —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He told us (the fact),	that rain had fallen
He wrote to us (to the effect),	that he had arrived safely
He made a promise,	that he would return soon.

The Dependent sentence in the above examples is in apposition with the noun in brackets, which may be either omitted or expressed

(b) **Cause or Reason** —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He will succeed,	because he has worked hard
I will do this,	since you desire it
Let us go to bed,	as it is now late

(c) **Effect** —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He talked so much,	that he made himself hoarse

(d) **Purpose** —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
Men work,	that they may earn a living
He took medicine,	in order that he might recover
He took medicine,	so that he might recover
He walked with a cane,	lest he should stumble

(e) **Condition** —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
I will do this,	if I am allowed
They threatened to beat him,	unless he confessed (=if he did not confess)
I agree to these terms,	provided or provided that you will sign your name
He gave a sudden start,	as if he had been shot (=as he would have done, if he had been shot)
You must leave the room,	whether you wish it or no (=you must leave the room under any condition whatever)

¹ The word *that*, if we look to its origin, is simply the neuter Demonstrative pronoun. How it became a Conjunction is thus explained by Mr. Mason in *English Grammar*, p. 122.

"*That*" was originally the neuter pronoun used to point to the fact stated in some previous clause or sentence. "It was good, he saw *that*." By inverting the order of the clauses, we get "He saw *that* (namely) it was good." The primary clause has thus become a secondary or subordinate one, and "*that*" has become a subordinative conjunction.

Mr. Mason calls it "the Simple Conjunction of Subordination,"—a long and awkward name, less convenient than "Apposition." This term is meant to describe the word "namely," which is used by Mr. Mason himself to denote the force of the conjunction "*that*."

Dr. Abbott in p. 257 of *How to Parse* calls it the conjunction of "Apposition."

(f) Concession or Contrast —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He is an honest man,	<i>though or although</i> he is poor
He will never succeed,	<i>however</i> much he may try
He was not contented,	<i>however</i> rich he became
He was not refreshed,	<i>notwithstanding that</i> he slept long

Note —The conjunction “*however*,” when it is *co-ordinative*, stands alone, and is generally placed somewhere in the middle of its sentence. But when it is *subordinative*, it must be attached to some adverb as “*much*,” or to some adjective as “*rich*,” and is always placed at the beginning of its sentence —

<i>Dependent</i>	<i>Principal</i>
1 <i>Though</i> he punish me,	<i>yet</i> will I trust in him
2 Hot as the sun is,	<i>we</i> must go out

Observe that whenever “*as*” is used in a Concessive or Contrast ing sense, it is invariably *preceded* by some adjective, adverb, or participle, which stands as Complement to the verb following —

Hot as the sun is = *however* hot the sun is

(g) Comparison—(i) of equal degrees —*The same Quality Compared*

He is *as* clever *as* I (am)
 He likes you *as much as* I (like you)
 He likes you *no less than* me (he likes me)

Different Qualities Compared

The sea is *as* deep *as* the mountains are high
 He is *as* good *as* he is wise (=He is no less good than he is wise.)

(ii) Of unequal degrees*The same Quality Compared*

He is *more* (or *less*) clever *than* I (am)
 He likes you *more* (or *less*) *than* I (like you)
 He likes you *more* (or *less*) *than* me (he likes me)

Different Qualities Compared

The sea is *deeper than* the mountains are high.
 He is *more wise than* (he is) good
 He is *less good than* (he is) wise

(h) Extent or Manner —

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
Men will reap	<i>as</i> (=to what extent or in what manner) they sow
This is not true,	<i>so far as</i> I can find out.
He chose the men,	<i>according as</i> they were fit
<i>Dependent</i>	<i>Principal</i>
<i>As</i> men sow,	<i>so</i> will they also reap

(i) Time —

Time simultaneous

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He called at the house,	as the clock struck four
I will leave the room,	as soon as you open the door
You can hold the horse,	while I bring the saddle

Time before

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He worked very hard,	before he succeeded
You have much to do,	ere you can gain your end
He remained a minor,	until he was seventeen years old

Time after

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He returned home,	after he had done the work
He has been very weak,	since he was taken sick

Time how long

<i>Principal</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
The sun will rise,	which the world lasts
No one can harm us,	so long as we remain friends

Relative and Interrogative Adverbs

252 It was explained in § 18 that a Relative adverb is a double part of speech,—a conjunction and adverb combined in one.

The same is true of Interrogative adverbs, when they are used as conjunctions —

Let me ask you *how* you did this

There is no difference in *form* between a Relative and an Interrogative adverb. The former qualifies some noun expressed or understood in the Principal sentence. The latter is preceded by some verb that signifies *asking* or *inquiring*.

Relative and Interrogative adverbs, so far as they join sentences, constitute a special class of Subordinative conjunctions

Time

<i>Principal</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He remained silent,	<i>when</i>	(=as soon as) he heard that
He feels sad,	<i>whenever</i>	(=at any time in which) he thinks of his lost friend
My friends inquired	<i>when</i>	I should return

Concession or Contrast

<i>Principal</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>Dependent</i>
He sold that house,	<i>when</i>	(=although) it was the best he had

Purpose, Cause, or Reason.

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
We never understood	<i>why</i>	(=the reason for which) he acted so

Place.

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
We find flowers,	<i>where</i>	(=in a place in which) we expected only weeds
We find flowers,	<i>wherever</i>	(=in any places in which) we wander
He did not tell us	<i>whence</i>	(=the place from which) he had come

Respect.

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
He did not tell us	<i>where</i>	(=in what point) we were wrong
We cannot perceive	<i>where</i>	(=in what respect) the difference lies

Manner or Means

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
Let me ask you,	<i>how</i>	(=by what means or in what manner) you did this

State or Condition

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
Let me ask you,	<i>how</i>	(=in what state of health) you are to day

Doubt

<i>Principal</i>		<i>Dependent</i>
He wished to know	<i>whether</i>	(or if) he was ready to start

Note —A Relative adverb can often be substituted for a Relative pronoun, as in the following examples —

- { Ten o'clock is the hour *when* we must start
- { Ten o'clock is the hour *at which* we must start
- { Tell me the reason *why* you left us
- { Tell me the reason *for which* you left us
- { This is the house *where* we once lived
- { This is the house *in which* we once lived

CHAPTER IX —INTERJECTIONS

253 AN Interjection, properly speaking, is not a Part of Speech, since it has no grammatical connection with any other word or words in the sentence

It is merely an *exclamatory sound*, thrown into a sentence to denote some strong feeling or emotion (see §§ 13 and 14).—

<i>Joy</i> —Hurrah! huzza!	<i>Reproof</i> —Fie! fie!
<i>Grief</i> —Oh! ah! alas! alack!	<i>Contempt</i> or <i>ridicule</i> { Stuff! hosh! tut tut!
<i>Amusement</i> —Ha! ha!	{ pooh! pish! pahaw!
<i>Approval</i> —Bravo!	{ tush!
<i>Weariness</i> —Heigh ho!	<i>To call some one</i> —Ho! holla!
<i>Attention</i> —Lo! hark! hush! hush!	

254 There are certain phrases which are used like Interjections to express some strong feeling or emotion —

- Ah me, or ay me!* *Woe is me!*
For shame (=alas on account of shame)
Alack a day (=ah, lack or loss on the day)
Hail, all hail (=be hale or healthy!) *Welcome!* *Well done!*
Good-bye (=God be with ye!) *Adieu!* *Farewell!*
Bad luck to it! *O dear me* (=O dear or costly for me!)
Good gracious! *Good heavens!* *Well to be sure!* (Surprise.)

255 There are certain moods of verbs and parts of speech which can be used in an exclamatory or Interjectional sense —

- (a) *Noun Infinitive* —*To think* that he should have died! (§ 195, e)
 (b) *Subjunctive* —*Would* that I had gained that prize! (*Wish*)
 (c) *Imperative* —*Hear!* *hear!* (*Applause*)
 (d) *Noun* —*Dreadful sight!* *Foolish fellow!* *Fool!* *Dunce!*
 (e) *Adjective* (with some noun understood) —*Strange!* *Shocking!*
 (f) *Adverb* —*How* very kind of you! *How* wonderful!
 (g) *Pronoun* —*What* a sad thing it is!
 (h) *Conjunction* —*If* I could only see him once more!

256 Sometimes in a rapid or exclamatory sentence an Auxiliary verb with its subject is left out, and only the main verb is expressed —

Why dream and wait for him longer? —*Longfellow*
 (= Why dost thou or why do we wait for him longer?)

CHAPTER X — ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES

§ 1 — ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES

257 A SENTENCE which has only *one* Finite verb (expressed or understood) is called a Simple sentence, as—

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Finite Verb</i>
Rain	falls

The word "Simple" means *single*. The sentence is called *single* (or *simple*), because it has only *one* Finite verb in it.

258 A sentence that has *more than one* Finite verb expressed or understood is either Compound or Complex.

Thus — "If I see him to day, I will invite him to my house." This is not a Simple sentence, because it has *two* Finite verbs, viz "see" and "will invite"

Again — "He was well received and (was) listened to with respect, whenever he spoke" This is not a Simple sentence, because it has *three* Finite verbs, viz "*was*" expressed, "*was*" understood, and "*spoke*"

259 There are four distinct parts or elements of which a Simple sentence can be composed, and the analysis of a sentence consists in *decomposing* it (that is, in analysing or breaking it up) into these several parts —

§ 1 —The Subject

§ 2 —Adjuncts to the Subject, *if any*

§ 3 —The Predicate

§ 4 —Adjuncts to the Predicate-verb, *if any*

Of these four elements the first and third (viz the Subject and the Predicate) are essential to the sentence,—that is, the sentence could not exist without them (see § 3). But the second and fourth (viz the Adjuncts to the Subject or to the Predicate verb) are not essential. They are mere additions, which may or may not be present, and could be removed without destroying the sentence

260 I The Subject must be either a *Noun* or something that has the force of a Noun

II The additions or Adjuncts to the Subject (if there are any) must be either *Adjectives* or words that have the force of an Adjective. They have hence been called *Attributive Adjuncts*. (They are sometimes also called the *Enlargement of the Subject*)

III The Predicate must either be a *Finite verb* or it must contain one

IV The additions or Adjuncts to the Predicate-verb (if there are any) must be either *Adverbs* or words that have the force of an Adverb. They have hence been called *Adverbial Adjuncts*. (Sometimes also they have been called the *Extension of the Predicate*)

I Subject	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject).	III Predicate verb	IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Predicate)
A tiger The horse	fierce tired	was shot will sleep	to day soundly.

The Subject

261 The Subject can be expressed in several different forms, all of which (as you have already learnt) are either Nouns or words that have the force of a Noun —

	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Predicates</i>
(a) { <i>A Noun</i>	Rain	is falling
<i>A Noun understood</i>	The virtuous (men)	will prosper
(b) <i>A Pronoun</i>	We	must go
(c) <i>A Noun-Infinitive</i>	To work	is healthy
(d) <i>A Gerund</i>	Working	is healthy
(e) <i>A Phrase</i>	How to do this	is doubtful.

Note 1 — The student should observe that the above list of forms in which the Subject can be expressed tallies with that given in § 22, except that (f) a *Clause* has been omitted. A clause, as will be afterwards shown, belongs to Complex and Compound sentences.

Note 2 — When a Noun-Infinitive is used as Subject, it is sometimes placed after the Predicate, and is in apposition to the pronoun "it."

It is sad to see this = It — is — to see this — is sad

Attributive Adjuncts (to the Subject)

262 It has been explained already that all such additions *qualify the Subject*, and hence they are either adjectives or words having the force of an adjective.

Note — The Definite and Indefinite articles, although properly speaking they belong to the class of Demonstrative adjectives, are not counted as Adjuncts in the analysis of sentences.

263 The principal kinds of Attributive Adjuncts are —

(a) An Adjective, as—

A *heavy* shower fell to day

Here *heavy* is something added to the meaning of the Subject "shower," because it shows what kind of shower is meant.

(b) A Participle or Verbal Adjective, see § 103 (1) —

A *fertilising* shower fell to day

Here *fertilising* is something added to the meaning of the Subject, because it shows what kind of work the shower is expected to do.

(c) A Gerundial Infinitive, see § 103 (5) and § 196 (b) —

Water *to drink* is scarce in this place

Here *to drink* shows the purpose for which the water will be used, and like an adjective it qualifies the noun "water."

(d) A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive case, § 103 (4)

My son's teacher called here to-day

Here *my son's* is something added to the subject, and has the same force as an adjective would have in qualifying the noun "teacher."

- (e) A Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective, § 103 (3)

The *village* watchman fell asleep in the night
Drinking water is scarce in this place

- (f) A Noun in Apposition, see § 19 —

Alexander, *the King* of Macedon, conquered Persia.

- (g) A Preposition with its Object, see § 103 (6) —

A man *of virtue* (= a virtuous man) will not tell a lie

- (h) An Adverb with some Participle omitted, § 103 (2)

The *then* king = the then (reigning) king

The Predicate

264 The Predicate must be either a Finite verb or it must contain one. If the verb is of such a nature, that it cannot by itself make a *complete* sense (as required by the definition given in § 1), but must have some word or words placed after it for this purpose, any such word or words must be considered parts of the predicate. All possible forms of a Predicate are shown in the following scheme —

Subject	PREDICATE		
	Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	Complement with qualifying words
1 { A hog The snake	grunts was killed		a good scholar to be severely punished
2 { My son The thief	became was ordered		
3 { The garden The teacher	killed can teach	that poisonous snake (a) my sons (b) Euclid	
4 They	found	the weary man	sound asleep

In (1) we have first an Intransitive verb of Complete Predication (see § 152), and then a Transitive verb in the Passive voice. Neither of these requires either an Object or a Complement. So the verb alone makes up the Predicate.

In (2) we have first an Intransitive verb of Incomplete Predication (see § 153), and then a Factitive verb in the Passive voice (see § 165). Each of these requires a Complement to make the predication complete.

In (3) we have first a Transitive verb with a single Object (see § 146), and then a Transitive verb with a double Object (see § 148).

Each of these requires the Object (single or double) to be expressed, before the predication can be complete

In (4) we have a Facitive verb in the Active voice, which therefore requires both an Object and a Complement (see § 149)

Note 1 — If the Object or Complement has any qualifying words attached to it, these can be mentioned with it in the same column.

Thus in the complement "a good scholar," there is no need to make a separate column for the qualifying adjective "good"

Again, in the complement "to be severely punished," there is no need of a separate column for the qualifying adverb "severely"

Again, in stating the object "that poisonous snake," there is no need of a separate column for the qualifying adjectives "that" and "poisonous"

Note 2 — An Auxiliary verb may be put in the same column with the Principal verb. Thus in stating "can teach," we need not give one column for "can" and another for "teach"

Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate)

265 Anything which qualifies the action of the verb (by saying something about the time, manner, place, cause, means, instrument, purpose, or any other circumstance) is called an Adjunct or addition to the Predicate

All such additions, since they qualify the verb, must be either adverbs or words having the force of an adverb

266 The principal kinds of Adverbial adjuncts are —

- (a) *Adverb* — He sleeps soundly
- (b) *Adverbial Phrase* — They walked side by side
- (c) *Adjective* — He went away sad. He stood alone
- (d) *Participle* — He went away vexed and disappointed
- (e) *Gerundial Infinitive* — He came to see the horse
- (f) *Adverbial Objective* — He walked all day. He walked ten miles
- (g) *Preposition with Object* — He fell into a deep well
- (h) *Absolute Phrase* — We all started, he remaining behind

Examples of Analysis

1 A darwesh, travelling through Tartary, having arrived at the town of Balkh, entered the king's palace by mistake, thinking it to be a public inn or *serai*

2 My father taught all his sons Euclid with much success

3 Alexander, the King of Macedon, was surnamed the Great after his conquest of the Persian Empire

4 The man employed for this purpose caught the thief stealing a watch

5 The merchant, having much property to sell, caused all his goods to be conveyed on camels, there being no railway in that particular part of the country

6, A gentleman of wealth and position, living in London, some sixty years ago, had a country seat in Kent, some forty miles from the metropolis

I Subject.	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject)	III PREDICATE.			IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb or Predicate)
		Finite Verb	Object with qualifying word,	Complement with qualifying words	
1 A Darwesh	(a) travelling through Tartary (b) having arrived at the town of Balkh	entered	the king's palace		(a) by mistake (b) thinking it to be a public inn or serai
2 Father	my	taught	(a) all his sons (b) Fuchid		with much success.
3 Alexander	the king of Macedon	was sur- named		the Great	after his conquest of the Persian Empire
4 The man	employed for the purpose	caught	the thief	stealing a watch	
5 The merchant	having much property to sell	caused	all his goods	to be conveyed on camels	there being no railway in that particular part of the country
6 A gentleman	(a) of wealth and position (b) living in London (c) some sixty years ago	had	a country seat		(a) in Kent (b) some forty miles from the metro- polis.

Analyse the following Simple sentences according to the model —

1 A certain fowler, having fixed his net, withdrew to a little distance for the sake of allowing the birds to come

2 The king of the pigeons was by chance passing through the sky at this time with a troop of followers

3 He and they caught sight of the rice grains scattered by the fowler near the net

4 The king of the pigeons then asked his rice loving followers this question—

5 Why are rice grains lying here in this lonely place?

6 We will see into this thing

7 We must be cautious in our movements

8 One concerted pigeon among the rest gave them bad advice

9 He told them to fly down to the rice grains for the sake of satisfying their hunger

10 Having flown down and listened to this bad advice, they began to peck up and swallow the grains against the advice of their king

11 On their beginning to peck they were all caught in the net

12 Then they blamed their rash and imprudent friend for having given them such bad advice

13 They ought rather to have blamed themselves for having listened to him

14 The king now told them what to do

15 At one moment and with one united movement springing suddenly up fly off with the net

16 Small things become strong by being united among themselves

17 Even mad elephants can be held fast by a rope made of thin blades of grass

18 The pigeons acted on this advice

19 Making a sudden spring together, they flew up into the air, carrying the net with them

20 At first the fowler hoped to see them come down again to the earth

21 But they passed out of sight with the net about them

22 In this way the fowler lost both his net and the pigeons

23 The pigeons then said to their king —“O king, what is the next thing to be done?”

24 The king directed them to a certain place

25 There his friend, the king of the mice, received them kindly

26 The king of the mice set them all free by nibbling through the net

27 Thus the whole troop of pigeons escaped by means of union

28 All men should profit by this lesson.

29 A chariot will not go on a single wheel

30 A creeper, having nothing to support it, must fall to the earth

§ 2 — ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES

267 A **Compound sentence** is one made up of two or more **Co-ordinate** (that is, equal or independent) clauses

The clauses of which a Compound sentence is made up are joined together by any of the *Co-ordinative Conjunctions* described in § 249 (See "clause" defined in § 5)

- (1) The sun rose with power, *and* the fog dispersed (*Cumulative*)
- (2) Either he must leave the house *or* I (must leave the house) (*Alternative*)
- (3) He called at my house, *but* I did not see him (*Adversative*)
- (4) He came back tired, *for* he had walked all day (*Illative*)

268. Co-ordinate clauses can also be joined together by a **Relative pronoun or adverb**, provided it is used in a **Continuative**, and not in a **Restrictive** sense (see § 134)

He slew all the prisoners, *which* (=and this) was a very barbarous act

He is clever at planting young trees, *for which* purpose (=and for this purpose) every one is glad to employ him

He went to London, *where* (=and there) he stayed ten days

Immense saw mills have been erected near Rangoon and Moulmein, *which* (=and these towns) are situated at the mouths of the two great rivers of Burma

269 Contracted Sentences — Compound sentences often appear in a contracted or shortened form, so as to avoid the needless repetition of the same word —

(a) When there are *two Predicates to the same Subject*, there is no need to mention the Subject more than once —

- (1) The sun rose and (the sun) filled the sky with light
- (2) He called at my house, but (he) left soon after

(b) When there are *two Subjects to the same Predicate*, we need not mention the Predicate more than once —

- (1) He as well as you is guilty (=He is guilty as well as you are guilty) (*Cumulative*)
- (2) Either this man sinned or his parents (sinned) (*Alternative*)
- (3) He is poor, but (he is) honest (*Adversative*)
- (4) He is diligent, and therefore (he is) prosperous (*Illative*)

Note 1 — When two nouns are joined by "*and*," they are not two separate subjects to the same verb, but *one* compound subject to the Plural verb following (see § 295) —

The dog and its master ran out of the house

In some instances, such as the following, the two Subjects united by "*and*" are inseparable —

He and I are great friends

Youth and experience seldom exist together

Here we cannot split up either of the above sentences into two separate clauses. Thus we cannot say, "He is a great friend, and I am a great friend", nor can we say, "Youth seldom exists together, and experience seldom exists together."

Note 2 — When two nouns are so united by the conjunction "*and*", as to denote a single fact, or what is considered to be a single fact, the nouns cannot be separated so to become the Subjects of separate clauses. See § 395, (a), (b)

The great poet-and scholar is dead

Curry-and rice was his favourite dish

Note 3 — When two nouns or phrases are connected by the conjunction "*or*," and the "*or*" is not used in an alternative sense, they should be considered as constituting a single Subject —

A tribe or caste is part of a nation

How to sing or how to spell was never taught at that school.

270 Omission of the Conjunction "*and*"—Alternative conjunctions, Adversative conjunctions, and Illative conjunctions are never omitted. But the Cumulative conjunction "*and*" can be left out, when the aim of the writer is to give a string of sentences, all bearing upon one central fact. Only the last sentence or the last verb should have "*and*" prefixed to it in such a case.

The uses and power of steam have been thus described, one single word standing as subject to no less than twenty-six Finite verbs or predicates —

What will not the steam engine do? It propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls, drives, blasts, digs, cuts, saws, planes, bores, blows, forges, hammers, files, polishes, rivets, cards, spins, winds, weaves, coins, prints, and does more things than I can think of or enumerate.

Rules and Model

271 The process of analysing Compound sentences can be described under the following rules —

(a) Pick out the Finite verb of each clause

(b) If the Finite verb is understood, but not expressed, supply it.

(c) Pick out the Subject to each Finite verb in succession

(d) If the Subject to any Finite verb is understood, but not expressed, supply it.

(e) Then write out each clause with its Subject, Predicate, and Adjuncts (if there are any Adjuncts) in full

(f) Pick out the Connective word, by which any one clause is joined to any other clause

- (1) His greatest enemy, as well as his best friends, repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge

A His greatest enemy repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge

B His best friends repeatedly declared him to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge

Connective —As well as

- (2) Either you or your son must sign his name

A You must sign your name

B Your son must sign his name

Connectives —Either or

- (3) He, not I, is certainly the author of that plan

A He is certainly the author of that plan

B I am certainly not the author of that plan

Connective —(nd) Here no connective is required

Compound Sentences to be Analysed

- 1 He as well as you is tired of all this work (*Two clauses*)
- 2 Either he or his friend must have opened the door, for no other person had the key (*Three clauses*)
- 3 The Lord knoweth the way of the righteous, but the way of the ungodly shall perish (*Two clauses*)
- 4 He either does not or will not understand the orders given to him (*Two clauses*)
- 5 How to do this or how to do that was never explained to us, and so we did neither (*Two clauses*)
- 6 He acts like a child, for now he laughs, and then he cries, he goes first here, and then there, and no one knows what to do with him (*Six clauses*)
- 7 They found the horse indeed, but it distressed them to see it, for it was lame (*Three clauses*)
- 8 The spaniel frisked and gambolled about the lion, barked at him, would now scrape and tear at his head with his claws, then seize him by the ear and bite and pull, but nothing could aggravate the noble beast (*Nine clauses*)
- 9 The life of a mosquito is brief, but very active, the female lives for two or three weeks, lays its eggs and dies (*Five clauses*)

The Clauses	Connective	I Subject	II Adjective Adjectives (to Sub- ject)	III Predicate			IV Adverbial Adverbs (to Verb of Predicate)
				Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	Complement with qualifying words	
Example (1)	as well as	enemy	his greatest	declared	him	to be innocent of the fault laid to his charge	repeatedly
				declared	him	to be innocent of the fault, etc	repeatedly
Example (2)	either	you	nil	must sign	your name	nil	(a) at once (b) on that paper
	or	your son	nil	must sign	his name	nil	(a) at once (b) on that paper
Example (3)	nil	He	nil	is	nil	the author of that plan	certainly
		I	nil	am not	nil	the author of that plan	certainly

- 10 At length I to the boy called out,
 He stopped his horses at the word,
 But neither cry, nor voice, nor shout,
 Nor aught else like it could be heard (*Six clauses*)
- 11 Sir Ralph the Rover tore his hair,
 And beat his breast in his despair,
 The waves rush in on every side,
 And the ship sinks down beneath the tide (*Four clauses*)
- 12 The Brahmins or astrologers promise success to the divers,
 for they expect a liberal gift of pearls as a reward for the happy sense
 of confidence imparted by them to those men (*Two clauses*)

§ 3 — ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES

272 A Complex sentence consists of a Principal clause with one or more Subordinate clauses depending on it

The clause which contains the *main verb* of the entire complex sentence is called the **Principal clause**

Note — It has been said that the Principal clause is that which contains "the principal subject and predicate" But this is not true, for sometimes there is no principal subject, the subject itself being a Subordinate clause —

Subject (Subord. clause)
 Who steals my purse

Predicate (Prin. clause)
 steals trash

273 Subordinate and Co-ordinate Clauses — A Subordinate clause is a *component part* of some other clause, in which it does the work (without possessing the form) of a Noun, Adjective, or Adverb

A Co-ordinate clause is not a component part of any other clause, but forms a *complete grammatical whole* by itself

274 There are three kinds of Subordinate clauses, — the **Noun-Clause**, the **Adjective-Clause**, and the **Adverb-Clause** and these are defined as follows —

I *A Noun-Clause is one which does the work of a Noun in relation to some other clause*

II *An Adjective-Clause is one which does the work of an Adjective in relation to some other clause*

III *An Adverb-Clause is one which does the work of an Adverb in relation to some other clause*

I *The Noun-Clause*

275 There are three kinds of connectives, by which a Noun Clause can be introduced —

(1) The Conjunction "*that*" in the sense of Apposition
(see § 251, a) —

We did not know *that* he would leave us so soon

(2) A Relative or Interrogative adverb, provided that
no Antecedent is expressed —

Where he is going is not known to any one (Relat.)

Let us inquire *whether* he will go to day (Interrog.)

Note —The conjunction "*if*" can be used for "*whether*" as an
Interrogative adverb —

Let us inquire *if* (= *whether*) he will go to day

(3) A Relative or Interrogative pronoun, provided that
no Antecedent is expressed —

Who steals my purse steals trash (Relat.)

I beg to inquire *who* came here to day (Interrog.)

276 The Noun-Clause, since it does the work of a
Noun, can be—

(a) The Subject to a Verb

(b) The Object to a Verb

(c) The Object to a Preposition

(d) The Complement to a Verb

(e) In Apposition to a Noun

(a) Subject to a Verb, see § 22 (f) —

Where he is going is not known to any one

That he will come back soon is certain

Whom the gods love die young — I overheard

(b) Object to a Verb, see § 24 (f) —

He promised *that* he would soon pay back the debt.

I shall be glad to know *when* he will pay it

Perceiving *what* a mistake he had made, he yielded

(c) Object to a Preposition, see § 241 (c) —

My success in future depends upon *who* is placed over me

This book will sell for *what* it is worth

Except *that* he speaks too fast he is an excellent teacher

(d) Complement to a Verb, see § 149 and § 153 —

This is exactly *what* I expected

My question was *whether* there was any hope of his recovery.

This is *what* no one can understand

(e) In Apposition to a Noun, see § 20 —

The news *that he intended to come* gave us much pleasure
The reason *why he was so sad* is unknown to me

Here the clause "that he intended to come" is in apposition to the noun "news" This is the reason why the conjunction "*that*" is said to signify apposition (§ 251, a)

277 The conjunction "*that*" (in the sense of apposition) is often left out after a verb, provided that the noun with which the clause is in apposition is not expressed —

It seems (that) *he is not clever*

NB — The conjunction "*that*" is never left out *when the noun is expressed* —

The fact *he is not clever* gives us much pain

This is quite inadmissible Since the noun "*fact*" is expressed, the appositional clause "*he is not clever*" must be introduced by the conjunction "*that*"

278 A sentence consisting of the very words spoken by any one may be the Subject or Object to a verb, and must therefore be considered as an example of a Noun-Clause —

"I have seen this man before," was the only thing that he said
The sleeper started up from his bed, shouting, 'I am bitten'

Examples of the Noun-Clause

Pick out the Noun-Clause and say whether it is the Subject to some Verb, or the Object to some Verb, or the Object to some Preposition, or the Complement to some Verb, or in Apposition to some noun expressed Supply the Conjunction "that" wherever it has been left out —

- 1 No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive
- 2 How this came to pass is not known to any one
- 3 What is sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander
- 4 It is quite evident rain will fall to day
- 5 The Equator shows where days and nights are of equal length
- 6 What is one man's meat is another man's poison
- 7 You must know that the air is never quite at rest.
- 8 I think I shall never clearly understand this
- 9 We heard the school would open in ten days' time
- 10 The name "Volcano" indicates the belief of the Ancient Greeks, that the burning hills of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan

- 11 Even a feather shows which way the wind is blowing
 12 Whatever faculty man has is improved by use
 13 The fool hath said in his heart, "There is no God"
 14 "Know thyself," was the advice given us by a Greek sage
 15 He did not know that his father had been shot
 16 The fact that you have not signed your name to a letter shows that you lack moral courage
 17 It will be easily understood how useful even the simplest weapons were to the first dwellers on the earth
 18 The question first occurring to the mind of a savage is how is fire to be made
 19 Common sense soon taught him that fire could be produced by rubbing two sticks together
 20 In chipping their flint weapons men must have seen that fire occasionally flashed out
 21 We learn from travellers that savages can produce fire in a few seconds
 22 He shouted out to the thief, "Leave this house"
 23 We cannot rely on what he says
 24 It is quite evident you have made a mistake
 25 It was very unfortunate that you were taken ill
 26 He was a man of fine character except that he was rather timid

II The Adjective-Clause

279 An Adjective-Clause does the work of an Adjective to some noun or pronoun in some other clause

The only kind of connective word by which an Adjective-Clause can be introduced is a Relative pronoun or Relative adverb, and then only when the Relative is used in a Restrictive sense (see § 134)

If the Relative is used in a Continuative sense, the sentence is Compound, and not Complex (see § 268)

- 1 Among the men, *who came here to day*, not one turned out to be honest

Here the italicised clause qualifies or restricts "*men*"

- 2 We found the wolf lying dead in the very place *where* (= *in which*) *it was shot*

Here the italicised clause qualifies or restricts "*place*"

280 The Relative pronoun, provided it would be in the Objective case, and provided its sense is Restrictive, and not Continuative (§ 134), is often left out (see § 150)

The food he needed (= *which* or *that* he needed) was not procured without a great deal of trouble

Pick out the Adjective-Clause or Clauses in each of the following examples, and point out the noun or pronoun qualified by it in some other clause. If the Relative pronoun has been omitted anywhere, supply it —

- 1 Man has the power of making instruments, which bring into view stars, whose light has taken a thousand years to reach the earth
- 2 The first thing that man needed was some sharp edged tool
- 3 The exact time when the theft was committed was never found out
- 4 The man by whom the theft was committed has been caught
- 5 The house we lived in has fallen down
- 6 This is the same story that I heard ten years ago
- 7 It's an ill wind that blows no one any good
- 8 This is not such a book as I should have chosen
- 9 He made his living by the presents he received from the men he served
- 10 All that glitters is not gold
- 11 In ponds from which but a week before the wind blew clouds of dust, men now catch the re animated fish
- 12 A river is joined at places by tributaries that swell its waters
- 13 Of what use is a knowledge of books to him who fails to practise virtue?
- 14 Fortune selects him for her lord, who reflects before acting
- 15 Springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil
- 16 Nuncoomu prepared to die with that quiet fortitude with which the Bengalee, so backward, as a rule, in personal conflict, often encounters calamities for which there is no remedy
- 17 I have seen the house where Shakespeare was born
- 18 The plan you acted on has answered well
- 19 They accepted every plan we proposed
- 20 Surely the story you are telling me is not true
- 21 Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel just
- 22 The night is long that never finds the day
- 23 He travelled home by the way his father showed him
- 24 There are times when every one feels a little sad
- 25 Such men as are false to their friends should always be avoided
- 26 I forgot to tell you the time when I shall return

III The Adverb-Clause.

281 An Adverb-Clause does the work of an Adverb to some verb, adjective, or adverb in some other clause

An Adverb-Clause can be introduced by any of the *Subordinative* conjunctions, excepting the conjunction "*that*," when it is used in the sense of Apposition (See § 275)

<i>Principal Clause</i>	<i>Adverb-Clause</i>	<i>Subord. Conjunction</i>
He will succeed,	<i>because</i> he works hard	<i>Cause</i>
He worked so hard,	<i>that</i> he was quite tired	<i>Effect</i>
He took medicine,	<i>that</i> he might get well	<i>Purpose</i>
I will do this,	<i>if</i> I am allowed	<i>Condition</i>
He is honest,	<i>although</i> he is poor	<i>Contrast</i>
He likes you <i>more</i>	<i>than</i> (he likes) me	<i>Comparison</i>
Men will reap	<i>as</i> they sow	<i>Extent or Manner</i>
The sun will rise,	<i>so long as</i> the world lasts	<i>Time</i>

Note—The Subordinative conjunctions have been described and enumerated in § 251. Besides these there is the class of Subordinative connectives, which in § 252 are enumerated under the name of Relative and Interrogative adverbs. These can be used for Noun-clauses and Adjective clauses as well as for Adverb clauses.

282 After the conjunctions *though*, *when*, *unless*, *till*, *if*, *whether*—*or*, and *while*, the Predicate-verb “to be” is often understood —

- { Though much alarmed at the news, he did not lose all hope
 - { Though *he was* much alarmed, etc., he did not lose all hope
 - { He sprained his foot, while walking in the dark
 - { He sprained his foot, while *he was* walking in the dark
 - { His opinion, whether right or wrong, does not concern me
 - { His opinion, whether *it is* right or wrong does not concern me
- This must be kept, till (*it is*) called for

283 When an Adverb-Clause is introduced by “*than*,” its Predicate verb is not always expressed, but can be understood or borrowed from the clause on which it depends —

- He loves you better than (he loves) me
- He loves you better than I (love) you

284 The Relative “*who*” or “*which*” makes an Adverb-Clause, whenever it is substituted for a Subordinative conjunction signifying Cause or Purpose (Sec § 134, *Note*)

Cause—They should pardon my son, *who* (= *because he*) has never committed such a fault before

Purpose—A man was sent, *who* should deliver (= *that he might* deliver) the message

Note—The student can now therefore take note that four different kinds of clauses can be introduced by the Relative “*who*” or “*which*” —(1) A *Co-ordinate Clause*, where the Relative is used in a *Continuative* sense, see § 134 and § 268. This belongs to Compound sentences. (2) A *Noun-Clause*, where no Antecedent to the Relative is expressed, see § 275. This belongs to Complex sentences. (3) An *Adjective Clause*, where the Relative is used in a *Restrictive* sense, see § 134 and § 279. This belongs to Complex sentences. (4) An *Adverb Clause*, where the Relative is used in the sense of Cause or Purpose. This also belongs to Complex sentences.

Pick out the Adverb-Clause or Clauses in the following Show what word or phrase is qualified by every such clause, and what Adverbial relation is denoted thereby —

- 1 He will succeed, because he has worked hard
- 2 Men engage in some work, that they may earn a living
- 3 He threatened to beat him, unless he confessed
- 4 He was always honest, though he was poor
- 5 This is not true, so far as I can tell
- 6 He likes you as much as I do
- 7 He tried for a long time before he succeeded
- 8 Let us go to bed, as it is now late
- 9 He walked with care, lest he should stumble
- 10 I agree to this, provided you sign your name
- 11 Though he punish me, yet will I trust in him
- 12 He returned home, after he had finished the work
- 13 Prove a friend, before you trust him
- 14 When the cat's away, the mice will play
- 15 He persevered so steadily, that he succeeded at last
- 16 I will let off this man, who has been well punished already
- 17 He sees very well, considering that he is sixty years of age
- 18 I gave him a prize, that he might work harder next year
- 19 They deserted their former associate, who had become poor and unfortunate
- 20 As the tree falls, so will it lie
- 21 Ever since we left the house, it has not ceased raining
- 22 I would be glad to lend you that money, if I had as much in my own pocket
- 23 Murder, though it have no tongue, will yet speak
- 24 Unless you leave the house at once, I will send for a policeman
- 25 A jackal, while prowling about the suburbs of a town, slipped into an indigo tank, and not being able to get out he laid himself down, so that he might be taken for dead
- 26 The owner of the tank, when he beheld what seemed to be a dead jackal, carried the body into the jungle and there flung it down
- 27 This one fact, if closely examined, proves the man to be guilty
- 28 He is an honest man, though poor, and industrious, though old and rather infirm
- 29 Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven — *Milton*.
- 30 If the trunk of a tree, when young and pliable, is not made to grow straight, it cannot be straightened afterwards, when old and stiff
- 31 A rabbit cannot run so swiftly as a hare, but it is more skilful than a hare in digging the ground and boring holes under the earth
- 32 The wild grey rabbit is not so large as the tame rabbit kept in a cage

Example of a mixed sentence analysed

The governor of the town, who was present, called out with a loud voice and ordered Androcles to explain how a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden, that it became converted into a harmless animal, which preferred rather to spare its victim than to devour him.

The Clause	Kind of Clause	Connective	I Subject	II Attributive Adjuncts (to Subject)	III PREDICATE		IV Adverbial Adjuncts (to Verb of Predicate).
					Finite Verb	Object with qualifying words	
A. The governor of the town cried out with a loud voice,	Principal Clause		the governor	of the town	cried out	nil	with a loud voice,
B. Who was present,	Co ordinate to A (§ 306)	who	who	nil	was	nil	present
C. And ordered Androcles to explain	Co ordinate to A	and	(the governor)	nil	ordered	Androcles	to explain, etc
D. How a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden,	Noun Clause subject to <i>forgot</i> in C	how	a beast	savage	could have forgotten	its innate disposition	(a) so that etc (b) all of a sudden
E. That it became converted into a harmless animal,	Adverb Clause in continuation of <i>so in D</i>	that	it	nil	became	nil	converted into a harmless animal, which etc
F. Which preferred rather to spare its victim	Adject Clause to <i>animal in E</i>	which	which	nil	preferred	to spare its victim	rather than, etc
G. Than devour him.	Adverb Clause in continuation of <i>rather in F</i>	than	(it)	nil	(preferred)	to devour him	nil

Miscellaneous Examples for Analysis

1 Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the wicked, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful (*Four clauses*)

2 Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I sank into the water (*Three clauses*)

3 A blind man, carrying a lantern in his hand and a pitcher on his shoulder, was walking along one night, when he was met by a thoughtless young fellow, who laughed at him and said, "O fool! day and night must be alike to you of what use can this lamp be to you?" (*Six clauses*)

4 If man had had a skin thickly covered with hair or wool, as an ape or sheep has, he could not have moved from one climate to another with comfort, and so he is made naked, but not without the power of improving his condition, whenever he may be (*Seven clauses*)

5 Even as the driver checks a restive steed, so do thou, if thou art wise, restrain thy passion, which, if it runs wild, will hurry thee away (*Five clauses*)

6 Sometimes you may trace a river to a definite spring, but you very soon assure yourself that such springs are fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil, and which through some orifice, that it has found or formed, comes to the light of day (*Seven clauses*)

7 If you put the end of an iron rod in the fire and hold it there, you do something more than heat that end, for you heat the whole of it up to the end that you hold in your hand (*Five clauses*) (On the prepositional use of "than," see § 244)

8 In his sixteenth year Louis Carnaro had a fall by which he broke an arm and a leg (*Two clauses*)

With some men at that time so great a hurt would have been difficult to cure or might even have occasioned death, but with Carnaro, whose body was in the soundest condition, it was cured in a very short time (*Four clauses*)

9 Whoso keepeth the law is a wise son, but he that is a companion of riotous men shameth his father (*Four clauses*)

10 They expected that the king would either treat the matter as a pleasant jest or threaten the insolent darwesh with punishment, but to their surprise he was neither amused nor angry, but seriously attentive to the words of the darwesh (*Six clauses*)

11 Sir Isaac Newton, after deep meditation, discovered that there was a law in nature called attraction, by virtue of which every particle of matter that the world is composed of draws towards itself every other particle of matter with a force which is proportionate to its mass and distance (*Five clauses*)

12 After his schooling was finished his father, desiring him to be a merchant like himself, gave him a ship freighted with various sorts of merchandise, so that he might go and trade about the world and grow rich, and become a help to his parents, who were now advanced in age (*Seven clauses*)

13 The rootlets at the ends of these fibres strike into the ground,

and when they have become well fixed in the earth, the sap which previously was flowing downwards changes its direction and flows upwards (*Five clauses*)

14. Stern Daughter of the voice of God,
 O Duty, if that name thou love,
 Who art a light to guide, a rod
 To check the erring, and reprove,—
 Thou who art victory and law,
 When empty terrors overawe,—
 From vain temptations dost set free
 And calm'st the weary strife of frail humanity !
 There are who ask not if thine eye
 Be on them, who in love and truth,
 Where no forgiving is, rely
 Upon the genial sense of youth (*Twelve clauses*)

CHAPTER XI

THE SAME WORD USED AS DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH

- A.** *Indef Article* The sportsman shot *a* tiger
Prep He has gone *a* hunting
- All** *Adj of Quantity* He ate *all* the bread
Indef Num Adj We must *all* die some day
Adv used as Noun We lost our *all* on that day
- Any** *Adv* *All* bloodless lay the untrodden snow
Adj of Quantity Have you *any* bread ?
Adv of Qu We must stop and rest before going *any* farther
Num Adjective Did you bring *any* letters ?
Dem Adjective Take *any* book that you like best
- As** (a) *Relative pronoun* —
 He is not such a fool *as* he looks
 As many men *as* came were caught
 Yours is not the same book *as* mine
- (b) *Relative adverb* (or *subordinative conjunction*) —
Time He trembled *as* (at what time) he spoke
Manner Do not act *as* (in what manner) he did
State He took it just *as* (in what state) it was
 { He is not *as* (to that extent) clever *as* (to what extent) you are
Extent { Hot *as* (to whatever extent) the sun is (= however hot the sun is), we must go out in it
Reason The air is now cool, *as* (for what reason or for the reason that) the rain has fallen
- (c) *In Elliptical Phrases* —all of these imply "extent."
 I condemn you *as* a judge (to what extent or so far as I am a judge), but *as* a man (to what extent I am a man), I pity you

I will inquire again as to (to what extent the question relates to) that matter

As regards this journey (to what extent the question regards this journey), we can now decide nothing

- Better** *Comp Adj* My book is a *better* one than yours
Comp Adv You are working *better* to day
Adj used as Noun Do not despise your *bettors*
- Both** *Def Num Adj* *Both* the men have arrived
- But** *Conj Co ord* He is *both* a fool and a knave
Adv There is *but* (only) one man present
Prep Who could have done this *but* (except) him?
 I cannot *but* believe that you are lost (I cannot believe anything *except* that, etc.)
Conj Co ord He is a man of common sense, *but* not learned in books
Conj Subord There was no one present *but* (he) pitied (= who did not pity) the lame horse (Here the "but" has the force of a Relative + Negative, § 133)
 Perdition catch my soul, *but* I love thee —
Shakespeare (May perdition catch my soul, *if* I do not love thee)
- Either** *Distrib Adj* He is ruined in *either* case
Conj Co ord He is *either* a fool or a knave
- Else** *Adv* We could not catch any one *else*
Conj Co ord He has some real sorrow, *else* he would not weep as he does
- Enough** *Adj of Quantity* He has eaten *enough* bread
Adj of Number We have *enough* loaves
Adj used as Noun He had *enough* to do
- Half** *Adj of Quantity* *Half* measures do not succeed
Adj used as Noun One *half* of his task is now done
Adv of Quantity He was *half* dead with fear
- Little** *Adj of Quality* A *little* blow may give much pain
Adj of Quantity He has eaten a *little* bread
Adv of Quantity Let us wait here a *little*
Adj used as Noun Man wants but *little* here below
- More** *Adj of Quantity* He eats *more* bread than you
Adj used as Noun *More* is done than was expected
Adv of Quantity I like him *more* than (I like) you
Adj of Number *More* men came to-day than yesterday
Adv of Number I saw him once *more*
- Much** *Adj of Quantity* He has wasted *much* time
Adv of Quantity I am *much* pleased with your son.
Adj used as Noun You will not get *much* from me
- Neither** *Adj Distrib* I agree with *neither* side
Conj Co ord *Neither* you nor I can do that
- Near** *Adv* Stand *near*, while I speak to you
Prep There is a fine tree *near* our house
Adj He is a *near* relative of mine

- Needs** *Verb* The earth is very dry and *needs* rain
Adv He must *needs* know the reason of this, § 235
Noun Our *needs* or wants are few
- One** *Def Num. Adj* There is but *one* rupee left
Indef Dem Pron One is apt to waste *one's* time
Def Dem Pron Your horse is white, mine is a black *one*
- Only** *Adj* The *only* dog I had was stolen.
Adv I heard of this *only* yesterday
Conj Co ord Do what you like, *only* (=but whatever you do) keep silence
- Round** *Adj* A square thing does not fit into a *round* hole
Prep Draw a circle *round* a given centre
Adv The flies are flying *round* and *round*
Verb Gama was the first to *round* the Cape of Good Hope
Noun Men must go their daily *round* of duty
- Since** *Prep* I have not seen him *since* Monday last
Adv I took this house four weeks *since*
Conj Subord We must trust you, *since* you are speaking in earnest
- Such** *Def Dem Adj* He is not *such* a man as I expected
Indef Dem Adj He came to me on *such* a day
Def Dem Pron You are a coward, I am not *such*
- That** *Def Dem Adj* I am no admirer of *that* book
Def Dem Pron The light of the sun is brighter than *that* of the moon
Relat Pron The book *that* you gave me is lost
Conj { *Effect* He aimed so well *that* he hit the mark
Apposit He heard *that* you had come
Purpose We must eat *that* we may live
- Than** *Conj Subord* I like this more *than* (I like) *that*
Prep { These workmen, *than* whom I have never seen men more industrious, have left me
He was fond of any drink other *than* wine
- Then** *Adv of Time* He was better *then* than he is now
Conj Co ord I see, *then*, we ought to start at once
- The** *Def Article* *The* ass is a dull animal
Rel Adv of Quantity *The* more, the merrier
Simple Adv of Quantity He worked *the* harder, because he had hopes of success
- Too** *Adv of Quantity* He is *too* fond of play
Conj Co ord We *too* must expect to die some day
- Well** *Adv of Quality* He has done the work very *well*
Adv used as Noun Leave *well* alone
Conj Co ord He has finished his work in time, *well*, I did not expect it of such a lazy man
- What** *Inter Pron* *What* did you say? *What* house is that?
Compound Rel Pron I do not know *what* you mean, § 130
Adverb *What* with illness and *what* with losses, the poor man is almost ruined (see page 272)
- Yet** *Conj Co ord* I have called, *yet* no one answers
Adv of Time You may *yet* (= even now, still) find him.

CHAPTER XII—SYNTAX

§ 1—RELATIONS OF WORDS TO ONE ANOTHER

PARSING CHART

I *Nouns*

Kind of Noun	Gender	Number	Case
Proper Common Collective Material Abstract	Masculine Feminine Common Neuter	Singular Plural	Nominative Possessive Objective

II *Pronouns*

Kind of Pronoun	Gender	Number	Person	Case
Pers { Simple { Reflexive Demons { Definite { Indefinite	Masculine Feminine Common Neuter	Singular Plural	1st 2nd 3rd	Nominative Possessive Objective
Relative Interrogative	Agreeing in Gender, Number, and Person with its antecedent			

III *The Uses of Nouns or Pronouns*

<i>Nom</i> to Verb	<i>Obj</i> to Verb Direct	<i>Obj</i> in Apposition
" as Compl to Verb	" " Indirect	" to Preposition
" in Apposition	" " Retained	" Adverbial
" of Address	" " Cognate	" after certain Ad-
" Absolute	" " Reflexive	jectives
<i>Possessive</i>	" as Compl to Verb	" Interjectional

IV *Adjectives*

The Kind of Adjective			Degree	Use
Proper	Numer	{ Def Indef	Positive Comparative Superlative	Attributive Predicative
Of Quality				
Of Quantity				
Distributive	Demons	{ Def Indef		

V *Adverbs*

Kind	Degree	Use	Attributive Uses
Simple Relative Interrogative	Positive Comparative Superlative	Attributive Predicative	To qualify Verb " " Adjective " " Adverb " " Preposition " " Conjunction " " Sentence

VI *Finite Verbs*

Kind of Verb	Person	Number	Tense	Form
Transitive Intransitive Auxiliary Defective	1st 2nd 3rd	Singular Plural	Present Past Future	Indefinite Continuous Perfect Perf Contin
Mood	Voice			
Indicative Imperative Subjunctive	Active Passive	Agreeing with its subject or subjects, expressed or understood Governing its object or objects, ex- pressed or understood		

VII *Infinitive*

Form	(a) Use as Noun Inf	(b) Use as Gerundial Inf
Indefinite Continuous Perfect Perf Contin	Subject to Verb Object to Verb Complement to Verb Object to Preposition Exclamatory	To qualify— " a Verb " a Noun { Attributively { Predicatively " an Adjective To introduce a Parenthesis

VIII *Participle or Verbal Adjective*

Form	Voice	Kind of Verb	Use.
Present Past Perfect	Active Passive	Transitive Intransitive	Attributive Predicative { Complement Absolute Gerundive

IX *Gerund*

Form	Voice	Kind of Verb
Present Perfect	Active Passive	Transitive Intransitive

X *Conjunctions*

Co ordinative	Subordinative
---------------	---------------

285 Nominative case — See No. III of Parsing Chart

(1) **As Subject to a verb** (see § 59) —

I did this Rain is falling You are tired

(2) **As Subjective Complement to a verb** (see § 153) —

I am the man Caesar was declared emperor

Note — An Infinitive can come between the verb and the noun —

He appeared to be a wise man

(3) **In Apposition with a noun or pronoun in the Nominative case** (see § 19) —

John, the carpenter, has succeeded well in business

(4) **For purposes of Address** (see § 59) —

How art thou fallen, O Caesar!

(5) **In the Absolute construction** (see § 28, a) —

Off we started, he remaining behind

Note. — Without altering the sense, we could substitute the clause "while he remained behind" for the phrase "he remaining behind." In the absolute construction the noun or pronoun is in the Nominative case, because (as we see from this) it is the Subject to the Finite verb that is implied in the Participle.

286 Possessive case — See No III of Parsing Chart
 (a) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case qualifies Nouns and Gerunds as an adjective would do (§ 103, 4) —

My son The barber's shop The tiger's claw — Noun
I was displeased at his going away without leave } Gerund
This was a plan of your contriving } (§ 210)

(b) When two Possessive nouns are in apposition with each other, or are connected by “and,” the apostrophe *s* is not added to the noun that stands first (see § 65) —

Herod married his brother Philip's wife
Maple and Company's firm

(c) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case can be the Complement to a verb, (for Pronouns, see § 116) —

That book is mine, not yours
This shop seems to be a barber's

287 Objective case — See No III of Parsing Chart

(1) As Object to a verb (§ 164, Note) —

(a) *The master teaches Euclid* (Direct)
 (b) *He teaches his sons Euclid* (Indirect)
 (c) *His sons were taught Euclid* (Retained)
 (d) *The river will run its course* (Cognate)
 (e) *He sat himself down* (Reflexive)

(2) As Objective Complement to a verb (§ 153) —

The citizens made him their king

Note — An Infinitive can come between the verb and the noun —

The people considered him to be a wise man

(3) In Apposition with a noun or pronoun in the Objective case (§ 19) —

The people of England beheld Charles I, their king

(4) As Object to a preposition (§ 60) —

He fought against me A house built on sand

(5) Adverbial Objective — so called, because such phrases qualify words as an adverb would do (§ 236, 5) —

He lived ten years (Time) *He walked ten miles* (Space) *This cost ten rupees* (Price) *That box weighs ten seers* (Weight)
The air is a trifle hotter to day (Degree) *Bind him hand and foot* (Attendant circumstance)

(6) Objective after the adjectives “like” or “unlike,”

"near," "next" (This has probably arisen from the omission of the preposition "*to*," which is still sometimes used after these adjectives) —

No man could bend the bow *like him*
The house *nearest the grove* is the one that I prefer

(7) Objective after Interjections or in exclamatory phrases —

Unhappy *me* ! Oh unhappy *man* ! Oh dear *me* !
Foolish *fellow* ! to have wasted his time as he has done !

288 The two uses of Adjectives — See No IV of Posing Chart

(a) Attributive use (§ 102) —

An *industrious* student will generally succeed

(b) Predicative use (§ 102) —

He was *industrious*, and therefore he succeeded

289 Noun or Gerund used as an Adjective (§ 103, 3)

A noun or gerund can be used attributively for an adjective, but not predicatively —

A *village* watchman *Drinking* water
A *sea* captain *Marble* halls A *bathing* place

290 Adjective substituted for Adverb — An adverb qualifying a verb can be changed into an adjective qualifying the subject to the verb. The adjective in this case is an "adverbial adjunct" (§ 266, c) —

He went away *sad* The stars are shining *bright*
And *furious* every chaquis neigh'd — *Campbell*
Dark lowers the tempest overhead — *Longfellow*
And *peaceless* there the lowly sleep — *Mrs. Hemans*
They neither toil nor spin, but *careless* grow — *Thompson*
Slow rises worth, by poverty depressed — *Johnson*

Note 1 — When the adverb qualifies any part of speech except a verb, we cannot substitute an adjective for it. Thus we cannot say "He is *immense* clever" for "He is *immensely* clever"

Note 2 — In poetry an adjective and adverb are sometimes coupled together by "*and*," when the adjective qualifies the subject to the verb, and the adverb qualifies the verb itself —

When *faint* and *wearily* he drags
Along his noontide way — *Southey*
Trip it *deft* and *merrily* — *Scott*
But Sir Richard bore in hand
All the sick men from the land
Very *carefully* and *slow* — *Tennyson*.

291 Pronoun and Antecedent—See Nos. II. and III. of Parsing Chart

(a) A Pronoun must be in the same case, number, and gender as its Antecedent, but in case it depends upon its own sentence (This is called a Concord or Agreement.)

After Caesar was declared *emperor* (Nominative), they slew *him* (Objective)

You must return the *book* (Objective) *which* (Nominative) was lent

(b) A Relative pronoun, if it has two Antecedents, and these are not of the same person, agrees in person with the Antecedent nearest to it —

You are the man who is chosen

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences —

I am the man who seek to help thee in distress. Thou art the man who fleest away in the time of danger. Art thou the chief who brokest the power of the enemy?

292 The two uses of Adverbs—See No. V. of Parsing Chart

(a) **Attributive use** (§ 239) An adverb, when it is used attributively, may qualify anything except a noun or pronoun —

(1) *Adjective* —He is *remarkably* clever

(2) *Verb* —Act *deliberately*, if you act at all

(3) *Other Adverb* —He explained his views *remarkably* well

(4) *Preposition* —The sun stood *exactly* over our heads.

(5) *Conjunction* —You may go *only* if you promise to return

(6) *Sentence* —*Fortunately*, all the thieves were caught

(b) **Predicative use** (§ 239) Here the adverb is Complement (Subjective or Objective) to the verb going before —

(1) *Subjective* —The results will soon be *out* (=published)

(2) *Objective* —We found him quite *well* (=in perfect health)

293 Verb and Subject—See No. VI. of Parsing Chart as to Number and Person

A Finite verb must be in the same number and person as its Subject (§ 170) (This is another Concord or Agreement.)

Make the verbs agree properly with their subjects in the following examples —

When you was here last, you was very fond of reading. The pleasures of life vanishes, when we becomes old and infirm. Thou would have seen the horse, if it had come towards us. School is

broken up and the boys is playing at cricket The Taj Mahal at Agra have stood a great many years You is not the man that I want. I am still as fond of books as when you was here before The movement of most quadrupeds are very swift You wilt be rewarded with a prize for your industry The following plans has been settled The origin of Hindu manners and customs are unknown

294. The Third Person of Verbs—A verb is invariably in the Third person, except when the Subject is a Personal pronoun in the First or Second person (§ 22) —

- (a) *Noun* —A *snake* is crawling through the grass
- (b) *Pronoun*.—*He* returns to us to-morrow
- (c) *Infinitive* —*To err* is human
- (d) *Gerund* —*Sleeping* gives rest to the body
- (e) *Phrase* —*How to do this* was unknown to every one
- (f) *Clause* —*That we must all die* is certain

295 Subjects not of the same Person—(a) When two or more Subjects, not of the same Person, are joined by “*and*,” the verb is in the First person rather than the Second, and in the Second rather than the Third, and *the First person should be mentioned last* —

James and I *are* (=we *are*) great friends

(b) When two Subjects are joined by “*or*” or “*nor*,” the verb agrees in person with the Subject nearest to it —

Either James or I *am* at the top of the class

Either you or James *has* done it

Neither James nor you *were* present

It would be better, however, to repeat the verb for each Subject. The sentences would then be re-written as follows —

• Either James *is* at the top of the class, or I *am*

Either you *have* done it, or James *has*

Neither James *was* present, nor you *were* you

(c) When two Subjects are joined by “*as well as*,” the verb agrees in number and person with the *first* one —

My comrades as well as I myself *were* caught

The reason of this rule is that “My comrades were caught” is the Principal clause, to which the other clause introduced by “*as well as*” is Subordinate

296 Two Singular Nouns with Plural Verb—Two or more Singular nouns, when they are joined by “*and*,” require a verb in the Plural.

A man and his wife *have* come here asking for work

Your horse and mine (=my horse) *are* both at the door

To this rule there are two exceptions —

(a) If the two nouns joined by "*and*" refer to the same person or thing, the verb is Singular, and not Plural, as—

The great scholar and poet *is* dead.

Here "scholar" and "poet" refer to the same man, and the sentence might have been written —

The man, who *was* a great scholar and a great poet, *is* dead

Note — When the article is mentioned *only once*, as in the sentence "*the great scholar and poet*," it stands for both the nouns. This shows that *only one* person (and not two) is intended, and that hence the verb must be singular.

But if the article is mentioned twice, as in the sentence "*the scholar and the poet*," then two distinct persons are intended, and the verb following must be in the plural number, as—

The scholar and the poet *are* dead

(b) If the two nouns joined by "*and*" are regarded as denoting a *single object or notion*, the verb is Singular, as—

Truth and honesty *is* the best policy. Curry and rice *was* his favourite food. Slow and steady *won* the race.

Here "truth and honesty" = the practice of truth and honesty, and hence the verb following is singular. Similarly, "curry and rice" = the food consisting of curry and rice, or the mixture of curry and rice. "Slow and steady" = the plan of being slow and steady.

297 One Singular Noun with Plural Verb — A noun of *Multitude* (as distinct from a *Collective* noun, see § 39), is followed by a Plural verb —

- { The jury (i.e. the individual jurors, or men of the jury), *were* divided in *their* opinions, and could not agree as to the verdict.
- { The jury (as one body) *selected its* speaker.
- { The multitude (individual men and women) *rose from their* seats and shout applause.
- { This multitude (as one body) *is* too large to be contained in so small a building.

298 The Simple or Noun-Infinitive — See No VII of the Parsing Chart

The Simple or Noun-Infinitive may be (a) the Subject to a verb, (b) the Object to a verb, (c) the Complement to a verb, (d) the Object to a preposition (although this is very uncommon), (e) a form of exclamation (see § 195) —

(a) *Subj. to Verb* — *To sleep* is necessary to health.

(b) *Obj. to Verb* — We desire *to improve*.

(c) *Comp. to Verb* — He appears *to be clever*.

(d) *Obj. to Prepos.* — Your cow *is* about (=near) *to die* (=death).

(e) *Form of Exclam.* — *To think* that he should have deceived me!

299 The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive — See No. VII of the Parsing Chart

The Gerundial or Qualifying Infinitive may be used—(a) to qualify a verb, in which case it does the work of an adverb, (b) to qualify a noun, in which case it does the work of an adjective, (c) to qualify an adjective, in which case it does the work of an adverb, (d) to introduce a parenthesis, in which case it is absolute (see § 196) —

(a) *Verb* — They went out *to see* the sport

(b) *Noun* { A house *to let* (*Attributive*)

{ This house *is to let* (*Predicative*)

(c) *Adjective* — Be quick *to hear* and slow *to speak*

(d) *Parenthesis* — He *is*, — *to speak* plainly, — a thief

Note — In qualifying a *noun*, the Infinitive is sometimes used in the *Passive* voice. No rule, however, can be given as to when the *Active* voice is the more idiomatic and when the *Passive* —

A man *to be admired* (*Attributive*)

That man *is to be admired* (*Predicative*)

300 The three uses of Participles — See No. VIII of the Parsing Chart

(a) *Attributive* use (see § 102 for Adjectives) —

A *willful* horse

A *fallen* tree

A *withered* flower

(b) *Predicative* use — This may occur either (1) when the Participle is Complement to some verb (see § 102 again), or (2) when the Participle is used absolutely with some noun going before (see §§ 28 (a) and 285, 5) —

(1) { We found him *sleeping* (*Object Complement*)

{ He became *alarmed* (*Subject Complement*)

(2) Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired* (*Absolute*)

Note 1 — That the Participle is predicative in the *Absolute* construction is clear from the fact that an absolute *phrase* can be easily rewritten in the form of a subordinate *clause*, in which a *Finite* verb or predicate is substituted for the Participle —

{ Our pace was slow, the horse *being tired*

{ Our pace was slow, *because* the horse *was tired*

Note 2 — When no noun or pronoun is expressed, the Participle is called an *Impersonal Absolute* (see § 28, a, and § 243, 4)

Supposing this to be true, you are certainly guilty

(c) *Gerundive* use (§ 211) — Here the Participle denotes that something is to be done, and implies a Verbal noun. —

{ This prevented the letter *being sent*, =

{ This prevented *the sending* of the letter.

Parsed Sentence

Brahmadatta, king of Benares, took a journey through the length and breadth of his kingdom to see if his subjects were happy

Brahmadatta—Proper noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, subject to the verb "took"

King—Common noun, masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, in apposition to "Brahmadatta."

Of—Preposition having "Benares" as its object

Benares—Proper noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the preposition "of"

Took—Verb transitive, third person, singular number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, active voice, agreeing with its subject "Brahmadatta," and having "journey" for its object

Journey—Common noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case after the verb "took"

Through—Preposition having "length" and "breadth" for its objects

Length—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case to the preposition "through"

And—Co-ordinative conjunction, joining the two nouns "length" and "breadth"

Breadth—Abstract noun, neuter gender, singular number, objective case to the preposition "through"

Of—Preposition having "kingdom" for its object

His—Personal (or demonstrative) pronoun, masculine gender, singular number, possessive case, third person, agreeing in gender, number, and person with its antecedent "Brahmadatta" (Qualifies the noun "kingdom")

Kingdom—Common noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case after the preposition "of"

To see—Verb transitive, infinitive mood, present indefinite form, gerundial in use, qualifying the verb "took", transitive verb having for its object the clause "if happy"

If—Subordinative conjunction

His—(To be parsed as above)

Subjects—Common noun, common gender, plural number, nominative case, subject to the verb "were"

Were—Verb intransitive, third person, plural number, past indefinite tense, indicative mood, agreeing with its subject "subjects"

Happy—Adjective of quality, positive degree, predicative in use, subjective complement to the verb "were"

§ 2 — POSITION OF WORDS

Adjective and Noun

301 The position of an Adjective in relation to its noun generally depends upon whether the adjective is used *attributively* or *predicatively* (see § 102)

Adjectives used Attributively.

302 When an adjective is used attributively, the invariable rule is to keep it *as close as possible* to the noun which it qualifies

303 In *prose* the adjective almost always precedes its noun. In *poetry*, for the sake of rhyme or metre, it may be placed after its noun —

Prose

A just man Bright prospects This rose Other roses.
Much pain Ten men The fifth class Double promotion

Poetry

He sang to lords and ladies gay
The unpremeditated lay — *Scott*
The old man eloquent — *Byron*

304 When an adjective is enlarged by some qualifying phrase, it must always be placed *after* its noun —

A man dear to all A matter too urgent to be put off any longer
A doctor well practised in all the arts of medicine and worthy
of public confidence Bread enough and to spare

Note — In such examples as the above the adjective must be placed after its noun, in consequence of the "invariable rule" given in § 302, for if we said "a dear to all man," the words "to all" would separate the qualifying adjective from its noun

305 When several adjectives qualify the same noun at once, they can be placed either before or after their noun —

A horse strong, swift, and young, or a strong, swift, and young horse

Note 1 — If one of the adjectives is much longer than the other, it sounds better to put the shorter one first —

An old and conscientious servant
The shorter and less laborious of the two methods

Note 2 — If the adjectives consist of long words, it sounds better to place them after the noun —

God is the maker of all things visible and invisible, animate and inanimate

306. Sometimes an adjective is placed after its noun for the sake of point or emphasis

How does this position give point or emphasis to the adjective? Because the natural position of the adjective is to stand before its

noun By putting it out of its natural place, greater attention is drawn to it

Things *temporal* are less precious than things *eternal*
 No man *living* could have done so well
 I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*
 The body *natural* and the body *politic*

307 For the sake of emphasis or distinction (as explained in the previous paragraph) an adjective used as a qualifying title is placed after its noun —

Alfred the *Great* Alexander the *Great* Yudisthir the *Just*
 Ethelred the *Unready* Albert the *Good* Louis the *Pious*
 Charles the *Fat* Philip the *Fair* Richard the *Lion hearted*
 Charles the *Bold*

To the same principle must be ascribed the position of the titles "Elder" and "Younger", as—

Cato the *Elder*, Cato the *Younger*
 Pliny the *Elder*, Pliny the *Younger*

Kings of the same name have been distinguished into first, second, third, etc., to indicate their historical order. These titles of order are usually shown by means of Roman figures, I, II, III, and they always stand last —

Edward I (= Edward the First), Edward II (= Edward the Second)

308 There are certain stock phrases, in which it has become idiomatic to place the adjective after its noun

This is chiefly due to what has been borrowed from the French language or French idiom, but it has sometimes been done for the sake of emphasis or antithesis —

The body politic = the state or community (This is due to the old antithesis between the body *natural*, that is, the body of the individual man as made by nature, and the body *politic* or the collective body as made by society)

Malice prepense some evil purpose previously devised or meditated
Heir apparent one who by right of birth, and hence "to all appearances," will succeed to the throne or to some estate

Lords Temporal and Spiritual this is the distinction between those who are peers or lords by temporal or worldly rank, and those who are lords by spiritual or ecclesiastical rank

Notary public one who registers deeds, wills, and other legal documents for the public

Knight errant a knight who makes it his business to move from place to place in search of wrongs to be righted

Governor-General, *Inspector General*, *Viceroy elect*, *bishop elect*, etc. (The adjective "elect" denotes an officer who has been

nominated or selected for the post, but has not yet been formally appointed)

The *sum total*, *price current*, a fiend *incarnate*, a god *incarnate*,
point *blank* (the white or blank spot in the centre of a target),
letters patent, lord *paramount*, things *temporal*, things *eternal*

Adjectives used Predicatively

309 When an adjective is used predicatively, it is placed after its noun —

(a) *When the verb is Intransitive or in the Passive voice —*

All men are *mortal* He lay *dead* on the ground He became *very rich*
He was left *rich* by his father He was considered *wise*
(*Subjective Complement*)

(b) *When the verb is Transitive and in the Active voice —*

My father left me *poor*, but *well educated* The judge declared him *guilty* (*Objective Complement*)

310 But for the sake of emphasis, we may place the Predicative adjective (or participle) first, so as to draw more attention to it (§ 153, *Note 2*) —

Great is Diana of the Ephesians
Disgraced you are, and will remain
Sweet are the uses of adversity

Adverbs

311 If the word to be qualified is an Adjective, or an Adverb, or a Preposition, or a Conjunction, the qualifying Adverb is placed immediately *before it*

<i>Adjective</i>	{	We are <i>half</i> pleased and <i>half</i> sorry
or		The mango you brought was <i>quite</i> ripe
<i>Participle</i>	{	Your pry is <i>too</i> high for your work
		A snake creeps <i>very</i> silently
<i>Adverb</i>	{	He stood <i>far</i> apart from me
		He seized my hand <i>rather</i> eagerly
<i>Preposition</i>	{	He arrived <i>long</i> before the time
		We sat <i>almost</i> in the shade
	{	He stood <i>exactly</i> behind me
		Tell me <i>precisely</i> how it happened
<i>Conjunction</i>	{	I like a mango <i>only</i> when it is ripe
		He did this <i>merely</i> because he was ordered

Note.—There is one exception to the above rule The word "enough" (when it is an Adverb and not an Adjective) is placed *after* the word it qualifies —

Your pay is good *enough* for your work.
He spoke highly *enough* of what you had done

312 If the verb to be qualified is *Intransitive*, the qualifying Adverb is placed immediately *after* it. —

He lived *well* and died *happily*
 He laughed *heartily* at that joke
 He spoke *foolishly* about his own merits

Note — To this rule there are a few exceptions —

The Adverbs *always*, *never*, *often*, *sometimes*, *generally*, *rarely*, and *seldom* are usually placed *before*, and not *after*, the verb they qualify

He *always* laughed at a good joke
 He *never* spoke about his own merits
 He *often* came here to see me
 He *sometimes* slept in my house
 He *seldom* stayed with me for long

But they can be placed *after* as well as *before* the verb "to be" —

He is *seldom* absent He *seldom* is absent

313 If the verb to be qualified is *Transitive*, the qualifying adverb must not be allowed to separate the verb and its object

The Adverb must therefore be placed either *before* the verb or *after* the Object, but it is more commonly placed *after* the object —

He bore his losses *cheerfully*
 He did his work *patiently* till sunset
 He *briefly* explained his meaning

Sometimes, however, if the object is qualified by a clause, or consists of a good many words, the adverb may come between the verb and its object —

He rewarded *liberally* all those who had served him well

But this is scarcely as idiomatic as, "He liberally rewarded," etc

314 If the tense of the verb is formed by an Auxiliary verb, the adverb is generally placed *between* the Auxiliary verb and the Principal verb —

The wind has *suddenly* risen Your son will *soon* return
 I have *quite* understood you He is *almost* dying, I fear

Similarly the Negative adverb "*not*" is always placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Principal verb —

We have *not* seen him since Monday last
 I did *not* know how ill he was
 We shall *not* punish him severely

Correct the position of the adverb in the following sentences —

He *exactly* stood in front of me He explained *clearly* his words
 I have read *often* that book He struck *severely* the ox with his whip
 He *soon* will return home He *almost* has finished his task
 The rain began to fall *suddenly* Your teacher is *enough* pleased with your industry
 He went out *seldom* before sunset.

315 An Adverb is placed first in a sentence—(a) when it is intended to qualify *the whole sentence*, (b) when it is used *very emphatically*

(a) *Luckily* no one was inside, when the roof fell in

(b) *Down* went the Royal George with all her crew complete
—*Cowper*

The meaning of the two sentences given below depends entirely on the position of the adverb —

(1) *Happily* he did not die

(2) He did not die *happily*

In (1) the adverb qualifies the entire sentence, because it stands first (as just explained) In (2) it qualifies the Intransitive verb "die," because it is placed immediately after it, see § 312 So (1) means, "It was a happy result that he did not die", and (2) means, "He did not die a happy death"

316 Only —The meaning of a sentence depends upon the position of this word —

(a) *Only* he promised to read the first chapter of that book

Here "only" is an Adjective, and not an Adverb As an adjective it qualifies the pronoun "he"

He alone, and no one else, promised to read the first chapter, etc

(b) He *only* promised to read the first chapter of that book

Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the verb "promised", and the meaning is that he merely or only promised, but did not perform the promise

(c) He promised *only* to read the first chapter of that book

That is, he did not promise to study, analyse, or remember, but *only to read* Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the verb "read"

(d) He promised to read *only* the first chapter of that book

That is, he promised to read nothing more than the *first* chapter Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the adjective "the first"

(e) He promised to read the first chapter of that book *only* (or, *only* of that book)

That is, he promised to read the first chapter of no other book but that. Here "only" is an Adverb qualifying the phrase "of that book"

Subject and Object

317 As a general rule, in ordinary English prose, the Subject precedes its verb, but the following exceptions should be noted —

(a) When the verb is Intransitive, and the verb is preceded by the introductory adverb "there" (see § 29) —

On the whole *there* is nothing to prove his guilt

There came a messenger from the king's court.

- (b) When the verb is used for asking a question —

At what hour in the morning does *he* get up ?
How came *you* to catch such a bad cold ?
What are *you* carrying in that bag ?

- (c) When the verb is in the Imperative mood —

Go *ye* into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature —
New Testament

Thither our path lies wind *we* up the height — *Browning*

NB — Usually, however, no subject is expressed when the verb is in the Second person, and the Imperative is very rarely used in the First or Third person (see § 180)

- (d) When the verb is used in the Subjunctive mood to express a wish, or when a wish is expressed by the auxiliary "may" (see § 190, 2) —

Long live *the king*

May *he* never again come inside this house

- (e) When the verb is used in the Subjunctive mood to express a condition, and the "if" is omitted (see § 190, 3) —

Should *he* meet me, he would know me at once

Had *he* met me, he would have known me

Were *I* certain of his motives, I could trust him

- (f) When the verb is used to report a speech in the Direct Narration, and is thrust into the middle of the reported speech (§ 124) —

"Agreed," said *the prince*, "we will go there to night"

"Let me not live," quoth *he*

- (g) When a *predicative* Adjective or Participle is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis, (see § 153, Note 2, and § 310) —

Great was *the delight* of the citizens

Blessed are *the merciful*, for they shall obtain mercy

- (h) When an adverb is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis (see § 315) —

Up rose *the men* at the word of command

There goes *the thief*, catch him, if you can

- (i) When two simple sentences are joined together by a pair of correlative words, the subject in one of the clauses is often put after its verb or after the auxiliary verb —

As men sow, so will *they* also reap

The more I saw of him, the less did *I* like him

So rotten was *the boat*, that it very soon sank

No sooner did *he* begin to speak, than every one was silent.

Scarcely had *we* reached home, before it began raining.

(j) When the object is placed before its verb, the subject must be placed after it —

Silver and gold have I none

318 The object to a verb is placed immediately after the verb, except when the object is a Relative or Interrogative pronoun, or unless it is placed at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis (see § 147)

The house *that* we occupy suits us well (*Relative*)
What kind of book do you like best? (*Interrogative*)
 Silver and gold have I none (*Emphasis*)

319 No other words except (1) an adjective or participle, or (2) a noun or pronoun in the Possessive case, or (3) a noun or gerund used as an adjective, should as a general rule be allowed to come between a verb and its object

Thus it is against idiom to say, "I have finished *thoroughly* this work" We should say, "I have thoroughly finished this work", or "I have finished this work thoroughly"

But such sentences as the following are correct —

I have selected *the best* book (*Adjective*)
 I found my *friend's* house (*Possessive*)
 Call for the *village* watchman (*Noun used as Adjective*)

Relative and Antecedent

320 A Relative pronoun or Relative adverb must always be placed as close as possible to its antecedent

I have read a translation of Plato's writings, *who* succeeded Socrates

Here it would have been better to say "the writings of *Plato, who* succeeded," etc, because by this change the Relative and its Antecedent are not separated by the word "writings"

Preposition and Object

321 In prose (not always in poetry) the preposition is placed immediately before its object But the following exceptions should be noted —

(a) When the object is "whom," "which," or "what," the preposition *may* be placed last in the sentence and its object first.

That is the man *whom* we were looking for (*Relative.*)
Which of these chairs did you sit on? (*Interrogative*)

(b) When the object is the Relative pronoun "that," the preposition is *invariably* put last.

This is the man *that* we were looking for

(c) When the object is a Relative pronoun understood, the preposition is invariably put last —

This is the man (whom) we were looking for

(d) A noun or pronoun in the Possessive case or any other qualifying words may come between a preposition and its object —

He came to the barber's shop

(e) In poetry the preposition is sometimes placed after its noun —

They dashed that rapid torrent *through*

Note on Concord and Government

The plan adopted in some books on English Grammar is to subdivide the subject of Syntax under two main headings —

I Concord or Agreement II Government

In a highly inflected language, such as Latin, Sanskrit, or the Old English, a subdivision of that kind is useful, since the inflections of words depend chiefly on their mutual concord or agreement and on the extent to which they govern or are governed by one another.

In modern English, however, in which very few of the old inflections have been retained, the subdivision of Syntax into rules of Concord and rules of Government is of scarcely any use, for it leaves the greater part of the ground untouched. The only points on which these principles are seen at work are the following —

Concord or Agreement

(1) The verb must agree with its subject in Number and Person (This, together with the apparent exceptions thereto, has been set forth in § 293)

(2) The Demonstrative adjective "this" or "that" must be of the same number as the noun it qualifies (These are the only two adjectives which have retained one form for the Singular and another for the Plural)

(3) A pronoun must be of the same Number, Gender, and Person as its antecedent (So far as inflection is concerned, this applies only to the Demonstrative pronouns and to the Relative pronoun "who" or "which" The other Relatives have no change of form)

(4) A noun in apposition with a pronoun or other noun must be in the same case (This is shown in § 285 (3) and § 287 (3) The only case that is now indicated by an inflection is the Possessive, and even this case drops its inflection when it is in apposition with another Possessive See § 286)

Government

All that we can say on this point is that certain Verbs, two or three Adjectives, and all Prepositions govern a noun or pronoun in the Objective case

CHAPTER XIII

PUNCTUATION, OR THE RIGHT USE OF STOPS

322 Punctuation divides one sentence from another sentence, or one part of a sentence from another part, by means of points, stops, or marks

323 The names of the different points, stops, or marks used for this purpose are —

Comma, indicated by	,	Note of exclamation, indicated by	!
Semicolon, indicated by	;	Brackets, indicated by	() or []
Colon, indicated by	:	Dash, indicated by	—
Full stop or period, indicated by	.	Hyphen, indicated by	-
Note of interrogation, indicated by	?	Inverted commas, indicated by	" "
Apostrophe, indicated by	'		

The Comma

324 The comma represents the shortest pause. Its chief uses in a **simple** sentence are the following —

(a) Between nouns or pronouns in apposition, as—

Alexander, the son of Philip, king of Macedon

(b) Between three or more words of the same Part of Speech, when only the last two are connected by "*and*"

Greece, Italy, and Spain are the peninsulas of Southern Europe
(*Nouns*)

We should live soberly, prudently, and industriously at all times.
(*Adverbs*)

Early to bed and early to rise

Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise (*Adjectives*)

(c) After the Nominative of address —

Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.

(d) After an absolute construction —

The sun having set, we all went home

(e) When words of the same class or rank go together in pairs, each pair is separated by a comma —

By night or by day, at home or abroad, asleep or awake, he is a constant source of anxiety to his father

(f) After an adverbial phrase at the commencement of a sentence (Hera, however, the comma can be put in or not, at the option of the writer)

In fact, his poetry is no better than prose. At last, he has gained his point

(g) Before and after a participial phrase, provided that the participle might be expanded into a sentence, and is not used in a merely qualifying sense (see § 204) —

Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, led his army into Britain (Here "having defeated" means "after he had defeated")
 Convinced of the accuracy of his facts, he stuck to his opinion
 (Here "convinced" means "because he was convinced")

But when the participle qualifies the noun so as merely to restrict its meaning, as an adjective would do, the comma should not be used —

A dog lying asleep on a public road is likely to be run over
 A man convinced against his will is of the same opinion still

(h) Before certain co-ordinative conjunctions —

He is not a mulman, *but* a knave
 He is not only accused, *but also* convicted
 He hoped, *then*, that he would be pardoned

(i) Explanatory phrases are separated by commas —

The field was oblong, 60 yards in length, 40 in breadth

(j) Before and after gerundial Infinitives used in an explanatory or parenthetical sense —

I am, to tell you the truth, thoroughly sick of work
 To sum up, the man was convicted of three charges

(k) A comma is sometimes used to introduce a sentence quoted in Direct Narration. The sentence so quoted must be commenced with a capital letter —

What I say unto you I say unto all, Watch — *New Testament*

(l) A comma is sometimes inserted to mark the omission and save the repetition of a verb —

My regiment is bound for India, yours, for Gibraltar

325 (a) In a compound sentence the co-ordinate clauses, when they are expressed at full length, are generally separated by a comma —

His vanity is greater than his ignorance, and what he lacks in knowledge is supplied by impudence

But when the two sentences are not expressed at full length or are very closely allied, the comma is omitted —

I made haste and caught him
 I took up a stone and threw it at the mad dog

(b) When the conjunction is omitted between co-ordinate clauses, these must be separated by a comma or by a semicolon. —

(1) When they are short, they are separated by a comma —

Steam propels, elevates, lowers, pumps, drains, pulls, drives, etc

(2) When they are long, they are separated by a semicolon —

Between fame and true honour there is much difference, the former is blind applause, the latter is an internal and more silent homage

326 In complex sentences the following rules regarding the use of commas should be noted —

(a) A Noun-clause is not usually separated by a comma from the Principal clause - -

It is generally allowed that the art of teaching is difficult

No one knows when he will come

His being pardoned depends upon whether he will confess his fault or not

But Noun-clauses must be separated from each other by commas, when they are objects or subjects to the same verb —

No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive

Who he was, or why he came, or what he intends to do, will all be found out in time

(b) An Adjective-clause is not separated from the Principal clause by a comma, unless it (the Adjective-clause) is rather lengthy —

The man *we saw yesterday* has come again to day

Fortune selects him for her lord, *who reflects before acting*

(c) An Adverb-clause is always or almost always separated by a comma from the Principal clause —

He will succeed, because he works hard

I will gladly do this, if I am allowed

The comma is never omitted, unless the Adverb-clause is either very short or very closely connected with the Principal clause —

He likes you better than me,
Send me word before you start

Insert commas, where necessary, in the following sentences —

The triple alliance consists of Germany Austria and Italy My son so far from being blamed for his conduct was commended and even rewarded The roof of the house having caught fire the inmates fled and remained outside the house until the fire was put out Towns villages and hamlets were all alike attacked with the epidemic of cholera I shall be happy to make the attempt that you speak of if I am permitted From morning till noon from noon to evening from evening to midnight this same grief never leaves him Early this morning when we had just left the house we met the man that we had been looking for He found as I expected he would that the house he had lately purchased was a bad one What was the cause of so much grief to him was never known to any of us I hope my friend that you will come and spend at least a week with us He has now grown so old that he spends most of his time in sleeping taking his food or sitting in an easy chair I remain my dear sir yours faithfully William Matthews I shall not leave home for business unless you set the example Example as the proverb says is the sincerest form of precept To tell you the plain truth I should be glad to retire from business altogether considering that I am now past sixty years of age and have a son to succeed me The boatman shouted to a man on shore throw out the rope A snake sleeping in the grass will bite if any one treads upon it The prisoner having been convicted of the crime of which he was accused must make up his mind to suffer the penalty The building is a noble structure of red brick and comprises a reading room a library a room for writing letters and a room for refreshments It is quite true that this fine building was erected by private subscriptions In fact of all that was subscribed L gave the largest amount in cash but M was not less liberal because he gave the land on which the building was erected A dog barking at nothing is a nuisance

The Semicolon

327 The Semicolon is used, when a greater pause is required than is indicated by the comma

Its chief uses are as follows —

(a) To separate *longer* clauses from one another Here a greater pause is necessary to prevent the sentences from being confused together —

Honesty of purpose in worldly affairs has many advantages over deceit, it is a safer way of dealing with men, it is an easier mode of despatching business, it inspires men with greater confidence, it acquires more and more confidence in itself, while deceit becomes more and more diffident.

(b) To give greater emphasis to different clauses, so

that the mind may dwell longer on each of them in succession —

As Caesar loved me, I weep for him, as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it, as he was valiant, I honour him, but as he was ambitious, I slew him. So there is tears for his love, joy for his fortune, honour for his valour, and death for his ambition — *Shak.-spears*

(c) To divide clauses, which are connected by some Alternative or Illative conjunction (Here a greater pause is required, because the mind requires a little more time to perceive the alternative or the inference) —

I met him as he was leaving his house, *otherwise* I should not have known where he lived

I refused to do what he asked me to do, *for* I was convinced that he had been misinformed of the facts

The Colon

328 The Colon may be used at the writer's discretion, if he thinks that the pause is not sufficiently marked by a semicolon. On this point no fixed rules can be given

The main uses of the colon are the following --

(a) To introduce an additional remark in explanation or in confirmation of a previous one

Strive above all things, in whatever station of life you may be, to preserve health: there is no happiness in life without it

(b) To introduce a quotation. In this case it is usually followed by a dash —

Then Peter stood forth and said — “Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons, etc

(c) To recapitulate a series of previous clauses. Here, too, the colon must be followed by a dash —

The storm had passed, the sun was shining on the green leaves of the trees, the streams were dancing around the rocks, the birds hopped about him, as they chirped their cheerful notes — such were the pleasant scenes and sounds that welcomed the wanderer back to his home

(d) To introduce a series of clauses. Here, again, the colon is followed by a dash —

You must now hear what I have to say about the uses of iron — we sleep on iron, we travel on iron, we float on iron, we plough the fields with iron, we shoot with iron, we chop down trees with iron, — in fact, there is scarcely anything that we can do without the help of this wonderful metal

(e) To introduce an example of some rule Here, again, the colon is followed by a dash —

The Indefinite article has sometimes the force of a Numeral adjective, signifying *one* —as, "A stitch in time saves nine"

Insert commas, colons, or semicolons, where necessary, in the following sentences —

1 According to Hindu notions if a sick man sneezes it is a sure sign of recovery but when one is going out on a journey or about to commence some business should any one about him sneeze the sneeze indicates that the object in which he is interested will not be accomplished

2 In Rome the army was the nation no citizen could take office unless he had served in ten campaigns

3 The drill was uncommittal at all times so long as a man continued to be a soldier when the troops were in winter quarters sheds were erected in which the soldiers fenced with swords buttoned at the points or hurled javelins also buttoned at the points at one another

4 The Carthaginian army was composed entirely of mercenary troops Africa Spain and Gaul were then recruiting grounds and these countries were an inexhaustible treasury of warriors as long as the money lasted which the recruits received as pay

5 While I was still wondering at my sudden deliverance a man came suddenly forward and said my good sir there is nothing to be surprised at I was sent here to find you and rescue you from these robbers well I have succeeded in finding you and so I have accomplished what I was sent for as you now see

6 Whenever you hesitate about beginning to do something which must be eventually done remember the maxim a thing begun is half done

The Full Stop or Period

329 The Full Stop or Period indicates the close of a complete sentence The sentence following must invariably be commenced with a capital letter

The full stop is also used after abbreviations, as, A D (for Anno Domini), B L (for Bachelor of Law), Bart (for Baronet), the Hon (for the Honourable)

Inverted Commas

330 Inverted Commas are used for indicating the beginning and end of a quotation, or of the actual words used by a speaker

The councillors stood up, and with one voice exclaimed — "Death before dishonour"

"Wine is a mocker," said the wise king

Campbell was the author of the following stanza —

“The more we live, more brief appear
Our life's succeeding stages
A week to childhood seems a year,
A year like passing ages ”

Note of Exclamation

331 A Note of Exclamation is used after words or sentences which express emotion

How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! I
am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan!
Nonsense! How can you talk such rubbish?
What a conceited fellow you are! Be silent
“Land ahead!” shouted the delighted crew

The Apostrophe

332 The Apostrophe (') is inserted to show that some letter or letters have been omitted

The Hon'ble (for *Honourable*), c'en (for *even*), 'tis (for *it is*), ta'en
(for *taken*), don't (for *do not*), shan't (for *shall not*), won't (for
will not), tho' (for *though*), an ox's head (for *oxes head*), and
all other instances of the Possessive case

Note of Interrogation

333 A Note of Interrogation is used after sentences which ask questions The sentence following must be commenced with a capital

Where was he born? When did he die?

Insert the proper stops and capitals, where necessary, in the following sentences —

1 What's the matter Thomas ist that old pain of yours again no its not that at all said he but something a good deal better would you believe it my poor old uncle is dead and he has left me five thousand pounds that was very good of him she replied but its come too late why he inquired because she answered you are now old and broken in health what a pity it is that he did not die twenty years ago or gave you the money while he was still alive

2 I have always considered you a very sensible man said the pleader I shall take one of your oxen in return for the one that has been killed and I believe you will consider that to be just it is no more than what is right replied the farmer but what was I saying dear me I have made a blunder it was not my bull that gored your ox but your bull that gored mine so you must give me an ox in return for the one that has been killed oh thats another matter said the pleader I will inquire about the matter and if I find that what you say is correct then we must come to some equitable settlement.

Dashes

334 The Dash has four main uses —

(a) To mark a break or abrupt turn in a sentence —

Here lies the great—false marble where?
Nothing but sordid dust lies here.

(b) To mark words in apposition or in explanation —

They plucked the seated hills with all their loads—
Rocks, water, woods—and by the shaggy tops
Uplifting bore them in their hands

(c) To introduce a quotation, a first clause, or a final clause, but in this case it must be preceded by a colon (For examples, see § 328)

(d) To insert a parenthetical phrase or sentence in the middle of a main sentence Here *two* dashes are required

At the age of ten—such is the power of genius—he could read
Greek with facility

Brackets

335 Brackets are used, like a couple of dashes in (d), as just explained, for inserting a parenthetical sentence in the middle of a main sentence

At the age of ten (such is the power of genius) he could read
Greek with facility

The Hyphen

336 A Hyphen is used for joining the parts of a compound word, as “bathing-place”

Note—A hyphen, like the dash, is formed by a horizontal line But the line is shorter

Insert a dash, hyphen, or brackets, wherever necessary, in the following sentences, and add any other appropriate stops —

England and Russia the two greatest empires on the face of the earth have no real cause of enmity I could tell you all about my but perhaps you have heard enough by this time My dog such is the power of jealousy attacked its rival whenever they met. This is very uphill work. If you read without spectacles and I believe you can be so good as to read out the contents of this letter When I took my degree it was twelve years ago I had good prospects before me. I will never but I need not finish my sentence for you know already what I was going to say.

PART II—IDIOM IN WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS

CHAPTER XIV—NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

337 Abstract nouns in a Concrete sense.—Abstract nouns are often used in places where a concrete sense is intended —

He had no respect for *age* (=old or aged persons)

Substitute Concrete nouns or phrases for the Abstract ones occurring in the following sentences, rewriting any sentence in which a change of form may be required —

1 *Truth* is braver than *Falschood* 2 *Noxest worth* often goes unnoticed and unrewarded 3 "Take the reward," said he, "that merit would undoubtedly have earned for you, had the basest *malice* and *envy* not defrauded you of it" 4 *Industry* pays debts, while *despair* increases them 5 *Envy* hates what *emulation* strives to equal or surpass 6 *Idleness* squanders what *industry* in a previous generation has won 7 As a medical man he was less honoured by the *profession* than by the public 8 *Authority* seldom listens patiently to those who question it 9 Avoid bad *company* 10 *Youth* should make provision for the wants of *age* 11 *Compassion* is victorious in attack and brave in defence 12 In that mansion used to be free hearted *Hospitality* (Longfellow) 13 *Sedition's* voice was silenced by his look 14 *Persistence* is sometimes more effective than *genius* 15 Men were sent out for the conversion of *heathendom* 16 *Youth* and *experience* seldom exist together

17 O place me in some heaven protected isle,
Where *peace* and *equity* and *freedom* smile,
Where power secures what *industry* has won,
Where to *succeed* is not to be undone —*Copeley*

18 All the *rank* and *fashion* were present on that occasion

19 Let *observation* with extensive view
Survey mankind from China to Peru,
Remark each anxious *toil*, each eager *strife*,
And watch the busy scenes of crowded *life* —*Johnson*.

338. Meanings denoted by the Possessive.—The meanings denoted by the Possessive case of nouns or pro-

nouns have been distinguished into (a) the Attributive, (b) the Objective —

(a) *Attributive* —

His income (the income owned by him) was great. (*Possession.*)

His descendants (the men descended from him) were famous. (*Origin*)

His work (the work done by him) was excellent. (*Agency*)

His friendship (the friendship felt by him) is sincere. (*Subject.*)

(b) *Objective* —

His friendship (the friendship for him) must be given up. (*Object*)

Rewrite the following sentences, so as to show more distinctly the drift of the Possessive noun or pronoun —

- 1 *Shakespeare's* plays will always be admired
- 2 *Vasco da Gama's* voyage round the Cape proved the ruin of Venice
- 3 *Baber's* dynasty continued to reign for a long time in Hindustan
- 4 *The king's* murderers were caught and punished
- 5 He checked the spread of *Pompey's* revolt
- 6 *Solomon's* temple was situated in Jerusalem
- 7 *My friend's* praises are heard on all sides
- 8 No one will listen to *that man's* excuses
- 9 *A sinner's* recompense is sorrow
- 10 *Plato's* philosophy has had less influence in the world than *Aristotle's*
- 11 *Nana Sahib's* treachery was soon brought to light
- 12 *A miser's* promises cannot be trusted
- 13 *Nelson's* victories at sea destroyed the French navy
- 14 *Jack Cade's* rebellion led to no result
- 15 I beg of you to pardon my son's faults
- 16 *England's* power is very extensive
- 17 The court's decree is that he shall be hanged
- 18 The king's messenger will soon arrive
- 19 *Homer's* poems will always be admired
- 20 The young scamp soon squandered away his uncle's legacy
- 21 He has no regret for his father's sorrows
- 22 A good son will seek to repay his father's benefits
- 23 Lord Elgin was Lord Canning's successor
- 24 The guns were fired at the general's word
- 25 The speaker's remarks were not just
- 26 The enemy's ravages will soon be replaced
- 27 My son's letters do him much credit
- 28 A philosopher's knowledge is not always of a useful nature
- 29 A mother's blessing be on thee!
- 30 Boadicea, the British warrior queen, sought counsel of her country's gods.
- 31 He was the people's favourite.
- 32 Caesar's descendants were more famous than his ancestors.
- 33 Caesar's information was not so accurate as mine.

339. Possessive of Interest.—The Possessive case of Personal pronouns is sometimes used familiarly in the sense of interest.

When he entered the room, on seeing a servant coming towards him to order him out, up goes *my* grave impudence (=the grave-faced impudent fellow whom I was watching) to the maid, etc.—*Tailor*

My Athenians (=the Athenians of whom I have made a special study) were certainly not bigoted.—*Grote*

Our hero (=the man in whom my readers and myself have taken so much interest) now decided on returning home.—*Marryat*

"You must understand," says the knight, "there is nothing that pleases a man in love so much as *your* nightingale" (=the nightingale that you and I are so fond of listening to).—*Spectator*

Note—We do not find that the Possessive of Interest is used with pronouns of the Third person, "he," "she," or "it," but only with pronouns of the First and Second persons

340. Dative or Objective of Interest.—A Personal pronoun can be put in the Objective case after a Transitive verb, to denote the interest taken by the speaker or spectator in the action expressed by the verb —

(a) Convey *me* Salisbury into his tent.—*Shakespeare*

(b) Solomon built *him* a house.—*New Testament*

(c) The Jew ate *me* a whole ham of bacon.—*Addison*.

(d) "Archers," he called to the warders in the outward battlements, "send *me* an arrow through yon monk's flock"—*Scott's Ivanhoe*

These sentences could all be rewritten as follows —

(a) I request or order you to convey Salisbury into his tent.

(b) Solomon built a house for himself

(c) To my astonishment the Jew ate a whole ham of bacon

(d) Archers, I order you to send an arrow through yon monk's flock

Note 1—This use of Personal pronouns is generally called the **Dative of Interest**, because in Old English the pronoun was in the (now obsolete) Dative case. Since modern English has no such case, but recognises only three cases,—the Nominative, the Possessive, and the Objective,—it is equally or more appropriate to call this the **Objective of Interest**.

Note 2—What in § 135 is called "the Reflexive object" to Intransitive verbs, as in "fare *thee* well," is in fact another example of the so-called Dative of Interest. It has been termed the Reflexive object, because the agent is himself the object affected by the action of the verb. "Fare *thee* well" means "fare well *for myself*." The pronoun "*thee*" is thus a kind of **Indirect object** to the verb "fare." It is only Transitive verbs that are followed by a **Direct object**.

341 Substitution of Pronouns for Nouns.—One of the chief uses of pronouns is that they save the repetition of nouns (see § 7 and § 111)

(a) *Put Pronouns in the place of the Nouns noted below —*

(a) I told *Rām* that the snake seen by *Rām* in the garden would do *Rām* no harm, if *Rām* left the *snake* alone, to go the *snake's* own way

(b) The girl went into the green field, and there *the girl* saw the sheep and lambs, as *the sheep and lambs* played about in the field

(c) A man brought round some wild beasts for a show. Among *the beasts* there was an elephant. *The man* threw cakes at the elephant, and *the elephant* caught *the cakes* in *the elephant's* trunk

(d) A dog was carrying an umbrella for *the dog's* master. Some boys tried to take away *the umbrella* from *the dog*. But *the dog* was too quick for *the boys*. *The dog* ran past *the boys* at full speed, and carried *the umbrella* safely out of *the boys' reach*

(e) When the camel is being loaded, *the camel* kneels down, so that the load may be put on *the camel's* back. *The camel* loves men, if *men* treat *the camel* well

(f) The bees are flying towards the flowers. *The bees* suck *the flowers*, and fill *the bees* bags with honey

(g) Wolves hunt in large packs, and when *wolves* are pressed by hunger, *wolves* become very fierce, and will attack men and eat *men* up greedily

(h) A horse cannot defend *a horse* against wolves, but *a horse* can run from *wolves*, and *wolves* are not always able to catch *a horse*

(b) *Put suitable Pronouns in the places left blank, and insert Pronouns for the Nouns italicised —*

1 Health is of more value than money, — cannot give such true happiness as —

2 I prefer a white horse to a black —

3 You have kept your promise, — was all that I asked for or expected.

4 The man — came here to day will remain with us as coach man, if *the man* suits us

5 A stranger could not be received twice as — in the same house

6 Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for — alone can be made to pay for it

7 The ox — draws the plough well deserves such fodder — can be given to *the ox*

8 The faithfulness of a dog is greater than — of a cat, — is most attached to places, — to persons.

9 Prosperous men are not always more happy than poor —

10 Return to your work, and — immediately

11 The step — you have taken is — of much risk.

12 A pale light, like — of the rising moon, begins to fringe the horizon, such a light — that is very welcome to travellers

13 Your plan does not seem to be a wise *plan*, I wish you would give *the plan* up

- 14 A child ——— parents are dead is an orphan
 15 The ground ——— we are digging will bear a fine crop, if *the ground is watered*
 16 I have lost the box of clothes ——— I brought, so now I must buy some new *clothes*
 17 We love those persons ——— are kind to us, if the love of *those persons is sincere*
 18 We left the house ——— we had lived in so long, because the air surrounding *the house* had become less healthy than ——— of the neighbouring hill
 19 My pen is not such a good ——— as yours, but yours will not be so good as ——— will be, when I have had ——— mended
 20 One should be careful of ——— health in the plains of India, for the air of the plains is not so cool as ——— of the hills
 21 Here are four books before you, take ——— of them you prefer
 I have chosen the *book* ——— I like best, but tell me ——— is the name of the author

CHAPTER XV — ADJECTIVES

§ 1 — USES OF THE VARIOUS KINDS OF ADJECTIVES

Quantitative

342 Some, any — There is much difference in the way in which these two adjectives are used —

(a) **Some** is used in *affirmative* sentences, as—

"He has procured *some* bread" We cannot say, "He has procured *any* bread"

(b) **Any** is used in *negative* sentences, as—

"He has *not* procured *any* bread" We cannot say, "He has not procured *some* bread"

But although "any" is used in negative sentences like the above, we must never say "no any, as is occasionally done by some students. Thus we must not say, "He has procured *no any* bread", but we must say, "He has *not* procured *any* bread," or "He has procured *no* bread"

(c) **Any** and **some** can both be used in *interrogative* sentences —

Has he procured *any* bread?

Has he procured *some* bread?

But in such sentences "any" is more commonly used than "some," and is to be preferred to it

343 Little, a little, the little — Each of these expressions has a distinct meaning of its own:—

(a) **Little** is a *negative* adjective, and means "not much"

He had *little* money = (not much money)

(b) **A little** is an *affirmative* adjective, and means "some at least" — a certain quantity, however little

He had *a little* money = (some money at least, although the amount was small)

(c) **The little** implies two statements—one *negative*, and the other *affirmative*

He spent the *little* money he had

That is—(1) The money he had was not much (*Negative*)

(2) He spent all the money that he had (*Affirmative*)

Numerical Adjectives

344 Few, a few, the few—Each of these expressions has a distinct meaning of its own —

(a) **Few** is a *Negative* adjective, and signifies "not many"

He read *few* books (he did not read many books)

(b) **A few** is an *Affirmative* adjective, and signifies "some at least" — a certain number, however few

He read *a few* books (that is, he read some books at least, though the number was small)

(c) **The few** implies two statements, one *Negative* and the other *Affirmative*

He read the *few* books he had

That is—(1) The books he had were not many (*Negative*)

(2) He read all the books he had (*Affirmative*)

345 Many a, a many—The former phrase is followed by *Singular* nouns, and the latter by *Plural* ones —

(a) **Many a**—Here "a" = "one", "many a man" means "many times one man," or "many men" Hence "many" has here the force of a Multiplicative numeral —

Many a youth and *many a* maid

Dancing 'neath the greenwood shade — *Milton*

(b) **A many**—Here "many" has the force of a *Collective* noun, and of is understood after it —

They have not shed *a many* tears,

Dear eyes, since first I knew them well. — *Tennyson*

This many summers on a sea of glory — *Shakespeare*

In prose it is more common to put in the word "great" between *a* and *many*. "A great many men" means "a large number of men," the *of* being understood, and *many* having the force of a Collective noun. Similarly in such a phrase as "a few books," we might regard *a few* as a Collective noun, the "*of*" being understood after it.

N.B.—In Old English "*menig*" was a Collective Noun, signifying "a multitude or large number," and "*manig*" was an Indefinite Numerical Adjective, signifying "*many*." In modern English the same word "*many*" stands for both, for it is equivalent to "*menig*" in the phrase *a many*, and to "*manig*" in the phrase *many a* or simply *many*. Shakspeare has "*a many of our bodies*."

346 Definite Numeral Quantities are sometimes Collective nouns, and, as in the case of "*many*," the *of* is understood after them.

A dozen (of) sheep, a million (of) apples
A hundred (of) years, a thousand (of) years
A hundred thousand (of) rupees (But we must say "*a lac of rupees*," and not "*a lac rupees*")

Demonstrative Adjectives

347 Definite Demonstratives.—The uses of these adjectives are shown below—

(a) *This, these*—Something *near at hand* is pointed to by these adjectives, as—

This tree, these trees

They are sometimes used in the sense of possession by way of emphasis, as—

Those eyes (=my own eyes) saw the deed

(b) *That, those, yon, yonder*—These adjectives point to something *farther off*, as—

That tree, those trees, yon or yonder tree (or trees)

Note—"Yon or yonder" is seldom seen except in poetry. They can be used with nouns of either number.

(c) *Such*—This adjective means *of this or that kind*, and refers either (1) to something just mentioned, or (2) to something just going to be mentioned—

(1) His praise of me was not sincere. I do not like *such* a man (or *such* men)

(2) *Such* food as we get here does not suit me

"*Such*" is also used as an *Indefinite Demonstrative*. In this case it does not refer to anything previously mentioned.

He called at my house on *such* a day (=some day or other), and I gave *such* and *such* an answer (some answer or other) to his questions.

Note —“So,” the adverbial form of “such,” is similarly used in an Indefinite sense

A week or so (that is, a week more or less)

(d) **The same, self-same, very same** —These adjectives all refer to something previously mentioned “Self-same” and “very same” are more emphatic than “same”

You told him to come here to-morrow, and I gave him *the same* (or *the self-same*, or *the very same*) answer

(e) **The other** —This denotes the *second* of two things previously mentioned, while “*the one*” denotes the first —

Two women shall be grinding at the mill, *the one* shall be taken, and *the other* left —*New Testament*

“**The other day**” —This peculiar phrase has an *Indefinite* sense, and means *any* day (*some* day or *other*) recently preceding and therefore distinct from the present —

He came to see me *the other day* (=a few days ago, some day or other which I cannot exactly remember)

348 The Definite Demonstratives are very frequently used to point out the noun, which stands as antecedent to some relative pronoun following —

This man whom you now see came here to-day

That book which you are reading is mine

He is not *such* a clever student as you are

You are reading *the same book* that I read many years ago

349 The Indefinite Demonstratives are used as follows —

(a) **A, an, a certain** —These are used with singular nouns, to show that no person or thing in particular is intended or specified, as, “a man,” “a certain man,” “an apple” (*Certain* is used with Plural nouns in the same sense, as, “certain men”)

(b) **One** —This word is generally a Numeral adjective, but it may also be used as an Indefinite Demonstrative in such sentences as the following —

He came *one* day (on a certain day which I cannot remember) to see me

One Mr James (a certain man whom I do not know, but who is called Mr James) came to see me

(c) **Any** —This is more emphatic than “a” or “an”, it can be used with Plural as well as Singular nouns:—

Any man (that is, any and every man) could do that.

You may take *any* books (no books in particular, but any books) that you like best.

(d) **Some** — This is used in two senses—(1) as showing that no person or thing in particular is specified, (2) for making a Definite number Indefinite (see § 95)

(1) *Some* man (I do not know who he was) called here to day

(2) He owes me *some* 20 rupees (*about* 20 rupees, *more or less*)

(e) **Another, any other, other** — “Another” (with Singular nouns) and “other” (with Plural ones) are used in *affirmative* sentences, but “any other” (with nouns in either number) is used in *negative* ones, as—

We have seen *another* man (or *other* men) to day

We have *not* seen *any other* man or men to day

“Other” is sometimes followed by “than,” and in this case it should be placed immediately before it, or as close to it as possible —

He has no books *other than* Sanskrit.

This is better than saying, “he has no other books than Sanskrit” Here “other than” means “different from” or “except” “He has no books except Sanskrit” “Than” is here a preposition

350 Some, any — It depends upon the sense whether these are *Demonstrative* Adjectives, or Adjectives of *Quantity*, or Adjectives of *Number*

<i>Some</i>	(1) <i>Some</i> man called here to-day	<i>Indef</i>	<i>Demonst</i>
	(2) Give me <i>some</i> bread	“	<i>Quant</i>
	(3) Give me <i>some</i> loaves of bread	“	<i>Number</i>
<i>Any</i>	(1) Take <i>any</i> book that you like best	“	<i>Demonst</i>
	(2) He has not had <i>any</i> bread	“	<i>Quant</i>
	(3) Did you bring <i>any</i> loaves?	“	<i>Number</i>

Both of these adjectives are Indefinite, but, as may be seen from the following examples, “some” is the least Indefinite of the two —

Did *any* man call here to day? Yes, *some* man did call

Take *any* books that you like, but you must take *some*

Can you come at *some* hour to-day? Yes, at *any* hour you like

Distributive Adjectives and Phrases

351 Each other, one another — In these phrases we have a *Distributive* adjective (*each* = *one*) combined with an Indefinite *Demonstrative* adjective (*other* or *another*) —

(a) "Each other" is used when *two* persons or things are concerned, as—

The two men struck *each other* (that is, *each* man struck the *other* man)

(b) "One another" is used when *more than two* persons or things are concerned, as—

They all loved *one another* (that is, each man loved every other man)

352 The drift of a Distributive adjective can also be expressed in the following ways —

(a) By the preposition "*by*" —

They went out two *by* two, or *by* twos (in separate pairs)

(b) By "*and*," in such phrases as "two and two," "three and three" —

They went out *two and two* (in separate pairs)

(c) By the phrase "*at a time*" —

They went out *two at a time* (in separate pairs)

(d) By the phrase "*a piece*" —

The twenty men had *a gun a piece* (had each a gun)

(e) By the adjective "*respective*" —

They went to their *respective* houses (each to his own)

Correct any errors that you may find in any of the Adjectives occurring below —

1 I have not had some breakfast this morning 2 Little money is better than none 3 The three partners in that firm disliked each other 4 Bring me any water to drink 5 I have no any books to read Can you bring me few? 6 He was sorry to find that he had a little leisure left 7 Few remarks from you on that subject will not be out of place 8 I wish you would stay here a few days longer 9 Did any man call here to day? Yes any man called at four o'clock 10 The mother and son were deeply attached to one another 11 Of the two prisoners that were detained in jail every one has escaped 12 He has finished reading a few books that he had 13 Budapest is a Hungarian city 14 A clock is an useful piece of furniture 15 It is a common, but unjust, belief that an one eyed man must be cunning 16 The old man, addressing his four sons for the last time, said he hoped they would always stand by each other and abstain from quarrelling

§ 2 — ON THE IDIOMATIC USES OF ARTICLES

353 As a general rule, a *Common* noun in the *Singular* number should have an article placed before it Thus we should not say, "I saw *dog*", but "I saw *a* dog or *the* dog"

(a) If we wish to *particularise* the noun, we use the *Definite* article.—

Let us go and bathe in *the* river (that is, the river near our house, or the river where we usually bathe)

This settles *the* matter (that is, the matter in which we are engaged)

They struck him in *the* face (that is, in his own face)

(b) If we wish to *generalise* the noun, we use the *Indefinite* article —

A tiger is a fierce animal (that is, any tiger, or tigers generally)

A cat is not so faithful as a dog

Note—Since “a” is a contraction of “one” (§ 15), it is sometimes used in the sense of “one”

A stitch (=one stitch) in time saves nine

Two of a trade (=of the same trade) should live apart

354. When a *Common* noun is used in the *Plural* number, the *Definite* article should not be placed before it, unless we wish to *particularise* the noun

Storks gobble up *frogs*

But if we are talking about some particular storks and some particular frogs, that might be in some pool of water close at hand, we should say—

Look ! *the* storks are gobbling up *the* frogs

355 An article is not placed before a *Proper*, *Material*, or *Abstract* noun, except when any of these is used as a *Common* noun (§ 46)

He is *the* *Nestor* (=the oldest man) of the service

Sugar cane is one of *the* *grasses* (=kinds of grass)

He is a *justice* of the peace

356 “*The*” is sometimes used to indicate a *class* or *kind* of anything. One individual is thus made to represent the entire class. The following all mean the same thing —

The lion is a noble beast

A lion is a noble beast

Lions are noble beasts

357 When “*the*” is placed before a *Common* noun, it sometimes gives it the meaning of an *Abstract* noun

He felt *the* *patriot* (the patriotic spirit or feeling) rise within his breast

He acted *the* *lord* (the lordly or overbearing character) wherever he went.

He allowed *the* *father* (his fatherly feelings) to be overruled by *the* *judge* (his sense of duty as a judge), and declared his own son to be guilty

358 As a general rule a Proper noun should not have "*the*" placed before it. But the following are exceptions —

- (a) Names of rivers, as, *the Ganges, the Indus, the Nerbudda, the Rhine, the Danube*
- (b) Names of groups of islands, as, *the Andaman Islands, the East Indies, the Hebrides* (But *individual* islands do not have "*the*" placed before them, as, *Ceylon, Ireland, Sicily*)
- (c) Names of ranges of mountains, as, *the Himalayas, the Vindhya, the Alps* (But *individual* mountains do not have "*the*" placed before them, as, *Mount Abu, Mount Everest, Parasnath*)
- (d) Names of straits, gulfs, seas, and oceans, as, *the Palk Straits, the Straits of Babelmandeb, the Gulf of Cambay, the Persian Gulf, the Bay of Bengal, the Arabian Sea, the Mediterranean Sea, the Indian Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean*
- (e) The name of a province is very seldom preceded by "*the*", as, *Bengal, Bihar, Orissa, Assam, Oudh, etc*. In India the only exception is "*the Punjab*"
- (f) The article is usually placed before the proper names of books, as, *the Bible, the Ramayan*
But if a book is called after its author, the article is not used, as, "*I have read Shakespeare*"

Note — "*The*" is not placed before the names of towns (as *London, Calcutta*), nor before the names of capes (as *Cape Comorin, Cape Horn*), nor before the names of countries (as *England, India*), nor before the names of continents (as *Asia, Europe*), nor before the names of single islands (as *Ceylon, Sicily*), nor before the names of single mountains (as *Mount Abu, Parasnath, Everest*), nor before the names of lakes (as *Lake Sambhu, Lake Chilka, Lake Huron*)

359 Omission of Article — As a general rule a Common noun in the Singular number should have some article placed before it (see § 353)

But the following exceptions should be noted —

(a) Names of titles or professions, when they precede a Proper noun —

Queen Victoria, King George I, Lord Ashley, Saint Paul, Judge Anson, General Roberts, Father Ignatius, Victoria, Queen of England, George I, King of England

(b) In certain well-established phrases, consisting of a Transitive verb followed by its Object, the Common noun which follows the verb is used without any distinction of article or number —

The trees struck *root* (not *the roots*) into the ground

The boys leave *school* (not *the school*) at four o'clock

Students must give *ear* (not *the ears*) to what the teacher tells them

He sent *word* that he would come soon

You cannot set *foot* in this house

He shook *hands* with his old friends.
 We will keep *house* in this village
 The king resolved to give *battle* to his enemies
 The sailors cast *anchor* for the night, and set *sail* again next day
 The pile of logs has taken *fire*, or caught *fire*
 He took *breath*, when he rose up out of the water
 To keep *house* To follow *suit* To do *penance*

(c) In phrases consisting of a Preposition followed by its Object, the article is omitted before the Common noun, when such phrases are intended to be used *for all persons and on all occasions alike* —

Some came *by land*, and some *by water*
 It would be better to go *on foot* than *on horseback*
 He is out *at sea*, *on board ship*
 A rat is quite *at home*, when it is *under ground*
 Men who are *in jail* are sometimes made to work *out of doors*
 He is a scholar *by name*, but not *in fact*
 He fell sick *at school*, and is now *in bed*
 Those who work hard *by day* must not work *by night* also
 He is *over head and ears in debt*, or *in trouble*, etc
 He begins work *at daybreak* and leaves off *at sunset*
 Such food is not fit *for man or beast*
 Speak the truth *in court*, when you have been *at fault* or not
 We shall never get this *for love*, but you might *for money*
 The ship is riding *at anchor*, and the sailors are now *at ease*
 This will be paid *at sight* or *on demand*
 I met your old friend *at dinner* to day
 He lends out money *at interest*, for he has much cash *in hand*
 There is nothing *on earth* so pure as *sea air*

Note —On the use of “*the*” before adjectives in the Positive degree, see § 366, before adjectives in the Comparative degree, see § 370, *Note* 2, and before adjectives in the Superlative degree, see § 371, *Note* 1

Rewrite the following sentences, inserting any Articles that may be required, or removing any that are not required —

1 I saw dog coming toward me 2 The men are rational beings
 3 You should use a well seasoned timber in building a house 4 I am fond of strolling in wood in cool of the evening 5 The envy is an evil passion 6 He gave very wise judgment 7 He is Daniel in wisdom 8 He ordered servant to leave room 9 We cannot easily live without the houses 10 The honey is made by bees, and they extract it from the flowers 11 Fire broke out in our village 12 He always practised the justice 13 He was justice of the peace in Calcutta 14 He understands grammar taught in this book 15 Your son, I fear, is not genius 16 Ganges has overflowed its banks. 17 The Mount Everest is highest in the world 18 He wrote very good letter 19 Language consists of the words. 20 Some men never eat a flesh. 21 India is large peninsula. 22 Andamans are

a group of islands 23 Height of a man seldom exceeds six feet
 24 Oil is produced from the olives 25 Dead man tells no tales.
 26 Your daughter is quite beauty 27 The speech is one of our
 greatest faculties. 28 Bay of Bengal separates India from the Burma
 29 The Ceylon is beautiful island, and it is largest of all the islands
 near India 30 He was found asleep in thick of forest. 31 He
 acted lora in that play 32 He received a serious blow in small of
 his back 33 The Mount Abu is in Rajputana 34 He was very
 fond of roaming in wilds of Scotland 35 He restored sight to blind
 36 Live ass is better than dead lion 37 You will never be Newton
 in astronomy

§ 3 —ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

360 An adjective can be used for a noun for the sake of shortness. The noun in this case is sometimes understood, and sometimes altogether cancelled

361 The Noun is cancelled, and the change from Adjective to Noun is complete, when the word can be used in the Plural number or in the Possessive case. Such a change is complete, because no Adjectives take the Possessive case-ending, and none but "*this*" and "*that*" have a distinct form for the Plural number

Nobles—noble men or noblemen

A *noble's* house—a nobleman's house

I have told you many *secrets*=secret things

362 In using a Proper adjective to denote some language, no article is placed before it, and no noun is expressed

He speaks *English*, but not *Hindi*

The grammar of *English* is simpler than that of *Persian*

363 Some adjectives are used as nouns in the Singular only, some in the Plural only, and some in both —

(a) *Singular only* —

Our all The whole Our best Our worst Much (as, Much has been done) More (as, More has been done) Little (as, Little has been done) Less (as, Less has been done)

(b) *Plural only* —

Opposites Morals Contraries Particulars (=details) Movables
 Eatables Drinkables Valuables Greens (=green vegetables)
 Sweets and bitters (=the sweet and bitter contingencies of life)
 Our betters (=men better than ourselves) Our equals The
 ancients The moderns The Commons The actuals

(c) *Singular and Plural* —

* A secret, secrets A liquid, liquids A solid, solids A total, totals
 A capital, capitals An elder, elders A senior, seniors
 A junior, juniors A native, natives. A mortal, mortals
 An inferior, inferiors A superior, superiors A criminal, criminals

364 Participles (which, in fact, are Verbal adjectives, see § 18) are sometimes used as Nouns in the Plural number, in the same way as ordinary adjectives are

He came here with all his *belongings*
 I am much pleased with my *surroundings*
 Let *bygones* be *bygones* (= let past offences be forgotten)

365 There are certain colloquial or idiomatic phrases in which adjectives go in pairs, some noun being understood after them —

From bad to worse "He is going from bad to worse" (from a bad state to a worse one)

The long and short "The long and short (the sum and substance) of the matter is," etc

In black and white "Let me see it in black and white" (written with black ink on white paper)

Through thick and thin "He makes his way through thick and thin" (through thick or difficult obstacles and through thin or easy ones)

From first to last = from the beginning to the end

At sixes and sevens = in a state of disorder "The men of the house were all at sixes and sevens" (in a state of discord) "Everything in the city is at sixes and sevens" (in a state of confusion)

High and low "He searched for his property high and low" (in high places and low ones, everywhere, up and down)

Right or wrong "I intend to do this, right or wrong" (whether the act is right or not)

For better, for worse "She married you for better, for worse" (for any good or evil that may fall to you lot hereafter)

Fast and loose "He plays fast and loose" (with a tight or loose hold, as he may prefer, that is, at random, recklessly)

Black and blue "He beat them black and blue" (so as to bring out black and blue marks on the skin)

Right and left "He struck out right and left" (to this side and that side)

Slow and steady "Slow and steady (patient and steady progress) wins the race"

For good, for good and all (= finally, permanently, for all future consequences, good or evil)

366 Adjectives preceded by "the"—When an adjective is preceded by the Definite article, it can be used as a Noun in the three senses shown below —

(1) As a Common noun denoting *Persons* only, and usually in a *Plural* sense —

None but *the brave* (=those men who are brave) deserves the fair
 To *the pure* (=those persons who are pure) all things are pure
The blind receive their sight, *the lame* walk, *the dumb* speak, *the dead* are raised up, to *the poor* the gospel is preached — *New Testament*

(2) As an Abstract noun (*Singular*) —

The good = that quality which is good, = goodness in general.
The beautiful = that quality which is beautiful, = beauty in general
 All the motions of his nature were towards *the true, the natural, the sweet, the gentle* — *In Quincey*

(3) As a name for some particular part of a thing —

The white (=the white part) of the eye
The vitals (=the most vital parts) of the body
The thick (=the thickest parts) of the forest
The wilds (=the wild parts) of a country
The interior (=the inside part) of a house
The exterior (=the outside part) of a house
The middle (=the middle part) of a river
The small (=the smallest part) of the buck

367 In poetry, adjectives are sometimes used as nouns, without having an article placed before them —

Fair is loud, and *foul* is fair — *Shakespeare*
One rough and smooth she trips along — *Wordsworth*
From grave to gay, from lively to severe — *Pope*

368 There are several adverbial phrases, made up of a preposition and an adjective, in which some noun is understood after the adjective —

Extent — On the whole in the main, in general, in particular, at the full or in full at all, not at all, at most, at large, in short, a little

Time — At last, at the latest, at first, at the first, to the last, at present, for the present, in the past, in future, for the future, once for all, before long, for long

Place — On the right (hand), on the left (hand), on high, in the open (air)

Manner — In the right (on the true or right side of the question), in the wrong (on the wrong side of the question), in the dark, in common, on the loose

State — At best, for the best, at worst, on the alert

§ 4 — USES OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON

369 **Positive Degree** — When two persons or things are said to be *equal* in respect of some quality, we use

the *Positive* degree with *as* *as*, or we can use the *Comparative* degree with "not" —

This boy is *as* clever *as* that

This boy is *no less* clever *than* that

That boy is *not more* clever *than* this.

370 Comparative Degree — When two persons or things are said to be *unequal* in respect of some quality, we use the *Comparative* degree —

(a) This boy is more clever or cleverer *than* that

(b) This boy is *the* cleverer *of the two*

Note 1 — Forms (a) and (b) do not mean entirely the same thing. Form (a) merely denotes *superiority*. Form (b) denotes the *selection* of the one in preference to the other.

Note 2 — Observe that whenever the *Comparative* degree is used in the (b) or *selective* sense, it must be preceded by the *Definite* article, as might be expected for the proper function of this article is to particularise or select, see § 353 (a).

371 Superlative Degree — When one person or thing is said to surpass all other persons or things of the same kind, we use the *Superlative* degree with the *of*

This boy is *the* cleverest *of* all

Note 1 — Observe that the *Superlative* degree must always (except in the instances shown in *Note 2*) be preceded by the *Definite* article.

Note 2 — When the *Superlative* is (a) preceded by a *Possessive* pronoun, or (b) is used to qualify some noun in the *Nominative* of address, it is not preceded by the *Definite* article —

(a) He is *my greatest* friend, or at least one of *my greatest* friends

(b) O *dearest* one, when shall we see you again?

Note 3 — The *Superlative* degree must not be used as if it were equivalent to the *Positive* degree preceded by "very" —

Erroneous

He wrote *a best* book

He is *a worst* scholar

Corrected

He wrote *a very good* book

He is *a very bad* scholar

The only kind of exception to this rule is that given under (b) in *Note 2*. Here "O dearest one" is equivalent to "O very dear one."

Note 4 — But the *Superlative* degree may itself be preceded by "very," where "very" is not an adverb, but an adjective signifying "real" or "actual" —

He is *the very best* (= the actual best) student in this class

372 Comparatives which have lost their force —
(a) *Latin Comparatives*. — *interior, exterior, ulterior, major,*

minor These are now never followed by *to*, but are used as if they were adjectives in the Positive degree —

A fact of *minor* (secondary) importance

He had an *ulterior* (further) purpose in doing this

The *interior* (inside) parts of a building

Some can be used as nouns —

He is a *minor* (a person under age)

He is a *major* (in the military rank)

The *interior* of the room was well furnished

(b) English Comparatives — *former*, *latter*, *elder*, *junior*, *inner*, *outer*, *upper*, *nether* These are now never followed by *than* —

The *former* and the *latter* run — *Old Testament*

The *inner* meaning, the *outer* surface

The *upper* and the *nether* mill stones

The words *elder* and *elders* can also be used as nouns, to denote some person or persons of dignified rank or age, as, "the village elders"

373 Distinctions of Meaning — The student should note the differences between (a) *eldest* and *oldest*, (b) *farther* and *further*, (c) *later* and *latter*, (d) *nearest* and *next*

- (a) { My *eldest* son died at the age of twelve
He is the *oldest* of my surviving sons

Here "eldest" means first-born, and is applied only to *persons*. "Oldest" is applied to things as well as to persons, and denotes the greatest age. "This is the *oldest* tree in the grove."

- (b) { Benares is *farther* from Calcutta than Patna is
The *farther* end of the room. A *farther* reason exists

The word "farther" (comparative of "far") denotes a greater distance between two points. The word "further" (comparative of "forth") denotes something additional or something more in advance.

- (c) { This is the *latest* news
This is the *last* boy in the class

The words "later" and "latest" denote time, the words "latter" and "last" denote position.

- (d) { This street is the *nearest* to my house
This house is *next* to mine

The word "nearest" denotes space or distance, ("this street is at a less distance from my house than any other street"). But "next" denotes order or position, ("no other house stands between this house and mine").

CHAPTER XVI —VERBS

§ 1 —USES OF TENSES

374 The Present Indefinite can be used to denote the following —

(a) What is always and necessarily true —

The sun *shines* by day and the moon by night
Things equal to the same thing *are* equal to one another

(b) What is permanent or habitual in life or character —

He *keeps* his promises He *has* good health

(c) What is present, provided that present time is implied by the context —

I *understand* what you *say*
The door *is* open no one *had* shut it

(d) What is future, provided that future time is implied by the context —

He *comes* (= will come) in a few days' time
When *do* you (= will you) start for Madras ?

(e) What is past, provided that the event expressed by the verb is known to be past (This is called the Historic or Graphic present)

Babur *now leads* (= then led) his men through the Kyber pass, and *enters* (= entered) the plains of India

375 The Past Indefinite —The special use of this tense is to state something *that was true once*, but is now past and gone. *It excludes absolutely all reference to present time*

Babur *founded* the Mogul Empire in India
Vasco da Gama *was* the first man from Europe who *rounded* the Cape of Good Hope

376 The Present Perfect —The peculiar purport of this tense is that it invariably connects a *completed* event in some sense or other with *the present time*

I *have lived* twenty years in Lucknow (that is, *I am living there still*, and I began to live there twenty years ago)
The lamp *has gone out* (that is, it has just gone out, and we are *now* left in darkness)

(a) The Present Perfect can be used in reference to

a past event, provided the state of things arising out of that event is *still present*

The British Empire *has succeeded* to the Mogul

The series of events by which the British Empire superseded the Mogul took place more than a century ago. The events are therefore long past. Yet it is quite correct to use the Present Perfect tense '*has succeeded*,' because the state of things arising out of these past events is *still present* the British Empire *still exists*, and pertains to *present time* no less than to past time.

But such a sentence as the following is wrong —

Babur *has founded* the Mogul Empire

This is wrong, because the state of things arising out of the foundation of the empire by Babur has entirely passed away.

(b) The Present Perfect, since it denotes *present time*, cannot be qualified by any adverb or phrase denoting *past time*. This would be a contradiction in terms.

<i>Incorrect</i>	<i>Correct</i>
The rain <i>has ceased</i> yesterday	The rain <i>ceased</i> yesterday
I <i>have finished</i> my letter last evening	I <i>finished</i> my letter last evening
The parrot <i>has died</i> of cold last night	The parrot <i>died</i> of cold last night

But such sentences as the following are correct, because the adverb or phrase used in each of them is of such a kind as to *connect past time with the present*, hence no contradiction occurs.

The English Empire *has been flourishing* for the past 150 years (that is, it began to flourish 150 years ago, and is still flourishing)

Fever *has raged* in the town since Monday last (that is, fever began to rage on Monday last, and is raging still)

377 The Past Perfect (also called the Pluperfect) —

This is used whenever we wish to say that *some action had been completed before another was commenced*.

The verb expressing the *previous action* is put into the Past Perfect or Pluperfect tense. The verb expressing the *subsequent action* is put into the Past Indefinite.

(a) Previous Action	Subsequent Action.
<i>Past Perfect</i>	<i>Past Indefinite</i>
He <i>had been</i> ill two days,	when the doctor <i>was sent</i> for
He <i>had seen</i> many foreign cities,	before he <i>returned</i> home

(b) Subsequent Action	Previous Action.
<i>Past Indefinite</i>	<i>Past Perfect</i>
The boat <i>was sunk</i> by a hurricane,	which <i>had suddenly sprung</i> up
The sheep <i>fled</i> in great haste,	for a wolf <i>had entered</i> the fold

The Past Perfect ought never to be used at all *except to show the priority of one past event to another*.

Yet Indian students and clerks are apt to use the Past Perfect when

no priority of any kind is implied, and when they ought to use the Past Indefinite. Here is a specimen of an official letter —

"I beg to inform you that the trustees to the _____ endowment, at the meeting convened on 19th July 1891, *had* unanimously resolved to reserve the option of appointing or dismissing the men employed."

Here the event referred to should have been expressed in the *Past Indefinite*. The use of the Past Perfect is wrong in this place, because there is no priority of one event to another.

378 The Future Perfect.—This tense is used in two different senses —(a) To denote the completion of some event in *future* time, (b) to denote the completion of some event in *past* time¹

(a) He *will have* reached home before the rain sets in. (The reaching of home will be completed before the setting in of rain commences.)

(b) You *will have* heard (must have heard in some past time) this news already, so I need not repeat it.

379 Shall and will in Interrogative sentences —

In Assertive sentences, *merely future time* is denoted by "shall" in the First person, and by "will" in the Second and Third, a *command* is denoted by "shall" in the Second and Third persons, an *intention* is denoted by "will" in the First person (see § 178).

In Interrogative sentences, however, the change of situation from asserting a fact to asking a question modifies to some extent the uses of "shall" and "will." All possible meanings of "shall" and "will," when they are used interrogatively, are shown in the following examples —

Shall I	(a) <i>Shall I</i> be sixteen years old to-morrow? (Here the "shall" merely inquires after something future.)
	(b) <i>Shall I</i> post that letter for you? (Here the "shall" inquires about a command. Do you command or desire me to post that letter for you?)
Will I.	(This is not used at all, because "will" in the First person would imply intention, and it would be foolish to ask another person about one's own intentions.)

¹ This use of the Future Perfect tense to denote the completion of some event in *past* time has been overlooked in previous grammars. It was suggested to me by Pt. Math Prasad Misra, a late head master of the Benares school. It seems like a contradiction to make a *future* tense have reference to *past* time. But the future here implies an inference regarding something which is believed to have passed rather than *past* time itself.

You *will have* heard' = I infer or believe that you have heard.

Shall you	<i>Shall you return home to day?</i> (This merely inquires about something future Here the "shall" cannot imply command, because it would be foolish to inquire of any one whether he commands himself to do so and so)
Will you	<i>Will you do me this favour?</i> (Here the "will" denotes willingness or intention Are you <i>willing</i> or do you <i>intend</i> to do me this favour? Hence "will you" is the form used for asking a favour)
Shall he	<i>Shall he call for the doctor?</i> (Here the "shall" implies a command Do you desire or command him to call for the doctor?)
Will he	<i>Will he be fourteen years old to-morrow?</i> (Here the "will" merely inquires about something future)

Note 1 — "Will I" might be used for the moment as an answer to "will you"

Will you lend me your umbrella for a few minutes?

Answer — *Will I?* Of course I will

Note 2 — It might be questioned whether "shall" or "will" is the more correct in the following sentences —

(a) James and I *shall* be very happy to see you

(b) James and I *will* be very happy to see you

The "shall" is demanded by "I," and the "will" by "James," according to the rule given in § 178 Both therefore might be used, but (b) is the more common of the two

All doubt could be removed by rewriting the sentences as follows —

James *will* be very happy to see you, and so *shall* I

I *shall* be very happy to see you, and so *will* James

(a) *In each of the following sentences supply the proper tense of the verb enclosed in brackets —*

1 I (be) ill for the last two days 2 I not yet (finish) the work that you gave me 3 Clive (found) the British Empire in India 4 The rain (cease) yesterday 5 He (be) ill for two days, when the doctor was sent for 6 Since the beginning of this week there (be) no break in the rains 7 I not (sit) him for several days 8 Anranga (do) much to make himself unpopular 9 The parrot (die) a few days ago 10 He scarcely (taste) that water, when he began to feel sick 11 The lamp suddenly went out, as if some one (turn) down the wick 12 We found the hare lying dead in the very spot where it (be) shot 13 I (live) here for the last ten years 14 The rain (begin) to fall as soon as the wind went down 15 He told me that he just (return) home for the holidays 16 Though he was defeated at last, he (win) many victories in former days 17 He not (come) by the time when he was expected I (come) here yesterday, and (go) away to-morrow 18 My son (be) ill the whole of this week 19 The doctor visited the patient, who long (be) ill 20 She no sooner (hear) the news, than she fainted 21 He would not leave the room till he (be) promised some assistance 22 I (send) notice in

December last 23 The famine of 1877 (be) very severe 24 He did not subscribe to that fund because he not (be) asked to do so 25 He still thought he would recover, though the doctors (give up) his case as hopeless 26 He (become) so proud that no one dares speak to him 27 The grass (begin) to sprout, as the rains have now set in 28 I (be) here for the last two weeks 29 He not (go) far when he began to feel faint.

(v) Rewrite the following sentences, so as to bring out the full force of "shall" and "will" —

1 You shall not go home until you have finished your lesson. 2 Shall I send the horse at four o'clock? 3 I will give you your pay in due course 4 Will you assist me in this matter? 5 Shall he carry your box for you? 6 An idle man shall not enter my service 7 I will not grant you a certificate 8 Will you punish me, if I leave the room without your consent? 9 By what time of the day shall I have your dinner ready? 10 He shall not ride that horse, till he has acquired a better seat

§ 2 — FURTHER USES OF THE INFINITIVE

380 The two main forms of the Infinitive are—(a) the Indefinite, "to love," and (b) the Perfect, "to have loved" (see § 192)

When should the one be used, and when the other?

381 The Indefinite form can be used after *any and every tense* of the preceding Finite verb. In fact, the tense of the preceding verb has no effect whatever on the tense of the Infinitive following it —

Finite verb in all tenses		Infinitive (Indefinite)	
Present	I expect	} to meet you	
	I am expecting		
	I have expected		
	I have been expecting		
Past	I expected		
	I was expecting		
	I had expected		
	I had been expecting		
Future	I shall expect		
	I shall be expecting		
	I shall have expected		
	I shall have been expecting		

382 The Perfect form is used in the following ways —

(a) After the *Past* tenses of verbs expressing wish, intention, hope, etc., it shows that the wish, intention, or hope was not realised —

He wished to have come,	} but something prevented him from coming
He intended to have come,	
He hoped to have come,	
He expected to have come,	

Note — If we substitute the Indefinite form of the Infinitive for the Perfect form, nothing is implied as to whether the desire, etc., was fulfilled or not —

He wished to come,	} but whether he came or not is an open question
He intended to come,	
He hoped to come,	
He expected to come,	

(b) After verbs of seeming, appearing, etc., the Perfect form shows that the event denoted by the Infinitive took place at some time previous to that denoted by the Finite verb —

<i>Present</i>	He seems	} to have worked hard (that is, at some previous time)
<i>Past</i>	He seemed	
<i>Future</i>	He will seem	

Note 1 — If we substitute the Indefinite form of the Infinitive for the Perfect, the tense denoted by the Infinitive verb is the same as that denoted by the Finite verb

<i>Present</i>	He seems	} to work hard
<i>Past</i>	He seemed	
<i>Future</i>	He will seem	

Note 2 — The Perfect form of the Infinitive is frequently used in a *past* sense after verbs of saying in the *Passive Voice* —

He is said to have done this = It is said that he *did* this

(c) After Auxiliary verbs the Perfect form is used in the senses shown below —

{	I (or you, or he) may have seen it	} = Perhaps I saw it I am not sure whether I did so or not
	I (or you or he) might have seen it	
{	I (or you, or he) can have seen it	} = I did not see it, although I was permitted to do so (This is never used)
	I (or you, or he) could have seen it	
{	I shall have seen it	} (This is the ordinary Future Perfect tense, which, as explained in § 378, may mean either <i>future time</i> regarding some completed action, or an <i>inference</i> regarding some completed action)
	I should have seen it, if, etc. = I	

did not see it, because the condition indicated by "if" was not realised

{	You (or he) shall have seen it.	(This is never used.)
	You (or he) should have seen it, if, etc.	(This is never used.)
{	I will have seen it	(This is never used.)
	I would have seen it, if, etc.	= I did not see it, but it was my intention to have done so, had the condition indicated by "if" been realised (This is the same as "I should have seen it, if," etc., except that the latter refers merely to future action, and does not imply any intention as to future action.)
{	You (or he) will have seen it	(This is the ordinary Future Perfect tense, and is identical with "I shall have seen it," except that in the Second and Third Persons it is necessary to substitute "will" for "shall.")
	You (or he) would have seen it, if, etc.	= You or he did not see it, because the condition indicated by "if" was not realised (This is the same as "I should have seen it, if," etc., except that in the Second and Third persons it is necessary to substitute "would" for "should.")

Note —The Auxiliary "should" sometimes implies duty. It makes a great difference in the sense, whether the Indefinite or the Perfect form of the Infinitive is used after it —

I should *do* this = I ought to do it (*Indef form*)

I should *have done* this = I did not do it, but I ought to have done it (*Perfect form*)

383 The Infinitive in either form is used in the following ways after the Present and Past tenses of the verbs "to have" and "to be" —

{	I have to go = it is necessary for me to go	}	<i>Indef form</i>
	I had to go = it was necessary for me to go		
	I had to have gone (This is never used)		

{	I am to go = it is settled that I shall go	}	<i>Indef form</i>
	I was to go = it was settled that I should go		
	I was to have gone = I did not go, although it was settled that I should do so (<i>Perfect form</i>)		

384 The Indefinite form is used after the Subjunctive mood of the verb "to be," to denote a condition —

Conditional clause	Consequence
(a) If he <i>were</i> to see me	} he would know me at once.
(b) If he <i>should</i> see me	
(c) If he <i>saw</i> me	

The clauses marked (a), (b), and (c) all mean the same thing, except that a greater degree of doubt is implied in (a)

385 Infinitive after Relative Adverbs—The Infinitive is placed after Relative adverbs in such phrases as "*how to write*," "*when to come*," "*where to begin*," etc

He did not know *how to write* (=the way to write)

He was not told *when to come* (=the time for coming)

I wish I knew *where to begin* (=the place for beginning)

Here the Relative adverb stands for the corresponding noun denoting manner, time, place, etc

386 Infinitive after Relative Pronouns—This occurs in such sentences as—

(a) He had no money *with which to buy* food

This is equivalent to "He had no money to buy food *with it*", or "He had no money to buy food *with*" (§ 242)

(b) He is not such a fool *as to say* that

Here the construction is elliptical "He is not such a fool as *he would be* a fool to say (=for saying, or if he said) that"

387 For to—In older English the preposition "for" was often used before the Noun Infinitive (see § 195, d) Hence has arisen the common idiom of inserting a noun or pronoun between the preposition and the Infinitive

There was too much noise *for any one to hear*

The railway is the quickest way *for men or goods to be conveyed* from place to place

§ 3—REFLEXIVE USE OF TRANSITIVE VERBS

388 A Transitive verb is said to be used reflexively, when the agent does something to himself In that case the object is expressed by some Reflexive pronoun, "himself," "herself," etc

He interested *himself* in my welfare

389 Omission of the Reflexive Pronoun—(a) Some Transitive verbs acquire an Intransitive counterpart by the omission of the Reflexive pronoun (see § 151, b), (b) others take no object other than a Reflexive pronoun, and therefore they never omit it, (c) others may retain or omit the Reflexive pronoun without change of meaning

(a) Transitive verbs which acquire an Intransitive counterpart by omitting the Reflexive pronoun —

<i>Transitive Verb</i>	<i>Intransitive Counterpart</i>
The fire <i>burnt</i> his finger	He <i>burnt</i> with rage
Do not <i>stop</i> me	Let us <i>stop</i> here a little
They <i>open</i> the doors at nine	School <i>opens</i> at ten o'clock
A man <i>breaks</i> stones with a hammer	The day <i>breaks</i> at six
The ox <i>drew</i> this cart	He <i>drew</i> near to me
<i>Move</i> away this stone	<i>Move</i> on a little faster
He <i>broke up</i> the meeting	School <i>broke up</i> at three
The mouse <i>steals</i> food	The mouse <i>steals</i> into its hole
They <i>bathed</i> the child	Let us <i>bathe</i> here
He <i>rolls</i> a ball down the hill	The ball <i>rolls</i> down the hill
He <i>burst</i> the door open	The monsoon has <i>burst</i>
Bad men <i>hide</i> their faults	Bats <i>hide</i> during the day
He <i>turned</i> me out of the room	He <i>turned</i> to me and spoke
They <i>drop</i> the boat into the water	Rain <i>drops</i> from the sky
They <i>keep</i> the boat on the left bank	The boat <i>keeps</i> on the left bank
He <i>sets</i> the school in order	The sun <i>sets</i> at six P M
He must <i>restrain</i> his tongue	He must <i>refrain</i> from tears
He <i>feeds</i> the horse on grain	Many men <i>feed</i> on rice
He <i>rested</i> his horse	The horse <i>rested</i> in the stable
He <i>lengthened</i> his journey	The days began to <i>lengthen</i>
He <i>spread</i> his garment	The mist <i>spreads</i> over the earth
The shepherd <i>gathered</i> the sheep	The sheep <i>gathered</i> round their shepherd
The wind <i>dispersed</i> the clouds	The clouds <i>have dispersed</i> from the sky
He <i>closed</i> the business	The day <i>closed</i> at six P M
The sun <i>melts</i> the snow	The snow <i>melts</i> in the sun
He <i>dashed</i> down the cup	He <i>dashed</i> out of the room

(b) Transitive verbs, which never omit the Reflexive pronoun —

Avail — He *availed himself* of the offer
Betake — He *betook himself* back to his old quarters
Plume — You *plume yourself* on your handsome dress
Absent — They *absented themselves* for that day
Bethink — He *bethought himself* of an excellent plan
Prize — He *prided himself* on his success.

Note — The verb "plume," when it signifies to adjust plumes or feathers, may have some word of similar meaning as its object —

Pluming *her wings* among the breezy bowers — *Irving*

(c) Transitive verbs which can omit or retain the Reflexive pronoun without change of meaning —

Hide—He hid, or hid *himself*, behind a tree

Disperse—The clouds have dispersed, or dispersed *themselves*

Dress—He dressed, or dressed *himself*, as fast as he could

Spread—The fog spread, or spread *itself*, over the field

390 Transitive Verbs compounded with Adverbs —

The Reflexive pronoun is frequently omitted after Transitive verbs compounded with an adverb. The verbs then become Intransitive, as in examples (a) of § 389.

He *made off* (ran away) with the money

The horse *broke out* (rushed violently out) of the stable

He *pushed on* (hurried forward) as fast as he could.

He *held forth* (spoke in public) on the subject of reform

He *got on* (progressed) very well

He *got off* (escaped) unharmed

He had to *knock under* (submit) after all

The plan *broke down* (collapsed, failed)

Cholera has *broken out* (suddenly appeared)

He *gave in* (yielded, succumbed) after a short struggle

He *turned out* (became) a prosperous merchant

He *set out* (started) at four P. M.

He *put up* (took up his quarters) with me

He *withdrew* (withdrew himself, retired) from the meeting

391 Some verbs, when a Reflexive pronoun is added to them, acquire some distinct or special meaning which they did not possess without it. The difference of meaning thus produced can be seen from the following examples —

- { He *addressed* (wrote a letter to) his friend on the subject
- { He *addressed himself* (made a formal reference) to the proper authority
- { He *associated* (kept company) with pleasant companions
- { He *associated himself* (entered into partnership) with that firm
- { He *avenged* his father's wrongs (took vengeance for his father's wrongs)
- { He *avenged himself* on his enemies (took vengeance for his own wrongs)
- { He *broke off* (discontinued) the habit, etc. (*general*)
- { He *broke himself off* the habit, etc. (*emphatic*)
- { An avaricious man *delights* in riches (*general*)
- { An avaricious man *delights himself* with his riches (*emphatic*)
- { A cow *feeds* on grass (*general*)
- { A cow *feeds itself* on grass (*emphatic*)
- { Guard against (beware of) that vice
- { Guard *yourself* (take special precautions) against that vice
- { He *indulged* too freely in wine (drank it too freely)
- { He *indulged himself* (gratified his appetite) too freely with wine
- { Do not *intrude* thus on my company (*general*)
- { Do not *intrude yourself* thus on my company (*emphatic*)

- { He *joined* (became a member of) our company
- { He *joined himself* to (associated himself with) our company
- { He *kept* (adhered) to his work (*general*)
- { He *kept himself* closely to his work (*emphatic*)
- { He *possessed* (owned) that fine estate
- { He *possessed himself* (made himself owner) of that fine estate
- { You should *provide* (be prepared) against the evil day
- { You should *provide yourself* with everything needful against the evil day
- { He *set* to work (began work) without further delay
- { He *set himself* (made a determined effort) to win a prize
- { He *settled* (made his home) in the south of England
- { He *settled himself* (placed himself) in a posture of repose
- { He *stripped off* (took off) his coat (*general*)
- { He *stripped himself* of his coat (*emphatic*)
- { I *trust* in you (believe in your integrity)
- { I *trust myself* to you (commit myself to your care)
- { He *worked* hard at that business
- { He *worked himself* up into a bad temper
- { He *reclined* (took rest, or reclined) on the couch
- { He *rested himself* (reclined his limbs by reclining) on the couch
- { He *prepared* (made preparations) for the journey
- { He *prepared himself* (made himself qualified to appear) for the examination
- { He *set up* (started or made a commencement) in business
- { He *set himself up* in business (provided himself with all requisites)
- { He *engaged* in commerce (made commerce his calling)
- { He *engaged himself* to a merchant (took service with a merchant)
- { He *applied* (made an application) to his superior officer
- { He *applied himself* (gave great attention) to his studies

§ 1 — ELLIPSIS OF VERBS OR CLAUSES

392 It is idiomatic to omit a verb, or a clause containing the verb, when such verb or clause can be easily understood from the context

But for a complete understanding of the grammatical construction, or for analysing a sentence, it is necessary to supply the omissions

(a) After Auxiliary verbs —

 Son, go and work in my vineyard I will not (go)

(b) After conjunctions expressing some standard of comparison —

 He is not so industrious *as* his brother (is industrious)
 His delight can be more easily conceived *than* (it can be easily) described

(c) After the conjunctions "though," etc., named in § 282 —

 Though (he was) very tired, he did not give up.

(d) In answer to a question —

Can you read? Not well (= I cannot read well), but I will try (to read)

Have you seen this before? No (I have not seen it before)

(e) In the middle of the conditional phrases "as if," "as though," "as when," etc —

He laughed *as* (he would laugh) *if* he was much amused

He is not in such good health *as* (he was in good health) *when* you saw him last

(f) Omission of entire conditional clause —

He would never consent to that (*if you asked him*)

Supply the Ellipses in the following sentences —

1 You do not seem to have worked as hard as you might (Two clauses)

2 You knew this fact quite as well as I (Two clauses)

3 Oranges are now almost as cheap in London as in Spain or Italy (Three clauses)

4 I am getting on quite as fast as you (Two clauses)

5 He behaved with the same courtesy to the poor as to the rich, and with the same boldness to the rich as to the poor (Four clauses)

6 The boat sank to the bottom as if filled with stones (Three clauses)

7 He is more industrious than ever (Two clauses)

8 Whatever you do, do it as one in earnest and not as if you were trifling (Six clauses)

9 At what time did you get back? Ten minutes later than we ought (Three clauses)

10 He shed tears as if to display his grief, but they were not a genuine expression of sorrow (Four clauses)

11 He never looked so sad as when he had made a blunder (Three clauses)

12 You know no more than an untaught child how to spell (Two clauses)

13 Sooner than sign that contract, I am ready to give up the job altogether (Two clauses)

14 Nothing will do him so much good as a change of air he will get more benefit from it than he supposes (Four clauses)

15 I would as soon be ruined altogether as endure such treatment as this from you (Three clauses)

16 When he became rich, he spurned his old friends as though he had never known them (Four clauses)

17 It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God (Two clauses)

18 Why should I do this? To make amends for past injuries (Two clauses)

19 I'll meet the raging of the skies, but not an angry father (Two clauses)

- 20 God made the country, man the town (*Two clauses*)
 21 He warned me that peace and honesty is the best policy, as if I had never heard it before, or never acted on it (*Five clauses*)
 22 What sought they thus afar? Bright jewels of the mine? The wealth of seas? The spoils of war? They sought a faith's pure shrine (*Five clauses*)
 23 He shouted at the top of his voice, as if to bring some one to his assistance (*Three clauses*)
 24 The transport with which he was received by his parents may be more easily understood than described (*Three clauses*)
 25 I will not keep you longer than necessary (*Two clauses*)
 26 He did me more harm than good (*Two clauses*)
 27 Are they in as good health as when they were last here? No not quite so good, but nearly (*Five clauses*)
 28 You wish for many books, but not to read them, I for few books, and to master them (*Four clauses*)

§ 5 — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

393 When two sentences are joined together by some Subordinative conjunction, or by some Relative (or Interrogative) pronoun or adverb, one of them is called the **Principal** and the other the **Dependent** sentence —

Principal
 I will let you know

Dependent
 when I shall start

394. There are two main rules about the Sequence of Tenses, and all special rules centre round these two

RULE I — *If there is a Past tense in the principal sentence, it must be followed by a Past tense in the dependent sentence* —

Principal Sentence
(Past Tense)

It was settled,
 He would come,
 He was honest,
 He asked me,
 He was informed,
 We never understood,
 He did not leave off,
 I was inquiring,
 He succeeded,
 He remained silent,
 I would do this,
 He walked so far,

Dependent Sentence
(Past Tense)

that I should do this
 if you wished it
 although he was poor
 whether I had seen his dog
 that I had been helping him
 how or why he did that
 till he had succeeded
 what you had heard
 because he worked hard
 as soon as he heard that
 if I were allowed
 that he tired himself

RULE II — *If there is a Present or Future tense in the principal sentence, it can be followed by any tense whatever in the dependent sentence*

Examples of Rule II

Present or Future	that he reads a book	} Any tense whatever The four forms of the Present tense
	that he is reading	
	that he has read	
	that he has been reading	
I know or I shall know	that he will read	} The four forms of the Future tense
	that he will be reading	
	that he will have read	
	that he will have been reading	
	that he read	} The four forms of the Past tense
	that he was reading	
	that he had read	
	that he had been reading	

395 Exception to Rule I—There is one exception to Rule I. The **Past** tense in the principal sentence can be followed by a **Present Indefinite** in the dependent sentence, to express some *universal* or *habitual* fact —

<i>Principal Sentence</i> (<i>Past Tense</i>)	<i>Dependent Sentence</i> (<i>Present Tense</i>)
They <i>learnt</i> at school,	that honesty <i>is</i> the best policy
The students <i>were</i> taught,	that the earth <i>moves</i> round the sun
His illness <i>showed</i> him,	that all men <i>are</i> mortal
He <i>was</i> glad to hear,	that his brother <i>is</i> industrious
They <i>were</i> sorry to hear,	that he <i>has</i> a bad temper

396 Conjunctions of Purpose—When the dependent sentence is introduced by a Conjunction of *purpose* (§ 251, *d*), the two following rules must be observed —

(a) If the verb in the principal sentence is in the **Present** or **Future** tense, the verb in the dependent sentence must be expressed by “may” (**Present** tense)

(b) If the verb in the principal sentence is in the **Past** tense, the verb in the dependent sentence must (in accordance with Rule I) be expressed by “might” (**Past** tense)

	<i>Principal Sentence</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence</i>
Present	<i>Indef</i> He comes,	} <i>Present tense</i> that he <i>may</i> see me
	<i>Contin</i> He is coming,	
	<i>Perfect</i> He has come,	
	<i>Perf Cont</i> He has been coming,	
Future	<i>Indef</i> He will come,	} that he <i>may</i> see me
	<i>Contin</i> He will be coming,	
	<i>Perfect</i> He will have come,	
	<i>Perf Cont</i> He will have been coming,	

		<i>Principal Sentence</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence</i>
Past	<i>Indef</i>	He came,	<i>Past tense</i> that he <i>might</i> see me
	<i>Contin</i>	He was coming,	
	<i>Perfect</i>	He had come,	
	<i>Perf Cont</i>	He had been coming,	

Note —The word "lest" = "that not" The *only* Auxiliary verb that can be used after "lest" is *should*, whatever may be the tense of the verb in the principal sentence —

	<i>Principal Sentence</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence</i>
Present	He goes,	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me or that he <i>may</i> not see me
Future	He will go,	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me or that he <i>may</i> not see me
Past	He went,	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me or that he <i>might</i> not see me

397 Conjunctions of Comparison —When the dependent sentence is introduced by some Conjunction of Comparison, Rule I has no existence whatever *Any tense can be followed by any tense*

<i>Principal Sentence</i>	<i>Dependent Sentence</i>
He <i>likes</i> you better,	than he <i>liked</i> me
He <i>liked</i> you better,	than he <i>likes</i> me
He <i>will like</i> you better,	than he <i>has liked</i> me
He <i>has liked</i> you better,	than he <i>liked</i> me
He <i>liked</i> you better,	than he <i>is liking</i> me
He <i>will like</i> you better,	than he <i>was liking</i> me, etc

Note 1 —If the comparison is expressed by "as well as" instead of "than," the same rule holds good Any tense may be followed by any tense, according to the sense intended by the speaker

He *likes* you as well as he *liked* me
He *will like* you as well as he *has liked* me, etc

Note 2 —If no verb is expressed after "than" or after "as well as," the tense of the verb *understood* in the dependent sentence is the same as that of the verb *expressed* in the principal sentence

He *liked* you better than (he *liked*) me
He *will like* you as well as (he *will like*) me

(a) *In the following examples say whether the verb in the dependent sentence is right or not, and if it is not right, correct it —*

1 I was informed that he *had been reading* a book 2 He did not say when he *will come* 3 No one knew whether he *intended* to come or not 4 He concealed from me what his plans *are* 5 I fear that you *were* displeased with me yesterday 6 I shall soon find out why you *were* so displeased 7 His face was so changed that I do not know him again 8 The teacher gave me a prize that I *may*

work hard next year 9 The teacher has given me a prize that I *may work hard next year* 10 You will be pleased to hear that I *have won* a prize 11 He asked me why I *wish* to go away so soon. 12 No one understood how he *can* do so much work 13 He had come that he *might* help me to finish the task 14 You did not tell me when you *intend* to return home 15 I was sorry to find that I *have displeased* you 16 I hope that you *will pardon* me soon. 17 I did not know why you *gave* me this order 18 We shall soon know what progress he *has made* 19 We heard to day what progress he *has made* 20 You never told us that honesty *was* the best policy 21 They told me that my brother *was* fond of his books 22 He gave me good advice lest I *may* fall into evil ways 23 He taught me that good deeds *were* never lost 24 He lends me his book, that I *might* be saved the expense of buying one

(b) *In each of the following examples supply the proper tense and voice of the verbs enclosed in brackets —*

1 I hoped that you (return) soon 2 If you (foresee) the consequences of idleness, you (be) more industrious than you were last term 3 He tried how many miles he (can) walk in an hour 4 He (go) away for a change, as soon as the holidays began 5 He not (go) away till the work of the term was over 6 The oven (low) so loud, that the thunders (can) not prevent us from finding out the place where they had hidden them 7 He is so disappointed with the result that he (decide) to give up all further trial 8 I went to his house that I (see) him and tell him all that (happen) 9 It was very unlikely that he (reach) before six o'clock 10 There was a rumour that he (perished) in the fire, which (break) out in the village yesterday 11 I am sorry that you (keep) waiting so long last night 12 I signed my name on the understanding that you (keep) your engagement with me, but I am sorry to see that you not (do) so 13 Your son has turned out more industrious than I (expect) he (will) 14 To-morrow you (do) what I (do) to-day, and to-day you (do) what I (do) yesterday 15 We never (see) such fine batting before, and perhaps we never (see) the like again 16 Though he (gain) one prize already, he is willing to begin working for another 17 The tradesman's voice trembled so much that my suspicions (arouse) 18 I gave him no answer lest I (make) him more angry than ever 19 The more money he made, the more he (want) 20 Though he is a poor man, he never (recort) to anything dishonest 21 He came upon me as suddenly as if he (drop) from the sky 22 I hope you (make) up your mind that such a thing never (happen) again 23 It made no difference to him how we (carry) on our business, for he (be) not one of our partners, and we (will) not take him into partnership, if he (ask) us 24 He told me that he lately (pay) a visit to his native village 25 They placed a guard at the door, lest the prisoner (find) means of escape, for he (has) friends outside, who (bring) him secret help, if they not (watch) 26 I shall not be satisfied, till I (gain) what I (want) 27 A lawsuit, even if you (gain) it, (cost) you more than the property is worth 28 It (make) no difference to me, whether you complain against me or not

CHAPTER XVII—ADVERBS

§ 1—SPECIAL USES OF SIMPLE ADVERBS

398 Much, very

(a) "Much" qualifies adjectives or adverbs in the *Comparative* degree, "very" in the *Positive* —

The air is *much* hotter to day than yesterday

We travelled quickly, but not *very* cheaply

(b) "Much" qualifies *Past* participles, "very" *Present* ones —

I was *much* surprised at hearing the news

This news is *very* perplexing

(c) "Very" is sometimes an adjective, used in the sense of *true*, *actual*, or for the sake of emphasis —

This is the *very* man that I wanted to see

He came at that *very* instant

(d) "Very," in the sense of "actual" or "real," is used to give emphasis to adjectives in the *Superlative* degree —

He is the *very* best student in the class

(e) "Very" as an adverb is often used to qualify the adverb "much" —

His work is *very* much better than yours

(f) "Much" is used to intensify the *Superlative* degrees of adjectives —

He is *much* (=very decidedly, to a very marked degree) the best student in the class

Insert "much" or "very" in the places left blank —

- 1 I am — astonished at what you tell me
- 2 He explained his meaning — clearly
- 3 Of these houses yours is — the largest
- 4 Of all these houses yours is the — largest
- 5 He is a — industrious student
- 6 He has worked — harder than you have done
- 7 You are — more industrious than you were last year
- 8 I am — happy at hearing this good news
- 9 He was taken — ill on the — day of his arrival
10. They found gold in Southern India, and the workmen were — pleased
- 11 The — thing that you ask for is what all men would be — glad to have
- 12 It is — strange that you should be so — surprised.
13. The accounts from home are — distressing.

399 Too

The adverb "too" denotes some kind of *excess*. It means "*more than enough*," something *that goes beyond* the contemplated limit or purpose. All such sentences as the following, where "too" has been wrongly written for "very," make sheer nonsense —

My son's progress has been *too* great. Sugar is *too* sweet. I am *too* happy to see you again. He writes *too* neatly, and spells *too* accurately. The milk of a cow is *too* nutritious. The water of this river is *too* pure. The roof of this house is *too* strong.

Note — The force of "too" can be expressed by the suffix "over" —
He died of *over* exposure (*too* much exposure) to the sun.
He *over* ate himself = He ate *too* much.

400 Enough

The meaning of "enough" is the opposite to that of "too." "Enough" signifies that the *proper limit or amount* has been reached, but "too" means "more than enough," — that is, that the proper limit has been exceeded.

Whenever "enough" is used as an Adverb, it is placed *after* the word that it qualifies.

The air to-day is *cold enough* for me (= is as cold as I wish it to be).
Your pay is *high enough* for your work (= is as high as it should be for your work).

The horses are tired. we have ridden *far enough* to-day (= as far as is proper for our horses).

He is now *strong enough* to leave his bed (= as strong as he should be for leaving his bed).

Note 1 — "Enough," besides being an Adverb of Quantity, can be also an Adjective of Quantity or an Adjective of Number (see § 96).

Note 2 — The adverb "enough," though it usually means "*sufficiently*," is sometimes a weak form of "*very*."

It is distressing *enough* (= very distressing) to get such evil tidings.

401 Little, a little

There is the same difference between these two adverbs, as between the corresponding adjectives (see § 343).

(a) "Little" is used in a *Negative* sense, and means "*not much*," in fact it is a weak form of "*not*," and is almost purely Negative —

I *little* expected that he would succeed so well.
(I did *not* expect that he would succeed so well).

(b) "**A little**" is always used in an *Affirmative* sense, and means "*to some extent at least*," "*slightly*," "*somewhat*" —

He was *a little* (=slightly, somewhat) tired
Are you tired? Yes, I am *a little* tired

Note —The adverb "**a little**" has come into use from the habitual omission of some noun that is understood after the adjective "**little**" Hence "**a little**" is an adverbial phrase rather than a pure adverb In the adverbial phrase "**a great deal**" the noun has been retained, while in the corresponding adverbial phrase "**a little**" the noun has been dropped

402 Since

This word is sometimes an Adverb of Time, sometimes a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes a Preposition of Time

The proper use of this word is to Indian students one of the greatest puzzles in the English language, but no difficulty will exist if the following rules are attended to —

(a) As an **Adverb** it signifies *from now*,—that is, *from the present time dating backwards*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it stands *after* the word or words which it qualifies, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (3) it is placed after a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time, never after a noun denoting a *point* of time —

The school *broke up* a fortnight *since* (=from now)

Erroneous

My house *has fallen* two weeks
since or ago

The trees *have cast* their leaves a
month *since or ago*

He *has returned* home *yesterday*
since

They *have left* school *last Monday*
since

Corrected

My house *fell* two weeks *since or*
ago

The trees *cast* their leaves a month
since or ago

He *has returned* home *since yesterday*
day

They *have left* school *since Monday*
last

(b) As a **Conjunction** it signifies *from which time*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it is followed by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Present Indefinite* or *Present Perfect* tense, (3) it is preceded by a noun or phrase denoting some

399 Too

The adverb "too" denotes some kind of *excess*. It means "*more than enough*," something *that goes beyond* the contemplated limit or purpose. All such sentences as the following, where "too" has been wrongly written for "very," make sheer nonsense —

My son's progress has been *too* great. Sugar is *too* sweet. I am *too* happy to see you again. He writes *too* neatly, and spells *too* accurately. The milk of a cow is *too* nutritious. The water of this river is *too* pure. The roof of this house is *too* strong.

Note — The force of "too" can be expressed by the suffix "over" —

He died of *over* exposure (*too* much exposure) to the sun.
He *over* ate himself = He ate *too* much.

400 Enough

The meaning of "enough" is the opposite to that of "too." "Enough" signifies that the *proper limit or amount has been reached*, but "too" means "*more than enough*," — that is, that the proper limit has been exceeded.

Whenever "enough" is used as an Adverb, it is placed *after* the word that it qualifies.

The air to-day is *cold enough* for me (= as cold as I wish it to be).
Your pay is *high enough* for your work (= as high as it should be for your work).

The horses are tired. we have ridden *far enough* to-day (= as far as is proper for our horses).

He is now *strong enough* to leave his bed (= as strong as he should be for leaving his bed).

Note 1 — "Enough," besides being an Adverb of Quantity, can be also an Adjective of Quantity or an Adjective of Number (see § 96).

Note 2 — The adverb "enough," though it usually means "*sufficiently*," is sometimes a weak form of "*very*."

It is *distressing enough* (= very distressing) to get such evil tidings.

401 Little, a little

There is the same difference between these two adverbs, as between the corresponding adjectives (see § 343).

(a) "Little" is used in a *Negative* sense, and means "*not much*," in fact it is a weak form of "*not*," and is almost purely Negative —

I *little* expected that he would succeed so well.
(I did *not* expect that he would succeed so well.)

(b) "A little" is always used in an *Affirmative* sense, and means "to some extent at least," "slightly," "somewhat" —

He was a *little* (=slightly, somewhat) tired

Are you tired? Yes, I am a *little* tired

Note —The adverb "a little" has come into use from the habitual omission of some noun that is understood after the adjective "little". Hence "a little" is an adverbial phrase rather than a pure adverb. In the adverbial phrase "a great deal" the noun has been retained, while in the corresponding adverbial phrase "a little" the noun has been dropped

402 Since

This word is sometimes an Adverb of Time, sometimes a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes a Preposition of Time

The proper use of this word is to Indian students one of the greatest puzzles in the English language, but no difficulty will exist if the following rules are attended to —

(a) As an **Adverb** it signifies *from now*,—that is, *from the present time dating backwards*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it stands *after* the word or words which it qualifies, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (3) it is placed after a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time, never after a noun denoting a *point* of time —

The school broke up a fortnight since (=from now)

Erroneous

Corrected

My house <i>has fallen</i> two weeks since or ago	My house <i>fell</i> two weeks since or ago
The trees <i>have cast</i> their leaves a month since or ago	The trees <i>cast</i> their leaves a month since or ago
He has returned home <i>yesterday since</i>	He has returned home <i>yesterday</i>
They have left school <i>last Monday since</i>	They have left school <i>since Monday last</i>

(b) As a **Conjunction** it signifies *from which time*, and its use is limited by three conditions —(1) it is followed by a verb in the *Past Indefinite* tense, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Present Indefinite* or *Present Perfect* tense, (3) it is preceded by a noun or phrase denoting some

period of time, never by a noun denoting a *point* of time —

It is now a week since the school *broke up*

Erroneous

Corrected

Two years *passed* since my father died

Two years *have passed* since my father died

It *was* a week since the holidays commenced

It *is* a week since the holidays commenced

A month has passed since I am coming here

A month has passed since I came here

Two hours have elapsed since he had fallen asleep

Two hours have elapsed since he fell asleep

(c) As a **Preposition** it signifies *from*, and its use is limited by two conditions — (1) it is placed before a noun or phrase denoting some *point* of time, never before a noun or phrase denoting a *period* of time, (2) it is preceded by a verb in the *Perfect* tense —

The school *has broken up since* last Monday

Erroneous

Corrected

My father *died* since last Thursday

My father *has been dead* since last Thursday

The school *broke up* since yesterday

The school *has broken up* since yesterday

My father has been ill *since* three weeks

My father has been ill *for* the last three weeks

The results have been known *since* two days

The results have been known *for* the last two days

403 Ago

This is used only as an Adverb of Time, never as a Conjunction or Preposition. Its use as an adverb coincides exactly with that of "since," as explained above under (a), and it signifies (as "since" also does) *from the present time dating backwards*. The two words are precisely synonymous —

My father *died* two years ago (= from now)

The school *broke up* a fortnight ago (= from now)

404 Before

This word is used sometimes as an Adverb of Time, sometimes as a Conjunction of Time, and sometimes as a Preposition of Time

(a) As an **Adverb of Time** it signifies *formerly*, or *on a former occasion* —

I did this once *before*, and I will do it again
The post has come an hour earlier than *before*.
I never *before* saw such a dreadful sight

(b) As a **Conjunction of Time** it is followed by a verb in some Present tense, if the verb in the Principal clause is in the future tense —

The crops will die, *before* the rains *fall* or *have fallen*

(c) As a **Preposition of Time** it is always used with some noun or phrase denoting a *point* of time, and never with one denoting a *period* of time —

The rains began to fall *before the first* of last month
You will win a prize *before your next birthday*

405 Already

This adverb denotes that something has happened *prior to the time mentioned or thought of* It is never correctly used in any other sense —

Light the fire It is lighted *already*

Joseph's brethren went down into Egypt, Joseph himself was there *already*

Does he seem to be recovering? He has almost recovered *already*
He was now nearly grown up, for he had *already* passed his twentieth birthday

Before this letter reaches you, you will have *already* reached home

406 Yes, No

Mistakes are often made by Indian students in the use of "yes" or "no" in answering a question

If the question is *affirmative* there is less fear of ambiguity in the answer —

Question — Is the sky cloudy to day?

Answer — Yes, it is, or No, it is not.

But if the question is put in a *Negative* form, the answer given is often ambiguous —

Did you *not* find him at home?

The answer sometimes given is—

Yes, I did *not* find him at home

This is wrong, and the proper answer would be—

Yes, I *did* find him at home, or No, I *did not* find him at home

Two rules, then, should be remembered —

(1) If the answer to be given is “yes,” the verb following must be in the *affirmative*

(2) If the answer to be given is “no,” the verb following must be in the *negative*

Note — Whenever the questioner wishes it to be understood that he expects the answer “yes” he uses “*not*” with the verb in asking the question —

Is *not* India a hot country?

The question thus expressed with “*not*” implies that in the opinion of the questioner India *is* a hot country, and that he expects the other person to agree with him and say—

Yes, India certainly *is* a hot country

407 Again

The uses and meanings of this adverb can be seen from the following examples —

- (1) I hope you will never come here *again* (= a second time)
- (2) When he was reviled, he reviled *not again* (= in return)
- (3) Pick me Bullock till he roars *again* (= repeatedly)
- (4) As you have broken my pencil, perhaps you will mend it *again*
(mend it so as to restore it to what it was before it was broken)
- (5) *Again* (= moreover), even if we were allowed to go, it is now too late to start
- (6) My eldest son is fond of languages, the second *again* (= on the other hand) prefers science
- (7) Start for a fresh term at college, and send me news *again*
(= lack) of your safe arrival
- (8) This book is as hard *again* (= repeated) as that (= this book is *twice as hard as that*)

408 There

This adverb usually signifies “in that place” But it frequently stands as the first word in a sentence, where it has merely an *introductory* value, and has no signification of place (see § 29)

It should be used in the introductory sense, when the verb is *Intransitive*, and is followed (instead of being preceded) by its subject —

There were four persons present.

There came a messenger from the king's court

408 Why

This is usually an Interrogative adverb But it is also used colloquially as an expletive to denote slight impatience, surprise, hesitation, etc

Why, what a foolish question ! (*Impatience*)

What are you doing here ? *Why*, I can hardly say (*Hesitation.*)

410 Indeed

This adverb has three main senses or uses —

- (1) In the sense of “certainly” —

That was *indeed* (certainly) a very serious blunder

- (2) In an Interjectional sense —

Indeed ! I cannot agree with you on that point

- (3) In the sense of admission or concession —

He is clever *indeed* in books, but a fool in practice

411 Quite

This adverb means “*perfectly*,” “*completely*”, but in India it is often wrongly used as equivalent to “*very*”

Thus it is wrong to say — “This bridge is *quite* dangerous”, “Bad water is *quite* unwholesome”

Note.— ‘Quite,’ however, is sometimes used with Past Participles in the sense of “*very*”, as “quite delighted,” “quite tired”

412 Once

This adverb is ambiguous (a) it sometimes means “*on one single occasion*,” and (b) sometimes “*formerly*,” “*at some time in the past*”

- (a) If he *once* begins, he is sure to go on well

- (b) There was *once* (formerly, in some past time) a grievous famine in the land

§ 2 —ADVERBIAL PHRASES IN COMMON USE.

413 The use of the following adverbial phrases should be noted,—

- (1) **Above all**, before every other consideration —

Above all (before anything else) beware of idleness

- (2) **Above board**, without any secret or underhand scheming —

Everything that he did was open and *above board*.

(3) **After all**, in spite of every fact or appearance to the contrary —

He died *after all* (that is, notwithstanding the fact that he seemed at times likely to recover)

After all, it does not matter to us whether we win or not (that is, it seemed to make a great difference, but if we look into the subject more closely, we find that it does not matter)

(4) **Again and again, over and over and over again, time and again** — These phrases denote frequent repetition, and signify a great deal more than "*again*" standing by itself —

I shall have to mention this *again and again*,
(that is, very often, and not merely once again)

(5) **As it were** — This is an adverbial *clause* rather than an adverbial *phrase*, since it contains a Finite verb. It is introduced for the purpose of making some sort of apology for using a word in an unusual sense or an unusual connection —

A good teacher is *as it were* (—if I may be allowed to say so) the intellectual father of his pupils

(6) **As yet, yet** up to the present time — The addition of "*as*" is not necessary, and should be avoided —

I have never failed *yet or as yet* (that is, I have never failed, so far as relates to past time, but not future)

(7) **At all** — This is used only to emphasise a negation —

Did you see any cows in that field? None *at all*
He never laughed *at all*

(8) **At once** — This phrase sometimes means "*immediately*," and sometimes "*simultaneously*" —

He came *at once* (immediately)

They all came *at once* (simultaneously)

Note — Here "*once*" stands for a noun "*one time*," and is the object to the preposition "*at*" (see § 241, a)

(9) **At present, presently** — These words mean very different things, but in India they are apt to be confounded. "*Presently*" means the same as "*shortly*" —

Nothing more can be done *at present*, or *for the present* (at the present time)

I will return *presently* or *shortly* (after a short time)

(10) **Before long**, in a short time —

He will return to us *before long* (before a long time has passed)

(11) **By and by** — This signifies "*after an interval*"

whether the interval is a long or a short one, is either left open, or depends on the context —

You will feel better *by and by* (after a time)

By and by (some time afterwards) the teacher came into the room

It is therefore wrong to use it (as is often done in India) in the sense of "*little by little*," or "*gradually*," or "*one by one*"

Erroneous

The visitors went away *by and by*
He recovered his health *by and by*
The water all flowed out *by and by*

Corrected

The visitors went away *one by one*
He *gradually* recovered his health
The water all flowed out *little by little*

(12) **By the by** — This means "*incidentally*," or "*in passing*" —

By the by (=let me remark in passing), I heard yesterday that there was a violent storm of wind at Calcutta two days ago

(13) **Far and away, out and out**, very decidedly, beyond all comparison These phrases give emphasis to an adjective in the Superlative degree —

This boy is *far and away*, or *out and out* (very decidedly), the cleverest boy in the class

(14) **Far and near**, in all directions "**Far and wide**" is sometimes used in the same sense —

He sought for his missing friends *far and near*

(15) **First and foremost** — This is a more emphatic way of expressing "first" "First" and "foremost" mean the same thing the emphasis is produced by repeating the same thing twice —

First and foremost (before anything else), let me caution you against idleness

(16) **For long** — This means for a long time It is generally used in reference to *future* time, but sometimes also to past —

He was imprisoned *for long*

Men are not remembered *for long*

(17) **In time** — This sometimes means "*by the proper time*," and sometimes "*eventually*," or "at some time or other" —

He was not there *in time* (by the proper time)

A thief is certain to be caught *in time* (eventually)

(18) **In the long run, sooner or later**, eventually —

A knave will be caught *in the long run*, or *sooner or later*

(19) **Now and then, every now and then**, occasionally, at odd moments —

I hear from him *now and then*, or *every now and then*

Note — These two phrases mean the same thing — “occasionally” In the latter phrase, “every” is a Distributive adjective, and the Compound adverb “now and then” is used as a noun to the adjective “every”

(20) **Of course** — This signifies *in the course of nature*, or *by natural consequence*, and is introduced as a sort of apology for saying something that must necessarily be true, and was therefore scarcely worth mentioning —

My son was plucked, and of course (=as a matter of necessity) he was very much vexed

But in India the custom has sprung up of using this phrase loosely in the sense of certainty in general, whether the fact asserted is necessarily true or not

<i>Erroneous</i>	<i>Corrected</i>
I shall of certain come here to morrow	I shall <i>certainly</i> come here to morrow
Of course she sings very well	She <i>certainly</i> sings very well
Did he win a prize last year? Of course he did	Did he win a prize last year? <i>Certainly</i> he did

(21) **Off and on**, irregularly —

He has been learning English *off and on* (not steadily) for some time past

The opposite to this phrase is **on and on**, which means “regularly,” “steadily,” “without interruption”

He worked *on and on* for seven years running

(22) **On** compounded with verbs —

He *lived on* (continued living) several years more

He *walked on* (continued walking) for another hour

When the adverb “on” is compounded with a verb, it denotes the continuance of the action expressed by the verb

(23) **On high**, in an elevated place — Sometimes this phrase is used as an object to a preposition, and is preceded by the preposition “from” See § 241 (b)

The dayspring from *on high* (heaven) hath visited us — *New Testament*

(24) **On the alert**, in a state of watchfulness or activity —

He was always *on the alert*, whenever the teacher came into the room

(25) **On the contrary, to the contrary** — These phrases

are not identical in meaning, as may be seen from the following examples —

I do not admire that man *on the contrary* (far from admiring him)

I have a great contempt for him

I have nothing to say *to the contrary* (I have nothing to say against what you or some one else has said)

(26) **On the defensive**, in an attitude of defence as opposed to one of attack —

He acted *on the defensive*, and did not attempt to attack

(27) **Once again, once more, over again** — These phrases all mean the same thing, and denote that something is repeated only once, and not twice or more than twice —

I shall have to mention this *once again* (=on one other occasion)

(28) **Once and again, now and again** — The first means "*repeatedly*," once and more than once The second means "*occasionally*" —

Once and again the parrot said, "Come in"

Now and again the parrot bit the wire of its cage

(29) **Once for all** — This means that a thing is done once, and will never be repeated —

I tell you *once for all* that this noise must cease

They settled the matter *once for all*, and the question was not reopened

(30) **Over and above** — This is sometimes used as a preposition, and sometimes as an adverb —

Prep — *Over and above* (in addition to) what I have lost, I have been unjustly blamed

Adv — He was injured, and insulted *over and above*

(31) **Previous, previously** — The adjective "previous" has somehow or other come to be used adverbially —

The ground must be well dug *previous* or *previously* to the sowing of the seed

(32) **Through and through** — As the phrase "*again and again*" denotes frequency of repetition, so the phrase "*through and through*" denotes thoroughness and completeness of accomplishment —

He was drenched *through and through* (to the very skin)

He was pierced *through and through* (so that the spear came out at the opposite side of his body)

He read that book *through and through* (every word of it from beginning to end)

(33) **To and fro**, backwards and forwards —

He walked *to and fro*, trying to make up his mind what to do

(34) **To-morrow, on the morrow**—The first means “on the day following *this* day” The second means “on the day following *that* day” —

We will start *to-morrow* (the day after *this* day)

They started *on the morrow* (the day following *that* day, namely, the day last mentioned in the narrative)

(35) **What not**—When this phrase is used, it stands after a string of nouns or verbs, and denotes that many more might be added, but there is no need to mention them —

Steam propels, lowers, elevates, pumps, drains, pulls, and what not (what does it not do?)

Persians, Copts, Indians, Medes, Syrians, and what not (=and several more whom I need not name), were brought under the dominion of Alexander the Great

§ 3 —ADVERBS QUALIFYING PREPOSITIONS

414 It has been shown in § 222 that a preposition (or the phrase introduced by a preposition) can be qualified by adverbs. Examples of such adverbs are shown below —

A little

We have gone *a little beyond* a mile

The crow flew *a little above* his head

He is *a little under* fourteen years of age

Almost

A sword was hanging *almost over* his head

It fell *almost on* his head

Along

He went to London *along with* his friend

It was *all along of* (entirely owing to) your silence that you were plucked (Here the adverb “all” qualifies the prepositional phrase “along of” The phrase is colloquial)

All

His horse sprang forward *all of* a sudden

I have looked *all through* that book

Your efforts were *all to* no purpose

Such conduct is *all of* a piece (thoroughly consistent) with his character

Altogether

He married *altogether below* his station

Apart

Apart from his imprudence (without taking his imprudence into account), he has been very unfortunate.

Away

He is never happy, *away from* home

Close

He is *close upon* fourteen years (very nearly fourteen) years of age.
He came and sat *close beside* me

Decidedly

Your son's industry is *decidedly above* the average

Distinctly

His abilities are *distinctly above* the average

Down

They lived *down in* a valley
They made him pay *down* his debt to the last farthing

Entirely

It was *entirely through* your neglect that we were late
He took his hat *entirely off* his head

Exactly

The house stands *exactly on* the top of the hill
Every word was copied out *exactly to* the letter
Your quarters are *exactly under* mine

Far

Your work is *far below* the proper mark
My house stands *far beyond* the river
Far from despising that man, I greatly respect him

Greatly

Greatly to his credit, he came out first

Hard

The cottage stood *hard by* the river

Half

By this time we had sailed *half across* the Atlantic

Immediately.

He went to bed *immediately after* his arrival
Immediately on his beginning to speak, every one was silent.

Long

He arrived *long after* twelve o'clock

Much

His work is *much below* the mark
Much to his surprise he was plucked

Out.

That was all done *out of* envy
I am *out of* patience with that man.

Partly

He wept *partly through* sorrow, and *partly through* anger.
The fog is *partly above* and *partly below* us

Precisely

It was *precisely* on that point that we differed
He arrived *precisely* at four o'clock

Quite

We walked *quite* *through* that forest (through its entire breadth)
He held his head *quite* *below* the water
I am *quite* of the same opinion as yourself

Right

He was leaning *right* *against* the wall
The sun was *right* *above* our heads

Shortly

He reached home *shortly* before four o'clock

Soon

I managed to get back *soon* after six

Up

Your work is not *up* to date

Well

I am *well* I am *well* within the mark

CHAPTER XVIII — PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

§ 1 — RELATIONS DENOTED BY PREPOSITIONS

415 A preposition (as it has been defined in § 10) shows "the relation in which the person or thing denoted by its object stands to something else." The relations denoted by the different prepositions may be summed up as follows —

(1) **About** (on + by + out) nearness of some kind —

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 He had a comforter <i>about</i> his neck | Nearness of place |
| 2 It is <i>about</i> seven o'clock | Nearness of time |
| 3 He is <i>about</i> to be married | Nearness of state |
| 4 He went <i>about</i> his work in earnest | Occupation |
| 5 I am fond of hearing <i>about</i> ships | Concerning |

(2) **Above** (on + by + up) in a higher position —

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 A sword was hanging <i>above</i> his head | Higher than, over |
| 2 His expenses are <i>above</i> his means | More than |
| 3 He is <i>above</i> such meanness | Superior to |

(3) **Across** (on + cross, cross-wise) from one side to the opposite —

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 My house is <i>across</i> the river | On the opposite side of |
| 2 He laid the bundle <i>across</i> his shoulder | On both sides of |
| 3 The light fell <i>across</i> the street, | From one side to the other, |

(4) **After** (of + ter, comparative of "of") sequence —

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | I will enter <i>after</i> you | <i>Sequence in place</i> |
| 2 | He arrived <i>after</i> dark | <i>Sequence in time</i> |
| 3 | <i>After</i> all I have heard I am convinced | <i>Sequence as effect</i> |
| 4 | He is always seeking <i>after</i> wealth | <i>Search or pursuit</i> |
| 5 | He takes <i>after</i> his father | <i>Resemblance</i> |
| 6 | <i>After</i> all the advice I gave, he adopted a contrary course | <i>Notwithstanding, contrast</i> |

(5) **Against** (on + going) opposition of some kind —

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | He is leaning <i>against</i> a wall | <i>Opposition of place</i> |
| 2 | He is acting <i>against</i> his own interests | <i>Opposition of aim</i> |
| 3 | Store up your grain <i>against</i> famine | <i>Provision for</i> |
| 4 | Four students have passed this year <i>against</i> three last year | <i>Comparison</i> |

(6) **Along** (on + long, lengthwise) —

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| The hero went <i>along</i> the highway | } <i>In the same line with anything contrary to "across"</i> |
| He walked <i>along</i> the river's bank | |

(7) **Amid, amidst** (on + middle) —

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------|
| He was brave <i>amidst</i> all dangers | <i>In the midst of</i> |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------|

(8) **Among, amongst** (on + gemang, in a multitude) —

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Distribute the books <i>among</i> the students | } <i>In the midst of more than two</i> |
| He is fond of rambling <i>among</i> the trees | |

(9) **Around or round** (on + round) —

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| To draw a circle <i>round</i> a given centre | } <i>Contrary to "amidst"</i> |
| They stood <i>around</i> him while he spoke | |

(10) **At** proximity with actual or intended contact —

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | He is not <i>at</i> home just now | <i>Proximity in place</i> |
| 2 | He was there <i>at</i> four o'clock | <i>Proximity in time</i> |
| 3 | He is now quite <i>at</i> his ease | <i>Proximity in state</i> |
| 4 | Stand up <i>at</i> the word of command | <i>Proximity in effect</i> |
| 5 | <i>At</i> what price is this sold? | <i>Proximity in value</i> |
| 6 | He frowned <i>at</i> me for laughing at him | <i>Proximity in aim</i> |
| 7 | He was busily <i>at</i> work all day | <i>Proximity in occupation</i> |

(11) **Athwart** (on + thwart) from one side to the other, —

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------|
| The shadow ran <i>athwart</i> the grass | <i>Across,</i> |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------|

- (12) **Before** (by + fore) the contrary to "behind" —
- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 He stands <i>before</i> the door | <i>In front of</i> |
| 2 The train starts <i>before</i> ten o'clock | <i>Priority in time</i> |
| 3 Death <i>before</i> dishonour | <i>Priority of choice</i> |
- (13) **Behind** (by + hind) the contrary to "before" —
- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 The dog ran <i>behind</i> its master | <i>At the back of</i> |
| 2 The train is <i>behind</i> its time | <i>Lateness in time</i> |
| 3 There is a smile <i>behind</i> his frown | <i>Concealment</i> |
- (14) **Below** (by + low) at a lower point or degree —
- | | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 He stood <i>below</i> me in class | <i>Lower than</i> |
| 2 The number was <i>below</i> ten | <i>Less than</i> |
| 3 His attainments are <i>below</i> yours | <i>Inferior to</i> |
- (15) **Beneath** (by + neath) in a lower position —
- | | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Let us rest <i>beneath</i> the shade | <i>Under</i> |
| 2 His conduct is <i>beneath</i> contempt | <i>Inferiority</i> |
- (16) **Beside** (by + side) by the side of —
- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 He is standing <i>beside</i> his mother | <i>By the side of</i> |
| 2 That remark is <i>beside</i> the question | <i>Irrelevancy</i> |
- (17) **Besides** in addition to —
- Besides* advising, he gave them money *In addition to*
- (18) **Between** (by + twain) in the middle of two —
- How long halt ye *between* two opinions?
- (19) **Beyond** (by + yonder) or **past** on the farther side of —
- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 My house is <i>beyond</i> or <i>past</i> those hills | <i>Place</i> |
| 2 It is now half <i>past</i> two o'clock | <i>Time</i> |
| 3 This is <i>just</i> or <i>beyond</i> endurance | <i>State</i> |
- (20) **But** (by + out) except —
- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| All but one were drowned | } <i>Exception or exclu-
sion</i> |
| He was all <i>but</i> (everything except) round | |
- (21) **By** nearness of some kind —
- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Come and sit <i>by</i> me | <i>Nearness in place</i> |
| 2 Always get up <i>by</i> sunrise | <i>Nearness in time</i> |
| 3 He was fairly treated <i>by</i> me | <i>Agency</i> |
| 4 Seize him <i>by</i> the neck | <i>Manner, means, or instrument</i> |
| 5 He is cleverer than you <i>by</i> a good deal | <i>Amount, measure.</i> |
| 6 He swore <i>by</i> heaven | <i>Adjuration</i> |
- (22) **Down** descent of some kind —
- The monkey ran *down* the tree *Descent*

(23) **For** in front of, or in the place of —

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 He will soon start <i>for</i> home | <i>Direction in space</i> |
| 2 He was imprisoned <i>for</i> life | <i>Direction in time.</i> |
| 3 <i>For</i> what offence was he imprisoned? | <i>Cause or reason</i> |
| 4 <i>For</i> all his learning, he has no sense | <i>In spite of</i> |
| 5 He sold his horse <i>for</i> a small sum | <i>Exchange</i> |
| 6 He fought hard <i>for</i> his friends | <i>On behalf of</i> |
| 7 Do not translate word <i>for</i> word | <i>Conformity</i> |
| 8 This stuff is not fit <i>for</i> food | <i>Purpose</i> |

(24) **From** motion or rest apart from anything —

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 He had gone <i>from</i> home | <i>Space</i> |
| 2 You must begin <i>from</i> daybreak | <i>Time</i> |
| 3 He is sprung <i>from</i> noble ancestors | <i>Source</i> |
| 4 <i>From</i> all we hear he is mad | <i>Inference</i> |
| 5 This was all done <i>from</i> spite | <i>Motive</i> |
| 6 A fool may easily be known <i>from</i> a wise man | <i>Discrimination</i> |

(25) **In** rest in the interior of anything —

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 He is not <i>in</i> the house | <i>Space</i> |
| 2 Expect me <i>in</i> (at the end of) a few days | <i>Time</i> |
| 3 He is <i>in</i> a bad temper | <i>State, manner</i> |
| 4 We found a true friend <i>in</i> him | <i>Point of reference</i> |

(26) **Into** motion towards the interior of anything —

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 One stream flows <i>into</i> another | <i>Space</i> |
| 2 He slept late <i>into</i> the day | <i>Time</i> |
| 3 Water is changed <i>into</i> steam by heat | <i>State</i> |

(27) **Of** (sometimes *off*) proceeding from, and hence pertaining to —

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 What did he die <i>of</i> ? | <i>Cause</i> |
| 2 <i>Of</i> what family is he sprung? | <i>Source</i> |
| 3 He was despised and rejected <i>of</i> men | <i>Agency (rare)</i> |
| 4 He was deprived <i>of</i> his appointment | <i>Separation</i> |
| 5 He is a man <i>of</i> strong will | <i>Quality</i> |
| 6 He sent me a box <i>of</i> books | <i>Contents</i> |
| 7 This box is made <i>of</i> leather | <i>Material</i> |
| 8 He lived in the house <i>of</i> his father | <i>Possession</i> |
| 9 He received the sum <i>of</i> 100 rupees | <i>Apposition.</i> |
| 10 What are you thinking <i>of</i> ? | <i>Concerning</i> |
| 11 The horse is lame <i>of</i> one leg | <i>Point of reference</i> |
| 12 Do not tear the page <i>of</i> that book | <i>Partition</i> |
| 13 The love <i>of</i> parents (parents' love for child) | <i>Subject.</i> |
| 14 The love <i>of</i> parents (child's love for parents) | <i>Object</i> |
| 15 He used to come here <i>of</i> an evening | <i>Time</i> |

(28) **Off** separation at a near distance —Ceylon is an island *off* the south of IndiaHe fell *off* his horse He was taken *off* his guard.(29) **On or upon** rest on the upper surface of a thing —1 I place my hand *on* the table *Point of space*2 I came here *on* Saturday last *Point of time*3 He lives *on* his father *Dependence*4 He was appointed *on* these terms *Condition or basis*5 They made an attack *on* my house *Direction*6 He spoke for an hour *on* that subject *Concerning*(30) **Out of** motion from the interior of a thing —1 The mouse jumped *out of* its hole *Place*2 I paid it *out of* my own pocket *Source*3 He said that *out of* all temper *Motive*4 He is *out of* his mind *Exclusion*(31) **Over** (comparative of "of") above or beyond anything —1 The sun shines *over* the earth *Above in space*2 He was absent *over* two weeks *Beyond in time*3 His house is *over* the way *On the other side of*4 He is placed *over* me *Authority*5 He has been promoted *over* my head *Precedence*(32) **Since** from some point of past time (not from a period of time) see § 102 (c) —It has not rained *since* Thursday last(33) **Than** comparison or difference —1 I will not take less *than* ten rupees *Comparison*2 No person other *than* a graduate will be fit *Difference*(34) **Through** across the interior of anything —1 Bore a hole *through* that plank *Place*2 He worked hard *through* or *through* out the summer *Time*3 He has passed *through* many troubles *State*4 *Through* your help I may succeed *Cause*5 All this was done *through* envy *Motive*(35) **To** motion towards anything —1 He has returned *to* his father's house *Place*2 You must go back *to* night *Time*3 *To* all appearances he is tired *Adaptation*4 The chances are three *to* one *Proportion*5 They fought *to* the last man *Limit*6 *To* their utter disgust they failed *Effect*7 { They will come to dinner } *Purpose*
{ He came to see us }

(36) **Towards** —

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 He is coming <i>towards</i> the house | <i>Nearness of approach</i> |
| 2 It is now <i>towards</i> evening | <i>Nearness of time</i> |
| 3. He was very kind <i>towards</i> his neighbour | <i>Behaviour</i> |
| 4 He gave nothing <i>towards</i> that object | <i>In aid of</i> |

(37) **Under** rest or motion in a lower place —

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 The house is <i>under</i> repairs | <i>Subjection</i> |
| 2 It will not be finished <i>under</i> ten days | <i>Less than</i> |
| 3 He travelled <i>under</i> the guise of a monk | <i>Concealment</i> |

(38) **Up** rest or motion to a higher place —

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 The monkey ran <i>up</i> the tree | <i>Motion</i> |
| 2 The monkey is seated <i>up</i> the tree | <i>Rust</i> |

(39) **With** —

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 He arrived <i>with</i> all his luggage | <i>Union in place</i> |
| 2 Frogs begin to croak <i>with</i> the rainfall | <i>Union in time</i> |
| 3 His views do not accord <i>with</i> mine | <i>Agreement</i> |
| 4 One king fought <i>with</i> another | <i>Opposition</i> |
| 5 I parted <i>with</i> my friend yesterday | <i>Separation</i> |
| 6 He is not popular <i>with</i> his pupils | <i>Point of reference</i> |
| 7 <i>With</i> all his wealth he is in debt | <i>In spite of</i> |
| 8 He killed the kite <i>with</i> a stone | <i>Instrument</i> |
| 9 He looked upon them <i>with</i> anger | <i>Manner</i> |
| 10 He has long been sick <i>with</i> fever | <i>Cause</i> |

(40) **Within** inside the limits of anything --

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 He always slept <i>within</i> doors | <i>Space</i> |
| 2 You must be back <i>within</i> an hour | <i>Time</i> |
| 3 This is not <i>within</i> my power | <i>Circumstance</i> |

(41) **Without** on the outside of anything —

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 He came <i>without</i> any money | <i>Opposite to "with"</i> |
| 2 He stood <i>without</i> the gate | <i>Opposite to "within"</i> |

416 Prepositional Phrases—The following examples show how the principal prepositional phrases are used. Every such phrase ends in a Simple preposition (§ 30, b)

As to —I will inquire again *as to* what your reasons are

At home in —He is quite *at home in* (familiar with) Euclid

At the top of —He shouted *at the top of* his voice (as loud as he could)

At enmity with —The Jews were *at enmity with* (enemies to) the Samaritans

At variance with —Your words are *at variance with* (opposed to) the facts

Because of —He could not leave the house *because of* a snowstorm.

- By dint of** — He gained the first prize *by dint of* steady application.
- By force of** — Most things can be made easy *by force of* habit
- By means of** — He recovered his health *by means of* sea air and sea bathing
- By the side of** — The dog was sleeping *by the side of* (beside) its master
- By virtue of** — They won the day, but only *by virtue of* hard fighting
- By way of** — I mention this point *by way of* cautioning you
- For fear of** — He took an umbrella *for fear of* being caught in rain
- For the purpose of** — He bought the land *for the purpose of* building on it
- For the sake of** — *For the sake of* settling the matter they agreed to a compromise
- For want of** — The crops failed *for want of* reasonable rain
- In accordance with** — Your actions are not *in accordance with* common sense
- In or on behalf of** — This request is made to you *on behalf of* my son
- In case of** — I have kept a reserve fund *in case of* accidents
- In common with** — You deserve to be blamed *in common with* the rest
- In connection with** — Tell me all you know *in connection with* that matter
- In consequence of** — *In consequence of* that shipwreck many families are in mourning
- In consideration of** — *In consideration of* (=considering) his hard work, he may be allowed another chance
- In course of** — He happened, *in course of* conversation, to say that, etc.
- In defence of** — He said all he could *in defence of* his client
- In defiance of** — He got up *in defiance of* the law
- In favour of** — He has resigned his post *in favour of* his son (on the understanding that his son would succeed him)
- In front of** — The house stood *in front of* the bridge
- In honour of** — The day was kept as a public holiday *in honour of* the victory
- In keeping with** — His love of sport is *in keeping with* his age
- In lieu of** — You must take my subscription *in lieu of* (as an equivalent to or substitute for) his
- In opposition to** — What you have done was *in opposition to* my wishes
- In point of** — He is senior to me *in point of* age, but not of service
- In prospect of** — Men plough and sow *in prospect of* the coming harvest
- In pursuance of** — He was ready to do anything *in pursuance of* that object
- In quest of** — They went out to Australia *in quest of* or *in search of* (to look for) gold
- In respect of** — *In respect of* (=in point of) age he is my senior
- In spite of** — *In spite of* (=notwithstanding) all the advice that I gave him, he took to the practice of smoking

- Instead of** — You had much better work *instead of* idling away your time
- In view of** — We must make up our minds at once *in view of* (= considering) the urgency of the case
- In sight of** — We had now come *in sight of* land
- In the event of, or in case of** — I shall have another chance *in the event of* or *in case of* failure
- In the face of** — He was always brave *in the face of* danger
- In the guise of** — He travelled to Bokhara *in the guise of* a darwesh
- In the hope of** — He tried again *in the hope of* succeeding next time
- In the rear of** — The baggage followed *in the rear of* the troops on march
- In the teeth of** — The ship could scarcely hold her course *in the teeth of* the wind (while the wind was blowing straight against her)
- In order to** — Nothing should be left untidied *in order to* accomplish this.
- In proportion to** — He is cleverer than you are *in proportion to* his years
- In regard to** — What have you to say *in regard to* that subject?
- In unison with** His opinions are not *in unison with* those of the majority of men
- On account of** — The famine took place *on account of* the failure of the rains
- On the brink of** — The country is *on the brink of* a serious disaster
- On the eve of** — He died *on the eve of* victory
- On the ground of** — He declined the invitation *on the ground of* a previous engagement (alleging a previous engagement as the ground or reason of his refusal)
- On the part of** — Incompetence *on the part of* a judge cannot but lead to miscarriage of justice
- On the point of** He was *on the point of* letting out the secret when he choked himself
- On the score of** — He begs to be excused *on the score of* inexperience (This means the same as *on the ground of*)
- On pretence of** — His evil deeds were done *on pretence of* religion
- With a view to** — I said all I could *with a view to* proving his innocence
- With an eye to** — He is working hard now *with an eye to* the future
- With reference to** — I have nothing to say *with reference to*, or *with regard to*, or *with respect to* this question

Insert prepositions or phrases in the places left blank —

- 1 — I He will — necessity hear what you have to say 2 The house could not be finished — lack of funds 3 She died — sorrow — her great bereavement 4 He was plucked — the surprise — every one 5 The owner — this house has lowered his rent — many other houses being vacant — the neighbourhood 6 He deserves to be blamed — his idleness. 7 Some medicine given — this time will be — his benefit, unless — the mean-

while he dies — this attack — fever 8 I cannot sleep — thinking — all that I must do 9 — my great disappointment the house is not yet ready — me to enter

II —1 He was taken — a traveller 2 A viceroy is one who rules — a king or queen 3 Sixteen seers — wheat are sold — a rupee 4 He led his army — the city, but the inhabitants fought bravely — their homes, and therefore — capturing the town he was repulsed 5 What he said and did was only meant — fun. 6 He was picked up and carried off — dead 7 You have grappled bravely — your difficulties 8 He disputed that point — me 9 You must take in crop — a cash payment 10 Grain can be given — r nt

III —1 He always failed — want — help 2 None — the brave deserves the fair 3 — all appearances he is seriously ill. 4 This picture was painted — a good model 5 All — three were drowned in that shipwreck 6 He is still poor — all his labours 7 I distrust you — all your professions and fair words 8 You will not convince me — all your endeavours 9 Your dress is well suited — your figure, and would suit any one — a short man 10 Let the coat be made — this pattern — a coat — twenty rupees 11 He was a brute — a man — all that you may say — his praise 12 There is no large island near India — the island — Ceylon 13 The city — Patna 14 — the province — Behar 14 Such customs are not adapted — the continent — Asia 15 Men should not attempt to live — foreign models

IV —1 I prefer a book — travels to one — pictures 2 This must be done — any rate, or — all risks, or — all hazards, or — all events 3 He is taller than you — two inches 4 That portrait is true — the life 5 He did it as a labour — love, but not as a matter — duty 6 She wore a wreath — roses 7 A man continues to improve — mind and body — the age of thirty 8 Your agreement must be carried out — the very letter 9 I set all your threats — nought 10 He is a man — much experience, but you must not judge — him — his words 11 He fought out the question — the last, and set all their reproofs — defiance

V —1 We must take advice — that matter 2 He inquired — whether the train would arrive — twelve o'clock 3 You can see — his manner that he is speaking the truth 4 What he said, he said — his heart 5 He missed his aim, and they all laughed — him. 6 You are rather severe — the student 7 The dog made a violent attack — the stranger 8 Dirty water comes — a dirty fountain 9 He shouted — him to come 10 Look — that beautiful star 11 He worked hard — a desire to earn his own living 12 One man winked — the other 13 This was his first attempt — English composition 14 He was sent — an errand of mercy 15 When do you intend to start — home?

VI —1 He was faithful — deed as well as — word 2 My son, — whom a better son was never born, has just left college 3 He incurred a loss of ten — one — that imprudent bargain 4 A man dull — understanding and slow — speech is not likely to

prosper. 5 My friend is not only learned — Sanskrit, but versed — modern studies. 6 Swear not at all, neither — heaven, for it is God's throne, nor — earth, for it is God's footstool; nor — thy head, for thou canst not make one hair white or black. 7 What are you —? 8 He is clever — translation. 9 We all play fairly well — cricket. 10 He is always engaged — business. 11 A man should always be employed — something, and should not be sparing — labour — anything that he undertakes. 12 Although he was short — money and timid — disposition, yet — perseverance he conquered.

VII —1 He saved all the money he could spare — the evil day. 2 A few men — the host were slain. 3 A blind man cannot tell black — white, or light — darkness. 4 Get all the men together — the arrival of the chief. 5 I should not have known him — his brother. 6 He inherited a third — the estate. 7 He is something — a scholar. 8 He never knows a friend — an enemy. 9 Many — the wounded did not recover. 10 That city is forty miles — here. 11 We are now within three miles — the house. 12 The man seems to be — his head. 13 He is — debt. 14 Calcutta is not very far — the sea. 15 He was acquitted — that charge. 16 We are — duty to day, but shall be on duty again tomorrow. 17 The school is — order. 18 The flute is — tune. 19 He broke himself — that habit. 20 Can you cure me — this disease?

VIII —1 The conduct of such an honourable man is — suspicion. 2 Such work is — a person — my poor abilities. 3 Man is — the angels. 4 The British army — Havelock marched — Lucknow. 5 The general placed — the army is a man — long experience. 6 His words are so false that they are — notice. 7 A man should not marry a wife — him. 8 Since you have been placed — me, I must obey. 9 He was transferred — the orders of his superior. 10 He is quite — your thumb. 11 I differ — you entirely. 12 I have made a contract — him. 13 He has a bad habit — arguing — other persons — trifles.

IX —1 All men should follow truth, for if truth fails — first, it will prevail — last, and triumph — falsehood — the end. 2 He offered his horse — a low price, and it was sold — the first bid made — the auctioneer — one — the persons present. 3 He is not a true man — there is a secret meaning — his words. 4 Some said he was mad or — himself. 5 They halted — two opinions, and quarrelled — themselves. 6 He struck the boy — a whip, and then had him beaten — one — the masters. 7 I will stand — you — this matter, the difficulties will disappear one — one. 8 I took that man — a rogue because he asked two rupees — a hat which was not fit — use. 9 He was bruised — head — foot, but he is now free — danger. 10 You may know a dog — a wolf — the slant — the eye — the animal last named. 11 It was kind — you to say that, for every one speaks — me as being a rogue — a lawyer. 12 Your conduct is bad, indeed it is — contempt, and your honesty is not — suspicion. 13 He ruled — his people — great justice, but not — some severity — those

who offended — the law 14 He was popular — his subjects — the whole, although he was never lenient — habitual offenders. 15 They will fight — the last man, and — my mind they will gain the day 16 I learnt — my surprise that the book I gave him was not — his taste

§ 2 — ON THE USE OR MISUSE OF PREPOSITIONS.

417 Wrong Use or Wrong Omission of Prepositions — The following mistakes should be guarded against —

<i>Fromious</i>	<i>Corrected</i>
He <i>ordered for</i> my dismissal	He <i>ordered</i> my dismissal
He does not <i>obey to</i> my words	He does not <i>obey</i> my words
This book <i>resembles to</i> that	This book <i>resembles</i> that
I will <i>inform to</i> your father	I will <i>inform</i> your father
I am <i>tired with</i> this work	I am <i>tired of</i> this work
He was <i>angry upon</i> me	He was <i>angry with</i> me
He <i>complained upon</i> me	He <i>complained against</i> me
No one can <i>depend his</i> word	No one can <i>depend on</i> his word
Ten scholarships were <i>competed</i>	Ten scholarships were <i>competed for</i>
You must <i>apply</i> the judge for pardon	You must <i>apply to</i> the judge for pardon
He will not <i>listen</i> what you say	He will not <i>listen to</i> what you say
I hope you will <i>assist to</i> me in this matter	I hope you will <i>assist</i> me in this matter
I tried, but could not <i>prevail</i> him	I tried but could not <i>prevail with or on</i> him
I must now <i>dispense</i> your services	I must now <i>dispense with</i> your services
Have you <i>signed to</i> that contract?	Have you <i>signed</i> that contract?
You should not have <i>violated against</i> the rules	You should not have <i>violated</i> the rules
A modest man does not <i>boast his</i> merits	A modest man does not <i>boast of</i> his merits
He <i>carefully investigated into</i> the case	He <i>carefully investigated</i> the case
You must <i>compensate</i> this loss to me	{ You must <i>compensate</i> me <i>for</i> this loss You must <i>make good</i> to me this loss
I <i>confess</i> some suspicion of your honesty	
I shall <i>combat with</i> your views at the meeting	I shall <i>combat</i> your views at the meeting
Have you <i>disposed</i> the current work?	Have you <i>disposed of</i> the current work?
Your medicine has <i>benefited to</i> me much	Your medicine has <i>benefited</i> me much
He <i>recommended for</i> me to the magistrate	He <i>recommended me</i> to the magistrate

Erroneous.

That thought *perceades through* my whole mind

It is useless to *nuse* past errors

Let us *partake* a meal before we start.

He *meditates* his past life

He *meditates upon* a fresh at tempt

Your fault does not *admit* any excuses

Corrected

That thought *perceades* my whole mind

It is useless to *nuse upon* past errors

Let us *partake of* a meal before we start

He *meditates on* his past life

He *meditates* (=proposes to make) a fresh attempt

Your fault does not *admit of* any excuses

418 Gerunds preceded by Prepositions—A Simple Infinitive and a Gerund are equivalent in meaning (see § 44) But if a Preposition is required, the Gerund or some equivalent Abstract noun should be substituted for the Infinitive, and should be made the object to the preposition

Note—The only Prepositions that can have an Infinitive verb as object are *about, than, but, for* (see § 195, d)

Erroneous

He persisted *to say* this

I insisted *to have* my fee paid

We should refrain *to do* evil

They prohibited me *to borrow* a book

Do not prevent me *to work*

I insisted *on him to go* away

Abstain *to speak* evil of others

I am debarred *to send* you a specimen

He resigned himself *to fail*

I am confident *to win*

I am intent *to win*

He assisted *to do* this

He hindered me *to do* this

He despaired *to succeed*

He repented *to have been* idle

You have no excuse *to be* idle

Your brother has a passion *to study*

He excels *to speak* English

I was discouraged *to learn* English

You are disqualified *to manage* your estate

You are right *to hold* that opinion

Corrected

He persisted *in saying* this

I insisted *on having* my fee paid

We should refrain *from doing* evil

They prohibited me *from borrowing* a book

Do not prevent me *from working*

I insisted *on his going* away

Abstain *from speaking* ill of others

I am debarred *from sending* you a specimen

He resigned himself *to failure*

I am confident *of winning*

I am intent *on winning*

He assisted *in doing* this

He hindered me *from doing* this

He despaired *of success*

He repented *of having been* idle

You have no excuse *for being* idle

Your brother has a passion *for studying*

He excels *in speaking* English

I was discouraged *against learning* English

You are disqualified *for managing* your estate

You are right *in holding* that opinion

Erroneous

Are you desirous to eat your break
fast?

He is fearful to go out to sea

Corrected

Are you desirous of eating your
breakfast?

He is fearful of going out to sea

419. The following peculiarities in the use of Prepositions should be noted —

(a) **At, in** — "*At*" relates to a *small* extent of space or time, "*in*" to a *wider* extent —

He will start *at* 9 o'clock *in* the morning

The end *is at hand* (=very close)

The work *is in hand* (=in a state of progress)

(b) **With, by** — "*With*" relates to the *instrument* employed for doing anything, "*by*" to the *agent* or *doer* —

This book was written *by* me *with* a quill pen

(c) **After, in** — In relation to a *past* space of time we use "*after*" in relation to a *future* space of time we use "*in*" —

He died *after* (=at the close of) a few days (*Past*)

He will die *in* (=at the close of) a few days (*Future*)

Note — The mistake is often made of using "*after*" with reference to a space of *future* time, whereas it should be used only with reference to a space of *past* time. Hence we cannot say — "He will die *after* a few days."

(d) **Between, among** — The first denotes "in the middle of two", the second "in the middle of more than two" —

Those two men quarrelled *between* themselves

Those three men quarrelled *among* themselves

(e) **Beside, besides** — The former means *by the side of*, and hence sometimes *outside of*. The latter means *in addition to* —

He came and sat *beside* me (=by my side)

Your answer *is beside* (=outside of, irrelevant to) the question

Besides (=in addition to) advising he gave them some money

(f) **By, since, before** — These are all used for a *point* of time,—not for a *period* or *space* of time —

You must be back *by* four o'clock

He has been here *since* four o'clock

He did not get back *before* four o'clock

(g) **In, into** — The preposition "*in*" denotes position or rest inside anything, while "*into*" denotes motion towards the inside of anything —

The frog is *in* the well (*Rest*)
The frog fell *into* the well (*Motion*)

(h) *In, within* — “*In*” denotes (as has been explained under c), “at the close of some future period”, “*within*” denotes some time *short of the close* —

He will return *in* (=at the close of) a week's time
He will return *within* (=in less than) a week's time

(i) *Since, from* — Both of these denote a *point* of time, not a space or period. But “*since*” is preceded by a verb in some Perfect tense, and “*from*” by a verb in some Indefinite tense. Another difference is that “*since*” can be used only in reference to *past* time, whereas “*from*” can be also used for *present* and *future* time —

He *has* or *had been* taken ill *since* Thursday last
{ He *was* taken ill *from* Thursday last (*Past*)
He *begins* school *from* to-day (*Present*)
{ He *will begin* school *from* to-morrow (*Future*)

(j) *Before, for* — “*For*” is used with *negative* sentences, to denote a *space* of *future* time

“*Before*” is used in *negative* and *affirmative* sentences alike, to denote a *point* of *future* time

{ The sun will *not rise for* an hour
{ (We could not say “before an hour,” because “before” is used for a point of time, and not for a space of time)
{ The sun will rise (*affirmative*) } *before* six o'clock
{ The sun will *not rise* (*negative*) }

Insert appropriate prepositions in the places left blank. —

I — 1 I was brought up — Italy — Rome 2 The moon rose — twelve o'clock — the night 3 We knew him — a glance as soon as he came — sight 4 He lives — Nuddea — the province of Bengal 5 The boat was tied to the shore — a sailor — a rope 6 The field was ploughed up — a peasant — a pair of oxen 7 The work must be done — twelve o'clock 8 You must be back — a week from the present time 9 No one has seen him — Thursday last 10 I have not seen him — his last birthday 11 He will not get home — sunset 12 I shall be ready to start — two or three hours 13 Take care to be back — mid day 14 I shall not be back — the end of the week 15 He has been absent from home — Friday last, and I do not think he will return — the 30th of next month 16 Let me see you again — an hour's time 17 I shall have completed my task — to-morrow evening 18 The train will start — forty minutes from now 19 I have lived — Allahabad — 1st March 20 I do not expect that he will be here — a week, and I am certain that he will not be here — sunset to-day

II — 1. I was born — India — Bombay 2. I shall expect you to be here — four o'clock, or at least — three hours from the present time 3 He shot this bud — a gun 4 He fell — a violent rage. 5 Come — my private room 6 I have not seen him — the last three days 7 You need not get up — eight o'clock A.M., but you must go to bed — nine A.M. — the latest 8 He has been hard — work — sunrise 9 He slept soundly — three hours running 10 It rained — seven — twelve o'clock 11 You have not visited me — a long time past 12 I have not heard of you — the last week 13 I shall start — two hours 14 I have lived — Calcutta — a year 15 Call on me — in hour 16 He called on me — a few days 17 I live — London — No 5 Trafalgar Square 18 I have had no rest — the last hour 19 He has been a lucky person — the day — which he began business and I believe he will be lucky — the rest — his life 20 Forty men applied for help, but there was only a small sum to be divided — — them 21 Perfect confidence ought to exist — — two such friends as we are

§ 3 — WORDS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS

420 Particular words are followed by particular prepositions, although there may be several other prepositions that have the same meaning. For instance, out of the numerous prepositions or prepositional phrases signifying cause, the verb "die" has somehow or other selected "of" for denoting the illness which was the cause of death, and declines to be followed by any other. Thus we say, "He died *of* fever." We do not say, "He died *through* fever, or *by* fever, or *from* fever, or *owing to* fever, or *on account of* fever, or *with* fever." Yet in other connections all of these prepositions may be used to denote cause.

Again, though we always say "die *of* fever," we never say "sick *of* fever," but always "sick *with* fever," where "with" and "of" are both used in the sense of cause.

(a) Nouns followed by Prepositions

Abatement <i>of</i> the fever	Acquaintance <i>with</i> a person or a thing
<i>from</i> the price asked	Adaptation <i>of</i> means <i>to</i> an end
Abhorrence <i>of</i> ingratitude	Adherence <i>to</i> a plan or cause
Ability <i>for</i> or <i>in</i> some work	Admission <i>to</i> a person
Abstinence <i>from</i> wine	<i>into</i> a place
Abundance <i>of</i> food	Advance (progress) <i>of</i> learning
Access <i>to</i> a person or place	<i>(of a person)</i> <i>in</i> knowledge
Accession <i>to</i> the throne	(To take) advantage <i>of</i> some one's mistake
Accomplice <i>with</i> a person <i>in</i> some crime.	(To gain) an advantage <i>over</i> some one.
(In) accordance <i>with</i> rule	
Accusation <i>of</i> theft	

(To have) the advantage of a man.	Benevolence to the poor.
Affection for a person.	Benevolence towards the poor
Affinity with something	Betrayal of a secret
" between two things	Bias towards a thing
Allegiance to a person	Blindness to one's own faults.
Alliance with a person or state	
Allusion to something	Candidate for election
Alternation of day with night.	Capacity for mathematics
Alternative to a plan	Care for his safety
Ambition for distinction	" of his looks
Amends for some fault	Cause for anxiety
Analogy of one thing with another	" of trouble
" between two things	Caution against error
Animosity against a person	Certainty about a matter
Annexation to some kingdom	Certificate of good conduct.
Antidote to some poison	Cessation from work
" against infection	Charge of murder (Noun)
Antipathy to some animal or some taste	" with murder (Verb)
Anxiety for any one's safety	Claim on or against some one
Apology for some fault	" to something
Apostate from a creed	Cloak for vice [party]
Appetite for food	Coheir with a person to some pro
Application to books	Collusion with a person
" for employment	Comment on something said
Apprehension of danger	Commerce with a country
Approach to (step towards) any thing	Compact with a person
Aptitude for mathematics	Comparison with a person or thing
Arrival at a place	Compassion for a person
" in a country	Compensation for a loss
Ascendency over a person	Competition with a person
Aspiration after or for fame	" for a thing
Assault on a person or thing	Complaint against a person
Assent to an opinion	" about a thing
Assurance of help	Compliance with a request
Atonement for sin	Complicity in a crime
Attachment to a person or thing	Concession to a demand
Attack on a place	Concurrence with a person
Attendance on a person	" in a proposal
" at a place	Condemnation to death
Attention to study	Condolence with a person
Attraction to or towards a thing	Confidence in a person
Authority over a person	Conformity with any one's views
" on a subject	" to rule
" for saying or doing	Connection with a person or thing
Aversion to a person or thing	Connivance at any one's faults.
	Consciousness of guilt.
	Consideration for a person
	" of a thing
Bar to success	Contact with something
Bargain with a person	(A) contemporary of some person
" for a thing	Contempt for a person or thing
Battle with anyone	(A) contrast to a person or thing

(In)contrast *with* a person or thing
 Contribution *to* a fund
 " *towards* some project
 Control *over* a person or thing
 Controversy *with* a person
 " *on or about* something
 Convergence *to* a point.
 Conversation *with* a person
 Conviction *of* guilt
 Copartner *with* a person
 " *in* something
 Copy *from* nature
 Correspondence *with* a person
 " *to* a thing
 Craving *for* anything

Decision *on* some case
 " *of* some dispute
 Degradation *from* rank
 Delight *in* a person or thing
 Deliverance *from* a danger
 Dependence *on* a person or thing
 Descent *from* ancestors
 Desire *for* wealth
 Deviation *from* rule
 Dexterity *in* doing something
 Digression *from* a subject
 Disagreement *with* a person
 Discouragement *to* a person
 Disgrace *to* a person
 Disgust *at* meanness
 Dislike *to* a person or thing
 Dissent *from* a proposal
 Distaste *for* mathematics
 Distrust *of* a person or thing
 Dominion *over* sea and land
 Doubt *of* or *about* a thing
 Draw back *to* success
 Duty *to* a person

Eagerness *for* distinction
 Economy *of* time
 Eminence *in* painting
 Emulation *for* the first place
 Encroachment *on* one's rights
 Endeavour *after* happiness
 Endurance *of* pain
 Engagement *in* a business
 " *with* a person
 Enmity *with* a person
 Entrance *into* a place.
 Envy *at* another's success.

Equality *with* a person
 Escape *from* punishment.
 Esteem *for* a person
 Estrangement *from* a person
 Evasion *of* a rule
 Exception *to* a rule
 (Make) an exception *of* some person
 or thing
 Excuse *for* a fault
 Exemption *from* a penalty
 Experience *of* a thing
 " *in* doing something
 Exposure *to* danger

Failure *of* a plan
 " *of* a person *in* something
 Faith *in* a person or thing
 Familiarity *with* a person or thing
 Fine *for* an offence
 Fitness *for* some position
 Conduct *for* anything
 Forbearance *for* some weakness
 Freedom *from* care
 " *of* action

(Has) a genius *for* mathematics
 (Is) a genius *in* mathematics
 Glance *at* a person or thing
 " *over* a wide surface.
 Gratitude *for* a thing
 " *to* a person
 Gratitude *for* or *after* a thing
 Grief *at* an event
 " *for* a person
 Guarantee *for* a man's honesty
 Guess *at* the truth

Harmony *with* anything
 Hatred *of* or *for* a person
 " *of* a thing
 Heir *to* some property
 " *of* some person
 Helpmate *to* another person
 Hindrance *to* anything
 Hint *at* some reward
 Hope *of* or *for* better luck
 Hostility *to* a person or cause

Identity *with* a person or thing
 Immersion *into* water
 Impediment *to* progress
 Implication *in* some misdeed

Imposition *on* the public
 Impressions *on* some one.
 Imputation of guilt
 " *against* some one
 Incentive *to* industry
 Inclination *for* or *to* study
 Independence *of* help
 Indifference *to* heat or cold
 Indulgence *in* wine
 " *to* a person
 Inference *from* facts
 Infliction of punishment
 " *on* the guilty
 Influence *over* or *with* a person
 " *on* a man's action
 Initiation *into* a brotherhood
 Inking of a secret
 Innovation *upon* former practice
 Inquiry *into* circumstances
 Insight *into* a man's character
 Instruction *in* music
 Intercession *with* a superior
 " *for* a friend
 Intercourse *with* a person
 Interest *in* a subject.
 " *with* a person
 Interference *with* a man's affairs
 Interview *with* a person
 Intimacy *with* a person
 Intrusion *into* a man's house
 Invective *against* a person
 Investiture *with* a title
 Invitation *to* a dinner
 Irruption *into* a country
 " *by* invaders
 Jest *at* a man's bad luck
 Joy *in* his good luck
 Judge of a matter
 Jurisdiction *over* a province
 " *in* a lawsuit
 Justification of or *for* crime
 Key *to* a mystery
 Laxity *in* morals
 Lecture *on* a subject.
 Leisure *for* amusement
 Leniency *to* prisoners
 Liability *to* an illness
 Libel *on* a person.
 " *against* his character

Likeness *to* a person or thing
 Liking *for* a person or thing
 Limit *to* a man's real
 Longing *for* or *after* a thing
 Look *at* a thing
 Lust *for* money
 Malice *against* a person
 Margin *for* losses
 Martyr *to* rheumatism
 " *for* a certain cause
 Match *for* a person
 Menace *to* the public health
 Motive *for* action
 *
 Necessity *for* anything
 " *of* the case
 Need *for* assistance
 (In) need of assistance
 Neglect of duty
 " *in* doing a thing
 Naïve *for* riding
 Nomination of a person
 " *to* a post
 Obdience *to* orders, parents, etc
 Objection *to* a proposal
 Obligation *to* a person
 Obstruction *to* traffic
 Offence *against* morality
 " *at* something done
 Offset *to* a loss
 Onslaught *on* a traveller
 Operation *on* a thing
 Opportunity *for* action
 Opposition *to* a person
 Order *for* or *against* doing a
 thing
 Outlook *from* a window
 " *on* the sea.
 Parity *with* a person
 Parody *on* or *of* a poem
 Partiality *for* flatterers
 Partnership *in* a thing
 " *with* a person
 Passion *for* gambling
 (At) peace *with* all men
 Penance *for* some fault.
 Penetration *into* motives.
 Penitence *for* some fault.
 Perseverance *in* well-doing

Persistence *in an attempt*
 Piety *towards God*
 Pity *for sufferers*
 Popularity *with neighbours*
 Postscript *to a letter*
 Power *over a person*
 Precaution *against infection*
 Predilection *for a person or thing*
 Preface *to a book*
 Preference *for one thing*
 " *to another thing*
 Prejudice *against a person*
 Premium *on gold*
 Preparation *for action*
 Pretension *to learning*
 Pretext *for interference*
 Pride *in his wealth (Noun)*
 Prides himself *on his wealth (Verb)*
 Proficiency *in mathematics*
 Profit *to the seller*
 Progress *in study*
 Prohibition *against doing a thing*
 Proneness *to deceit*
 Proof *of guilt*
 " *against temptation*
 Propensity *to gambling*
 Proposition *of three to one*
 Protest *against his proceedings*
 Provocation *to or for action*
 (In) *pursuance of an object*

 Qualification *for office*
 Quarrel *with another person*
 " *between two persons*
 Question *on a point*

 Ratio *of one to five*
 Readiness *at figures*
 " *in answering*
 " *for a journey*
 Reason *for a thing*
 " *against a thing*
 Receptacle *for boxes*
 Recompense *for labour*
 Reference *to a person or thing*
 Reflections *on a man's honesty*
 Regard *for a man's feelings*
 (In) *regard to that matter*
 Regret *for something done*
 Relapse *into idleness*
 Relation *of one thing to another*
 " *between two things*

Relations *with a person*
 Relevancy *to a question*
 Reliance *on a man's word*
 Relish *for food*
 Remedy *for or against snake bite*
 Reimonstrance *with a person*
 " *against his conduct*
 Remorse *for a crime*
 Reparation *for an injury*
 Repentance *for sin*
 Reply *to a letter*
 Repugnance *to his wishes*
 Reputation *for honesty*
 Request *for a thing*
 Resemblance *to a person or thing*
 Resignation *to fate*
 Resistance *to injustice*
 Resolution *into elements*
 " *on a matter*
 Respect *for a man or his office*
 (In) *respect of some quality*
 (With) *respect to a matter*
 Respite *from suffering*
 Responsibility *to the law*
 " *for action*
 Result *of a proceeding*
 Reversion *for age*
 Revolt *against authority*
 Rival *in anything*
 Rivalry *with a person*
 Rupture *with a friend*
 " *between two persons*

 Satire *against follies*
 Satisfaction *for some fault*
 Savour *of an orange*
 Search *for or after wealth*
 (In) *search of wealth*
 Sequel *to an event*
 Shame *at or for his fault*
 Share *of a thing*
 " *with a person*
 Sin *against God*
 (A) *slave to avarice*
 (The) *slave of avarice*
 Slur *on his character*
 Sneer *at good men*
 Sorrow *for his misfortunes*
 Specific *for or against fever*
 Speculation *in bank shares*
 Spite *against a person*

Stain on one's character
Stickler for trifles.
Subjection to the laws.
Submission to authority
Subscription to a fund
Subsistence on rice.
Succession to an estate
Supplement to a book
Supremacy over a country
Surety for a person
Suspicion of his intentions
Sympathy with or for the poor

Taste (experience) of hard work
" (liking) for hard work
Temperance in diet
Temptation to evil
Tenacity of purpose
Testimony to his character
" against his character
Title to an estate
Traffic in salt
" with Calcutta
Traitor to his country

(b) *Adjectives and Participles followed by Prepositions*

Abandoned to his fate
Abhorrent to his feelings
Abounding in or with fish
Absolved of a charge
Absorbed in study
Acceptable to a person
Accessible to strangers
Accessory to a crime
Accomplished in an art
Accountable to a person
" for a thing
Accruing to a person from some thing
Accurate in his statistics
Accused of a crime
Accustomed to riding
Acquainted with a person or thing
Acquitted of a charge
Adapted to his tastes
" for an occupation
Addicted to bad habits
Adequate to his wants.
Adjacent to a place.
Adverse to his interests
Affectionate to a person

Treatise on medicine.
Trespass against the law
Trust in his honesty

Umbrage at his behaviour
(In) unison with his character.
(We have no) use for that
(What is the) use of that ?
(There is no) use in that.

(At) variance with a person
(A) victim to oppression
(The) victim of oppression
Victory over his passions

Want of money
Warrant for his arrest
Witness of or to an event
Wonder at his rudeness

Yearning for his home

Zeal for a cause
 zest for enjoyment

Afflicted with rheumatism
Afraid of death
Aggravated at a thing
" with a person
Aghast at a sight
Agreeable to his wishes
Akin to a person or thing.
Alarmed at a rumour
Alien to his character
Alienated from a friend
Alive to the consequences.
Allied to a thing
" with a person or country
Allowable to or for a person
Amarred at anything
Ambitious of distinction
Amenable to reason
Amused at a joke
Analogous to a thing
Angry at a thing
" with a person
Annoyed at a thing
" with a person for saying or doing something.
Answerable to a person
" for his conduct.

Anxious for his safety
 „ about the result
 Appalled at the prospect.
 Apparent to any one
 Applicable to a case
 Apprehensive of danger
 Apprised of a fact
 Appropriate to an occasion
 Apt (expert) in mathematics
 „ for a purpose
 Arraigned for high treason
 Arrayed in fine linen
 „ against the enemy
 Ashamed of his dulness
 Assessed at Rs 40 a year
 Assiduous in his studies
 Associated with a person
 „ in some business
 Assured of the truth
 Astonished at his rudeness
 Astonishing to a person
 Averse to head work
 Aware of his intentions

 Backward in his books
 Bare of grass
 Based on sound principles
 Beguiled into a trap
 Beholden to a person
 Bent on doing something
 Bereft of a child
 Beset with difficulties
 Betrayed to the enemy
 „ into the enemy's hands
 Bigoted in his opinions
 Blessed with good health
 „ in his children
 Blind to his own faults
 „ of one eye
 Boastful of his wealth
 Born of rich parents
 „ in England
 Bought of a person.
 Bound in honour
 „ by a contract
 (Ship) bound for England
 Busy with his lessons

 Callous to suffering
 Capable of improvement
 Careful of his money
 „ about his dress

Cautious of giving offence
 Celebrated for his ability
 Censurable for some fault.
 Certain of success
 Chagrined at his failure
 Characterised by a thing
 Characteristic of a person
 Charged to his account
 „ (loaded) with a bullet
 „ with (accused of) a crime
 Clamorous for better pay
 „ against lower pay
 Clear of blame
 Close to a person or thing
 Clothed in purple
 „ with shame
 Clumsy at cricket
 Co-equal with another person
 Co-eval with some other event
 Cognisant of a truth
 Collateral with something else
 Commemorative of a victory
 Commensurate with one's desires
 Committed to a course of action
 Common to several persons or things
 Comparable to something else
 Compatible with one's temper
 Complicit for certain work
 Complaisant to a person
 Complacent with one's wishes
 Composed of a material
 Compounded with something else
 Concurred in about some mishap
 „ for a person's welfare
 „ in some business
 Conclusive of some fact
 Condemned to death
 Conditional on something happening
 Conducive to success
 Confident of success
 Confirmed in a habit
 Conformable to reason
 Congenial to one's tastes
 Congratulated on his success
 Conscious of a fault
 Consequent on some cause
 Consistent with honesty
 Conspicuous for honesty
 Contemporary with a person or event

Contemptible *for* his meanness
 Contented *with* a little
 Contiguous *to* anything
 Contingent (conditional) *on* success.
 Contrary *to* rule.
 Contrasted *with* something else
 Conversant *with* persons or things
 Convicted *of* a crime
 Convinced *of* a fact.
 Convulsed *with* laughter
 Correct *in* a statement
 Coupled *with* something else
 Covetous *of* other men's goods
 Creditable *to* his judgment.
 Cured *of* a disease
 Customary *for* a person

Deaf *to* entreaties
 Debited *with* a sum of money
 Defeated *of* his purpose
 Defective *in* point of style
 Deficient *in* energy
 Defrauded *of* his earnings
 Deleterious *to* health
 Delighted *with* success
 Dependont *on* a person or thing
 Depleted *of* strength
 Deprived *of* some good thing
 Derogatory *to* his character
 Descriptive *of* a place
 Deserving *of* praise
 Designed *for* a purpose
 Desirous *of* success
 Despondent *of* success
 Destined *for* the bar
 Destitute *of* money
 Destructive *of* health
 Determined *on* doing a thing
 Detrimental *to* health
 Devoid *of* foundation
 Dexterous *in* or *at* doing some thing
 Different *from* something else
 Diffident *of* success
 Diligent *in* business
 Disappointed *of* a thing not obtained
 „ *in* a thing obtained
 „ *with* a person
 Disastrous *to* a person, etc.
 Disgusted *with* a thing

Disgusted *at* or *with* a person
 Dismayed *at* a result
 Displeased *with* a person
 Disqualified *for* a post.
 „ *from* competing
 Distinct *from* something else
 Distracted *with* pain
 Distrustful *of* a man's motives
 Divested *of* office
 Doubtful or dubious *of* success
 Due *to* some cause
 Dull *of* understanding
 Eager *for* distinction
 „ *in* the pursuit of knowledge
 Earnest *in* his endeavours
 Easy *of* access
 Economical *of* time
 Educated *in* law
 „ *for* the bar
 Effective *for* a purpose
 Eligible *for* employment
 Eminent *for* his learning
 Employed *in* gardening
 Empty *of* its contents.
 Emulous *of* fame
 Enamoured *with* a person
 „ *of* a thing
 Endeared *to* all men
 Endowed } *with* natural ability
 Endued }
 Engaged *to* some person
 „ *in* some business
 Engraved *on* the memory
 Enraged *at* something done
 Entailed *on* a person
 Entangled *in* a plot.
 Entitled *to* a hearing
 Enveloped *in* mist
 Envious *of* another's success
 Equal *to* the occasion
 Essential *to* happiness
 Estranged *from* a friend
 Even *with* a rival
 Exclusive *of* certain items
 Exempted or exempt *from* a fine
 Exhausted *with* labour
 Exonerated *from* blame
 Exposed *to* danger
 Expressive *of* his feelings.

Faithful to a master
 False of heart
 „ to his friends
 Familiar with a language
 „ (well known) to a person
 Famous for his learning
 Fascinated with a person or thing
 Fatal to his prospects
 Fatigued with travelling
 Favourable to his prospects
 „ for action
 Fearful of consequences
 Fertile in resources
 Fit for a position
 Flushed with victory
 Foiled in an attempt
 Fond of music
 Foreign to the purpose
 Founded on fact
 Fraught with danger
 Free from blame
 Fruitful in resources
 Fruitless of results
 Full of persons or things
 Gifted with abilities
 Glad of his assistance
 „ at a result
 Glutted with commodities
 Good for nothing
 „ at cricket
 Grateful for past kindness
 Giddy of or after riches
 Guilty of theft
 Gulled of his money
 Hardened against pity
 „ to misfortune
 Healed of a disease
 Heedless of consequences
 Held in high esteem
 Honest in his dealings
 Honoured with your friendship
 Hopeful of success
 Horrified at the sight
 Hostile to my endeavours
 Hungry after wealth
 Hurtful to health
 Identical with anything
 Ignorant of English
 Ill with fever

Illustrative of a subject
 Imbued with confidence
 Imitative of a master
 Immaterial to the point
 Immersed in thought
 Impatient of reproof
 „ at an event
 „ for food
 Impending over one's head
 Impenetrable to heat
 Imperative on a person
 Impertinent to his master
 Impervious to water
 Implicated in a crime
 Incidental to a journey
 Inclined to laziness
 Inclusive of extras
 Inimicable to a person
 Indebted to a person
 „ for some kindness
 „ in a large sum
 Independent of his parents
 Indicative of his motives
 Indifferent to heat or cold
 Indigenous to a country
 Indignant at something done
 „ with a person
 Indispensable to success
 Indulgent in war
 „ to his children
 Intuitively with a person
 Infected with smallpox
 Infested with rats
 Instructed on a person
 Informed of a fact
 Infused into a mixture
 Inherent in his disposition
 Inimical to a person
 Innocent of a charge
 Insatiable of learning
 Insensible to shame
 Inspired with hope
 Intent on his studies
 Interested in a person or thing
 Intimate with a person
 Introduced to a person
 „ into a place
 Inured to hardships
 Invigled into a plot
 Invested with full powers
 „ in government paper
 Involved in difficulties,

Irrelevant *to* the question
Irrespective *of* consequences

Jealous *of* his reputation

Lame *of* one leg

Lavish *of* money
" *in* his expenditure

Lex *in* his morals

Level *with* the ground

Liable *to* error

" *for* payment

Liberal *of* his advice

Lightened *of* a burden

Limited *to* a certain area

Lost *to* all sense of shame

Loyal *to* the government

Madd *with* disappointment

Made *for* a teacher

" *of* iron

Material *to* success

Meat *for* a rich man

Muddled *of* his promise

Mistaken *for* a traveller

Mistrustful *of* a person

Moved *to* tears

" *with* pity

" *at* the sight

" *by* entreaties

Natural *to* a person

Necessary *to* happiness

Neglectful *of* his interests

Negligent *of* duty

" *in* his work

Notorious *for* his misdeeds

Obedient *to* parents

Obligatory *on* a person

Obligated *to* a person

" *for* some kindness

Oblivious *of* the past

Obnoxious *to* a person

Observant *of* facts

Obstinate *in* his resistance

Obstructive *to* a project

Occupied *with* some work

" *in* reading a book.

Odious *to* a person.

Offended *with* a person

" *at* something done

Offensive *to* a person.

Officious *in* his attentions.

Ominous *of* ruin

Open *to* flattery

Opposed *to* facts

Opposite *to* a place

Overcome *with* sorrow

Overwhelmed *with* grief

Painful *to* one's feeling

Parallel *to* or *with* anything

Paramount *to* everything else

Partial *to* the youngest son

Patient *of* suffering

Peculiar *to* a person or thing

Penitent *for* a fault

Pernicious *in* his habits

Pertinent *to* a question

Polite *in* manner

" *to* strangers

Poor *in* spirit

Popular *with* schoolfellows

" *for* his pluck

Possessed *of* wealth

" *with* a notion

Precious *to* a person

Precluded *from* doing a thing

Pre eminent *above* the rest

" *in* cleverness

Preferable *to* something else

Pledged *to* a title deed

Prejudicial *to* his interests

Preliminary *to* an inquiry

Preparatory *to* an inquiry

Prepared *for* the worst

Preventive *to* fever (*adj.*)

(A) preventive of fever (*noun*)

Previous *to* some event

Prodigal *of* expenditure

Productive *of* wealth

Proficient *in* mathematics

Profitable *to* an investor

Profligate *of* his money

" *in* his offers

Prone *to* idleness

Proper *for* the occasion

Prophetic *of* evil

Proud *of* his position

Provident *of* his money

" *for* his children

Purged *of* evil thoughts

Pursuant *to* an inquiry

Qualified *for* teaching music
 Quarrelsome *with* every one
 Quartered *on* the town
 Quick *of* understanding
 „ *at* mathematics

Radiant *with* smiles
 Ready *for* action
 „ *at* accounts
 „ *in* his answers
 Receptive *of* advice
 Reckless *of* expenditure
 Reconciled *to* a position
 „ *with* an opponent

Redolent *of* smoke
 Reduced *to* poverty
 Regardless *of* consequences
 Related *to* a person
 Relative *to* a question
 Relevant *to* the point
 Remiss *in* his duties
 Remote *from* one's intentions
 Repentant *of* his sin
 Replete *with* comfort
 Repugnant *to* his wishes
 Repulsive *to* his feelings
 Requisite *to* happiness
 „ *for* a purpose

Resolved *into* its elements
 „ *in* doing a thing
 Respectful *to* or *towards* one's
 superiors

Responsible *to* a person
 „ *for* his actions
 Restricted *to* a humble fate

Retentive *of* figures
 Revenge *on* a person *for* doing
 something
 Rich *in* house property
 Rid *of* trouble

Sacred *to* a man's memory
 Sanguine *of* success
 Satiated *with* pleasure
 Satisfactory *to* a person
 Satisfied *of* (concerning) a fact

„ *with* his income
 Secure *from* harm
 „ *against* an attack

Sensible *of* kindness
 Sensitive *to* blame
 Serviceable *to* a person

Shocked *at* your behaviour
 Shocking *to* every one
 Short *of* money
 Sick *of* waiting.
 Significant *of* his intentions
 Silent *about* a subject
 Similar *to* a person or thing
 Simultaneous *with* an event.
 Skilful *in* doing a thing
 Slothful *in* business
 Slow *of* hearing
 „ *in* making up his mind
 „ *at* accounts

Solicitous *of* a reply
 „ *for* your safety

Sorry *for* your sufferings
 Sporting *of* his use
 Spiteful *against* a person
 Stained *with* crimes
 Startled *at* a sight
 Stopped *in* view

Strange *to* a person
 Subject *to* authority
 Subordinate *to* a person
 Subsequent *to* another event
 Subsidiary *to* trade
 Subversive *of* discipline
 Sufficient *for* a purpose
 Suitable *to* the occasion
 „ *for* his income

Suited *to* the occasion
 „ *for* a post

Sure *of* success
 Suspicious *of* his meaning
 Sympathetic *with* sufferers
 Synonymous *with* another word

Tam amount *to* a falsehood
 Temperate *in* his habits
 Tenuous *of* his purpose
 Thankful *for* past favours
 Tired *of* doing nothing
 „ *with* his exertions
 Transported *with* joy
 True *to* his convictions

Uneasy *about* consequences
 Useful *for* a certain purpose

Van *of* his fine dress
 Veiled *in* mystery
 Veiled *in* Euclid.

Vested *in* a person
 Vexed *with* a person *for* doing
 " *at* a thing [something]
 Victorious *over* difficulties
 Void *of* meaning

Wanting *in* common sense
 Wary *of* telling secrets

Weak *of* understanding
 " *in* his head
 Weary *of* doing nothing
 Welcome *to* my house
 Worthy *of* praise

Zealous *for* improvement
 " *in* a cause

(c) *Verbs followed by Prepositions*

Abide *by* a promise
 Abound *in* or *with* fish
 Absolve *of* or *from* a charge
 Abstain *from* wine
 Accede *to* a request
 Accept *of* a favour
 Accord *with* or *to* a thing
 Account *for* a fact
 Accuse *to* a person
 Accuse *of* some misdeed
 Acquiesce *in* a decision
 Acquit *of* blame
 Adapt *to* circumstances
 Adhere *to* a plan
 Admit *of* an excuse
 " *to* or *into* a secret
 Admonish *of* a fault
 Agree *to* a proposal
 " *with* a person
 Aim *at* a mark
 Alight *from* a carriage
 " *on* the ground
 Allot *to* a person
 Allow *of* delay
 Allude *to* a fact
 Alternate *with* something else
 Anchor *off* the shore
 Annul *at* or *on* his faults
 Answer *to* a person
 " *for* conduct
 Apologise *to* a person
 " *for* rudeness
 Appeal *to* a person
 " *for* redress or help
 " *against* a sentence
 Apply *to* a person *for* a thing
 Appoint *to* a situation
 Apprise *of* a fact
 Approve *of* an action
 Arbitrate *between* two persons
 Argue *with* a person *for* or *against*
 a point,

Arrive *at* a place
 " *in* a country
 Ascribe *to* a cause
 Ask *for* a thing
 " *of* or *from* a person
 Aspire *after* worldly greatness
 " *to* some particular object
 Assent *to* your terms
 Associate *with* a person or thing
 Assure a person *of* a fact
 Atone *for* a fault
 Attain *to* a high place
 Attend *to* a book or speaker
 " *on* a person
 Attribute *to* a cause
 Avail oneself *of* an offer
 Avenger oneself *on* a person
 Avert *from* a person

Balk any one *of* his object
 Bark *at* a person or thing
 Bask *in* sunshine
 Bear *with* a man's impatience
 Beat *against* the rocks (the waves)
 " *on* one's head (the sun)
 Become *of* you (what will?)
 Beg pardon *of* a person
 " a person *to* do a thing
 " *for* something *from* some one
 Begin *with* the first
 Beguile a person *of* a thing
 Believe *in* one's honesty
 Belong *to* a person
 Bequeath a thing *to* a person
 Bestow a thing *on* a person
 Bethink oneself *of* something
 Beware *of* wine
 Blame a person *for* something
 Blush *at* one's own faults
 " *for* any one who is at fault
 Boast or brag *of* one's cleverness
 Border *on* a place



Borrow *of or from* a person.

Break *into* a house (thieves)

„ *oneself of* a habit.

„ *through* restraint.

„ *ill news to* a person

„ (dissolve partnership) *with*
a person

Bring a thing *to light*

„ „ *under notice*

Brood *over* past grievances

Burden an animal *with* a load

Burst *into* a rage (country)

„ *upon* (suddenly invade) a

Buy a thing *of* a person

„ „ *from* a shop

Calculate *on* success

Call *on* a person (visit him at his house)

„ *to* (shout to) a person

„ *for* (request) punishment

Canvass *for* votes (or thing)

Care *for* (attach value to) a person

Carp *at* one's conduct

Catch *at* an opportunity

Caution a person *against* a danger

Cavil *at* a word or deed

Cease *from* quarrelling

Censure a man *for* a fault

Certify *to* a man's character

Chafe *at* or *under* rebuke

Challenge a man *to* combat

Charge a man *with* a crime

„ *payment to* a person

Cheat a man *of* his due

Clamour *for* higher wages

Clash *with* one's meaning

Cleanse *from* stain

Clear a man *of* blame

Cling *to* a person or thing

Close *with* (accept) an offer

Coalesce *with* something else

Coincide *with* one's opinion

Combat *with* difficulties

Come *across* (accidentally meet)
any one

„ *into* fashion

„ *by* (obtain) a thing

„ *of* (result from) something

„ *to* (amount to) forty

Commence *with* a thing

Comment *on* a matter

Communicate a thing *to* a person

„ *with* a person *on* a
subject.

Compare similars *with* similars—
as one fruit *with* an-
other

„ things dissimilar, by way
of illustration — as
genius *to* a lightning
flash

Compensate a person *for* his loss

Compete *with* a person *for* a prize

Complain *of* some annoyance *to* a
person

„ *against* a person

Comply *with* one's wishes

Conceal facts *from* any one

Concede *to* some demand

Concur *with* a person

„ *in* an opinion

Condemn a person *to* death

„ „ *for* murder

Condone *with* a person

Conduce *to* happiness

Confer (*Trans*) a thing *on* any one

„ (*Intrans*) *with* a person
about something

Confess *to* a fault

Conlide (*Trans*) a secret *to* any
one

„ (*Intrans*) *in* one's honour

Conform *to* (follow) a rule

„ *with* one's views

Confront a man *with* his accusers

Congratulate a man *on* his success

Convince *of* other men's faults

Consent *to* some proposal

Consign *to* destruction

Consist *of* materials

„ *in* facts or results

Consult *with* a person *on* or *about*
some matter

Contend *with* or *against* a person

„ *for* or *about* a thing

Contribute *to* a fund

Converge *to* a point

Converse *with* a person *about* a
thing

Convict a person *of* a crime.

Convince a person *of* a fact

Cope *with* a person

Correspond *with* a person (write)

Correspond to something (agree)
Count on a thing (confidently expect).

Count for nothing
Crave for or after happiness
Credit with good intentions
Crow over a defeated rival
Cure a man of a disease
Cut a thing in or to pieces
" " in half

Dabble in politics
Daily with a person
Dash against anything
" over anything
Dawn on a person
Deal well or ill by a person
" in (trade in) cloth, tea, spices, etc.
" with a person (have dealings in trade, etc.)
" with a subject (write about it)

Debar from doing anything
Debit with a sum of money
Decide on something
" against something
Declare for something
" against something
Defend a person from harm
Defer to a man's wishes
Defraud a person of his due
Deliberate on a matter
Delight in music
Deliver from some evil
Deluge with water
Demand a thing of a person
Demur to a statement
Depend on a person or thing
Deprive a person of a thing
Derogate from one's reputation
Descant on a subject
Desist from an attempt
Despair of success
Despoil a person of a thing
Deter a person from a thing
Determine on doing something
Detract from one's reputation
Deviate from a certain course
Devolve on a person (a duty)
Die of a disease
" from some cause, as overwork

Die by violence.
Differ with a person on a subject.
" from anything (to be unlike)

Digress from the point.
Dilate on a subject
Dip into a book
Disable one from doing something
Disabuse one's mind of error
Disagree with a person or thing
Disapprove of anything
Dispense with a man's services
Dispose of (sell) property
Dispute with a person about any thing
Disseise (dispossess) of an estate
Dissent from an opinion
Dissuade from an action
Distinguish one thing from another
" between two things

Divert a person from a purpose
Invest one's mind of fear
Divide in half, into four parts
Doat upon a person or thing
Domineer over one's inferiors
Draw money on a bank
Dream of strange things
Drive at some point
Drop off a tree
" out of the ranks
Dwell on a subject

Eat into iron
Elicit from a person
Embark on board ship
" in business
Emerge from the forest
Employ in a work
Encroach on one's authority
Endow a hospital with an estate
Enjoin on a person
Enlarge on a subject
Enlist in the army
" a person in some project.
Entail labour on a person
Enter upon a career
" into one's plans
Entitle any one to an estate
Entrust anyone with a thing
" a thing to anyone
Err on the side of leniency.

Escape *from* jail
 Exact payment *from* a person
 Excel *in* languages
 Exchange one thing *for* another
 " *with* a person
 Exclude *from* an enumeration
 Excuse a person *from* coming
 Exempt a person *from* a rule
 Exonerate a person *from* blame
 Expatriate *on* a subject
 Explain *to* a person
 Expostulate *with* a person
 Exult *in* a victory *over* a man

 Fail *in* an attempt
 " *of* a purpose
 Fall *among* thieves
 " *in* law *with* a person
 " *in* with one's views
 " *on* the enemy (attack)
 " *into* a mistake
 " *under* some one's displeasure
 Fawn *on* a person
 Feed (*Intrans*) *on* grass
 " (*Trans*) a cow *with* grass
 Feel *for* a person *in* his trouble
 Fight *for* the weak *against* the strong
 " *with* or *against* a person
 Fill *with* anything
 " (*full of* something) (*defect*)
 Fire *on* a city
 Flirt *for* compliments
 Flirt *with* a person
 Fly *at* (attack) a dog
 " *into* a rage
 Free *of* or *from* anything
 Furnish a person *with* a thing
 " a thing *to* a person

 Gain *on* some one *in* a race
 Get *at* (find out) the facts
 " *over* (recover from) an illness
 " *on* *with* a person (live or work smoothly with him)
 " *out of* debt
 " *to* a journey's end
 Glance *at* an object
 " *over* a letter
 Glory *in* success
 Grapple *with* difficulties
 Grasp *at* something unattainable

Grieve *at* or *for* or *about* an event.
 " *for* a person
 Grow *upon* one = (a habit grows on, etc.)
 Gumble *at* one's lot
 Guard *against* a bad habit
 Guess *at* something

 Hanker *after* riches
 Happen *to* a person
 Heal *of* a disease
 Hear *of* an event
 Hesitate *at* nothing
 Hide a thing *from* a person
 Hide one *from* doing something
 Hinge *on* (depend on) some event.
 Hint *at* an intention
 Hope *for* something
 Hover *over* a nest
 Hunt *after* or *for* anything

 Identify one person or thing *with* another
 Impart a thing *to* a person
 Impart *over* one's head
 Import goods *into* a country
 " things *from* a country
 Impose *on* (deceive) a person
 Impress an idea *on* a person
 " a person *with* an idea
 Impute blame *to* a person
 Incite a person *to* some action
 Increase *in* wisdom
 Inculcate *on* a person
 Indict *on* an office *for* stamps
 Indict a person *for* a crime
 Inscribe *with* a signature
 Indulge *in* wine
 " one's self *with* wine
 Infer one fact *from* another
 Inflict punishment *on* a man
 Inform a person *of* a thing
 " *against* a person
 Influence *on* a man's rights
 Infuse an ingredient *into* some mixture
 Initiate a man *into* an order
 Inquire *into* a matter
 " *of* a person *about* or *concerning* some matter
 Insist *on* something being done
 Inspire a man *with* courage

Instil a thing *into* the mind
Intercede *with* a superior *for* some one else.

Interfere *with* a person *in* some matter

Intermeddle *with* other men's affairs

Intersect *with* each other

Intrinch *on* a man's rights

Intrigue *with* the opposite party

Introduce a man *to* some one

" *into* a place or act

Intrude *on* one's leisure

" *into* one's house

Intrust a person *with* a thing

" a thing *to* a person

Inveigh *against* injustice

Inveigle *into* a trap

Invest money *in* some project

" a man *with* authority

Invite a man *to* dinner

Involve a man *in* debt

Issue *from* some source

Jar *against* one's nerves

Jeer *at* a person

Jest *at* (make fun of) a person

Join *in* a game

" one thing *to* another

Judge of something *by* something

Jump *at* (eagerly accept) an offer

" *to* a conclusion

Keep (abstain) *from* wine

" *to* a point

Kick *against* (resist) authority

" *at* a thing (scornfully reject)

Knock one's head *against* a wall

" *at* a door

Know *of* a person

Labour *under* a misapprehension

" *for* the public good

" *in* a good cause

" *at* some work

Lament *for* the dead

Languish *for* home

Lapse *into* idleness

Laugh *at* a person or thing

" *to* scorn

Lay facts *before* a person

" a sin *to* one's charge

Lay a person *under* an obligation

Lead *to* Calcutta (a road)

Lean *against* a wall

" *on* a staff

" *to* a certain opinion

Lecture a person *on* some fault

Level a city *with* the ground

" a gun *at* a bird

Lie *in* one's power

" *under* an imputation

Light *on* a person or object

Listen *to* complaints

" *for* a discordant note

Live *for* riches or fame

" *by* honest labour

" *on* a small income

" *within* one's means

Long *for* or *after* anything

Look *after* (watch) some business

" *at* a person or thing

" *into* (closely examine) a matter

" *for* something lost

" *over* (examine cursorily) an account

" *through* (examine carefully) an account

" *out of* a place

Just *after* riches

Make *away with* (purloin) money

for (conduce to) happiness

" *up to* (approach) a person.

" some meaning *of* a thing

March *with* (border on) a bound

my

Marry one person *to* another

Marvel *at* some sight or report

Match one thing *with* another

Meddle *with* other men's business

Meditate *on* some subject

Meet *with* a rebuff

Mousoo *with* punishment.

Merge *into* anything

Minister *to* other men's wants.

Mortgage land *to* a pleader

Mourn *for* the dead

Murmur *at* or *against* anything

Muse *upon* the beauties of nature.

Object *to* some proposal.

Occur *to* one's mind.

Offend *against* good taste
 Officiate *for* some one *in* a post.
 Operate *on* a patient
 Originate *in* a thing or place
 " *with* a person
 Overwhelm *with* kindness

 Pall *upon* one's taste
 Part *with* a person or thing
 Partake *of* some food
 Participate *with* a person *in* his gains
 Pass *from* one thing *into* another
 " *for* a clever man
 " *over* (omit) a page
 " *by* a man & down
 Pay (suffer) *for* one's folly
 Penetrate *into* a secret
 Perish *by* the sword
 " *with* cold
 Persevere *in* an effort
 Persist *in* doing something
 Pertain *to* a question
 Pine *for* a lost child
 Pitch *upon* a plan
 Play *at* cricket
 " *upon* the guitar
 " *tricks* (trifle) *with* one's intellect
 Plead *with* a creditor *for* longer time
 Plot *against* a man
 Plunge *into* a river, work, etc
 Point *at* a person
 " *to* some one
 Ponder *on* or *over* a subject
 Possess oneself *of* an estate
 Pounce *on* a thing
 Pray *for* pardon
 Predicate hardness *of* iron
 Prefer one thing *to* another
 Prejudice any one *against* some person or thing
 Prepare *for* the worst
 " *against* disaster
 Present anyone *with* a book
 Preserve *from* harm
 Preside *at* a meeting
 " *over* a meeting
 Presume *on* a man's kindness
 Pretend *to* omniscience
 Prevail *on* (persuade) a person *to* do something.

Prevail *against* or *over* an adversary
 " *with* a person (have more influence than anything else)
 Prevent *from* going
 Pray *upon* one's health
 Pride oneself *on* a thing
 Proceed *with* a business already commenced
 " *to* a business not yet commenced
 " *from* one point *to* another
 " *against* (prosecute) a person
 Prohibit *from* doing something
 Protect *from* harm
 Protest *against* injustice
 Provide *for* one's children.
 " *against* the evil day
 " *oneself with* something
 Provoke one *to* anger
 Pry *into* a secret
 Punish any one *for* a fault.
 Purge the mind *of* false notions

 Quake *with* fear
 Qualify oneself *for* a post
 Quarrel *with* some one *over* or *about* something
 Quote something *from* an author

 Rail *at* or *against* any one
 Reason *with* a person *about* something
 Rebel *against* authority
 Reckon *on* (confidently expect) something
 " *with* (settle accounts with) a person
 Recoil *from* a sight
 Recompense one *for* some service
 Reconcile *to* a loss
 " *with* an adversary
 Recover *from* an illness.
 Refer *to* a subject
 Reflect credit *on* a person
 " (*Intrans*) *on* a man's conduct
 Refrain *from* tears.
 Rejoice *at* the success of another
 " *in* one's own success.

Relapse *into* idleness.
 Relieve *of* or *from* pain.
 Rely *on* a person or thing
 Remind a person *of* a thing
 Remonstrate *with* a person *against*
 some proceeding
 Render (translate) *into* English
 Repent *of* imprudence
 Repine *at* misfortune
 Repose (*Intrans*) *on* a bed
 " confidence *in* a person
 Reprimand a person *for* a fault
 Require something *of* some one
 Resolve *on* a course of action
 Rest *on* a couch, *on* facts, etc.
 (It) rests *with* a person to do,
 etc
 Result *from* a cause
 " *in* a consequence
 Retaliate *on* an enemy
 Revel *in* vice
 Revenge myself *on* some one *for*
 some injury
 Revert *to* an appointment
 Revolt *against* a government
 Reward a man *with* something *for*
 some service done
 Ride *at* anchor
 Rob a person *of* something
 Rule *over* a country
 Run *after* (eagerly follow) new
 fashions
 " *at* (attack) a cat
 " *into* debt
 " *over* (read rapidly) an account
 " *through* his money

 Save a person or thing *from* harm
 Scoff *at* religion
 Search *for* something lost
 " *into* (carefully examine) a
 matter
 See *about* (consider) a matter
 " *into* (investigate) a matter
 " *through* (understand) his mean-
 ing
 " *to* (attend to) a matter
 Seek *after* or *for* happiness
 Send *for* a doctor
 Sentence a man *to* a fine
 Set *about* (begin working at) a
 business

Set a person *over* (in charge of) a
 business
 " *upon* (attack) a traveller
 Settle some money *on* a daughter
 Show a person *over* a house
 Shudder *at* cruelty
 Side *with* a person in a dispute.
 Sit *over* a fire
 " *under* an imputation
 Slur *over* a matter
 Smack *of* a certain flavour
 Smart *under* a sense of wrong
 Smell *of* fish
 Smile *at* (deride) a person's threats
 " *on* (favour) a person
 Snap *at* a person
 Snatch *at* (try to seize) a thing
 Speak *of* a subject (briefly)
 " *on* a subject (at greater
 length)
 Speculate *in* shares.
 " *on* a possible future
 Stand *against* (resist) an enemy
 " *by* (support) a friend
 " *on* one's dignity
 " *to* (maintain) one's opinion
 Stare *at* a person
 " a person *in* the face
 Start *for* Calcutta
 Stick *at* nothing
 " *to* his point
 Stipulate *for* certain terms
 Stoop *to* meanness
 Strike *at* (aim a blow at) a dog
 " *for* higher pay
 " *on* a rock
 Strip a person *of* his property
 Struggle *against* difficulties
 Subject a person *to* censure
 Submit *to* authority
 Subscribe *to* a fund
 Subsist *on* scanty food
 Succeed *to* a property
 " *in* an undertaking
 Succumb *to* difficulties
 Sue *for* peace
 Supply a thing *to* a person
 " a person *with* a thing
 Surrender *to* the enemy
 Sweep the dirt *off* the floor
 Sympathise *with* a person *in* his
 troubles.

Take *after* (resemble) his father
 „ a person *for* a spy
 „ *to* (commence the habit of) gambling
 „ *upon* oneself *to do* a thing
 Talk *of* or *about* an event.
 „ *over* (discuss) a matter
 „ *to* or *with* a person
 Tamper *with* statistics
 Taste *of* salt
 Tell *of* or *about* an event
 Testify *to* a fact
 Think *of* or *about* anything
 „ *over* (consider) a matter
 Threaten a man *with* a lawsuit
 Throw a stone *at* anyone
 Tide *over* losses
 Touch *at* Gibraltar (ships)
 „ *upon* (lightly allude to, subject)
 Tower *over* every one else
 Trade *with* a country *in* or *ing*
 Trample *on* justice
 Treat *of* a subject
 Trouble *at* a lion *with* fear
 Trench *on* a man's rights
 Trespass *against* rules
 „ *on* a man's time
 „ *in* a man's house
 Trifle *with* a man's feelings
 Triumph *over* obstacles

Trust *in* a person
 „ *to* a man's honesty } (*Intr*)
 „ a man *with* money } (*Trans*)
 Turn *verse into* prose
 „ *to* a friend *for* help
 „ *upon* (hinge on) evidence
 Upbraid a person *with* ingratitude
 Urge a fact *on* one's attention
 Venture *upon* an undertaking
 Vie *with* another person
 Vote *for* (in favour of) anything
 „ *against* a thing
 Wait *at* table
 „ *for* a person or thing
 „ *on* (attend) a person
 Warn a person *of* danger
 „ „ *against* a fault.
 Wink *at* one's faults
 Wish *for* anything
 Work *at* mathematics
 „ *for* small pay
 Worn oneself *into* another man's confidence
 Wrestle *with* an adversary
 Yield *for* affection
 Yield *to* clamour

(d) *Adverbs followed by Prepositions*

Note —Adverbs are followed by the same prepositions as the corresponding adjectives

Adversely *to* one's interests
 Agreeably *to* one's wishes
 Amenable *to* reason
 Angrily *with* a person
 Anxiously *for* one's safety
 Appropriately *to* an occasion
 Compatibly *with* reason
 Conditionally *on* some event
 Conformably *to* reason
 Consistently *with* reason
 Contentedly *with* one's lot
 Effectively *for* a purpose
 Favourably *to* one's interests
 Fortunately *for* a person

Independently *of* persons or things
 Irrelevantly *to* a question
 Irrespectively *of* consequences
 Loyalty *to* one's rulers
 Obstructively *to* happiness
 Offensively *to* a person
 Prejudicially *to* one's interests
 Previously *to* some event
 Probably *to* oneself
 Proportionately *to* anything
 Simultaneously *with* some event
 Subsequently *to* some event
 Sufficiently *for* the purpose

421 The following examples show what the meaning

of a verb is, when it stands alone, and how its meaning is modified when a preposition is added to it —

Admit —I do not admit (accept) the excuse This matter admits of no excuse (is such that it cannot-be excused or pardoned)

Attend —He attends (goes to) the meeting He attends to the meeting (gives his mind to the business of the meeting)

Bear —We must bear (endure, suffer) his reproaches We must bear *with* (endure patiently, tolerate) his reproaches

Begin —Let us begin this song (commence to sing it) Let us begin *with* this song (sing this song before we sing any other)

Believe —I do not believe this man (accept his statement as true) I do not believe *in* this man (trust in his honesty)

Call —I will call him (shout to him and order him to come) I will call *on* him (visit him at his house)

Catch —He caught (seized) the reins He caught *at* (tried to seize) the reins

Close —This closes (finishes, concludes) the bargain I cannot close *with* (accept) such a bargain

Commence —We must commence this work (begin to do it) to day We should commence *with* this work (do this work before doing any other)

Consult —I must consult you (ask your advice) on this point I must consult (take counsel) *with* you on this point

Count —Have you counted (reckoned up) the money? I count *on* that money (expect it as a certainty)

Deal —He dealt (distributed) the cards He dealt *in* (sold) cards and other kinds of games

Dispense —Dispense (distribute) your charities fairly all round We can dispense *with* (we do not require) your charities

Eat —Do you ever eat cheese (take it as food) The mice are eating *into* the cheese (making a hole in it by eating)

Feel —Feel this table (examine it by feeling or touching it) The blind man is feeling *for* the table (trying to find the table by groping for it with his hand)

Gain —He gained the land (reached it safely) The sea is gaining *on* the land (washing it down) along this coast

Grasp —He grasped (seized and held tight) the money He grasped *at* (attempted to seize) the money

Guard —Guard this man (protect him) from danger Guard *against* (take every precaution against) this man

Guess —He guessed the facts (hit upon the facts by guess or conjecture) He guessed *at* the facts (made a guess or conjecture concerning them, tried to find them out by conjecture)

Inquire —He inquired or enquired the reason (asked what was the reason) He inquired *into* the reason (investigated it by a careful examination of the evidence)

Meditate —He meditates revenge (*future action*) He meditates *on* the revenge that he took (*past action*).

Meet —I met him on the road (as I was walking on the road, I came in front of him) I met *with* him (found him) in the library

Prepare.—He prepared (got ready) a feast. He prepared *for* the feast (got himself ready for it)

Repair.—Let us repair the house (put it into good repair) Let us repair (go) *to* the house

Search.—Search that thief (examine his clothes and other belongings) Search *for* that thief (try to find out where he is)

See.—Do you not see (perceive) this danger? We must see *to* this danger (attend to it, and guard against it)

Send.—Send (despatch) the doctor at once Send *for* the doctor (send some one to call the doctor)

Snatch.—He snatched the book (seized it by a rapid movement of the hand) He snatched *at* the book (attempted to seize it)

Strike.—He struck the dog He struck *at* (aimed a blow at, or endeavoured to strike) the dog

Taste.—He tasted the salt This water tastes *of* (has a flavour of) salt

Touch.—He has not yet touched the point (come to the point under debate) He touched *upon* the point (briefly alluded to it)

Work.—He worked (manipulated) the machine He worked *at* (was busily engaged *with*) the machine

Note.—Sometimes there is no appreciable difference of meaning between a verb standing alone and the same verb followed by a preposition The following are examples —

Accept, or accept *of*, a gift

Attain, or attain *to*, perfection

Beg, or beg *of*, a person to do something

Confess, or confess *to*, a fault

Enter, or enter *into* a house

Judge, or judge *of*, a person

Join, or join *in*, a game

Know, or know *of*, a fact.

Penetrate, or penetrate *into*, a secret

Seek, or seek *for*, happiness

Succeed, or succeed *to*, some one

Treat, or treat *of*, a subject

Insert prepositions or prepositional phrases —

I — 1 I acquit you — all complicity — that crime, and hope you will be compensated — the annoyance entailed — you — the groundless imputation 2 I was horrified — the sight — so much distress 3 He did not die — cholera, but — the effects — over exposure — the sun — an unhealthy time — the year 4 This shopkeeper deals — — gram, but he did not deal honestly — me, and I shall have no more dealings — him in future 5 You will have to answer — me — your misconduct 6 Forty students competed — one another — a single scholarship 7 I must consult — you — that matter shortly 8 Do not exult offensively — the victory you have won — your rival 9 He is not possessed — much wisdom, but is possessed — a very high notion — his own importance 10 Will you entrust me — that letter? No, I will entrust nothing — you 11 Always be prepared — the worst. 12 That motive prevails — me 13 I prevailed — him to make the attempt, but he could not prevail — his adversary 14 I rejoiced not only — my own success, but — yours. 15 We must provide — our children — the evil day 16 Some men

stick — nothing, so long as they can stick — their point. 17 Why do you stare me — the face? It is bad manners to stare — one in that manner 18 The ship touched — Gibraltar 19 He touched — the subject of tides 20 He supplied money — the men, and they supplied his horses — provender 21 He could smile — their threats, for fortune continued to smile — him 22 They proceeded — the business that they had commenced yesterday, before they proceeded — the consideration of any new questions 23 Do not live — riches, but whatever you live —, live — honest labour, and if you have to live — a small income, live — your means 24 He is labouring — a misapprehension, but he thinks he is labouring — a good cause and — the public welfare 25 He once laid me — an obligation, and therefore I am very unwilling to lay the blame of this affair — his charge 26 He not only intruded — my house, but — my leisure, for I was engaged — that time — reading an interesting book 27 The railways intersect — each other — this place 28 Let me intercede — you — my friend 29 I misquid — him — that matter 30 He is impressed — that notion, and he desires to impress it — me

II —1 The river — which I went — my brother abounds — fish, we took a boat and rowed — the stream — the opposite bank 2 He promised to abide — the contract, and they relied — his honour — its fulfilment But they were disappointed — their hopes, and found they could never trust their work — him again 3 He lives — small cost, and he does so — abstaining — every kind of luxury and accustoming himself — humble fare such as is suitable — a person — small income 4 The person who stood — the judge yesterday was accused — throwing a stone — his neighbour's window, but nothing more came — the matter, and he was acquitted — the charge imputed — him 5 A man — honour will adhere — his convictions, and act — a sense — duty, even if men rail — him and think him weak — understanding and wanting — common sense 6 The intentions — that man admit — no doubt, we must agree — his terms, whether we approve — them or not, and there is no reason to be anxious — the result 7 Aim — doing your duty — all risks, and do not be uneasy in mind — the consequences. 8 He was much alarmed — what he had just heard, and alluded — it as soon as he arrived — my house and alighted — his carriage 9 The ship stopped a little way — the shore, and an experienced man was at once appointed — the post of pilot — bringing her — port. 10 He had a great affection — his parents, but he had no taste — hard work, and was not attentive — his studies 11 One man complained — the magistrate — A's dishonesty, another brought a complaint — A — some debt; in fact, A has made many enemies — himself 12 When you attend school, attend — your studies What has been the cause — your idleness hitherto? Surely there was no just cause — such laziness 13 He took advantage — my ignorance, but he gained no real advantage — me in the end 14 I am vexed — him — what he has done 15 A man is adapted — any occupation which

is adapted — his capacities. 16 I was annoyed — him — saying that, and I am not easily annoyed — trifles

III — 1 Whatever you decide —, stick — it and do your best — difficulties. 2 I understand — all I hear that, though he despairs — success, nothing will deter him — his purpose. 3 I differ — you — the exact point — which dogs differ — wolves in shape or kind. But there is no difference of opinion — their comparative fierceness. 4 He is so weak that all food disagrees — him. Care must be taken that he does not die — weakness. 5 He was deprived — that very thing — which he delighted most. 6 I depended — his coming — four o'clock, but — all the hopes I had formed he deviated — his purpose and did nothing to defend me — injustice. 7 I disapprove — your way — working, and must therefore dispense — your services. 8 A blind man cannot distinguish light — darkness. Death does not distinguish — rich and poor. 9 I can divide this apple — two persons, but it is too small to be divided — forty, for it cannot be divided — forty parts. 10 When they had disposed — all their wares, there was a dispute — the profits, each man differing — the other. 11 Dissuade him — this folly, if you can, but I fear he is weak — his head — constant overwork and anxiety. 12 I will have nothing to do — a man, who tries to domineer — every one and cavils — everything which does not coincide — his own opinion. 13 More things we wrought — prayer than this world dreams —. 14 He dwells — a simple minded people, — the happy village, — the northern part — the district. 15 He dwelt — a long time — that subject but no one really knew what he was driving —. 16 The magistrate's decision — that case was not in accordance — the evidence we must appeal — a higher court, where perhaps this slur — our character will be removed. 17 He has an excellent appetite — his dinner, but no aspiration — anything higher. 18 The hull was veiled — a mist, and we were tired — waiting till the mist cleared off, besides being tired — our exertions. 19 I am reconciled — my opponent, but not — my losses. 20 He was disqualified — the post on account of age, but he was not disqualified — competing — a diploma. 21 It is better to be clothed — rags, than to be clothed — shame.

IV — 1 He embarked — board the steamer, which was to take him — India, where we intended to embark — some kind — trade. He was more popular than most men — the people of the country. 2 — some places the sea encroaches — the land, — others the land gains — the sea. This is so well known, that I need not expatiate — it any further. 3 As soon as he emerged — poverty, he entered — partnership — a man — wealth, and the two then entered — a grand commercial career. 4 I will exchange this book — you — another, if you have a good one to offer me — exchange. 5 He rejoiced — his success, and exulted — his fallen rival. 6 I am not familiar — that subject; so I cannot fall in — your views, or engage — this controversy any longer. 7 He fought — the robber — his life. The Spaniards

allied — the English fought — the French — what is called the Peninsular war 8 While the cat was running — the mouse, the mouse ran — its hole and freed itself — danger 9 Be so good as to furnish me — a copy of that letter Furnish medicine — the sick 10 A glance — this letter will convince you — its contents that he is grasping — your money Every one will grieve — your loss 11 He increased — wisdom — the increase of age, and at last grew — the follies of his boyhood and youth Thus — degrees he rose — eminence — his profession 12 A young man should be — his guard — bad company, and beware — falling — thour evil ways 13 He loitered — this place — the greater part — the day, sometimes leaning — the wall, and sometimes strolling — the opposite side — the street 14 Madagascar is an island — the east coast of Africa The French could not prevail — the inhabitants to surrender — an effort 15 We must get rid — this difficult business at once Let us inquire — the danger, and be ready — the evil day 16 Your words are strange and quite — my comprehension It is foolish to say what no one can understand, and I thought you were — such folly 17 This leaves no stain — his character, and no further prejudice — him should be entertained, as he has now cleared himself — all the faults imputed — him 18 I have no liking — that man in fact, I have taken a decided dislike — him For all that, I wish to deal fairly — him 19 My relations — him are now quite friendly, and there is no ill feeling left in relation — that dispute 20 Did you beg pardon — the teacher? No, I do not like to entreat any one — mercy 21 I cannot agree — you in this matter, and therefore I do not agree — your proposal 22 I blush — my own fault more than I blush — your reputation 23 Rhetoric might be compared — poetry 24 I am — need — good advice, but there is no need — your reproaches 25 There would be no use — my purchasing that article for I have no use — it 26 I have failed — my purpose because I failed — my first attempt, and was not allowed to make another 27 He is invested — full authority from me to invest my money — that speculation 28 He is profuse — his promises, but not at all profuse — his money

V — 1 You must apologise — him — what you have done, even though the act was not done — any bad intention 2 You will have to answer — your master — that mistake, and you may hope — pardon, if you ask — it — the proper way 3 You can appeal — a higher court and apply — a fresh trial, but it will be wiser to appoint some man who is wiser — such matters to act as arbitrator — you and the opposite party 4 To continue arguing and disputing — a man, when you are certain that he will not assent — your own views, is not wise — you men will only blame you — wasting your time, and ascribe your conduct — obstinacy 5 While he was battling — the sea, the wind rose and the waves beat — the shore he begged — help — those persons who were — the boat, and these pulled him up — the water 6 I have bestowed great attention — that subject, and I bethought myself — one thing, namely, that a bridge must be built at once — the river, and that this bridge should be — iron, not —

wood or brick. 7 One man boasts — his wealth, another prides himself — his wisdom we cannot help blushing — persons who are so wanting — modesty and who cannot blush — their own faults. 8 India borders — Burma, and is separated — it partly — the Bay of Bengal, which lies — them, and partly — a line — mountains situated — the north — the Bay. 9 A man should not brood — his troubles, however much he may be burdened — them. 10 She burst — tears, when she found that he did not care — her affection. 11 I am indifferent — heat and cold, because I have a strong chest and there is no need — caution, I am sorry, however, that you have need — so much caution — every change — the weather. 12 He has a great capacity — mathematics, and in respect — this subject his teacher has a great respect — his abilities. 13 In consideration — the fact that no one is perfect, you ought to show more consideration — other men's weaknesses, though there is no need to connive — their faults.

VI — 1 A drowning man will catch — a straw, and if he escapes, you need not caution him again — the danger of throwing himself — the water and bathing — his depth. 2 Cease — speaking evil — others, and cling — charity. You will yourself be judged — your judgment — others. 3 It is useless to clamour — what we cannot have. Do not complain — your lot. Be content — what you have already, and leave the future — Providence. 4 An eye — in eye and a tooth — a tooth. This was the old law, but it has now been superseded — the duty — forgiveness. 5 They brought a complaint — the magistrate — their neighbour, who — asking their consent had dug a hole almost — the foundations — their house and thus rendered it unsafe — a dwelling place. The magistrate complied — their request and issued a summons — him. He sentenced him — a fine — trespass. 6 A man who confides — a friend will not conceal anything — him, but will confer — him — all matters — real importance. 7 The wing — a bird corresponds — the arm — a man. 8 I had a long correspondence — him — the wisdom of conforming — custom, but he did not yield — my advice, and remained unconvinced — his error. A man convinced — his will is — the same opinion still, as you know — the proverb. You cannot cure a man — his prejudices. 9 The culprit cried — pardon, and succeeded — getting it. 10 One cock crowed — the other — its victory, as one man boasts — having conquered another, and exults — his defeated rival. 11 You cannot compete — a man who is superior — yourself — resources. It is better to acquiesce — the fact that he has the advantage — you. 12 That trader there, who deals — cotton goods, has dealt hardly — his customers, and they must not concede — his demands — future. 13 The point you spoke — will be attended to. But if you ever touch — it again, I hope you will speak at length — the wider question — which that point hinges. 14 This is an exception — the usual rule. I hope, therefore, you will make an exception — my son's case, and show some forbearance — his inexperience. 15 Live amenable — reason, and independently — other men's help. 16 It is better even to be blind — an eye, than to be blind — one's own

faults. 17 He is committed — a policy which he now dislikes, and is not at all certain — its success 18 He is blessed — his children, who have all turned out well, but he is not blessed — good health 19 The ship is bound — India, and is bound — contract to arrive — Calcutta — the 18th of July 20 He is accountable — his master — the money 21 I do not concur — you — that opinion 22 The decision — the dispute is left to me, but I have not yet given my decision — the matter 23 I have had much experience — sicknesses, but none — curing them 24 He guesses — his answers, for he has no genius — mathematics, in fact, he is not a genius — anything 25 In old times an irruption was made — England — the Danes, who — first were more than a match — the Saxons 26 I have no influence — that man, and therefore my advice has no influence — his actions

CHAPTER XIX—CONJUNCTIONS AND CONJUNCTIONAL PHRASES

The distinction between Co-ordinative and Subordinative Conjunctions has been shown already in chapter viii. The present chapter shows how individual Conjunctions or Conjunctional phrases can be idiomatically used —

(1) **Both and** — This is an emphatic way of expressing the union of two facts or events —

He is *both* a fool *and* a knave (He is not a fool only, not a knave only, but both at once)

Note — If one fact is more important than the other, the more important one should be mentioned last —

He was *both* degraded from his class, *and* expelled for one year from the school

(2) **As well as, no less than** — In adding one word or sentence to another, these give emphasis to the *first* of the two —

He *as well as* you is guilty (= He is guilty as well as you are guilty)

He is *no less* guilty *than* you (= He is guilty *no less than* you are guilty)

(3) **Not only but or but also** — In adding one word or sentence to another, these give emphasis to the *second* of the two —

Not only I, *but* all other men declare this to be true

That man was *not only* accused of the crime, *but also* convicted of it by the magistrate

(4) **Nay** — This has sometimes the force of “not only but also” by appearing to negative the previous statement, it places the second one in a stronger light —

He was accused *may* convicted (accused, and what is more, convicted) of the crime by the magistrate.

(5) **Or rather**—This has very much the same force as “*may*” It corrects the previous statement in order to place the second one in a stronger light —

He was injured, *or rather* ruined altogether, by the failure of that bank

(6) **Now**—This Conjunction (which must not be confounded with the adverb of time) introduces a new remark in *explanation* (not simply in continuation) of a previous one —

And Pilate said unto them, “Will ye have this man or Barabbas?”
They answered, ‘Not this man, but Barabbas” *Now Barabbas was a robber —New Testament*

(7) **Well**—This word (when it is used as a Conjunction, and not as an Adverb) introduces a new remark implying satisfaction, regret, surprise, or any other feeling of the mind suggested by the previous remark —

You have finished the work that was given you,—*well*, you have done a good deal better than you usually do, and I am much pleased with your improvement

(8) **No sooner than, as soon as**—These two Conjunctional phrases mean the same thing, except that what is the Principal clause with the former becomes the Subordinate clause with the latter, and *vice versa* —

Principal Clause

Subordinate Clause

- (a) He had no sooner heard the news, *than* he wept aloud
(b) He wept aloud, *as soon as* he heard the news.

(9) **Scarcely (or hardly) before, scarcely (or hardly) when**.—These two Conjunctional phrases mean the same thing, and the meaning is identical with that shown under (8, a) —

He had *scarcely* (or *hardly*) heard the news, *before* he wept aloud
He had *scarcely* (or *hardly*) heard the news, *when* he wept aloud

(10) **Until, as long as, while**—To express *time before* we use “*until*”, to express *time how long* we use “*as long as*” or “*while*” But Indian students are very apt to use “*until*,” where they ought to use “*as soon as*” —

Erroneous

Corrected

- Until* you work hard, you will improve *As long as* you work hard, you will improve
He continued lazy, *as long as* he was seventeen years old He continued lazy, *until* he was seventeen years old
Until it rains, we must stop inside the house. *As long as* it rains, we must stop inside the house

Erroneous.

Until you stop here, you will find
no time for work
Until the world lasts, the earth
will go round the sun

Corrected

As long as you stop here, you will
find no time for work.
While or so long as the world lasts,
the earth will go round the sun

(11) **Unless, if**—The conjunction “unless” means “if not.”
But in practice it is often confounded with “if”

Erroneous

Unless you do not work hard, you
will be plucked
Unless you have no objection, I
will come to morrow

Corrected

If you do not work hard, you
will be plucked
If you have no objection, I
will come to morrow

(12) **Because, in order that**—To express a *cause* or *reason*
we use “because” To express a *purpose* we use “in order
that,” “so that,” etc. But they are often confounded in
practice

Erroneous

Men work, *because* they may earn
a living
He took medicine, *because* he might
get well
He started early, *because* he might
not be late

Corrected

Men work, *that or so that or in
order that* they may earn a
living
He took medicine, *so that* he
might get well
He started early, *that* he might
not be late

(13) **Since**—The use of this word as an Adverb, a Con-
junction, or a Preposition has been explained already (see
§ 402) The student must bear in mind that when it is used as
a Conjunction it is *never preceded*, and is *always followed* by a
verb in the Past Indefinite tense

Erroneous

Two years *passed since* my father
has died
It *was* a week *since* the holidays
commenced
A month *passed since* I *am coming*
here
Two hours *elapsed since* he *had*
fallen asleep

Corrected

Two years *have passed since* my
father *died*
It *is* a week *since* the holidays
commenced
A month *has passed since* I *came*
here
Two hours *have elapsed since* he
fell asleep

(14) **Before**—The use of this word as an Adverb, a Con-
junction, or a Preposition has been explained already (see
§ 404) The student must bear in mind that whenever it is
used as a Conjunction with reference to some *future* event, it
is never followed by a verb in the Future tense, if the verb
in the Principal clause is future

<i>Erroneous</i>	<i>Corrected</i>
The crops will die, before the rains <i>will fall</i>	The crops will die, before the rains <i>fall or have fallen</i>
You will leave India, before three months <i>will pass</i>	You will leave India, before three months <i>have passed</i>

(15) **That**—This conjunction should never be used before a sentence in the Direct Narration, nor before Interrogative adverbs or pronouns in the Indirect Narration

<i>Erroneous</i>	<i>Corrected</i>
He said <i>that</i> "I shall soon be there"	He said, "I shall soon be there"
He asked <i>that</i> how long you would be absent	He asked how long you would be absent
Tell me <i>that</i> whether you will soon return	Tell me <i>whether</i> you will soon return
I wish to know <i>that</i> how much this book will cost	I wish to know how much this book will cost

(16) **Or**—This conjunction has four separate meanings —

(a) An alternative or exclusive sense (§ 249, b) —

Either this man sinned *or* his parents

(b) An inclusive or non alternative sense Here the "or" is nearly equivalent to "and"

Such trades as those of leather, *or* carpentry, *or* smith's work flourish best in large cities

(c) To indicate that one word is synonymous or nearly synonymous with another —

The tribes *or* castes of India are very numerous

(d) As an equivalent to "otherwise" (§ 249, b) —

You must work hard *or* (=otherwise=) you do not work hard
you will lose your place in the class

(17) **If**—This conjunction has three different uses or meanings —

(a) For asking a question in the Indirect form of narration
In this sense it is equivalent to "whether" —

I asked him *if* (=whether) he would return soon

(b) For expressing a condition or supposition —

If you return to us to-morrow (in case you return, or in the event of your returning), we shall be glad to see you

(c) For making an admission or concession (Here the verb must be Indicative, because it concedes something as a fact) —

If I am dull (=though I admit that I am dull), I am at least industrious (I am dull *indeed*, but nevertheless industrious)

Considering how ill I was, it is no wonder *if* (=that) I made some mistakes yesterday

(18) **But** —The uses of this word as a Preposition have been shown already in § 245 Its uses as a Conjunction and as an Adverb have still to be shown

(a) As a Subordinative conjunction —

- (1) It never rains *but* it pours —*Proverb*
(It never rains *except that* it pours, or It never rains without pouring)
- (2) Perdition catch my soul, *but* I love thee —*Shakespeare*
(Perdition catch my soul *if* I do *not* love thee)
- (3) It cannot be *but* Nature hath some Director of infinite power —*Hooker*
(It cannot be, or it is impossible, *that* Nature hath *not* a Director, etc)

Note —This use of “but” as a Subordinative conjunction has arisen from the omission of the conjunction ‘that’ If “that” were expressed, “but” would retain its original character as a preposition signifying “except,” and the Noun clause following it would be its object

(b) As a Subordinative conjunction, with some Demonstrative pronoun understood after it. It then has the force of “*who* or *which* + *not*” (§ 133) —

- No one saw that sight *but* went away shocked
(No one saw that sight *except that* he went away, or *who* did *not* go away, shocked)

Note —It was not always the custom to omit the Demonstrative pronoun after “but” Thus we have in Shakespeare —

- I found no one *but he* was true to me
(We should now say, “I found no one *but* was true to me ”)

(c) As an Adversative conjunction of the Co ordinative class —

He is rich, *but* discontented

(d) As an Adverb in the sense of “only” —

- There is *but* (=only) a plank between us and death
We can *but* die (nothing worse than death can befall us)

(19) **While, or whilst** —“While” is properly a noun signifying “time” The conjunction “while” is an abridged form of the phrase “the while that,” etc., and in this phrase the noun “while” is an Adverbial objective (see § 287)

The Conjunction “while” has three separate uses or meanings —

(a) To denote the *simultaneity* of two events —

You can sit down, *while* (at the same time that) I stand

(b) To denote *indefinite duration* —

While (so long as) the world lasts, human nature will remain what it is

(c) To denote some kind of antithesis or contrast —

Men of understanding seek after truth, *while* (=whereas) fools despise knowledge

(20) **Lest**.—This is a contraction of “by which the less.” In older English it was followed by the present Subjunctive —

{ Take heed, *lest* you *fall*
 { Take heed, *that* you may *not* fall

Note —The Subjunctive is here used in the Optative sense (see § 190),—that is, in the sense of wish or purpose

In modern English the verb following this conjunction is formed by the Auxiliary verb “should” —

{ He worked hard, *lest* he *should* fail
 { He worked hard, *that* he *might* not fail

(21) **As**.—Since this word is a Relative adverb, it is also a Conjunction (see § 18, 3)

Its uses and meanings as a Conjunction can be seen from the following examples (see also chapter xi p 130)

(a) *Time* —

He trembled *as* (=at what time, or while) he spoke

(b) *Manner* —

Do not act *as* (=in what manner) he did

(c) *State or Condition* —

He took it just *as* (=in what state) it was

(d) *Extent* --

He is not so clever *as* (to what extent) you are

(e) *Contrast or Concession* resulting from the sense of extent —

{ Hot *as* the sun is (to whatever extent the sun is hot), we must leave the house
 { However hot the sun is, we must leave the house
 { Although the sun is ever so hot, we must leave the house

(f) *Cause* —

As (from what cause or for the reason that) rain has fallen, the air is cooler

(22) **However** —This is a Co ordinative conjunction, when it stands alone, but Subordinative, when it qualifies some adjective or adverb

(a) Co-ordinative —

All men were against him, he kept his courage, *however*, to the last.

(6) Subordinative —

However poor a man is, he need not be dishonest.

However well you may work, you cannot demand more than your stipulated pay

(23) **Indeed but**—These go together as a pair. They emphasise the contrast between the first and the second statement (see No 17, c)

The robbers *indeed* were caught and convicted, *but* nothing that they had stolen could be found

(24) There are certain words and phrases signifying **Time** or **Place**, which when they stand *alone* are simply adverbs. But when they are used *in pairs* for the sake of contrasting one time with another time, or one place with another place, they may be included among Conjunctions, since they join one sentence to another by way of contrast

(1) On the battle field there was a dead body *here* (=in one place), and a dying man *there* (=in another place)

(2) *On the one side* all was quiet, *on the other* there was nothing but confusion and disorder

(3) *On the one hand* he spoke the truth, *on the other* he broke a secret (This might be written - "He spoke the truth *indeed*, but in doing so he broke a secret")

(4) *Now* (=at one time) he laughs, *then* (=at another time) he cries

(25) Certain Prepositions and Adverbs are sometimes used as Conjunctions —

Supposing the rain does not fall, we cannot commence ploughing

Now you have packed up your clothes, you are ready to start

Provided you give a receipt, I will pay the bill

Note—In all such cases the conjunction "*that*" is understood after the preposition or adverb. Similarly the prepositions *before*, *after*, *since*, *until*, *for*, *but*, were followed by "*that*" in earlier English. By the omission of this word, they were changed from prepositions to conjunctions. "*Provided*" is elliptical for "*it being provided that*"

(26) **When, where**.—These conjunctions or Relative adverbs (in the same way as the Relative pronouns "*who*" or "*which*") can be used in two very distinct senses —

(a) The Restrictive or qualifying (§ 134) —

The house *where* (=in which) we lived has fallen down

The hour *when* (=at which) you arrived was four P.M.

(b) The Continuative or simply connective —

On 24th January we reached Calcutta, *where* (=and there) we stayed a fortnight

We stayed at Calcutta for two weeks, *when* (=and then) I received a letter which compelled me to return to Hoogly

(27) **Though, yet.**—The conjunction “though,” when it is followed by a verb in the Subjunctive mood, expresses a doubt, and, when it is followed by a verb in the Indicative mood, it expresses a fact —

Though he punish me (even if he should punish me, which may or may not happen) *yet will I trust in him*

Though he has denied the deed, no one will believe his word

(28) **At the same time, all the same.**—These phrases are used as Co ordinative conjunctions of the Adversative class, and mean the same thing as “nevertheless” —

There is much point in what you say *at the same time* (= nevertheless) *we adhere to our own opinion*

There is much point in what you say *we adhere to our own opinion* *all the same*

Note.—“At the same time” generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, while “all the same” generally stands at the end of it

(29) **According as.** —

The plan will succeed or not *according as* *it is judiciously managed*

The phrase “according as” means “according to the extent to which,” or “according to the manner in which”

(30) **As sure as.** —

As sure as *you are sitting there*, *you will have to go*

Here “sure” is an adverb = surely — “Surely to that extent to which,” etc

(31) **In case.**—This is equivalent to “supposing,” and is an elliptical phrase for “in the case in which” —

In case *we fail*, *we must have something to fall back upon*

(32) **In order that, so that.**—If there is any fear of ambiguity in the meaning of “that,” the addition of the words “in order” or “so” shows clearly that *purpose* is the sense intended —

He shouted at the top of his voice, *in order that* *he might be heard*

(33) **Inasmuch as, or in as much as.**—This phrase denotes cause or reason —

He yielded to the invader, *inasmuch as* (=because) *his army was thoroughly defeated*

(34) **Directly.**—This is an adverb qualifying the conjunction “when” understood. It is equivalent to “as soon as” —

Directly *I heard the news*, *I hastened to the spot*

(35) **So that.**—This phrase is sometimes used to express a condition —

You can do whatever you like, *so that* (provided, or on condition that) you injure no one but yourself

Conjunctions less commonly used

(36) **Except, without, against**—Once “except” and “without” were used for “unless,” and “against” as equivalent to “against the time in which” —

Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish
You will not live long *without* you take exercise
Have everything ready *against* he returns home

(37) **Albeit**—This signifies “although” —

Albeit all is full, there lacketh something still

(38) **Howbeit**—This signifies “nevertheless,” “however that may be” —

The Moor is of a constant nature, *howbeit* I endure him not.

(39) **Nathless**—Used in poetry for “nevertheless.”

(40) **Or ere, or ever**—These signify “before” —

Would I had met my dearest for in heaven, *or eves* I had seen that day, Horatio — *Shakespeare*

It is generally explained that “or” is a corruption of “ere,” which means “before.” Hence “or ere” is merely a reduplication, and in “or ever” the “ever” is a suffix, as in “whatever.”

(41) **In that, in the fact that, since**—Here “that” is the conjunction of apposition, and the Noun-clause following it is the object to the preposition “in” —

In that he died, he died unto sin once — *New Testament*

(42) **In so much that**—This denotes effect or consequence —

The riots continued all day, *in so much that* (with the result that) it was dangerous to leave the house

(43) **For as much as**—This denotes cause or reason, and is equivalent to “since” —

For as much as many have taken in hand to do this, further help is not required

(44) **An if**—In older English this was sometimes used for “if,” and it is still used in poetry, —always in the Conditional sense (see No 17, b)

Note —The “an” is a contraction of “and,” which was once used to combine two clauses conditionally as well as assertively. When this sense of “and” or “an” was forgotten, the “if” was inserted to remove any doubt as to the meaning

A.—Insert Co-ordinative conjunctions in the places indicated by —

- 1 Hear the opinions of other men, — form thine own judgment.
- 2 He was not surpassed — by you — any one else
- 3 We have — heard — read about that matter, we are —
in total ignorance, — unable to form an opinion about it
- 4 We see poverty on all sides, — discontent nowhere.
- 5 He blamed them for their rashness, — relieved their wants
- 6 The flowers have come out before their season, — I have
never seen such a thing before
- 7 They were defeated indeed, — not disgraced
- 8 He came upon me very suddenly, — I had no time to run off
— hide
- 9 You are not a man to quarrel — we had better come to
terms
- 10 Glamis hath murdered sleep — he shall sleep no more
- 11 The approach of the horseman was now beyond doubt, — a
cloud of dust was seen in the distance, — a tramping of horses' feet
was distinctly heard
- 12 In the discharge of his duty he was a strict — just man
- 13 The sound of a gun near at hand startled — my horse —
myself
- 14 Stone walls do not make a prison, — iron bars a cage
- 15 The rain comes — goes in slight showers, — the heavy rains
have not yet set in
- 16 My own house — yours is built of good lime — burnt brick,
— it will not crumble to pieces sooner than yours
- 17 He has given each of you a sum of money, — he has left you
all his books — all his goods
- 18 Julius Caesar was murdered in Rome by a gang of conspirators,
— Julius Caesar was the first of the Roman Emperors
- 19 He fell suddenly down in a fainting fit — several persons rushed
forward to support him, — they were too late
- 20 He has run away with all the money entrusted to him, —
what steps shall we take? Shall we search for him ourselves, —
shall we employ the police?
- 21 Civil wars have been usually marked — by the fierceness
— by the stubborn pertinacity of the contending parties
- 22 Heaven and earth may pass away, — my words shall never
pass away
- 23 My son last term was — idle — in bad health, — he
was not promoted at the end of the term
- 24 He paid off his creditors in time, — he would certainly have
been imprisoned for debt
- 25 He declared he would never forsake his post, — he fled
away at the first sign of danger
- 26 Prince Azgid was good natured, handsome, and clever, —
he was of rather a timid disposition
- 27 This poor man must be off his head, — he laughs at one
time, — weeps at another
- 28 The temple stands in the middle of a fine masonry tank, —

a marble bridge leads up to it — this temple was built by an ancient Hindu Raja

29. Do not take any part — in his amusements — his plots, — you will get into trouble by being seen in his company

30 They were determined to obtain his consent — by flattery, — by force, — by persuasion, — they never succeeded after all.

31 My father made me go to school regularly every day; — I should not now be so successful in life as I am

32 He was so shocked at the sad news that he — spoke — wept, — went away in silence — was not seen again that day

33 I hope you will remember to be just — generous to those who are dependent on you

34 I must speak out, — I shall blame myself ever afterwards

35 He is a worthless fellow, possessed — of ability — industry — honesty — common sense, — what sort of punishment can be inflicted on such a creature?

36 Give thine ear to every man, — thy voice to few

B — *Insert Subordinative conjunctions or Relative or Interrogative adverbs in the places indicated by —*

1 The wind beat against the house, — a part of the roof was blown off

2 The bulls, — they stood together, were a match for the lion, but — they separated from each other, they fell an easy prey

3 Tell me candidly — you like my composition, and — you think it shows signs of future promise

4 No sooner had he gone to bed — a telegram was brought in

5 Elephants are not full grown — they are fifty or sixty years of age

6 It is of no use for me to shoot, — I am sure to miss the mark

7 What can be gained in a place — every one is poor?

8 This dreadful thought pursues me — I go

9 He was received with respect — he went, and listened to attentively — he began to speak

10 Remain — thou art, — I return

11 Be ye wise — serpents, but harmless — doves

12 The river had risen so high, — we could not cross it even in a boat

13 Present evils are sometimes less distressing — expected ones

14 Evil is meant by that man's words, smooth — they are

15 The more we study the human mind, the less able are we to understand — it came into existence or — it had its source

16 I am quite as much ashamed — you are

17 I cannot fear any evil, — thou art near

18 I will keep it by me night and day, — any harm should come to it.

19 We are glad — he has succeeded so well, — he has thoroughly deserved it.

20 His success is the more creditable, — he had no help from any one, — many offered to help him

21 At length the moon arose, — it was almost hidden by clouds.

22 They shut up all the shops, — the travellers might not be able to take anything by force

23 Some men eat — they may live, others live — they may eat

24 I am ready to start, — you may desire to do so

25 The terrified women would have fled more quickly — they did, — they had not been burdened with baggage

26 We can be happy, — we are poor, — we are contented

27 I shall die of this disease, — I first die of hunger

28 You have lied so often, — no one will trust you, even — you speak the truth

29 I will not rise from my seat — I am bidden

30 He was forced to get up, — he liked it — not

31 On first coming here, — I was quite honest, every one distrusted me so much, — for a long time I found it difficult to live

32 He gave the boy a prize, not — he had actually earned one, but — he might be induced to work harder next term

33 Agriculture is the foundation of all wealth, — food is raised by this means, and no one, — clever he may be, can live without food

34 Past errors may be regretted, but past moments, — they have once fled, are fled for ever and cannot be recalled

35 The savages, — they saw the ship approaching their island, believed — it was some great animal moving on the water, — they had never seen a ship before

36 The peasant grows pale, — he sees a cloud of locusts approach

37 I do not doubt — you will succeed in time, — only you will persevere and trust — your labours will be at last rewarded

38 She turned away in disgust, — she was unable to bear the sight any longer

39 I will pay you down all that you ask, — you sign a receipt on a stamped paper

40 They were willing to commence work and begged — they might be ordered to do so, — they were still weak from the recent attack of fever

41 The robber fled — he heard the shouts, but he escaped — any one had time to see his face

42 Seed must be sown — it will germinate, and flowers must bloom for some time — they can turn into seed

43 He walked on, — he was so tired — he could walk no farther — then he sat down and waited — food was brought to him

44 Do — you are told, and then no one can blame you, — a mistake has been made

45 Tired — you are, you will finish your journey by twelve o'clock, — you stop nowhere on the road

C — Correct, where necessary, the Conjunctions used in the following sentences, or change the words in such a way as to make the Conjunction and entire sentence correct —

1 He was hopeful as well as confident

2 No sooner he died, his sons quarrelled over his property

3 He scarcely returned home, before his son was taken seriously ill

4 He was not only convicted, but also accused

- 5 He said in his letter that "I shall arrive at the station by ten o'clock"
- 6 Unless you do not take care, you will fall into debt
- 7 He started early, because he might not be late
- 8 One year passed, since I first came to live in this place
- 9 We must have more sun, before the mangoes will ripen
- 10 Until you remain in camp, your men and horses will get no rest
- 11 He inquired of me that when I intended returning home
- 12 As long as you amend your ways, you have no chance of becoming prosperous or happy
- 13 When I give to one, I must give to all
- 14 I asked him to tell me that how much he paid a month for his son's tuition
- 15 No sooner he heard of his son's success, than he was taken ill with fever
- 16 Unless he does not work harder, he will certainly fail
- 17 Until you do not begin to make a better use of your time, I shall not cease to find fault with you
- 18 He was sent to Bombay, because he might get the best medical advice
- 19 He ought to start at once, lest he may become too ill to travel, if he stays here any longer
- 20 She disliked to be questioned that how old she was

D—*Substitute equivalent Conjunctions or phrases wherever you can in the following sentences*—

- 1 He no less than you was guilty of that crime
- 2 No sooner had the clock struck twelve, than all the doors were closed
- 3 I am a passionate admirer of good poetry, while you prefer good prose
- 4 He had scarcely sat down to breakfast, when a letter came in that compelled him to leave the house
- 5 I occupied the house that we were speaking of for four years, and then I left it, because I found one that suited me better
- 6 Seeing that all men are liable to make mistakes, you must not be surprised, if I made one yesterday
- 7 Unless you are very careful you will run into debt
- 8 He rose at six A M on that day, lest he should be too late for the train
- 9 Discouraged as we have been, we must still persevere
- 10 Please let me know if you succeeded at last
- 11 While human nature continues to be what it is, men must guard against selfishness
- 12 Be careful of that man, or he will cheat you
- 13 Their strength, or speed, or vigilance were given in aid of our defects—*Cowper*
- 14 If the Puritans in the time of King Charles suppressed bear-fighting, this was not done out of mercy to the bears
- 15 Not only was he commended, but rewarded for what he had done
- 16 He was injured, nay ruined by the dishonesty of his partner.
- 17 Never dream but ill must come of it.—*Shelley*.

18. As you are now eight years old, your education must be no longer postponed

19 I will take an early walk every day, that I may recover my health

20 Supposing you resign this post, what better one do you expect to get in its place?

21 Now the rain has fallen the seed that was lately sown will commence to sprout

22 However rich a man may be, his wealth leaves him as much as ever a prey to ill temper and disease

23 Themistocles was a traitor to his country, while Miltiades was sunnimed the Just

24 He was not refreshed, considering that he passed a very sleepless night

25 I do not doubt but you are wrong

26 Tell me whether I am right

27 In case you are taken ill on the way, a dose of this medicine will put you right

28 Money is your life

29 The wind was blowing a heavy gale, as the ship left port and went out to sea

30 At one time he works, at another he relapses into idleness

31 He drove indeed as fast as he could, but not fast enough to catch the train

32 Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish — *New Testament*

33 We halted four days at Patna, and then we started for Benares

34 They threatened to fine him 100 rupees, unless he kept a cleaner yard

35 He is an active, and therefore a healthy man

36 All men are mortal — so he will die some day like the rest of us

37 Though every one else deny thee, yet will I never deny thee — *New Testament*

CHAPTER XX — MISCELLANEOUS WORDS, PHRASES, AND CONSTRUCTIONS

(1) **All of them, both of them** —

All of them (=they all) consented

Both of them (=they both) consented

In phrases like "some of them," "one of them," "two of them," the "of" has a partitive sense. Such a sense is, however, impossible where "all" or "both" are concerned. We must therefore conclude that phrases like "all of them," "both of them," have come into use by analogy

(2) **And in Interrogative sentences** —

And art thou cold and lowly laid? — *Scott*

In such sentences the "and" does not join its own sentence

to a previous one, but introduces a form of exclamation —
 "Can it be true that thou art cold and lowly laid?"

(3) The use of "**as**" before a noun —

(a) This box will serve us *as* a table

(b) We will not have this man *as* our chief

The ellipses can be filled up as follows —

(a) This box will serve us *as* a table (would serve us, if we had a table)

(b) We will not have this man *as* (in the way in which we would have) our chief

(4) The use of "**as**" before an adjective —

He considered the report *as* false

That is, "He considered the report *as* (he would consider, if it were) false."

(5) The use of "**as**" before "*if*" and "*though*" —

(a) He clung to it *as if* his life depended on it

(b) He clung to it *as though* his life depended on it

That is, (a) "He clung to it, *as* (he would have clung to it, if) his life depended on it" (b) "He clung to it *as* (fast as he could have clung to it, for he could not have clung to it faster) *though* his life depended on it"

(6) **As** **as**, **so** **as** —

He is *as* clever *as* his brother (Affirm)

He is not *as* clever *as* his brother (Negat)

He is not *so* clever *as* his brother (Negat)

All that can be said is that "*as as*" is used in both affirmative and negative sentences while "*so as*" is used in negative ones only. This is purely a matter of custom or idiom, and no reason can be given for it.

(7) **As thee, as me** —

The nation's not so blest *as thee* — Thomson

Even such weak minister *is me*

May the oppressor bruise — Scott

These uses of the Objective case, if we consider "*as*" to be here a conjunction, are grammatical blunders, for the right construction would be "not so blest *as thou* (art blest)," and "such weak minister *as I* (am weak)." But it has been suggested by one writer that "*as*" may here be regarded as a preposition of comparison followed by a pronoun in the Objective case. In colloquial English this use of "*as*" is common, but careful writers now avoid it.

(8) **As usual** —

He came at four o'clock, *as usual*.

"As" is here used as a Relative for "which," and the verb "is" is understood after it — "He came at four o'clock, which (his coming at four) is or was usual (with him)"

(9) **At best, at its best, or at the best** —

At best he is only a moderate speaker
He was *at his best* this morning

In Superlative phrases of very frequent occurrence, such as "at best," "at worst," "at first," "at last," "at most," "at least," no pronoun or article is placed between the preposition and the adjective, unless we wish to particularise.

But in similarly constructed phrases, which are of less frequent occurrence, a pronoun or the Definite article should be inserted —

The wind is *at its loudest* or *the loudest* The storm is *at its fiercest*
To-day the patient is *at his weakest* The season is now *at its loveliest* The air is now *at its hottest*

(10) **At ten years old, at four miles distant** —

- { (1) My son was *ten years old* when he died
- { (2) My son died *at ten years of age*
- { (3) My son died *at ten years old*
- { (1) My house is *four miles distant* from the sea.
- { (2) My house is *at four miles' distance* from the sea
- { (3) My house is *at four miles distant* from the sea

Sentences (1) and (2) in both sets of examples are quite correct. Sentence (3) has arisen from a confusion between the constructions in (1) and (2). Such a construction is not grammatically correct, and, though it is used by some writers and speakers, it is best to avoid it.

(11) **Bid fair to,** etc. —

This institution *bids fair* (= makes a fair or good promise) to flourish for many years to come.

Here the adjective "fair" qualifies some noun implied in the verb "bid." "bids a fair bidding or promise."

(12) **But he**

What stays (= supports) had I *but thy*?—*Shakspere*
And was he not the valiant? 'Twas none but he — *William Tayler*
The boy stood on the burning deck,
Whence all but he had fled — *Mrs Hemans*

The Nominative after "but" has arisen from a confusion between the conjunctive use of "but" and its prepositional origin. "Whence all had fled, *but he* had not fled,"—that is, all had fled except him.

(13) **But what** —(a) I cannot say *but what* you may be right(b) Not *but what* he did his best

Here "what" has come into use as a substitute for "that." In both sentences "but" is a preposition, to which the following Noun-clause is the object (see § 241, c)

(a) This sentence could be reworded thus — "I cannot say anything *except* or *against* that-you-are-right,"—that is, anything to the contrary of your being right

(b) This sentence is elliptical. The ellipse would be filled up as follows — "I do not say anything *except* that he did his best, or to the contrary of his having done his best"

Note —The substitution of "*what*" for "*that*" after the preposition "but" occurs only after the verbs "say" or "believe." It does not occur after any other verbs

(14) **By thousands, by little, by himself, etc** —(a) The white ants came streaming out *by thousands*(b) The water oozes out little *by little*(c) He went out of the room *by himself*

From denoting instrumentality, the preposition "by" came to denote manner or number, in which sense it often does the work of a Distributive adjective (see § 352, a). In (a) "by thousands" means "in the manner or to the number of thousands,"—that is, "a thousand at a time," or "one thousand after another." In (b) "little by little" is elliptical for "by little by little", as in Pope —

Loth to enrich me with too quick replies,

By little and by little (he) drops his lies.

In (c) the phrase "by himself," which is often used for "alone," is founded on the analogy of the above phrases — "He went out by himself,"—that is, "he went out himself at a time," or "he went out *alone*, unaccompanied by any one else"

(15) **Came to pass, came to be considered, etc** —

In this construction (which is very common), the Infinitive is Gerundial, and the "to" denotes *effect* or *result*. On this use of the preposition "to" before a noun, see § 415 (35), on its use in the same sense with the Gerundial Infinitive, see § 196 (a)

(16) **Can but, cannot but** —(a) We *can but* die(b) We *cannot but* die

In (a) the word "but" is an adverb "We can *only* die,"—

that is, nothing worse than death can befall us. In (b) the word "but" retains its original character as a preposition — "We cannot do anything *except* die." Here "die" is the Noun-Infinitive used as object to the preposition "but" (see § 193, f)

(17) **Come, go** —

- (a) Are you *coming* to the meeting to day?
(b) Are you *going* to the meeting to day?

In sentence (a) the use of the verb "*come*" implies that the questioner himself intends to be present at the meeting, and he inquires whether the person addressed will be present also. The person addressed might say in reply, "Yes, I shall be there with you", or "No, I shall not join you there."

In sentence (b) the use of the verb "*go*" is perfectly general, and hence the person addressed might reply — "Yes, I am going to the meeting, are you?" or "No, I am not going, are you?"

"*Come*" means motion *towards* a person or place, "*go*" means motion *from* a person or place. Thus we say, "The sun is *coming* up," or "the sun is *going* down", "The plant is *coming* into flower," or "the plant is *going* to seed,"—that is, it has passed its prime, and is beginning to fade or go away.

(18) **Come to grief, go to the dogs** —

He has come to grief
He has gone to the dogs

These colloquial phrases mean almost the same thing. There is no saying why "come" is used in one and "go" in the other.

(19) **Dependent on, independent of** —

I am wholly dependent *on* your help
I am quite independent *of* your help

Why is the same preposition not used with both adjectives? "On" is used after "dependent," because this preposition denotes rest, support, as on some foundation. "Of" is used after "independent," because this preposition denotes "separation," and the same meaning is implied in the adjective "independent."

(20) **Doubt that doubt but** —

- (a) I do not doubt *that* he is ill
(b) I do not doubt *but* or *but that* he is ill

These two sentences amount to the same thing. They might be rewritten as follows —

(a) I do not doubt (=question) the fact that he is ill

(b) I do not doubt anything *except* or *against* the fact that he is ill

In (b) the word "but" is a preposition, and the Noun-clause "that he is ill" is its object, or if "that" is omitted after "but," the "but" is a conjunction

Note —It is only after the verbs "doubt" and "deny" that "but" can be substituted for "that"

(21) **Excuse, excuse not** —

(a) I hope you will excuse my coming here to day

(b) I hope you will excuse my *not* coming here to day

These two sentences amount to the same thing, and could be rewritten as follows —

(a) I hope you will excuse (=dispense with, not insist on) my coming here to day

(b) I hope you will excuse (=pardon) my *not* coming (my neglect to come) here to day

Observe that the verb "excuse" is used in a different sense in each sentence

Note —Owing to the ambiguity of the verb "excuse," sentence (a) might mean "I hope you will excuse or pardon the fact of my having come here to day"

(22) **Far, by far, far from, anything but** —

(a) { The air is *far* hotter to day than yesterday
The air is *much* hotter to day than yesterday

(b) { He is *far* or *by far* the best boy in the class
He is *much* the best boy in the class

(c) { His manners are *far from* pleasant
His manners are *anything but* pleasant

In (a) "far" is equivalent to "much" Both of these adverbs can qualify an adjective in the *Comparative* degree, but not in the *Positive* (see § 398, a)

In (b) "far" or "by far" is equivalent to "much" Both of these adverbs are used to intensify the *Superlative* degree of adjectives (see § 398, f)

Note 1 —The phrase "by far" is used with the *Superlative* degree only We cannot say "The air is *by far* hotter to day"

Note 2 —In the phrase "by far," "far" is used as a noun and is object to the preposition "by," like "at once," "till now," etc "By far" is equivalent to "by a great deal" (see § 241, a)

In (c) the phrase "far from" is equivalent to "anything but" —"His manners are anything *but* (=except) being pleasant." Here "being pleasant" is the object to the preposition "but" "The quality of being pleasant is not merely absent from his manners, but *far* distant from them"

(23) **First importance, last importance** —(a) This is a matter of the *first* importance(b) This is a matter of the *last* importance

Though "first" and "last" are usually of opposite meanings, yet in the above phrases their meaning is the same. In (a) "first" denotes "foremost,"—taking precedence of everything else. In (b) "last" denotes "utmost," "greatest,"—which comes to the same thing is "foremost."

The opposite phrase to "of the first or of the last importance" is "of the least importance" —

This is a matter of the least importance (= of little or no importance, of less importance than anything else)

(24) **Good looking**

He is a *good looking* (=handsome) man

This is a well-established phrase. Yet we cannot turn it round and say "He looks good" for "He is handsome", and if we say "He looks well," this means, "He looks (or seems to be) in good health."

(25) **He to deceive me, and similar phrases** —(a) *I to be so foolish!*(b) *He to deceive me!*

These exclamatory sentences are elliptical. (a) "Am I a person to be so foolish?" (b) "Could he be a person to deceive me!" The Infinitive is here Gerundial, and qualifies the noun or pronoun going before.

(26) **His, its** — The older Possessive form for 'it' was "his" —

No comfortable star did lend *his* light — *Shal spear*

Sometimes "it" was used as a Possessive —

It knighthood and *it* friends — *Ben Jonson*

"Its" is used only three times by Milton, A.D. 1608-1674. After Milton's time the use of "its" as the Possessive form of "it" became thoroughly established.

(27) **I beg to, etc**

I beg to inquire whether I may go home

This is a common ellipsis for "I beg leave to," etc. It is more common to omit the noun "leave" than to insert it.

(28) **I take it**

You will win in that case, *I take it*

This is a common phrase for "in my opinion"

(29) I was given to understand —

If this sentence is converted from the Passive form to the Active, it becomes — "Some one gave or caused me to understand" Here "me" is the Indirect object, and "to understand" (Noun-Infinitive) is the Direct. By the rule given in § 164, a verb which has two objects in the Active voice can retain one in the Passive. Hence in the sentence "I was given to understand," the Noun-Infinitive is *Retained object* to the Passive verb "was given."

(30) In respect of, with respect to —

He is senior to me *in respect of* service

We must have a talk *with respect to* that subject

These phrases are not identical in meaning. "In respect of" means "in point of" some quality, and is preceded by an adjective. "With respect to" means "concerning," and qualifies some verb. We should not say, "We must have a talk in respect of that subject."

(31) In thorough working order

Here "thorough" is an adjective qualifying the compound noun "working order" (that kind of order which is suitable for working). On Compound nouns of this description see below, § 443 (2).

(32) It's me, that's him —

The phrases "it's me," "that's him," are used colloquially, but are condemned by grammarians, because "me" and "him" are Subjective complements to the verb "is," and such complements must be in the same case as the Subject, — that is, in the Nominative case (see § 285, 2). But the phrase "it's me" has been defended on two grounds: (1) because it is the counterpart and exact translation of the French "*c'est moi*," which is recognised as an established idiom by the best French writers, (2) because "me" is an adopted or borrowed objective of "I," and might be appropriately used as a predicate, though not as a subject.

(33) Lesser, less — "*Lesser*," is a Double Comparative, which is used for euphony to balance the sound of "greater" —

The *greater* light to rule the day, and the *lesser* light to rule the night — *Old Testament*

Note — Observe "*lesser*" is always an adjective. But "*less*" may be either an adjective or an adverb.

(34) More than, with adjectives and verbs —

(a) It is *more than* probable that he will fail. (*With Adj.*)

(b) He *more than* hesitated to promise that. (*With Verb.*)

The construction is elliptical. The two sentences could be written at greater length as follows —

- (a) It is not only probable, but more than this,—it is very nearly certain, that, etc.
 (b) He *did* more than *hesitate* (almost refused) to promise. (Here the Noun infinitive “hesitate” is object to ‘than’ § 244)

(35) **Mutual friend** —

The word “mutual” implies reciprocity, as “our friendship is mutual,”—that is, “I love you, and you love me in return.” But the phrase “a mutual friend” has come into vogue in a sense quite different from that of reciprocity. “I made his acquaintance through a *mutual friend*,”—that is, a *common* friend, some one who was a friend to myself as well as a friend to him. The use of the word “mutual” in this particular phrase is anomalous, but sanctioned by usage. We could not speak of two persons having “mutual ancestors.”

(36) **Never so, ever so** —

- (a) He refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *never* so wisely — *Oh! I stand afloat*
 (b) He refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *ever* so wisely

These two phrases mean the same thing. In (a) the dependent clause written out in full would be, “although he charm so wisely as he *never* charmed before.” In (b) the clause can be rewritten ‘however wisely he may charm.’ The phrase “*ever so*” is the one now used; “*never so*” was used in older English.

(37) **“No,” “none,”** as adverbs

- (a) He is *no* scholar
 (b) He is *none* the wiser for all his experience

In (a) the word “no” is in no respect. In (b) “none” is in no degree. “None” is used in this adverbial sense, only when it is followed by such a phrase as “the wiser,”—that is, by “the” and a Comparative. Similarly we can say “*all* the better,” where “all,” like “none,” is used adverbially.

(38) **None of them** —

None of them *were* present

“None,” when it is used as a Subject, is a Singular = not one, or no one. But the phrase “none of them,” when it is used as a Subject, takes a Plural verb by attraction — “they none.” Or the Plural may be explained by analogy to the phrases “all of them,” “some of them,” etc.

(39) *Of* in the sense of Apposition.—This can be used before some kinds of Proper names, but not before all —

The island *of* Ceylon The province *of* Bengal The Presidency *of* Bombay The city *of* Delhi The district *of* Delhi The continent *of* Asia The county *of* Kent The lake *of* Geneva
The title *of* Colonel The name *of* Brighton

On the other hand, we cannot place it before Proper names of rivers, mountains, or capes. Thus we cannot say “the river of Ganges,” “the mountain of Kinchinjunga,” “the cape of Comorin”

(40) *One, the same, one and the same* —

- (a) It's all *one* to me
- (b) It's all *the same* to me
- (c) It's *one* and *the same* thing to me

These three sentences all mean the same thing, except that (c) is a little more emphatic. Here “one” is used in the sense of “the same.” The emphasis is produced by the repetition.

(41) *One more* *and* —

- (a) *One more* whistle, and the train started
- (b) *One more* such loss, and we shall be ruined

In each of these sentences there is an ellipsis of some verb in the Principal clause. (a) “*There was one more whistle, and the train started,*” that is, *after one more whistle, the train started.* (b) “*We must incur one more such loss, and then we shall be ruined,*” that is, *if we incur one more such loss, we shall be ruined.* This sentence therefore expresses a condition and its consequence.

(42) *One to another, to one another, to each other* —

- (a) They shouted *one to another*
- (b) They shouted *to one another*

The phrase in (a) is grammatically correct, while that in (b) is grammatically wrong, since “one” is in the Nominative case in apposition with “they” — “They shouted—one shouted to another.” Nevertheless the phrase “*to one another*” has become established by usage, and is now the more idiomatic of the two.

If we use the phrase “each other,” we could not say “they shouted each to other,” but we should have to say “they shouted each to *the other*,” because “each other” is used for two persons, whereas “one another” is used for more than two (see § 351). “Each to the other” is, however, an awkward phrase, and far less idiomatic than “to each other.”

(43) **Or, nor, in Negative sentences —**

He was not a clever man in books *or* in business.

The question has been raised whether "or" is correct in such sentences, or whether "nor" should be written in the place of it.

The answer is that the "or" is correct. The sentence, however, is elliptical, and the ellipse would be filled up as follows —

He was not clever *either* in books *or* in business.

If "nor" is used instead of "or," the sentence must be rewritten in the following form, which, however, is awkward and cumbersome.

He was not clever in books, *nor* was he clever in business.

(14) **Other than, other besides —**

(a) No person *other than* a graduate need apply.

(b) No other person *besides* my friend applied.

In (a) "other than" means "different from," "except," "but" — "No one *except* a graduate, no *other* person *but* a graduate." The word "than" is here a preposition (not a conjunction), which compares or distinguishes a graduate from other men. In (b) "other besides" means "other in addition to" — "No one *besides* or in addition to my friend applied."

(45) **Out of temper, in a temper —**

(a) He is *out of temper* (angry).

(b) He is *in a temper* (angry).

These phrases mean the same thing, and written in full would be, (a) out of his *ordinary* or *good* temper, (b) in a *bad* temper.

(46) **Prevent being, prevent from being —**

(a) The delay *prevented* your letter *being* sent.

(b) The delay *prevented* your letter *from being* sent.

These two sentences mean the same thing, and both are correct. But in (a) "being sent" is a Passive Participle *used gerundively*, while in (b) "being sent" is not a participle at all, but a Passive gerund or noun used as object to the preposition "from."

In (a) the Gerundive Participle (see § 211 and § 300, c) contains an implied noun, and the words "prevented your letter *being sent*" are equivalent to "prevented the *sending* of your letter."

(47) **Save he, save we, etc. —**

There was no stranger in the house *save we* two — *Old Testament*

No man hath seen the Father, *save he* which is of God — *New Testament*

All the conspirators, save only *he* — *Shakespeare*

None shall be mistress of it save *I* alone — *Shakespeare*

This Nominative (which is now gradually going out of use) is a survival of the Nominative Absolute, which was used when "save" or "saved" was still a Past Participle, and had not been changed into a Preposition. On Participial prepositions see § 243 (4), (a)

(48) **Self, my-self, him-self, etc.** —

When "self" is added to a pronoun of the *First* or *Second* person, it is preceded by the *Possessive* case. But when it is added to a pronoun of the *Third* person, it is preceded by a pronoun in the *Objective* case. Thus we have—

First and Second Persons—My self, our selves. Thy self, your selves

Third Person—Him self, her self, them selves

How is this to be explained? The word "self" was originally an adjective signifying "same," "actual," "identical", as in the common phrase "self-same" = "the very same"

On the *self* (=identical) hills — *Raleigh*

To shoot another arrow that *self* (=same) way

Which thou didst shoot at first — *Shakespeare*

At that *self* (=same) moment enters Palamon — *Dryden*

But, like many other adjectives, "self" was also used as a noun, as we still see it used in such phrases as "a man's better self" (=the better side of his character), "she was beauty's self" (=a personification of beauty). Here the noun "self" is very correctly qualified by a noun in the *Possessive* case. Similarly in the *First* and *Second* persons we have "myself," "yourself," etc., where the noun "self" is correctly qualified by the Possessives "my" and "you"

But in composition with pronouns in the *Third* person, "self" has retained its original force as an adjective. Hence we have—

He hurt *him* self (*Object to Verb*)

He did it by *him* self (*Object to Prep*)

Two anomalies, however, remain. (a) The Plural form of the Reflexive pronoun is "themselves." Now, if "self" is an adjective, this should have been "them self," since adjectives have no separate forms for the Plural. (b) The form "himself," "herself," and "themselves," although they are in the *Objective* case, are used in apposition with pronouns in the *Nominative* case, as—

He *him-self* saw it. They *them selves* saw it.

Regarding these anomalies we can only say that they have arisen from a confusion between "self" as a noun and "self" as an adjective, and that they are now fully established by custom

(49) **Several people, several persons** —

Several people think that the rains are over

The phrase "several people" is not so correct as "several persons," because "several" has a distributive force and denotes individuals, while "people" is a Collective noun

(50) **Shortly, briefly** —

I will write *shortly* (= in a short time)

I will write *briefly* (= in few words)

The adverb "shortly" is used to denote shortness only of time, and only of future time. We cannot say "He went away *shortly*" (a short time ago) nor can we say, "He lived there *shortly*" (for a short time). The adverb "briefly" is used only in the sense of shortness in language

(51) **So and so, or so, so so, and so on** —

(a) He asked what I meant, and I told him *so and so*

(b) I shall return in a week *or so*

(c) *So so* it works now, mistakes, sit you fast — *Dryden*

(d) He disliked dances, plays, picnics, *and so on*

In (a) "so and so" is the adverbial form of the Indefinite adjective "such and such." "I told him *so and so*," might be rewritten "I gave him *such and such* in answer" (see § 347, c). These expressions are used, when the speaker does not think it necessary to enter into particulars

In (b) "or so" is also used Indefinitely, and the sentence might be rewritten, "I shall return in a week or such-like,"—that is, a week more or less (see § 347, c)

In (c) "so so" means "fairly well," and is used when the speaker does not wish to be more precise. When the phrase is preceded by "but," it means something less than "well." "His leg is but *so so*" (*Shakespeare*),—that is, "his leg is in rather a worse state than usual."

In (d) the phrase "and so on" means "and such-like," or "etc" (*et cetera*). The adverb "on" means "forward,"—that is, to the end of the list.—"He disliked dances, plays, picnics, and such-like amusements to the end of the list."

(52) **So as to, etc** —

I got up at six A.M. *so as to* be certain of being in time.

This construction is elliptical, and the ellipses should be filled up as follows — “I got up at six A.M. *so* (=in such a way) *as* (=in which way I should get up) to be certain,” etc. The Infinitive in such phrases is Gerundial. See also § 385

(53) **So kind as to**, and similar phrases —

He was *so kind as to* take me into his house

“He was *so* (to that extent) *kind as* (to which extent a man would be kind) to take me (for taking me),” etc. Here the Infinitive is Gerundial. The sentence is equivalent to, “He was kind *enough* to take me”

(54) **Somehow or other, anyhow** —

He managed *somehow or other* to pay off his debts

Here “*how*” has been substituted for the corresponding noun. “He managed *some how or other how* = in *some way* or other (way) to pay off his debts.” (Compare the explanation given in §§ 385, 386)

(55) **This much, so much, so much for** —

(a) *This much* at least we can promise

(b) He is now *so much* better that we need not be alarmed

(c) *So much for* his courage, now as to his honesty

In (a) “*much*” is used as a noun. “*this much*” is equivalent to “*this amount*,” “*this quantity*.” In (b) “*much*” is an adverb qualifying the adjective “*better*,” and “*so*” is another adverb qualifying “*much*”

In (c) the first clause written out in full would be — “*As for* (=regarding) his courage, *so much* has been or can be said.” Here there is a confusion between “*this much*” as a noun and “*so much*” as an adverb. The phrase “*so much*” is used in this place as a noun to some verb understood. It is generally used when the speaker or writer has been depreciating something. “*This* is all that can be said about his courage, now let us see what can be said about his honesty.”

(56) **To be mistaken** —

(a) You will find that you *were mistaken*

(b) You will find that you *mistook it*

The form of the verb in (a) is according to idiom, and this must be adhered to. The form in (b) is what we should have expected from the meaning of the verb “*mistake*,” which is “to misapprehend, or to misunderstand.” But the form of the verb in (b) is against idiom, and should therefore not be used.

(57) **To be sure** —

Shall you go? *To be sure* I shall.

Here "to be" is the Gerundial Infinitive, and the phrase "to be sure" signifies "certainly" The phrase, "Well, to be sure!" is a form of exclamation denoting astonishment (see § 254).

(58) **Very pleased, etc** —

I am *very pleased* to hear this

I am *very tired* with that long walk

According to rule, "much" is used with *Past Participles* and "very" with *Present ones* (see § 398, b) This rule very rarely fails Such phrases as "very pleased," "very tired," "very contented," "very delighted," are exceptions

(59) **What was, what was not** —

(a) *What was* my astonishment on seeing this!

(b) *What was not* my astonishment on seeing this!

These two sentences come to the same thing, in spite of the "not" The first means "How great was my astonishment," etc., the second means "No astonishment could be greater than mine was," etc.

(60) **What with, somewhat** —

The phrase "what with," repeated before two or more nouns, is sometimes used for enumerating a series of things --

What with the cunning of his methods, *what with* the flattery of his tongue, and *what with* the influence of his money, he soon became the leading man in the town

It might be supposed that "what with" is an elliptical phrase for "what he *flattered* with cunning," etc. But more probably "what" is here an Indefinite pronoun used as an adverb in the sense of "partly" The compound word "somewhat" is still used sometimes as a noun signifying "something," and sometimes as an adverb signifying "to some extent" or "partly" — "I am *somewhat* tired of this book" In colloquial English we still say — "I tell you *what*," which means "I tell you something," or "I have something to tell you" In Shakspeare we have

I tell you *what* (=something), Antonio

(61) **Write you, write to you** —

I will *write you* a letter on this matter

I will *write to you* soon

We can use the phrase "*write you*," when "you" is the Indirect object to the verb and is followed by a Direct object But if there is no Direct object and the verb "write" is used Intransitively, we must say "*write to you*"

(62) Active Gerund in a Passive sense —

This pen needs mending

In this and similar sentences "mending" must be parsed as a Gerund, and as object to the Transitive verb "needs." The Active voice in this Gerund is used in a Passive sense, as in "This house was three years in *building*,"—that is, in the process of being built. "The pen needs mending" = needs to be mended (see § 166, *Note*).

(63) Participle with Implied Noun or Pronoun —

(a) *Having stated* our first reason, the second must now be taken up and disposed of

(b) *Defeated* on all sides, his courage began to fail

In (a) the construction cannot be defended, although it is not uncommonly used. It would be correct, if we added the words "by us" at the end of the sentence, because the participle "having stated" would then qualify the pronoun "us."

In (b) the construction, besides being very common in practice, is defensible, because "his" = *of him*, and "defeated" qualifies the implied pronoun "him."

(64) Adverbs repeated, as in the following examples —

Again and again By and by Over and over Over and above
Out and out Far and away More and more Worse and worse
First and foremost Through and through

The adverb is repeated either (a) to denote frequency of succession, as in "again and again," "over and over", or (b) to denote frequency combined with increased intensity, as in "more and more," "worse and worse", or (c) for the sake of emphasis, as in "by and by," "over and above," "out and out," "far and away," "first and foremost"

He is *out and out*, or *far and away* (that is, very decidedly), the best student in the class

Note—Adjectives are sometimes similarly repeated to denote succession —

The dishes should be served up *hot and hot* (that is, one after another, each hot in succession)

The animals went out *two and two* (that is, two in succession, or two at a time) See § 352 (b)

(65) Cardinal Numerals used as Nouns —

(a) The stars come out *by twos and threes* — *Wordsworth*.

(b) They are all *at sixes and sevens*

In (a) the phrase italicised means "two or three at a time" Here the preposition "by" denotes the manner or rate at which

the stars come out they come out two at a time, or three at a time In (b) the phrase denotes "in a state of disorder"

(66) **Possessive Pronoun as Antecedent to a Relative** —

Their sorrows shall be multiplied that run after another God. —
Old Testament

The antecedent to the Relative "that" must be found in the Possessive "their" = of them The sentence could be more appropriately written — "The sorrows of *them that* run after another God shall be multiplied"

(67) **Absolute Case** — In mediæval English the Absolute case was the Dative, not the Nominative —

They have stolen away the body, us sleeping — *Wiclif's Bible*

In Milton we meet with such phrases as "me overthrown," "us disposessed," "him destroyed," which he introduced in imitation of the classical languages Milton, however, uses the Nominative case in other places —

I should not lag behind or en the way, *Thou leading*

The Nominative alone is now used absolutely, and this case is appropriate, because the Nominative noun or pronoun is the Subject to the Finite verb implied in the Participle, for the phrase "thou *leading*" is equivalent to the clause "*whilst* thou *leadest*" (see § 285 (5), *Note*)

(68) **Omission of "that" after "than"** —

I will suffer myself rather than (that) he should

It is optional with the writer or speaker either to express the "that" or to leave it out, but it is more usual to leave it out Here "than" is a preposition, not a conjunction, and the Noun-clause "that he should suffer" is its object (see § 244)

(69) **Elliptical uses of "that" as a Relative** —

(a) Equivalent to "when" or "in which time" —

Now *that* he is dead we must find a successor

The moment *that* he left the house they pursued him

(b) Equivalent to "why" or "for which reason" —

This is the reason *that* I told you to come

(c) Equivalent to "with which" —

He shouted with the loudest voice *that* he could (shout)

Note — Sometimes the antecedent to "that" is borrowed from the verb of the preceding clause —

Have you ever met him before? Not (a meeting) *that* I can remember

(70) **Correlative Words in Phrases** — These can be summed up as follows —

- (a) **The same that, the same as —**

This is the same man that came yesterday
This is the same kind of house as yours

- (b) **As . so —**

As men sow, so will they also reap

- (c) **As or so as —**

I am not so strong as I once was ("So" with Negative)
I am quite as strong as I ever was ("As" with Affirm)

- (d) **Such as —**

He is not such a man as I admire

- (e) **No sooner than —**

No sooner had we left the house, than it began to rain

- (f) **Scarcely before —**

We had scarcely left the house, before it began to rain

- (g) **Hardly when**

We had hardly (or scarcely) left the house, when it began to rain

- (h) **So that —**

I am so tired that I cannot go any farther

- (i) **Not only but or but also —**

He was not only accused and tried, but convicted

- (j) **Both and —**

He is both a fool and a knave

- (k) **Either or, neither nor —**

Either this man sinned or his parents
Neither the one nor the other satisfies me

- (l) **Whether or —**

You must do this whether you like it or not

- (m) **Though yet —**

Though murder have no tongue, yet will it speak

(71) **Emphasis** is frequently indicated by a change in the natural order of words, since by putting a word out of its natural order more attention is drawn to it. Of this the following kinds of examples are common —

(1) Placing the object before its verb instead of after it (see § 147 and § 318) —

Silver and gold have I none

(2) Placing the complement before its verb instead of after it (see § 153, Note 2, and § 310) —

Straight is the gate and narrow is the way that leadeth unto life

(3) Placing the adjective after its noun instead of before it (see § 306) —

I appeal from Philip *drunk* to Philip *sober*

(4) Placing an adverb before instead of after the verb with which it is compounded (see § 315) —

Down went the *Royal George* with all its crew complete.

(72) **An Adverb substituted for an Adjective** — It is the province of adjectives, not of adverbs, to qualify nouns, otherwise the distinction between adjective and adverb is destroyed. The exceptions are apparent, not real (see § 224). In Byron, however, the following phrase occurs —

My *almost drunkenness* of heart.

This is a short way of saying "that state of my heart which I might almost describe as one of drunkenness"

Similarly in prose an adverb *appears* to qualify a noun in such phrases as the following —

A man *asleep* = a sleeping man, or the man *that is asleep*
The world *above* = the world *that is above*

We cannot say "in asleep man," or "the above world," because these words are not really adjectives, but adverbs used to qualify some verb or participle understood

"The *above* book" means "the above named book," where the adverb "above" qualifies the participle "named," which may be either expressed or understood

Note — It has been assumed by some that nouns can be qualified by adverbs, as in the following example

This man, *formerly* the possessor of much wealth, is now poor

But the words "formerly the possessor" is merely a short way of saying "who was formerly the possessor," where *formerly* is an adverb qualifying the verb "was." We cannot say "the formerly possessor," which shows that the adverb "formerly" does not really qualify the noun "possessor," but some verb or participle understood

(73) **An Adjective substituted for an Adverb** — Since adjectives and adverbs are both qualifying words, an adjective qualifying the subject to a verb can be substituted for an adverb qualifying the verb itself, as has been explained in § 290. How far is this admissible in prose? and how far in poetry?

In prose and poetry alike —

(a) When the adjective describes the state of the agent. The adjective is then an "Adverbial Adjunct" to the predicate-verb (see § 266, c) —

He went away *sad* (that is, he was sad when he went away)

(b) When the adjective describes the effect of the action Here again the adjective is an "Adverbial Adjunct" —

The moon shines *bright* (the moon shines, and the effect of its shining is brightness)

Note — This use of the adjective is in prose limited to monosyllables Thus in prose we should not say, "The moon shines *brilliant*," but "The moon shines *brilliantly*"

In poetry only —

(c) When the adjective is intended to describe neither the state of the agent, nor the effect of the action, but the *manner of doing the action* —

First they praised him *soft and low* — *Tennyson*

(Their manner of praising him was soft and low)

The green trees whispered *low and mild* — *Longfellow*

(The kind of whisper was low and mild)

They fall *successive*, and *successive* rise — *Pope*

(Their mode of falling and rising is successive)

(74) **Verb followed by Adjective** — In such phrases the adjective is sometimes a complement and sometimes an adverbial adjunct to the verb The verb may be either Transitive or Intransitive —

Bear hard. — The new tax will *bear hard* on (be specially burden some to) landlords

Break loose. — He allowed his passions to *break loose* (break themselves loose, burst forth)

Break open. — Let us *break open* the box (open it by force)

Breathe free. — We can now *breathe free* (take breath freely) again

Come true. — The news has *come* (turned out to be) *true*

Come wrong. — A good dinner never *comes wrong* (is always acceptable) to any one

Cut dead. — (Colloquial) He *cut me dead* (passed me without making any sign of recognition, with the intention of insulting me)

Cut short. — His life was *cut short* (brought to an untimely end) by cholera

Do wrong. — He *did wrong* (acted wrongly, made a mistake) to believe or in believing that man a woid

Drink hard. — He *drinks hard* (is a confirmed drunkard)

Fall flat. — His speech *fell flat* (produced no effect) on the audience

Fall or run foul. — The ship *fell foul* of (struck on) the rocks

Fall heavy. — The water rate *falls heavy* on (is specially burdensome to) tenants

Fall or come short. — The result *fell short* of (was less than) our expectations

Fight shy. — I *fought shy* of that man (kept out of his way without telling him that I was doing so)

Get rid or quit. — I cannot *get rid* or *quit* of this fever (get myself rid of, throw it off)

Go hard —That man's death *went hard* with (brought much distress on) his family

Go mad, etc —The dog *went* (became) mad He *has gone* blind.

Go wrong —Everything *went wrong* (turned out badly) with me

Hold good —This rule *holds good* (holds itself good, continues in force) here also

Hold true —This saying always *holds true* (holds itself true, continues true)

Lay bare or open —He managed to *lay bare* (expose) their plots.

Lay waste —He *laid waste* (ravaged) the enemy's country

Let loose —He *lets* the dog *loose* (unchains it) at night

Live fast —One who *lives fast* (leads a rapid, that is, dissolute life) dies early

Look blank —He *looked blank* (seemed puzzled, disturbed, or surprised), when he was informed of his dismissal

Look sharp —I hope you will *look sharp* (make haste, lose no time) about this

Make good —I incurred a heavy loss through you, and so now you must *make it good* (compensate me for the loss)

Make merry —Sailors like to *make merry* (make themselves merry, have some fun) on shore

Make sure —A cautious man will *make sure* (make himself sure) of his ground (take care that his course is a safe one)

Make little or light —He *made little* of my illness (considered it of no importance)

Make much —He *made much* of my illness (considered it serious)

Make too much —He *made too much* of my abilities (over-estimated them)

Make nothing —(a) He *made nothing* of my abilities (regarded them as worthless)

(b) The teacher could *make nothing* of him (could not succeed with him)

Muster strong or in force —The boys *mustered strong* (mustered or collected themselves in large numbers) on that occasion

Play false —He *played me false* (acted deceitfully towards me)

Put right or set right or put to rights —The teacher soon *put* the class *right* (put it into good order)

Ride rough shod —He tried to *ride rough shod* over all of us (force his own way upon us, whatever annoyance it might give us)

Run short —(a) The money *ran short* (became too little for the purpose required)

(b) We *ran short* of money (spent all we had while we still needed it)

Set free —England *set* every slave *free* (set at liberty or released every slave)

Sow broadcast —They *sowed* sedition *broadcast* (scattered it widely and profusely) over the country

Steer clear —I hope you will *steer clear* of (steer the boat clear, keep out of the way of) usurers

Stop short —He *stopped short* in the middle of his speech (stopped suddenly, when he was expected to go on)

Strike dumb —We are *struck dumb* by this news

Take ill.—My father *took ill* (or was taken ill, was attacked with an illness) yesterday

Talk big.—He *talks big* (boasts, exaggerates) about himself

Think fit.—He *thinks fit* (thinks it fit) to blame me for nothing
(This implies that he not only thinks fit to do something wrong, but that he actually does it)

(75) **Obsolete words in phrases.**—There are some phrases in which one of the words is either obsolete (except in the phrase itself) or is used in a unique sense. In the examples given below every such word is shown in *italics*—

Beck and call.—He is at your *beck* (nod or motion of the head) and call. (Hence the word “beckon”)

By hook or by crook.—We must do this by *hook* or by *crook* (by some means or other)

Cheek by jowl.—I will go with thee *cheek by jowl*.—*Shakespeare* (Jowl means “jaw”; “*cheek by jowl*” is similar in form as well as in meaning to “side by side” in close proximity)

Chop and change.—We go on *chopping* and changing our friends.—*L'Estrange* (“To chop” means to barter, to give one thing for another. The colloquial equivalent to “chop” is “swap”)

Hue and cry.—They raised a *hue* (hoot or clamour) and cry
In fine.—In conclusion (“*fine*” means “end”, hence “finish”)

In vogue.—This dress is much in *vogue* (fashion)

Kith and kin.—He is far from all *kith* (blood relations) and kin (kindred)

Learn by rote.—Do not learn anything by *rote* (by merely repeating the words and neglecting the sense)

Lie in wait.—He lay in *wait* (ambush) for the enemy

Malice prepense.—This was done out of *malice prepense* (see § 308)

Neck and crop.—He turned him out *neck* and *crop* (altogether, completely) (“*Crop*” means the crop of a bird)

Neither chick nor child.—(“*Chick*” is a term of endearment for child)

Nick of time.—He came in the *nick* (critical moment) of time

Odds and ends.—Pick up the *odds* (scraps) and ends

Of no avail.—Your excuses are of no *avail* (effect)

On pain of death.—(“*Pain*” here means “penalty”)

Part and parcel.—(“*Parcel*” here means “portion”) The word is a diminutive of “part”

Picking and stealing.—Keep your hands from *picking* (pilfering) and stealing

Rack and ruin.—He went to *rack* (wrack or wick) and ruin

Rhyme or reason.—He did that without *rhyme* (sound) or reason, (without any valid reason)

Run a rig.—He ran a *rig* (had a frolic) that day

Scot free.—He got off *scot* free (free of payment, unharmed)

Shrewd turn.—He did me a *shrewd* (ill) turn

Shrewd blow.—He gave me a *shrewd* (severe) blow

Sick or sorry.—This horse is never sick or *sorry* (ill) (This phrase is used only for horses)

Spick and span.—He has a *spick and span* new coat (new as a *spile* or nail just made, and a *chip* or span of wood just chopped off)

Stand in good stead.—His kindness stood me in good *stead* (in good standing, was of great service to me)

Stark and stiff.—His body was *stark* (rigid) and stiff

Take umbrage.—He took *umbrage* (offence) at what I said

Tit for tat.—(Probably a corruption of "tip (or slight blow) for tap" The phrase means "blow for blow," "like for like")

Toil and moul.—He was always *toiling and moul'ing* (labouring as a drudge)

Watch and ward.—He kept *watch and ward* (guard)

Widow's weeds.—The *weeds* (mourning clothes) worn by a widow

(76) **Words in pairs.**—There are certain stock phrases, in which words of the same, or almost the same, meaning go in *pairs*. The second word has been added either to increase the force of the first by repeating its meaning, or for the sake of rhythm. Most of these words are monosyllables, but if one of them consists of two syllables, the dissyllable is always put last —

Bag and baggage.—They were expelled *bag and baggage* (with all their belongings) (These two nouns are in the Adverbial objective)

By fits and starts.—He did everything *by fits and starts*, but stuck to nothing long

By leaps and bounds.—His progress is not steady, but goes by *leaps and bounds*

Fair and square.—He was *fair and square* (just) in all his dealings

Fire and brimstone.—He threatens us with *fire and brimstone* (fearful penalties)

Fire and fury.—His language was full of *fire and fury* (passion)

First and foremost.—We must inquire about this *first and foremost*.

Forms and ceremonies.—We cannot always neglect *forms and ceremonies*

Free and easy.—He is very *free and easy* (unrestrained) in his manner

Gall and wormwood.—His voice is *gall and wormwood* (a source of intense annoyance) to me

Goods and chattels.—He took away all his *goods and chattels* with him

Heart and soul.—He went *heart and soul* into the business

High and mighty.—He is very *high and mighty* (haughty) in his manner

Hole and corner.—He adopted a *hole and corner* (underhand) method

House and home.—He was turned out of *house and home*

(To all *intents and purposes*—He was, to all *intents and purposes*, dismissed, but nominally he resigned)

Jot or tittle.—He would not lower his price one *jot or tittle*

(The) *loaves and fishes*—He was eager for the *loaves and fishes* (emoluments) of office.

Null and void.—This ruling has now become *null and void* (invalid)

Open and above board —Let everything be *open and above board* (honest and straightforward)

Over and above. —*Over and above* being lazy he is dull

Over head and ears —He was *over head and ears* in debt

Pains and penalties —Let us know what are the *pains and penalties* inflicted by the law

Safe and sound —He arrived home *safe and sound*

Stuff and nonsense —What you are saying is all *stuff and nonsense* (rubbish)

Sum and substance —This is the *sum and substance* (pith) of the whole question

Time and tide —*Time and tide* wait for no man

To hum and haw —He could not speak without *humming and hawing* (hesitation)

(To be) up and doing —We must be *up and doing* (begin to act)

Ways and means —Are you provided with the *ways and means* (necessary funds) ?

Well and good —If that is what you mean to do, *well and good*

Will and pleasure —I will act entirely according to your *will and pleasure* (I will carry out your wishes in everything)

Wit and wisdom —The *wit and wisdom* (cleverness and wisdom) of this man can be seen from his writings

With might and main —He worked *with might and main* (as hard as he could)

(77) **Words used in a bad sense** —There are certain words and phrases which are chiefly or always used in a bad sense. Some of those in common use are given below —

Abide by the consequences (await the evil results)

Accident —“He met with an accident” (*misadventure*)

Accomplice —Partner in some *crime*

Addicted to some bad habit, as gambling, intemperance

Adventurer —One who enters upon *risky* projects

Adversary —A *hostile* opponent, one from whom *harm* may come

Airs —“He should not give himself *airs*” (*conceited airs*, a *conceited demeanour*)

Amenities —Almost always nominal, for “*rude words*”

Apprehensive of some harm or injury

Artisan —One who practises some *inferior* art. (One who practises a *fine art* is called an *artist*)

Audacious —Bold in the sense of *presumptuous* or *impudent*

Besetting —A besetting *sin* or *fault*

Blunder —A *gross* or *serious* mistake

Bode —“This fact *bodes* us some *harm*”

Boisterous —*Rude* and *rough* as well as strong

Brat —Contemptuous word for “*child*”

Break news —To be the first to communicate *bad news*

Broil —A *noisy* quarrel, a *brawl*

Brook —Tolerate or endure something *bad*

Catastrophe. —A *disastrous* conclusion

Coalition of men of *divergent* or *opposite* views, and hence it means a kind of partnership which is not homogeneous.

- Commit.**—To do something *wrong*, as "to commit a fault"
- Conceit.**—An *extravagant* notion
- Concoct.**—To devise a plan for an *evil* purpose
- Condign.**—Used only to qualify "*punishment*" (Not used to qualify "reward")
- Consummate.**—Consummate *nonsense* a consummate *coward*
- Conventional.**—Guided by fashion, and not by judgment or taste
- Counterfeit.**—To imitate for a *dishonest* purpose
- Covert.**—Hidden for the sake of *disguise*
- Cowardly.**—Timid to an *unworthy* degree
- Credulity.**—A *foolish* readiness to believe anything
- Cunning.**—*Crooked* cleverness employed for an *evil* purpose
- Demagogue.**—An *unprincipled* popular leader
- Demerit.**—*Not* desert on account of *faults* committed
- Demure.**—*Affecting* to be modest and retiring
- Desert.**—*Abandon* something which ought not to have been left
- Despot.**—A *tyrannical* kind of absolute ruler
- Dole.**—A *scanty* allowance or share
- Doom.**—To consign to an *evil* fate
- Effeminate.**—Womanish, humanly ("Feminine" and "womanly" are used in a good sense)
- Egregious.**—Remarkable in a *bad* sense, as "egregious folly"
- Equivocal.**—*Intentionally* ambiguous or misleading
- Fabricate.**—To invent with a *bad* motive
- Facetious.**—Jocular in a *foolish* kind of way
- Faction.**—A political cabal
- Fain.**—Willing to do a thing not from choice, but under necessity
- Fancy.**—Imagination when it is not guided by reason
- Fine figure.**—"He cut a fine figure (*ridiculous* or *disgraceful* figure) in that matter" (The phrase "fine figure" is ironical)
- Flagrant.**—Remarkable in a *bad* sense, as "a flagrant blunder"
- Forge.**—To produce something that is not genuine as "to forge a will"
- Forsake.**—The same meaning as "desert"
- Forsooth.**—In truth (and ironically)
- Fulsome.**—Full of excessive, so as to produce *disgust* as "fulsome flattery"
- Garble.**—"To garble a quotation" to separate it from its context and thus put a false meaning on it
- Ghost.**—A specter or goblin (It once meant the soul or spirit)
- Glaring.**—Conspicuous for something *evil*, as "a glaring error"
- Gossip.**—An *idle* talker or *idle* talk
- Gross.**—Bulky combined with the sense of *coarse* and *vulgar*
- Grotesque.**—Irregular in the sense of "extravagant," "whimsical"
- Hasty.**—Quick to a *fault*, rash, easily excited, impetuous
- Homely.**—Domestic in the sense of plain, common, unpolished
- Impertinent.**—Saucy, (it once meant "irrelevant")
- Implicated.**—Involved in, or mixed up with, something *evil*.
- Inveterate.**—Used for something *bad*, as "an inveterate liar," "an inveterate enemy"
- Legend.**—A story not supposed to be as true as a tradition

- Lie** — A falsehood uttered for the sake of deceiving or doing harm
- Linger** — To linger at a time when greater haste should have been made.
- Lonely** — Not merely alone, but *depressed* or *sad* from being alone
- Luck** — "He was too late, as luck (= *bad* luck) would have it."
- Lumber** — Household stuff of little or no value
- Maudlin** — Easily moved to tears, sentimental to the extent of *weakness*
- Minion** — An *unworthy* favourite
- Names** — "He should not call me names (= *bad* names)
- Notorious** — Possessing an *evil* reputation
- Obsequious** — Complaisant to the extent of servility
- Officious** — Busy with other men's affairs, troubling men with attentions, which are not asked for and not desired
- Palliate** — To throw a cloak or veil over something which ought not to be concealed, hence to make excuses for faults
- Peculiar** — Often used in the sense of strange or eccentric, as "a peculiar man," "a man of *peculiar* tastes"
- Perpetrate** — This verb is used only of *crimes*
- Plausible** — Apparently, but not really, worthy of applause or praise specious, colourable
- Plight** — A *sad* or *painful* condition "He is in a *sad* plight"
- Pocket** — To put into one's pocket *fraudulently*, as "he pocketed the money" Or to submit patiently to an insult, as "he pocketed the insult"
- Possessed** — "He fought like one possessed (that is, possessed of *evil* spirits)
- Prone** to some vice or weakness, as "he is prone to idleness, intemperance," etc (apt to become idle, intemperate, etc)
- Prejudice** — A judgment formed *against* some one without evidence.
- Retaliate** — Pay back an *injury*, the opposite to "recompense, or reward"
- Richly** — "He *richly* deserved the punishment" This phrase is always used in reference to something undesirable
- Sanctimonious** — Said of one who makes an *affectation* of godliness
- Sensual** — That which appeals to the *lower* or *carnal* senses
- Sentimental** — *Affectedly* tender or emotional
- Serve** a man right — "This serves him right" Always in reference to some *evil* consequences which a man has deserved through his own *fault*
- Servitude** — Service of a *slavish* kind
- Sheer**, as "sheer nonsense," "sheer folly" The word "sheer" is always used in reference to something bad We never say "sheer virtue," but "perfect or pure virtue"
- Shrewd** — Clever, but often in a sense implying some dishonesty
- Soft** — Often used in the sense of "effeminate," "unmanly"
- Specious** — Same meaning as "plausible" "A *specious* (apparently sound) argument."
- Stickler** — One who sticks to a *small* point *perversely* or *obstinately*
- Tempt** — To put a man on his trial with the intention of *seducing* him, or leading him into a trap.
- To a degree** — "He is insolent, or dull, or dishonest *to a degree*"

- (that is, to a high degree) (This phrase is usually applied to some *bad* quality)
- Totally** —Always used for something bad, as "totally incompetent," "totally blind"
- Trivial** —Ordinary in the sense of *paltry* "A *trivial* or common-place subject"
- Usurer** —One who charges *extortionate* interest
- Utter** —"An utter *fool*," "an utter *failure*" Always used for something bad
- Utterly** —Same meaning as "totally"
- Versatile** —One who is changed too quickly Unstable, unsteady
- Voluble** —Said of a fluent, but *often empty*, talker
- Wiseacre** —Always used ironically, to denote a fool

(78) **Adjectives understood** —There are some nouns which must be taken in a good sense, when no adjective is placed before them to denote the opposite —

- Age** —He is of (*full*) age (=grown up) He is under (*full*) age (=a minor)
- Breeding** —He is a man of (*high*) breeding (=a well bred man)
- Condition** —The horse is out of (*good*) condition (=is thin)
- Family** —He is a man of (*high*) family
- Feeling** —He is a man of (*finer* and *good*) feeling
- Form** —The boatmen pulled together in form (=in *good* form or style)
- Order** —Everything is in (*proper*) order
- Parts** —He is a man of parts (=of *good* qualities or abilities)
- Place** —Everything is in place (=in its *right* place) Your conduct is quite out of place (=out of its *right* place, improper)
- Position** —He is a man of (*good*) position
- Principle** —He is a man of (*high*) principle
- Quality** —He is a person of (*good* or *high*) quality
- Rank** —Men of (*high*) rank
- Taste** —His remark was not in taste (=in *good* taste)
- Temper** —He is out of temper (=ordinary or *good* temper) (But "in temper" or "in a temper" means in *bad* temper, as, "He said that in a temper," =in a rage")
- Thing** —That was just the thing (=the *right* thing) to say
- Time** —He arrived in time (=in the *proper* or *right* time)

(79) **Elliptical phrases** —The following are of common occurrence —

- And no wonder** —He has been acquitted, *and no wonder* (=and it is no wonder that he has been acquitted)
- And welcome** —You may take my book, *and welcome* (=and be welcome to it)
- As ever** —He is as idle *as ever* (=as he ever was before)
- As usual** —He is idle *as usual* (=in the manner which is usual to him, see p 259)
- Easier said than done** —this is easier when it is said than when it is done

If not sooner.—I shall get there by four, *if not sooner* (=if I do not get there sooner)

Leave well alone—We had better leave *well* (=what is well) alone.

Lay about one with a whip—He laid (*blows*) about him with a whip

No sooner said than done=*it was no sooner said than it was done*

Practice makes perfect=*makes a man perfect*

Provided.—I am willing, *provided* (=if being provided that) you are

Ride and tie—We had better *ride and tie* (that is, one of us ride some way forward, and then tie the horse for the other to have his turn of riding)

Right or wrong—I intend to go, *right or wrong* (=whether it is right or wrong to do so)

Right and left—He hit out *right and left* (=to the right hand and the left, on all sides of him)

To see fair play=to see that the play or playing is fair

Thanks—He recoived, thanks to the doctor (=our thanks are due to the doctor)

Whether or no—We must do as we are told, *whether or no* (=whether we like it or no)

Will he, nill he—He must take service *nill he nill he* (=whether he is wilhing or not)

Note—"Will I, nill I" and "nill ye, nill ye," have been similarly used for the first and second persons, and all three forms or persons have been corrupted into "nilly nilly"

Would-be—The *would be* thint (=the man who would or wished or intended to be a thint, but was prevented from being one)

(80) **Specialised expressions**—Phrases in which some word is restricted to a certain connection, so that no other word can be put in its place—

Bevy of ladies—We never say 'a bevy of gentlemen'

Bosom friend—We never speak of "a breast friend" or "a heart friend"

Broad daylight—We do not speak of "broad moonlight," but "bright moonlight"

Drawn battle—We do not speak of "a drawn combat" or "a drawn fight"

Fast friend—We do not speak of "a fast enemy" or "fast foe"

Foregone conclusion—We do not speak of "a foregone inference" or "a foregone result"

Golden age—We do not speak of 'the golden time or period'

Gratuitous insult—We do not speak of "gratuitous abuse"

Green old age—We do not say that a man is in a "verdant old age"

Honest penny—We do not speak of "turning an honest *suspence*"
Implicit confidence, faith, or reliance, but not implicit *love, hatred, etc.*

Leading question—We can "put a leading *question*," but not a "leading *inquiry*"

Livelong day or night—We cannot say "the livelong *hour*, or *week*, or *year*"

Maiden speech (the first speech made) —We cannot say "a maiden *song*" or "a *virgin* speech"

Market rate, market value —We cannot substitute "trade" for "market"

Moot point —We can speak of "an open question," but not "a *moot question*"

Open question —We cannot speak of "an open *point*"

Out of doors —We never say "out of *door*"

Retrench expenditure —We do not say "retrench *trade* or *business*"

Sharp practice (=knavery) —We do not combine "sharp" in the same sense with any other noun

Short cut = a crosspath which shortens the distance

Sinews of war (money) —We speak of "the *sinews*," but not of "the *muscles* of war"

Single combat —We never speak of "a single *fight*, or *conflict*, or *contest*"

Slow coach —We call a man "a slow *coach*," but not "a slow *carriage*"

Special pleading —We do not speak of "special *argumentation* or *advocacy*"

Standing army (=permanent army) —We never say "a standing *navy*"

Standing joke (=permanent joke) —We never say "a standing *joke*"

Standing nuisance —We may say "a *constant* trouble," but not "a *standing* trouble"

Stone's throw —We never say "a *stone's fling*" or "the throw of a *stone*"

Storm signal —We never speak of "a *tempest* signal" or "a *storm warning*"

Stubborn fact —We never speak of "an *obstinate* fact" or "a *stubborn truth*"

Stump orator —We never say "a *stump speaker*" or "a *stump rhetorician*"

Sworn friends —We speak of "an *inveterate* enemy," but not of "a *sworn enemy*"

Tall talk —We never speak of "lofty talk" or "tall *professions*"

Watery grave —We do not speak of "a *watery tomb* or *watery burial*"

(81) **Phrases used as Adjectives** —These phrases are all colloquial

A *happy go lucky* (haphazard) plan | A *go ahead* (pushing) man

An *out of the way* (excluded) place | A *stick in the mud* (not pushing) man

Out of doors (open air) work | An *upside down* (inverted) notion

A *hole and corner* (clandestine) method | A *dog in the manger* (selfish) policy

A *stay at-home* (domestic) person. | A *jack-in-the-box* (volatile) man

PART III—THE TRANSFORMATION AND SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

CHAPTER XXI—DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION

422 When the verb in one sentence reports what is said by some speaker in another sentence, the verb in the first sentence is called the *reporting verb*, and what is said in the second sentence is called the *reported speech*, as—

<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Speech</i>
My father said,	"It is time to go away"

423 Now, there are two different ways in which the reported speech may be expressed —

It may either (*a*) repeat the *actual words* used by the speaker, or (*b*) it may give their *substance*

424 When the reported speech repeats the *actual words*, this is called **Direct Narration**, as in the above example

<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Speech</i>
My father said,	"It is time to go away"

Note 1—This is the mode generally used in the Vernaculars of India. But in English the sentences are *not* joined by "*that*"

Note 2—In all cases of Direct Narration the reported speech must be marked off by commas, as in the above example

425 When the reported speech gives the *substance* of the words used by the speaker, and not the actual words, this is called **Indirect Narration**, as—

<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Speech</i>
My father said	<i>that</i> it was time to go away

Note—In this construction the sentences are joined by "*that*"

426 The tense of the *reporting verb* is never changed. But the tense of the reported speech is liable to certain changes in passing from the Direct Narration to the Indirect; and these depend on the tense of the reporting verb

427 There are two main rules regarding the change of tense in the reported speech, and these are similar to the rules given in § 394 about the Sequence of Tenses —

RULE I — *If the reporting verb is a Past tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech must be changed to one or other of the four forms of the Past tense*

RULE II — *If the reporting verb is a Present or Future tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is not changed at all*

Rule II

428 Rule II is so simple, that we can dispose of it at once. By this rule the reporting verb is assumed to be in some **Present** or **Future** tense, and whenever this occurs, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is *not changed at all* in passing from the Direct to the Indirect Narration.

	Reporting Verb (Present Tense)	Reported Speech (Any Tense)
{ Direct	He has told you,	' I am coming '
{ Indirect	He has told you	that he <i>is</i> coming
{ Direct	He says to his friend,	' I have been reading
{ Indirect	He says to his friend	that he <i>has been</i> reading
	(Future Tense)	(Any Tense)
{ Direct	He will say,	"Thou <i>hast</i> spoken falsely "
{ Indirect	He will tell thee	that thou <i>hast</i> spoken falsely
{ Direct	He will say,	"The boy <i>was</i> lazy "
{ Indirect	He will tell them	that the boy <i>was</i> lazy

429 Sometimes there is an uncertainty as to whether the pronoun "*he*" in the reported speech refers to the person speaking or to the person spoken to —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech
Direct	{ Gobind says to Cleon,	" I am wrong "
	{ Gobind says to Cleon,	' You are wrong "
Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that he (who?) is wrong

How is this uncertainty about the "*he*" to be removed? This can only be done by inserting the name of the person intended after "*he*," as in the examples given below —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech
{ Direct	Gobind says to Cleon,	" I am wrong "
{ Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that he (Gobind) is wrong.
{ Direct	Gobind says to Cleon,	" You are wrong "
{ Indirect	Gobind says to Cleon	that he (Cleon) is wrong

Convert the following from the Direct to the Indirect Narration —

The judge will say to you, "You are innocent of that crime."
 All men declare, "He has never been defeated."
 He has told them, "I did not commit this fault."
 He is still declaring, "You are the man who did it."
 He has been saying all day, "I am tired of work."
 I shall tell him plainly, "You cannot come here again."
 I shall always affirm, "He, and not I, is the guilty man."
 He says every day, "This climate will not suit my health, I must go away as soon as I can."
 The judge informs the court, "The man is guilty and will be hanged in four days' time."
 The man has confessed, "I am the guilty man, and deserve the punishment."

Rule I

430 For the working out of Rule I in detail, the following special rules must be observed —

(a) The Present tense (in the reported speech) must be changed to its *corresponding* Past form

(b) The Past Indefinite (in the reported speech) must be changed to the Past Perfect

(c) The Past Continuous (in the reported speech) must be changed to the Past Perfect Continuous

431 *Special Rule (a)* — Change the Present tense (in the reported speech) into its *corresponding* Past form

Thus *shall* is changed into *should*, *will* is changed into *would*, *may* is changed into *might*, *can* is changed into *could*, *come* is changed into *came*, *is coming* is changed into *was coming*, *has come* is changed into *had come*, *has been coming* is changed into *had been coming*

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech	
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>shall</i> come"	Present
{ Indirect	He said	that the man <i>should</i> come	Past
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>will</i> come"	Present
{ Indirect	He said	that the man <i>would</i> come	Past
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>may</i> come"	Present
{ Indirect	He said	that the man <i>might</i> come	Past
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>can</i> come"	Present
{ Indirect	He said	that the man <i>could</i> come	Past
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>comes</i> "	Pres Indef
{ Indirect	He said	that the man <i>came</i>	Past Indef
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>is coming</i> "	Pres Contin
{ Indirect.	He said	that the man <i>was coming</i>	Past Contin

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech.	
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>has come</i> "	Pres Perfect
{ Indirect	He said,	that the man <i>had come</i>	Past Perfect.
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>has been coming</i> "	Pres Per Con
{ Indirect	He said,	that the man <i>had been coming</i>	Past Per Con

Examples

Direct—And Jacob said "It is enough, my son Joseph is yet alive, I *will* go and see him before I *die*"—*Old Testament*

Indirect—And Jacob said that it *was* enough, that his son Joseph *was* yet alive, and that he *would* go and see him before he *died*

Direct—And David's anger was greatly kindled, and he said, "The man who *hath done* this thing *deserveth* to die, and he *shall restore* the lamb fourfold"—*Old Testament*

Indirect—And David said that the man who *had done* this thing *deserved* to die, and that he *should restore* the lamb fourfold

432 Special Rule (b)—Change the Past Indefinite (in the reported speech) into the Past Perfect —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech	
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>came</i> at six"	Past Indef
{ Indirect	He said,	that the man <i>had come</i> at six	Past Perfect
{ Direct	He said,	"The rain <i>fell</i> yesterday"	Past Indef
{ Indirect	He said,	that the rain <i>had fallen</i> yesterday	Past Perfect

433 Special Rule (c)—Change the Past Continuous (in the reported speech) into the Past Perfect Continuous —

	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech	
{ Direct	He said,	"The man <i>was coming</i> "	Past Contin
{ Indirect	He said,	that the man <i>had been coming</i>	Past Perf Con
{ Direct	He said,	"The rain <i>was falling</i> yesterday"	Past Contin
{ Indirect	He said,	that the rain <i>had been falling</i> yesterday	Past Perf Con

(1) *Convert the following sentences from Direct to Indirect* —

We said to him, "The weather is stormy, and the way is long"

He said to us, "The carriage has come, and we shall start soon"

The teacher told us, "The prize will be presented to-morrow"

He said to me, "The rain has been falling since daybreak, and you cannot go"

We said to him, "Your fault will be pardoned, if you confess it"

He said to me, "I am glad to tell you that you are pardoned"

He said, "The man has started, but he has not yet come"

We heard him say, "I will agree to what you propose, if you sign this"

He said to me, "You are mistaken, you will not go to-day."

Hasain said to me, "I shall leave this place, as soon as I can"

Hasain said to me, "You will be tired before you arrive"

Hasan said, "Our friend arrived yesterday, but will go to day "
 My son exclaimed, "Some one has taken the book I was reading "
 He made a promise, "I will come, if I can."
 He said, "I have been very ill, but am now better "
 Pilate replied to the Jews, "What I have written, I have written "
 He said to me, "You are guilty, and I am innocent "
 They said, "The boy is hiding in the place where we left him "
 They said, "The boy will soon be found, and we will bring him "

(2) *Convert the following sentences from Indirect to Direct —*

He made them understand that he would soon return
 He told them that he had been robbed of the book which he had bought
 He said that he was very sorry for the fault he had committed
 They all said to him that he deserved to be pardoned
 They affirmed that he was the best worker they had seen
 He admitted that he had not worked so hard as Ram had done
 He heard them say that he did not deserve the prize
 He promised them that he would do it as soon as he could
 They said that he deserved their thanks for all he had done
 All who heard this said that he was speaking the truth
 He said that he had been three years in jail, and yet was innocent
 They told him they would never believe what he said
 He replied that he would prove what he had said to be true
 My brother told me that he had been reading all day
 My father told me that I was wrong and would be fined
 I replied that if my fault was proved I would pay the fine
 I admitted that I had acted foolishly in what I did

434 There is one exception to Rule I similar to that described in § 395 for the Sequence of Tenses

If the reported speech relates to some *universal* or *habitual* fact, then the Present Indefinite in the reported speech is *not* changed into the corresponding Past, but remains exactly as it was —

	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Present tense</i>
<i>Direct</i>	He said, "We <i>cannot</i> be quite happy in this life "	
<i>Indirect</i>	He said that we <i>cannot</i> be quite happy in this life	
<i>Direct</i>	He said, "The earth <i>moves</i> round the sun "	
<i>Indirect</i>	He said that the earth <i>moves</i> round the sun	
<i>Direct</i>	He said, "God <i>rules</i> and <i>governs</i> all things "	
<i>Indirect</i>	He said that God <i>rules</i> and <i>governs</i> all things	
<i>Direct</i>	He reminded me, "When the cat <i>is</i> away, the mice <i>play</i> "	
<i>Indirect</i>	He reminded me that when the cat <i>is</i> away, the mice <i>play</i>	

435. In the reported speech, when the *Present* tense is changed into the *Past* by Rule I, an adjective, verb, or

adverb expressing *nearness* is similarly changed into one expressing *distance*

Thus as a general rule we change —

<i>Now</i>	into <i>then</i>	<i>To day</i>	into <i>that day</i>
<i>This or these</i>	„ <i>that or those</i>	<i>To morrow</i>	„ <i>next day</i>
<i>Hither</i>	„ <i>thither</i>	<i>Yesterday</i>	„ <i>the previous day</i>
<i>Here</i>	„ <i>there</i>	<i>Last night</i>	„ <i>the previous night</i>
<i>Hence</i>	„ <i>thence</i>	<i>Ago</i>	„ <i>before</i>
<i>Thus</i>	„ <i>so</i>	<i>Now</i>	„ <i>then</i>
<i>Come</i>	„ <i>go</i>		

<i>Reporting Verb</i>		<i>Reported Speech</i>
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said,	‘ I will leave you now ’
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He said,	that he would leave them then
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said,	‘ I will come here ’
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He said,	that he would go there
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said,	‘ I have seen this man ’
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He said,	that he had seen that man
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said,	‘ I saw this man long ago ’
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He said,	that he had seen that man long before

But if “*this*,” “*here*,” “*now*,” etc., refers to some object, place, or time that is present to the speaker during the delivery of the speech, then no change of adjective or adverb is made in the reported speech

<i>Reporting Verb</i>		<i>Reported Speech</i>
{ <i>Direct</i>	Gobind said,	“ This is my coat ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	Gobind said,	that <i>this</i> (the coat in his hand) was his coat
{ <i>Direct</i>	Gobind said,	“ I will do it now or never ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	Gobind said,	that he would do it now or never

436 Interrogative Sentences — When the reported speech is an Interrogative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb “say” or “tell” is changed into “ask” or “inquire”

<i>Reporting Verb</i>		<i>Reported Question</i>
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said to me,	“ What is the shortest way back ? ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He inquired of me	what was the shortest way back
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said to me,	“ Where are you going ? ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He asked me	where I was going
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said to him,	“ Why do you stop here ? ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He asked him	why he stopped there
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said to us,	“ Are you going away to day ? ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He inquired of us	whether we were going that day
{ <i>Direct</i>	He said to me,	“ Why did you strike me ? ”
{ <i>Indirect</i>	He demanded of me	why I had struck him

437 Imperative Sentences. — When the reported speech is an Imperative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb “say” or

"tell" must be changed to some verb signifying a *command*, or a *precept*, or an *entreaty*, and the student must select the verb best suited to the sense or context.

In its passage from the Direct Narration to the Indirect, the Imperative mood must be replaced by the *Infinitive*

	<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Imperative</i>	
{ Direct	He said to his servants,	"Go away at once"	} <i>Command</i>
{ Indirect	He ordered his servants	to go away at once	
{ Direct	He said to his friend,	"Work steadily"	} <i>Precept</i>
{ Indirect	He advised his friend	to work steadily	
{ Direct	He said to the student,	"Do not sit there"	} <i>Prohibition</i>
{ Indirect	He forbade the student	to sit there	
{ Direct	He said to his master,	"Pardon me, sir"	} <i>Entreaty</i>
{ Indirect	He begged his master	to pardon him	
{ Direct	He said to his friend,	"Please lend me your book"	} <i>Request</i>
{ Indirect	He asked his friend	to be kind enough to lend him his book	

Whenever a subordinate clause is attached to an Imperative sentence, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is regulated by the tense of the reporting verb, (see Rule I in § 430)

	<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Speech</i>
{ Direct	He said to his servant	"Do as I tell you"
{ Indirect	He ordered his servant	to do as he told him
{ Direct	He said to his friend,	"Wait here till I return"
{ Indirect	He begged his friend	to wait there till he returned

438 Exclamatory Sentences — When the reported speech consists of an Exclamatory or Optative sentence (§ 2), the reporting verb "say" or "tell" must be changed to some such verb as "exclaim," "cry out," "pray," etc, and the student must select the verb best suited to the sense or context

	<i>Reporting Verb</i>	<i>Reported Exclamation</i>
{ Direct	He said,	"Hurrah! my friend is come"
{ Indirect	He exclaimed with de light,	that his friend had come
{ Direct	He said to them all,	"Good bye, my friends!"
{ Indirect	He bade good bye	to all his friends
{ Direct	He said,	"May God pardon this sinner!"
{ Indirect	He prayed that God	would pardon that sinner
{ Direct	He said,	"Alas! how foolish I have been!"
{ Indirect	He confessed with regret	that he had been very foolish

I. In the following examples an assertion, a question, and an imperative are mixed up in the same speech —

1 Direct.—And he said, “I *will* arise and go to my father, and will say unto him Father, I *have sinned* against heaven and before thee, and *am* no more worthy to be called thy son *make* me as one of thy hired servants.”—*New Testament*

Indirect.—And he said that he *would arise* and go to his father, and *would confess* that he *had sinned* against heaven and against him, and *was* no more worthy to be called his son, and that he *would entreat* his father to *make* him one of his hired servants.

2 Direct.—“What is this strange outcry?” said Socrates, “I *sent* the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in this way, for I *have heard* that a man should die in peace. *Be quiet* then and *have patience*.”

Indirect.—Socrates *inquired* of them what that strange outcry *was*. He *reminded* them that he *had sent* the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in that way, for he *had heard* that a man should die in peace. He *begged* them therefore to *be quiet* and *have patience*.

3 Direct.—The teacher became angry with the student and *said*, “Why *have* you again *disturbed* the class in this way? I *have told* you before, that when I *am speaking*, you should be silent. *Leave* the room, and *do not return* again to-day.”

Indirect.—The teacher became angry with the student and *inquired* of him why he *had again disturbed* the class in that way. He *reminded* him that he *had told* him before that he (the student) should be silent when he (the master) *was speaking*. He *ordered* him therefore to *leave* the room, and *forbade* him to *return* again that day.

II Change the following from Direct to Indirect —

1 And Reuben said unto them, “Shed no blood, cast Joseph into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him.”—*Old Testament*

2 And Judah said unto his brethren, “What profit is it, if we slay our brother and conceal his blood? Come, let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let not our hand be upon him, for he is our brother and our flesh.”—*Old Testament*

3 Joseph said to James, “I can tell you what strikes me as the most useful machine in the world.” James replied, “Can you, Joseph? I should like to hear of it. What is it used for?”

4 “What do you mean?” asked the man, “how can a rope be used for binding flour?” “A rope may be used for anything,” replied the man, “when I do not wish to lend it.”

5 Once the rich man said to his poorer brother, “Why do you not enter the service of the king, so that you may relieve yourself from the baseness of labour?”

6 Finding no remedy, he said to himself, “It is better to die than to live in such misery as I am compelled to suffer from a master who treats me and always has treated me so unkindly.”

7 All her maidens watching said, “She must weep, or she will die.”—*Tennyson*

8. And they said one to another, "We are verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the distress of his soul, when he besought us, and we would not hear : therefore is this distress come upon us."—*Old Testament*.

9. The violent man said, "What violence have I done? What anger have I been guilty of?" Then the others laughed and said to him, "Why should we speak? You have given us ocular proof of your violent temper."

10. And Nathan said unto David, "Thou art the man."

11. The robber said to Alexander, "I am thy captive. I must hear what thou art pleased to say, and endure what thou art pleased to inflict. But my soul is unconquered, and if I reply at all to thy reproaches, I will reply to thee like a free man."

12. "You are old, Father William," the young man cried,

"The locks that are left you are grey ;

You are hale, Father William, a hale old man ,

Now tell me the reason, I pray."

13. "I am sorry indeed," replied the king, "that my vessel is already chosen, and I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who served my father."—*Du Rens*.

14. He cried to them in agony, "Row back at any risk. I cannot bear to leave her behind to be drowned."—*Dickens*.

15. He made a promise to the king's surgeon, saying—"Bleed the king to death with this lancet, and I will give you a thousand pieces of gold, and when I ascend the throne, you shall be my chief minister."

III. Change the following from Indirect to Direct —

1. Damon, before his execution, requested but one favour from Dionysius, which was that he might be permitted to visit his wife and children, who were at that time a considerable distance from him, promising faithfully to return on the day appointed.

2. Thus Dionysius refused to grant, unless some person could be found who would consent to suffer death in his stead, if he did not perform his promise.

3. In a short speech Pythias told the surrounding multitude that his dear friend, Damon, would soon arrive, but he hoped not before his own death had saved a life so dear as Damon's was to his family, his friends, and his country.

4. He sent his compliments to Francis, Clavering, and Monson, and charged them to protect Raja Guru Das, who was about to become the head of the Brahmans of Bengal.

5. The governor of the town then called out with a loud voice, and ordered Androcles to explain to them how a savage and hungry lion could thus in a moment have forgotten its innate disposition, and be converted all of a sudden into a harmless animal.

6. Androcles then explained to them that that very lion, which was standing before them, had been his friend and partner in the woods, and had for that reason spared his life, as they now saw.

7. Socrates then suggested to Glaucon that the entire abolition of the guards which he (Glaucon) recommended could not remedy the evils which he desired to remove, and he inquired of Glaucon whether

he knew by personal examination that the guards did their work as badly as he imagined

8. When he reached home, his father asked him where his ship was and what had become of his merchandise. The son in reply told him what had happened,—how he had given up his vessel with its cargo, and had taken in exchange the slaves and set them free, and how he had consented to take this girl back with him and make her his wife.

9. When they asked Thales what thing in the world was more universal than anything else, he replied that Hope was the most universal thing, because Hope remained with those who had nothing else left.

10. When Solon and Periander were sitting together over their cups, Periander, finding that Solon was more silent than usual, asked him whether he was silent for want of words or because he was a fool. Solon told him in reply that no fool could be silent over his cups.

CHAPTER XXII—THE TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

To transform a sentence is to change it from one grammatical form to another without altering its sense. Of this process one important example has been given in the previous chapter, viz. the conversion of sentences from the Direct to the Indirect narration and *vice versa*.

Other examples of the conversion or transformation of sentences are given in the following sections —

(1) *Sentences containing the adverb "too"* These may be rewritten in the following or other forms —

- { He is too honest to accept a bribe.
- { He is so honest that he will not accept a bribe.

Rewrite the following sentences so as to remove the adverb "too" without altering or weakening the sense.

- 1 This news is too good to be true.
- 2 That sight was too dreadful to be seen.
- 3 Drinking water cannot be too pure.
- 4 Be not too eager for praise.
- 5 A man may be too lucky, if it leads to his becoming proud or selfish.
- 6 He was too much given to idleness.
- 7 A man who has received a kindness cannot be too grateful for it.
- 8 He was too much distressed to be able to speak.
- 9 The sun is too hot for us to go out at present.

10 You are *too* ignorant of the subject to understand what you are saying

11 His will is *too* strong to bend, and *too* proud to learn

12 *Too* many cooks spoil the broth

13 He reached the station *too* late to catch the train

14 This sad news is *too* true

15 It is never *too* late to mend

16 This fact is *too* evident to require proof

(2) *Modes of expressing a condition* These may be summed up as follows, but they are not all equally suitable for the same context —

(a) By the conjunction “if” or “unless” —

I would do this, *if* you allowed me

I will do this, *if* you allow me

I will not do this, *unless* you allow me

(b) By a conjunctional phrase —

In case you give me leave, I will start at once

But that he is (=if he were not) in debt, he would leave this country

(c) By an absolute participle used as a conjunction —

Supposing you are taken ill, the doctor lives close by

Provided or *provided that* you consent, I will pay my schooling fee next week

(d) By an Imperative sentence coupled with an Assertive one —

Take care of the pence, *and* the pounds *will take* care of themselves

(e) By the conjunction “if” understood —

Had he (=if he had) met me, he would have known me

Should he meet me, he would know me

Should you be feeling ill, you can leave off work

(f) By the preposition “but” followed by a phrase as object —

But for your help (except through your help—if it had not been otherwise through your help), I should have been ruined

(g) By an Interrogative sentence, followed by an Imperative one —

Have you paid your fare? then come in (Come in, if you have paid your fare)

(h) By the phrase “one more” —

One more such loss, and we are ruined (If we suffer one more such loss, we are ruined)

(i) By the phrase “were to,” etc, preceded by “if” —

If he *were to* see me, he would know me at once.

Rewrite the following sentences in the manner indicated below —

1. Are you not tired of doing nothing? then begin at once to teach your younger brothers *Change to (a)*

2. One more word, and I will send you out of the room *Change to (a)*

3. Supposing the house catches fire, we have plenty of water for extinguishing the flames *Change to (b), (i), and (e)*

4. If the rain does not fall in a day or two, the young crops will be burnt up *Change to (b) and (i)*

5. Had you been more careful such a calamity would not have befallen us *Change to (a) and (i)*

6. But for your interference, everything would have gone smoothly on *Change to (a) and (i)*

7. If I were to pay you what you deserve, you would get nothing *Change to (a)*

8. If you persevere, you will succeed in the end *Change to (d)*

9. You may have the loan of this book so that you return it within a week *Change to (a) and (i)*

10. If you are in debt to any one, you cannot be appointed to this post *Change to (y) and (i)*

11. Provided we are all agreed, the resolution can at once be passed *Change to (a) and (y)*

12. If he had not promised to sell that house, he would not now part with it *Change to (i)*

13. If such a misfortune befalls us again, we must go to the insolvent court *Change to (b), (i) and (h)*

14. But that he was ill, he would certainly have come out first *Change to (a) and (i)*

(3) *Modes of expressing a concessional or contrasting clause*

These can be summed up as follows —

(a) By the conjunction “though”

He is honest, *though* or *although* he is poor

(b) By the conjunction “&” —

Poor *as* he is, he is honest

Note —Remember that when “as” is used in a concessional sense, it must be preceded by some adjective, participle, or adverb

(c) By the Relative adverb “however” followed by some adjective or adverb —

However rich he may be, he is never contented

However often he may try, he will never succeed

(d) By the phrases “at the same time,” “all the same” —

There is some force in what you say, *at the same time* we adhere to our own opinions, or we adhere to our own opinions *all the same* (Although there is some force, etc., yet we adhere, etc.)

(e) By an absolute participle followed by a Noun-clause —

Admitting that he is not naturally clever, he might yet have been more industrious.

(f) By the phrase "for all that" followed by a Noun-clause —

He will not trust you *for all that* you may say in your defence (in spite of all you may say, etc = though you may say many things in your defence)

(g) By the preposition "notwithstanding" followed by a Noun-clause —

He is still asleep, notwithstanding that (=although) he has already slept for ten hours

(h) By the conjunction "if" followed by a verb in the Indicative mood —

If the English paid ship money (=although it is true that they paid ship money), they did it under protest

(i) By the adverb "indeed" followed by the conjunction "but" —

He recovered *indeed*, but his health has never been so good since (Although he recovered, yet his health, etc.)

(j) By the phrases "nevertheless" or "none the less" —

I do not blame myself for this result, but I am *none the less* disappointed (Though I do not blame, etc., I am none the less disappointed)

Rewrite the following sentences in the manner indicated below —

1 He was poor indeed, but he was always honest *Change to (a), (b), and (c)*

2 Though he never failed in anything, he was always modest and retiring *Change to (d) and (q)*

3 Though it is true we have lost all our money, it has not been through our own fault *Change to (h) and (i)*

4 Though his lineage may be high, his tastes are low and vulgar *Change to (c), (d), and (j)*

5 Notwithstanding that it rained all yesterday, the air is still hot and disagreeable *Change to (a), (i), and (j)*

6 The weather, though cool, is not healthy for this time of the year *Change to (b) and (i)*

7 He was a strict man, but he was just *all the same* *Change to (a), (q), and (i)*

8 Supposing I grant that he was in his right mind, that was no excuse for his conduct *Change to (c) and (i)*

9 Although he was deserted by his friends, he was pardoned by his enemies *Change to (g) and (h)*

10 However guilty he is, he is still an object of compassion *Change to (a), (b), and (g)*

(4) Interchange of Degrees of Comparison

(a) { *Posit* He is *as* dull *as* an ass.
 Comp An ass is *not* duller *than* he is

- (b) { *Comp* The air of hills is cooler than that of lowlands
 Post The air of lowlands is not so cool as that of hills
 Superl Bombay is the best seaport in India.
- (c) { *Comp* Bombay is better than any other seaport in India.
 Post No other seaport in India is so good as Bombay
 Superl Clive was one of the greatest of Indian viceroys.
- (d) { *Comp* Clive was greater than most other Indian viceroys
 Post Very few Indian viceroys were so great as Clive
 Post Some grains are at least as nutritious as rice
- (e) { *Comp* { Rice is not more nutritious than some other
 grains are
 Some grains are not less nutritious than rice
 Superl Rice is not the most nutritious of all grains

Transform the following sentences in all possible ways according to the above models —

- 1 The younger brother is cleverer than the elder
- 2 A sharp ride on a spirited horse is the best kind of exercise
- 3 Gold is one of the heaviest of metals
- 4 Bad health is a more trouble enemy than poverty
- 5 This man has more debts than cash
- 6 Some countries are at least as hot as India
- 7 Very few countries are as hot as India
- 8 Platinum is as heavy as gold
- 9 Thou art much older in mind than in age
- 10 It is easier to imagine this scene than to describe it
- 11 A live ass is stronger than a dead lion
- 12 A zebra is at least as swift footed as an antelope
- 13 He repented of his fault more seriously than he seemed to do
- 14 He treats the poor with the same degree of justice as the rich
- 15 He sprung upon his enemy as fiercely and as fast as a tiger could do
- 16 I would as soon die as injure a friend
- 17 He is in no respect superior to you
- 18 You know his character quite as well as I do
- 19 He knows no more than a child how to keep his temper
- 20 A voyage at sea is one of the healthiest things in the world

(5) *Interchange of Active and Passive Voices*

- (a) { *Act* Your behaviour has greatly astonished me
 Pass I have been much astonished at your behaviour
 Pass The judge suspected that the witness had been
 bribed
- (b) { *Act* The judge suspected that some one had bribed the
 witness

- (c) { *Act* It is now time to call over the names
 Pass It is now time for the names to be called over
- (d) { *Act* Many persons went to see the launching of the ship
 Pass Many persons went to see the ship launched.

I Transform the verbs in the following sentences from *Active* to *Passive* —

- 1 The wise will not rely on medicine for keeping their health
 - 2 I felt the wasp stinging me on the arm
 - 3 The workmen feared that their master would not forgive them
- the fine
- 4 It is now necessary to consult the doctor
 - 5 I dislike the noise of drum beating
 - 6 That book has interested me greatly
 - 7 Your want of improvement has much disappointed me
 - 8 I found the boys laughing at me
 - 9 Hew down the bridge, Sir Consul, with all the speed ye may
 - 10 Many went to see the hanging of the murderer
 - 11 Wild flowers have grown all over the field
 - 12 The cry of distress greatly alarmed them
 - 13 Tell him to leave the room at once
 - 14 The house is rapidly building
 - 15 They said that he had left his home for ever
 - 16 Your admonitions have warned me

II Transform the verbs in the following sentences from *Passive* to *Active* —

- 1 This is too good to be expected
- 2 What cannot be cured, must be endured
- 3 In India the jackal's howl is often heard at night
- 4 The road to hell is paved with good intentions
- 5 Nothing is difficult to a man who is fired by ambition
- 6 This is a suitable time for the new book to be introduced
- 7 Let great care be taken, boy, to have everything ready
- 8 I have been much distressed at your failure
- 9 No time will be lost, my son, in having the results announced
- 10 His fine voice will never be heard again in this hall
- 11 Every one was charmed with his fine singing
- 12 I am sorry to find that you were not promoted this year
- 13 The idle candidates were all plucked
- 14 He begged the teacher that he might be forgiven

(6) *Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences*

- (a) { *Exclam* O what a fall was there my countrymen !—
 Shakspeare
 Assert That was a terrible fall, my countrymen
- (b) { *Exclam* O that the desert were my dwelling-place.—
 Byron
 Assert I wish that the desert were my dwelling-place.

- (c) { *Exclam.* How lovely were thy tents, O Israel !—*Heber.*
Assert. Thy tents, O Israel, were very lovely
- (d) { *Exclam.* If I could only gain the first prize !
Assert. I earnestly desire to gain the first prize.

I. Transform the following sentences from Exclamatory to Assertive —

- 1 If only I could see him to reproach him for his ingratitude !
- 2 If you deny me my rights, he upon your law !
- 3 Woe is me, that I am compelled to have my habitation among the tents of Keber !
- 4 Would that I had not wasted my time, when I was young !
- 5 O what misery awaits a wasted youth !
- 6 O for the might that laid the traitor low !
- 7 How sad was the sight of the deserted city !
- 8 What a very lame excuse !
- 9 A fireman, and afraid of sparks !
- 10 How are the mighty fallen !
- 11 Too late ! too late ! ye cannot enter now !
- 12 Woe to him that giveth his neighbour drink, that putteth the bottle unto him, and maketh him drunken also !
- 13 A horse ! a horse ! my kingdom for a horse !
- 14 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God !
- 15 How unsearchable are His judgments, and His ways past finding out !
- 16 Foolish fellow ! to think that he should have so neglected his duty !
- 17 Well done !
- 18 It must needs be that offences come, but woe to that man by whom they come !
- 19 Death before dishonour !

II Transform the following sentences from Assertive to Exclamatory —

- 1 I wish I had never left my home
- 2 We had a very merry time of it last night
- 3 A vast number of pilgrims go to the Hardwar fair
- 4 All the uses of this world have become weary, stale, flat, and unprofitable
- 5 I wish I had the wings of a dove, that I might flee away and be at rest
- 6 The mighty have fallen low
- 7 The mind of man is one of the greatest marvels in nature
- 8 A little knowledge is indeed a dangerous thing
- 9 The beauties of nature are infinitely various
- 10 A little spark may kindle a great fire
- 11 I should very much like to see my native land again
- 12 It was an evil day when I first met that man

13. I cry shame upon your laws, if you refuse me justice
 14. That man is utterly foolish and improvident

(7) *Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive Sentences*

A question is sometimes put, not for the sake of getting information, but to suggest the answer that the speaker or writer desires to be given to it

In such interrogatives, when the question is affirmative (see example 1), a negative answer is implied, and when the question is negative (see example 2), an affirmative answer is implied (see § 406, *Note*) —

- (a) { *Inter* Can the Ethiopian change his skin?
 { *Assert* The Ethiopian cannot change his skin
 (b) { *Inter* Who would not flee from a state of bondage?
 { *Assert* Every one would flee from a state of bondage

I Transform the following sentences from Interrogative to Assertive —

1 Hath not a Jew eyes? Hath not a Jew hands, organs, dimensions, senses, affections, passions? Fed with the same food, hurt with the same weapons, subject to the same diseases, healed by the same means, warmed and cooled by the same summer and winter, as a Christian is? If you prick us, do we not bleed? If you tickle us, do we not laugh? If you poison us, do we not die? And if you wrong us, shall we not take revenge?—*Shakespeare*

2 Who is here so base that would be a bondman? Who is here so rude that will not love his country?—*Shakespeare*

3 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?—*New Testament*

II Transform the following sentences from Assertive to Interrogative —

- 1 You cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear
- 2 No one can bear an unprovoked insult
- 3 To a lovely lady bright, I can wish nothing better than a faithful protector
- 4 Fair words and promises are of no avail in the time of danger
- 5 O Solitude, I do not perceive the charms that sages have seen in thy face
- 6 No one ever saw a brighter daybreak than this
- 7 It will profit a man nothing, if he gain the whole world and lose his own soul
- 8 This is a strange sort of freedom, that is enforced with whips and fetters
- 9 I do not see any reason why I should make another man's quarrel my own
- 10 The beauties of nature are beyond description

(8) *Interchange of Negative and Affirmative Sentences*

- (a) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Negat} \text{ None but the brave deserves the fair} \\ \text{Affirm} \text{ The brave alone deserve the fair} \end{array} \right.$
- (b) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Negat} \text{ His services cannot be forgotten} \\ \text{Affirm} \text{ His services have been too great to be forgotten} \end{array} \right.$
- (c) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Negat} \text{ A wise man will not overstep the bounds of duty} \\ \text{Affirm} \text{ A wise man will abstain from overstepping the bounds of duty} \end{array} \right.$
- (d) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Negat} \text{ No sooner did he see the tiger than he fled} \\ \text{Affirm} \text{ As soon as he saw the tiger he fled} \end{array} \right.$

I *Rewrite each of the following sentences without a Negative* —

- 1 You are not taller than he is
- 2 No one but a coward would flee from his duty
- 3 As long as the fair continued, not a man lost his temper
- 4 We had not gone far, when the horse began to show signs of fatigue
- 5 Learned men are not always judicious
- 6 This was too great an honour not to excite the envy of his rivals
- 7 He was not blind to the faults of his own children
- 8 A tent does not take long to be moved to another place
- 9 Great men are of no one nation, nor of one particular class
- 10 He cannot but give me the thanks that I deserved
- 11 No one will deny that your son has done his best
- 12 His office is no sinecure
- 13 He will not grudge you the wages you have earned
- 14 His deserts cannot be overlooked
- 15 Nowhere does France come so near to England as at the Straits of Dover
- 16 Never again will I revisit the shores of France
- 17 He left no plan untried
- 18 The romances of Sir Walter Scott are not likely to be ever forgotten
- 19 His temper did not improve with age

II *Transform the following sentences from Affirmative to Negative* —

- 1 It always pours when it rains
- 2 He had a good reason for saying what he did
- 3 As soon as the master entered the room, every one was silent
- 4 There is always some lightning when it thunders
- 5 We must have more money if we are to finish this work
- 6 Your son is a boy of marked intelligence
- 7 Such a disaster as this is beyond all precedent
- 8 At this season of the year we always expect fine weather
- 9 We all expect him to succeed in the long run
- 10 This book was meant for men of quick understanding

11 The demolition of the bridge is the only thing that can save the town.

12 Whenever I see that ship I am astonished at its bulk

13 We expected something back in return for all the sacrifices we had made

14 You are quite as foolish as he is

(9) *The Substitution of one Part of Speech for Another*

A sentence may be transformed in such a way that one of its leading words is changed from one Part of Speech to another

Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives, and Adverbs are thus hable to be interchanged —

Verb Lead and tin *differ* very greatly in weight

Noun Between lead and tin there is much *difference* in weight

Adject. The weight of lead is very *different* from that of tin

Adverb Lead and tin are very *differently* constituted in point of weight

I Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Verb form for the words *Italicised* —

1 He promised his *assistance* to the project

2 The *condemnation* of Socrates was a crime on the part of the Athenians

3 I have an *engagement* to day at four o'clock

4 He talked to us very *amusingly*

5 St. Paul was by *birth* a citizen of Rome

6 *Reliance* on such a traitor as that would be foolish

7 I am glad that my intention to become a soldier has received your *assent*

8 The play gave us much *pleasure*

9 If you desire *admission* to my service you must put your *signature* to this bond

10 You have not acted according to *instructions*

11 He *successfully* strove to win the first prize

12 Whatever he gave, he gave *ungrudgingly*

13 He did it *unknowingly*

14 The plan is *apparently* a good one

15 He was *presumptuous* enough to expect the first place

16 It is against my *inclination* to do anything dishonest

17 I acted thus in the *belief* that I was doing right

18 He *forcibly* made his way through the crowd

19 The rain will give fresh *fertility* to the soil

II. Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the Noun form for the words *Italicised*.—

1 *Hoping* that you may still amend your conduct, I will allow you 20 rupees a month, as before.

- 2 What does he *mean* by such impertinence ?
- 3 He was so *impertinent* as to *defy* his master
- 4 A spider is wonderfully *sagacious*
- 5 Among barbarous tribes, bodily strength is *necessarily* required of the chief or king
- 6 I left my house at six o'clock because he *desired* it
- 7 A wise man is the best *qualified* to *exercise* power
- 8 I *brave* that the accused is entirely *innocent*
- 9 He did not reflect whether it was *possible* or not to outwit his enemies
- 10 His mind was so *active* that he *succeeded* in everything
- 11 I am sorry that he behaved so *rudely* to you
- 12 He was *sensible* enough to mind his own business
- 13 Her dress is so *simple* that it adds to her beauty
- 14 They *easily* gained the day
- 15 The journey was not very *expensive*
- 16 Whatever he may have *intended*, he has *disappointed* us
- 17 He is at times inclined to act *dishonestly*
- 18 The way to *live* long is to *keep* regular habits

III Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the *Adjective* form for the words italicized -

- 1 He was *absolutely* ruined by that unlucky business
- 2 He has more *influence* with the minister than with the king
- 3 Theft in former times was a crime to be *punished* with death
- 4 He is an *unusually* good speaker
- 5 He *presumes* to think that his opinion has more weight than mine
- 6 There is much *plausibility* in his way of talking, but it is full of *deception*
- 7 He is a man of remarkable *industry*
- 8 A man inclined to *vice* will never *prosper*
- 9 He was so given to *suspicion*, that he looked upon every man as his secret enemy
- 10 To eat and drink *temperately* is the way to preserve health
- 11 He had not the *politeness* to stand aside
- 12 Every one was pleased with his *fearlessness* and *independence*
- 13 Whatever he said, he said *deliberately*

IV Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the *Adverb* form for the words italicized --

- 1 It was not his *intention* to do you that injury
- 2 It is *probable* that rain will fall to-morrow
- 3 He answered his accusers with as much *ingratitude* as *earnestness*
- 4 He had a *very narrow* escape of being caught
- 5 I sign this bond with great *reluctance*
- 6 He is *careless* in everything that he does
- 7 His eloquence that morning was *unusual*
- 8 It was a *fortunate* thing that no lives were lost in that shipwreck.
- 9 It is quite *evident* that you have been misinformed
- 10 You could do that with *ease*, if you tried
- 11 There is no *meaning* in what he says.

12. The doctor made a very *careful* and *patient* study of the invalid's case
13. He led a *temperate* and *regular* life
14. He pretends that he drinks brandy as a *medicine*
15. His behaviour was very *insolent*, and they say that he behaved so on *purpose*
16. He was very *generous* in his treatment of the prisoners
17. He was ordered to leave the room in an *instant*

(10) *Conversion of Simple Sentences to Compound Ones*

Simple Sentences can be converted into Compound ones, by expanding words or phrases into Co-ordinate clauses

The following examples will serve to indicate the process —

(a) *Cumulative Conjunctions*

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Simple</i> | Besides making a promise, he kept it |
| <i>Compound</i> | He not only made a promise, but he also kept it |

(b) *Alternative Conjunctions*

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Simple</i> | He must confess his fault to escape being fined |
| <i>Compound</i> | He must confess his fault, or he will be fined |

(c) *Adversative Conjunctions*

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Simple</i> | Notwithstanding his sorrow, he is hopeful |
| <i>Compound</i> | He is sorrowful, but yet hopeful |

(d) *Illative Conjunctions*

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Simple</i> | Owing to bad health, he could not work |
| <i>Compound</i> | He was in bad health, and so he could not work |

I Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Cumulative Conjunction for combining the clauses —

1. Seeing a bear coming, he fled
2. Besides myself, every one else declares him to be guilty
3. Before retiring, he must first serve twenty five years
4. After making a great effort, he at last gained his end
5. In addition to advising them, he helped them liberally
6. The agreement having been signed, all were satisfied
7. Drawing his sword, he rushed at the enemy
8. The judge believes with me in his innocence.
9. The sun having risen, the fog dispersed

II Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Alternative Conjunction for combining the clauses —

1. He will be dismissed in the event of his doing such a thing again
2. You must take rest, on pain of losing your health
3. He fled away, to escape being killed.
4. He escaped punishment by confessing his fault

- 5 Approach a step nearer at peril of your life
- 6 You must walk two hours a day to preserve your health

III *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Adversative Conjunction for combining the clauses —*

- 1 For all his riches, he is not contented
- 2 Notwithstanding all his efforts, he failed to gain his end
- 3 In spite of the opposition of all men, he never swerved
- 4 In spite of our search, we could not find the book
- 5 He had every qualification for success, except quickness of understanding and decision of character
- 6 He hated every one but himself
- 7 He persevered, in spite of all men being against him
- 8 He stuck to his point against every one
- 9 Notwithstanding his recent failure, he is still hopeful

IV *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Compound one, using some Illative Conjunction for combining the clauses —*

- 1 He was honoured in virtue of his wealth
- 2 He worked night and day out of ambition to excel
- 3 He was taken ill through grief at the loss of his son
- 4 By means of his great wealth, he was able to build himself a fine house
- 5 He spoke the truth from fear of the disgrace of falsehood
- 6 The letter, having been addressed to the wrong house, never reached me
- 7 To our great disappointment, we failed to carry out our purpose
- 8 To add to his difficulties, he lost his health
- 9 The fog being very dense we were forced to halt
- 10 St Paul continued preaching at Rome, no man forbidding him
- 11 To make matters worse, the bank broke
- 12 To our utter surprise, he had entirely deceived us
- 13 The bank having broke, the creditors were ruined
- 14 Having taken no trouble about his work, he was plucked
- 15 Owing to ill health, he was unable to work
- 16 He and I having come to terms, the business will now prosper
- 17 The real culprit having confessed, the accused was acquitted

(11) *Conversion of Compound Sentences to Simple*

(a) By substituting a Participle for a Finite verb

Compound The sun rose and the fog dispersed

Simple The sun having risen, the fog dispersed

(b) By substituting a Preposition, etc, for a clause

Compound He not only made a promise, but kept it

Simple Besides making a promise, he kept it.

(c) By substituting a Gerundial Infinitive for a clause

Compound He must confess his fault or he will be fined.

Simple He must confess his fault to escape being fined.

Reduce each sentence from Compound to Simple

1. An ass accidentally found a lion's skin, and put it on to frighten the other beasts

2 He was very tired with walking, and so he sat down to take a little rest.

3 Turn to the left and you will find the house of your friend

4. Not only the tank, but even a part of the river was frozen over with ice

5 The judge, as well as the jury, believed the prisoner to be guilty

6 You must work hard the whole term and then you will get promotion

7 He was the son of poor parents, and therefore he had to encounter many trials and difficulties at the outset of his career

8. He was a poor man, and yet he was of an independent spirit at all times.

9 I advised him to make the best use of his time, but he paid no heed

10 He was much frightened, but not much hurt

11 Every effort was made to check the spread of cholera, yet a large number of persons died

12 He was well fitted for that post by character and attainments, only he was rather too young and inexperienced

13 He did his best to be punctual, but still he was occasionally behind time

14. He is well versed in books, but wanting in common sense

15 You must work hard, or you will not get promotion

16 Give us some clear proofs of your asceticism, otherwise no one will believe you

17 A certain fowler fixed his net on the ground, and scattered a great many grains of rice about it

18 The pigeons flew down to pick up the rice grains, for they were all hungry

19 The old man frequently begged his sons to live together in peace, but he was disregarded

20 They bound themselves to live together in brotherly love, and then no one could harm them

21 An English sailor had been shut up for several years, but he was set free at the peace

22 Not only was the sailor set free, but he was provided with some money for his journey home

23 There are many serious defects in his character, only he is honest

24 His act was not really noble, for it was done from a low motive

25 He was out of health, and therefore he could not go to school

26 The bulls quarrelled among themselves, and so the lion soon devoured them.

27 The wheel was lifted out, and the cart was soon again moving along the road

28 The sun shone out, and the bats all flew away into their hiding places.

29 He had no money, and so he was obliged to give one kind of goods in exchange for another

30 A quarrel arose amongst them, and each man went away to his own house

31 Every one should make the best use of his younger days, or he will repent it in his old age

32 Not only energy, but patience is necessary to success in life

33 He was an impatient, impulsive man, and therefore he failed in all his undertakings

34 I have suffered heavy losses since our last meeting, and so I cannot now pay for a seat in the coach

35 The vessel sank, and her captain perished

36 The parrot frequently heard the words of command used by the officers, and in this way it became expert in repeating them

37 The slave was thrown several times into the water, after which they pulled him up into the ship by the hair

38 Their real character was now exposed to view, and every one laughed at them

39 His mother tried to correct him, but he continued none the less to be lazy

40 He prayed the officers to allow him to retire for one moment, and his request was freely granted

41 His health failed during the examination, and every one was very sorry

42 The sting by the scorpion gave him a great deal of pain, but he showed no signs of suffering

43 The mice found their numbers getting thinner every day, so they held a meeting to consider some means of escape

44 The speaker resumed his seat, and a murmur of applause rose from the assembly

45 The rose is called the queen of flowers, for it stands first in brightness of colour

46 Sweetness of scent as well as brightness of colour makes the rose the queen of flowers

47 The rose tree is a most delightful bush only it is covered with thorns

(12) *Conversion of Simple Sentences to Complex*

Simple sentences can be converted to complex ones, by expanding words or phrases into subordinate clauses

The following examples will serve to indicate the process —

(a) *Noun-Clause*

Simple I am certain of giving you satisfaction

Complex I am certain that I shall give you satisfaction.

(b) *Adjective-Clause*

Simple He paid off his father's debts

Complex He paid off the debts which his father had contracted.

(c) *Adverb-Clause*

Simple	{ On reaching manhood you will have to work for your living
Complex	{ As soon as you have reached manhood, you will have to work for your living

I *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing a Noun-clause or clauses* —

- 1 I was glad to hear of your having succeeded so well
- 2 He is generally believed to have died of poison
- 3 No one can tell the time of his coming
- 4 One man's meat is another man's poison
- 5 We have read of savages being able to produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood
- 6 He shouted to his neighbours to come to his help
- 7 We can place no confidence in any of his words
- 8 The fact of his having gone away without leaving us his address is a clear proof of the dishonesty of his intentions
- 9 The usefulness of even the simplest weapons to men in the savage state will easily be understood
- 10 His death at so young an age is much to be regretted
- 11 We must hope for better times
- 12 Tell me the time and place of your birth
- 13 The verdict of the judge was in favour of the accused
- 14 All his statements should be accepted
- 15 They questioned the propriety of doing that
- 16 The greatness of his labour could be seen from the result
- 17 My departure will depend upon my getting leave
- 18 He desired to know the nature of his offence
- 19 The burial place of Moses was never known to the Jews
- 20 They explained to him the duty of confessing his fault
- 21 He was reported to have lost most of his money
- 22 We know the name of the writer of that letter

II *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing an Adjective-clause* —

- 1 Joseph remained a long time in prison, utterly forgotten
- 2 Our present house suits us exactly
- 3 This rule, the source of all our troubles, is disliked by every one.
- 4 After a storm the weather is generally calm
- 5 That was a fault not to be forgiven
- 6 The diamond field is not far from here
- 7 He and his friend entered into a partnership binding themselves to incur equal risks
- 8 Their explanation cannot be true
- 9 The king took refuge in the fortress, being determined to make a last attempt in that place to save his kingdom
- 10 He was a man of irreproachable conduct.
- 11 He was not a man to tell a lie

- 12 The snow line in India is about 20,000 feet high
- 13 The troubles besetting him on all sides did not daunt him.
- 14 They soon forgot their past labours
- 15 This spot, the first landing place of the Pilgrim Fathers, is held to be sacred ground
- 16 His offence was unpardonable
- 17 My leave application has been despatched
- 18 Is this the way to learn your lessons?
- 19 A certain cholera-cure has not yet been found
- 20 Egypt was the first country to become civilised
- 21 Death from snake bite is of daily occurrence
- 22 The benefits of his early training were thrown away
- 23 Disease, the sure accompaniment of famine, soon broke out with virulence
- 24 That was the act of a coward
- 25 Milton was the greatest poet in King Charles' reign
- 26 These hills have never yet been trodden by the foot of man

III *Expand each Simple Sentence into a Complex one containing an Adverb-clause or clauses —*

Cause

- 1 In the absence of any other helper, we must accept his aid
- 2 The two chief points having been gained, success is now certain.
- 3 They were much surprised to hear him confess his fault.
- 4 Owing to repeated failures, he made no further attempt
- 5 He resigned his post on the ground of unfair treatment
- 6 Being all well armed, they were quite ready to fight
- 7 He was ashamed at being unable to give an answer

Effect

- 1 The problem was too difficult to be solved
- 2 He worked very well, to the astonishment of every one
- 3 The hare could not be caught on account of its swiftness of foot.
- 4 He fell under suspicion by becoming suddenly rich
- 5 By reason of his cleverness he could not be defeated in argument.
- 6 He was too fond of amusement to become a prosperous man

Purpose

- 1 He worked hard for the purpose of gaining a prize
- 2 He labours day and night with a view to becoming rich
- 3 Every precaution was taken against the failure of the plan
- 4 They proceeded very cautiously for fear of being caught
- 5 He started by night to escape being seen by any one
- 6 He purposes to become rich by sticking steadily to his work.

Condition

- 1 Without leave from the master, we should not go out.
- 2 He would be very thankful to be relieved of all this trouble
- 3 Going straight ahead for a mile, and then turning to the right, you will find the house
- 4 I should be very glad to be able to help him in any way

5. With or without his leave, I shall leave the room
- 6 In the event of his refusal to sign the bond, what will happen ?
- 7 He would have been caught but for his flight across the border
- 8 On condition of your signing this receipt, I will pay you the money
- 9 In the absence of the master, the whole house would have been burned to the ground

Concession or Contrast

- 1 Notwithstanding the heat of the sun we must go out
- 2 In spite of all his riches, he is never contented
- 3 In defiance of the order to finish the work, he went away leaving half of it undone
- 4 For all his experience he is still incompetent

Comparison or Proportion

- 1 The depth of the sea equals the height of the mountains
- 2 The air becomes cooler in proportion to the height of the ground
- 3 With every man who came in another went out
- 4 His cleverness is not inferior to that of any other boy in the class
- 5 Of all the boys in the class James is the most industrious
- 6 Men's wants become greater in proportion to the increase in their possessions
- 7 He is strong for a child of eight

Extent, Manner, Price

- 1 Keep perfectly silent at peril of your lives
- 2 He acted precisely according to instructions
- 3 Be it done unto thee according to thy belief
- 4 My treatment of you shall be similar to your treatment of me
- 5 The harvest will depend upon the sowing
- 6 Within my knowledge nothing like this has ever happened before
- 7 He always did his work to the best of his power
- 8 Nothing in my opinion will prosper under such a man

Time when

- 1 He returned to duty immediately on the expiry of his leave
- 2 He was very sorry on finding out his mistake
- 3 With every cough he felt a good deal of pain
- 4 With the first appearance of the sun, the birds began to sing
- 5 The city having been taken, the inhabitants fled
- 6 Having finished their dinner, they started off again
- 7 The case being now hopeless, we must change our plans

Time during

- 1 With the continuance of life, there is still hope
- 2 In the performance of duty, no one should feel afraid
- 3 In the absence of the cat the mice play

Time before

- 1 Previously to his appointment to the post, everything was badly managed.
- 2 Before the commencement of his illness, he was always at work
- 3 She made everything ready in expectation of his arrival

Time after

- 1 Since the receipt of this news, every one has been happy
- 2 After the issue of that order everything went straight
- 3 From the time of its falling under English rule, India has always enjoyed peace
- 4 From the close of Aurangzeb's reign, the Mogul Empire began to fall into decay
- 5 He was first taken ill three weeks since

Time up to

- 1 Till the arrival of the Saxons English was not spoken in Britain
- 2 By constant work he was utterly exhausted
- 3 Before the signing of the receipt, the money will not be paid

(13) Conversion of Complex Sentences to Simple**I Noun-clause**

(a) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by the Conjunction "that" —

Complex It is sad that he died so young

Simple His death at so young an age is sad

(b) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by a Relative adverb —

Complex Tell me when and where you were born.

Simple Tell me the time and place of your birth

(c) By substituting a noun for the Noun-clause introduced by a Relative pronoun —

Complex We need not disbelieve what he said

Simple We need not disbelieve his word

1 It is not known precisely when Buddha, the Indian reformer, was born

2 There is scarcely any doubt that Buddha lived some 500 years before Christ

3 What he spoke on that occasion was unworthy a man of his age and experience

4 How extensive the Mahommedan conquests in India were, can be best seen from the spelling of geographical names in different parts of that country

5 That the rose is the sweetest and most beautiful of flowers is admitted by almost every one

6 They are now ready to confess that the charge against my friend was groundless.

7 Even his friends admitted that what his enemies complained of was just and reasonable

8 What we have learnt already is a step towards learning what we do not at present know

9 How or where that ignorant ploughman learnt to read so well is understood by no one except himself

10 No one in this company has any doubt that he got secret help from some teacher

11 We could not make out what those lines of poetry meant

12 I am anxious to know where your father lives and what his occupation is

13 They admit that Milton was a great poet, but deny that he was a good man

14 What seemed most strange in the battle of Plassey was that the Nawab's immense army should have been defeated by so small a force, and that the victory on the English side should have been so decisive

15 You can never know what he is really aiming at or what he means by his words

16 I should like to be informed what character in English history you most admire

17 You are requested to state on oath when and where you were born and what are the names of your parents

18 I will now be bold enough to confess what my heart desires and how I shall obtain it

19 From what you have read in this book you have become acquainted with the state in which the Saxons were living, when the Normans arrived under William the Conqueror

20 You will easily understand from what you have been told how much this book has displeased me by its bad teaching

21 Whether the plan suggested will succeed or fail depends on how it will be received by those who are most interested in its progress

22 Cromwell was shrewd enough to perceive where the strength of the king's party lay, and at what point it could be most easily attacked, and how it could be best resisted

23 We know what we are, but we do not know what we shall be.

24 Whether resistance to rulers is proper or improper, and what the limits and aims of such resistance should be, depends upon whether the said rulers have exercised their authority lawfully or not

II The Adjective clause

(a) By using some adjective or participle —

Complex Such pupils as work hard may win a prize

Simple Hard-working pupils may win a prize

(b) By using a noun or pronoun in the Possessive case —

Complex They soon forgot the labours they had endured

Simple They soon forgot *their* past labours

(c) By using a noun in apposition —

Complex. This rule, from which all our troubles have come, is much disliked

Simple This rule, the source of all our troubles, is much disliked

(d) By using a Preposition with its object —

Complex The benefits that he derived from his early training were soon lost

Simple. The benefits of his early training were soon lost

(e) By using a Gerundial Infinitive —

Complex I have no money that I can spare

Simple I have no money to spare

(f) By using a Compound noun —

Complex That is the place where my father was buried.

Simple That was my father's burial-place

1 Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown

2 A stone that is rolling gathers no moss

3 The explanation he gave was not to the point

4 The opinion you have formed of me is unjust

5 He made those foolish remarks at a time when he was not on his guard.

6 The relation in which you stand to me at present may be reversed at some future time

7 The first year in which the school was opened was 1884

8 His kindness to me has been such as I cannot express, and such as I never did anything to deserve

9 Let us take a walk into the grove that adjoins my father's house

10 Most of the poems that Kildis wrote have been preserved.

11 The army that Hannibal led against Rome was the most formidable that the Romans had up to that time encountered

12 He was not fully aware of the extent of the dangers by which he was surrounded

13 The man disguised himself by putting on such a coat as is worn by foreigners, and by painting his face and dyeing his hair

14 Mary Queen of Scots was the most unfortunate of all the sovereigns of the century in which she lived

15 My friend managed to keep his seat in spite of the tricks that his horse played him

16 The English honour the name of Wellington in all those parts of the world that are included in the British empire

17 The century that followed the death of the Emperor Aurangzebe was one of the most disturbed periods of Indian history

18 The whole plan was upset by the course which affairs took after the 24th of May

19 Men should strive to imitate the high examples of virtue which their forefathers displayed in previous ages

20 We decided on building a cottage in the vale that is watered by a streamlet which flows from a perennial fountain

21 The people of Israel mourned in the land to which they had been taken captive

22 At the time when Julius Cæsar was murdered ghosts, according to the legend which was then current, were seen to walk in the streets of Rome

23 The temple of Solomon was built on the site which David had taken from the Jebusites who were its former masters

24 There was no rope whereby the boat might be tied to the river's bank

25 The evil that men do lives after them

26 This is a matter in which no proof is necessary and the signature of witnesses not required

27 The intelligence that the lower animals display in the search for food, and in the preservation of their young, is something very different from blind instinct

28 You are not the kind of man who would tell an untruth for the sake of an advantage that would be merely temporary

29 The house that stands in front of us, about half a mile distant, was built of stones which were dug out of its own site

30 This is a rule that must not be violated by any one and admits of no variation

31 King Charles, who was the second of the Stuart line, paid no regard to the promises he had made to his subjects

32 This portrait of our friend who died lately will keep us always in remembrance of what he said and did during his long and useful life

33 A series of lectures will be given this term on a subject in which we are all much interested, and in a style that we shall easily comprehend

34 The thieves have fled away into a jungle that is covered with a dense scrub and is very favourable to concealment from the eyes of those who are pursuing them

35 In his old age, after a laborious life most of which he had spent in the metropolis, he retired to the quiet village where he was born, and where he intended to spend his remaining years

36 In India, in times when the Mogul Empire was declining, the governors who were placed in charge of the outlying provinces became virtually independent, and exercised such powers as belonged by right to the Emperor who reigned at Delhi

37 I do not clearly understand the force of the excuses that you have made and of the objections that you have urged

38 Between this spot and our own house we have to finish a journey that will cover a distance of fifty miles, and last three days

39 The story that was told us by the messenger, and that seemed almost incredible, turned out to be true after all

40 This rule, from which we get so much trouble and suffer so much loss, would be cancelled by any master who was wise enough to know what our wants and difficulties really are

41 This field, in which so much coal is dug, appears to be very rich in the mineral named.

42. Wolsey founded a seat of learning at Ipswich, the town where he was born

43 The boys, whose annual examination had just been finished, went home for the holidays on the very day on which the school closed

44 A woman cannot easily find a place to which she can flee or retire from a husband who persecutes her

45 The old city that stood on the banks of the Tigris had seven gates by which men might come in, and seven others by which they could go out

46 The messenger whom we expected fled away without giving the explanation that he was required to give

47 Cromwell, who was entitled the Protector, expelled from the House of Commons all who were in any way opposed to his plans

48 A severe penalty was inflicted on every man who possessed or was caught reading that dangerous book

III *Adverb clause*

(a) By using a preposition or prepositional phrase —

Complex The boy was pleased that he had won a prize

Simple The boy was pleased *after* having won a prize

(b) By using a participle —

Complex As the main point has been gained, success is certain

Simple The main point *having* been gained, success is certain

(c) By using a Gerundial Infinitive —

Complex They were surprised, when they heard him confess

Simple They were surprised *to* hear him confess

1 He drew the plan of the building more skilfully than any one else could have done it

2 Abide by your promise, as you value your good name

3 They were much alarmed, when they saw that their position was hopeless

4 He was quite aware what the consequences would be, if he acted so foolishly

5 The king or queen cannot impose taxes, unless the Parliament consents or approves.

6 If a man puts on the appearance of honesty, he can sometimes pass for honest

7 Though every one else became alarmed, he himself remained as cool as he usually is

8 Though he is a man of years and experience, he is still apt to be imprudent and thoughtless when some sudden emergency arises

9 Although his intentions are kind, he is sometimes a hard master

10 The speaker declared he had changed his mind on that subject so that the audience were much surprised and distressed

11 We never looked him in the face but we laughed

12 Although he has made a few mistakes, let him have a prize, lest he should be discouraged

- 13 As the sun has set, we had better start for home
14 These men suspect that I am a swindler
15 He did as he was told
16 He left the house in great anger, as (or since) he had taken offence at some of the remarks made by the last speaker
17 When the fire was put out and the inmates of the house rescued, the firemen removed the pumps, so that they might take a little rest
18 As soon as the signal was given, every one raised a shout, and gave a hearty welcome to the royal visitor
19 As the judge has already decided the case, further defence is useless
20 His mother will be much consoled, when she sees that her son has escaped from so many dangers
21 I should be indeed sorry, if I were the cause of your ruin or stood in the way of your advancement
22 He spoke so rapidly that we could not clearly understand him
23 What evils have befallen him that he should be so much pitied by every one?
24 There is no branch of knowledge so difficult that it cannot be conquered by perseverance
25 The rope in your hand is so long, that it will touch the bottom of the well, if a stone is tied to the end of it
26 He was not so courageous, that he was willing to ride that spirited horse
27 The higher we go up, the cooler the air becomes
28 The more, the merrier
29 When the trick was found out, the master ordered the man to be expelled from the house at once
30 A time there was ere England's griefs began,
When every rood of ground maintained its man — *Goldsmith*
31 No sooner was the first drop of rain seen to fall, than the peasant brought his oxen and plough, that he might break the first sod and cast the first seed into the earth
32 The moment I saw how industriously and patiently he worked, I decided that I would secretly give him some pecuniary help that very day
33 He made such an excellent speech in defence of his friend, that every one admired and respected him
34 The judge delivered a verdict, as became his abilities and office
35 The peasantry became poorer, as the landlord became richer
36 The reasons of this unfortunate result are so complicated, that I am unable to explain them in few words
37 The success of that dull boy in the last examination was so unexpected, that suspicions were aroused
38 Dull, backward, and lazy as he was, yet he almost headed the list of passmen, so that every one was astonished
39 The rocks that first meet the eye of the traveller, as he enters the Suez Canal, are a part of the break water that was built for some two miles out into the sea, so that ships might enter the canal in safety
40 Great delays are caused in the canal, when a ship is accidentally

disabled or grounded, since all other vessels are detained, until that ship has been removed and the way cleared for other ships to pass

41 Before the canal was cut, vessels bound for India had to proceed by a long and tedious voyage, and to round the Cape of Good Hope, since without doing so they could not have entered the waters of the Indian Ocean

42 If the canal were closed or obstructed, such a tedious voyage would be deemed a serious hardship

43 But a calamity of this kind is not likely to occur, as treaties have been signed between the principal nations of Europe, which provide that even in time of war all vessels shall be permitted to pass unhindered

44 He failed in the examination, because he was unable to answer more than a quarter of the questions

45 The father was much displeased, when he perceived that his son was not inclined to profit by his advice

46 As you are now well acquainted with the facts, you can judge for yourself as to whether I have been fairly treated or not

47 As the weather was bad and threatened to become worse and worse, we stayed at home so that we might not be drenched with rain before we had finished our journey or found shelter in a house

48 He is miserable now, because in his youth he was idle and neglected his best opportunities

49 He would have come to a miserable end, had not a stranger unexpectedly appeared and relieved him of his most urgent wants.

50 Unless the examiner is lenient and gives him more marks than are usually allotted, there is no hope of his passing this examination

51 If I had not been thoroughly acquainted with his designs, there is no doubt he would have brought me into serious trouble

52 The traveller, although he was furnished with ample means, and had received clear instructions as to the course to be taken, was scarcely able to reach the end of his journey by the time appointed

53 Though I had many difficulties to conquer, and expected to be degraded from the class, I succeeded at last in mastering the subject

54 The subject was difficult (it must be admitted), but not so difficult that it could not be mastered in the long run, if only the student persevered and was determined to master it

55 Dull as a student may be, and difficult as a subject may seem to be at first sight, he will find the study become easier or more difficult, according as he perseveres or neglects it

56 He laboured day and night, that all evils might be removed, and the condition of the people improved

57 They will do their utmost, so that he may never again have the power to injure them

58 Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty — *Proverbs of Solomon*

59 The railway carriage was overcrowded, so that all the passengers suffered much inconvenience

60 I cannot even speak, but you find fault with me and accuse me of an untruth.

61 He and his neighbour never passed each other, that they did not look angry and make some rude remark.

62 We were all much distressed at his words, not because we feared he had spoken an untruth, but because we feared he had almost lost his senses.

63 The sailors refused to go on board, as they observed that the ship was overloaded, and would therefore be unable to stem the waves, should a storm at any time arise.

64 When you have at last gained the object of your desires, you will not find the object gained as good as you expected to find it, and you will be much disappointed.

65 He is working very hard to night, so that he may be free next day, and be able to spend the holiday with his friends.

66 What fault has he committed, that he should be dismissed and be sent away in disgrace?

67 He was a brave man, it is true, but not so brave, that he would face a tiger, unless he was furnished with a gun and seated on an elephant.

68 Although I am so old that I am unable to work, yet I am so proud that I cannot beg.

(14) *Conversion of Compound Sentences to Complex.*

In a Compound sentence the second of two co-ordinate clauses is the one that completes the sense, and is therefore the more important of the two.

Hence it follows that in transforming a Compound sentence to a Complex one, the *second* clause must be made the *Principal*, and the *first* the *Dependent*.

(a) *Cumulative Conjunctions*

Compound Speak the truth, and you need have no fear.

Complex If you speak the truth, you need have no fear.

(b) *Alternative Conjunctions*

Compound Leave this room, or I will compel you to do so.

Complex Unless you leave this room, I will compel you to do so.

(c) *Adversative Conjunctions*

Compound He was a poor man, but he was always honest.

Complex He was always honest, although he was poor.

(d) *Illative Conjunctions*

Compound He was very tired, and therefore he fell sound asleep.

Complex He fell sound asleep, because he was very tired.

Transform the following sentences from Compound to Complex —

(a) *Cumulative*

1 Hand over the prisoner to me, and I will examine him.

2 Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves.

- 3 Ask no questions, and you will hear no lies.
- 4 Only hold your tongue, and you can hold anything else.
- 5 I fall sound asleep, and immediately the fever leaves me
- 6 The bank broke, and he became very poor
- 7 He persevered in his efforts, and succeeded at last
- 8 I am now poor and unfortunate, and my friends have left me in the lurch
- 9 He stands up to speak, and every one is at once silent
- 10 Seest thou a man wise in his own conceit? there is more hope of a fool than of him
- 11 Is any man sick? let the elders pray for him
- 12 I placed the book on the table, and it is still there
- 13 Everyone else had left the room, and then he left it himself
- 14 I go to this place and that, and the same thought pursues me everywhere
- 15 He might speak at any time or place, and he was always listened to with respect

(b) Alternative

- 1 He confessed his fault, or he would have been punished
- 2 Sign your name, or I shall not agree to this
- 3 I have not ten rupees myself, or I would be glad to lend you the amount
- 4 Go away at once, otherwise I will send for a policeman
- 5 Speak, or I fire
- 6 You must be careful of your money, or you will soon lose it
- 7 Conquer thy desires, or they will conquer thee
- 8 I will conquer this fellow, or perish in the attempt
- 9 Hold your tongue, or you will repent it

(c) Adversative

- 1 He distrusts me, and yet I will trust him none the less
- 2 He is sixty years old, and yet he still has good sight
- 3 Murder has no tongue, but it will some day speak
- 4 He is now old and infirm, but he is still industrious
- 5 A rabbit is not so swift footed as a hare, but it is a better burrower
- 6 All men were against him, nevertheless he persevered
- 7 He was rich to any extent, yet he was greedy for more
- 8 Wise men love truth, whereas fools shun it
- 9 Go wherever you like, only do not stay here
- 10 England is not a good country for vines, but the wines of all countries find their way to its shores
- 11 Every one before now knew that he was a fool, but no one till now knew that he was a coward
- 12 I called thee to curse my enemies, but behold! thou hast blessed them altogether
- 13 His arguments may be sound, but his inferences are almost always one-sided
- 14 They were defeated indeed, but not disgraced
- 15, In the discharge of duty he was a strict, but just man.

(d) Illative

- 1 I thoroughly dislike that man, and therefore I cannot admire him
- 2 He has worked steadily all through the past year, and therefore he is certain to be promoted
- 3 It is now late, so we had better go to bed
- 4 He came suddenly upon me, and so I was caught
- 5 My son's health was bad last year, and hence he was not promoted at the end of the term
- 6 They were bent upon winning him over, either by flattery or by persuasion, but he was an honest man, and therefore they did not succeed
- 7 I am almost certain to miss the mark, so it is of no use for me to shoot
- 8 You deemed me to start, and so I am ready to do so
- 9 Food is raised by agriculture which is therefore the foundation of all wealth
- 10 My son has never done such a thing before he shall therefore be pardoned

Note —In such sentences as the following it is an open question to which of the clauses we should give precedence —

- | | | |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| { | <i>Compound</i> | He loves you most and me least |
| { | <i>Complex</i> | { He loves you more than me |
| | | { He loves me less than you |
| { | <i>Compound</i> | Either you or I must make the confession |
| { | <i>Complex</i> | { If you do not make the confession, I must do so |
| | | { If I do not make the confession, you must do so |

(15) *Conversion of Complex Sentences to Compound*

In a Complex sentence the Principal or Containing clause is, as its name implies, of more importance than the Subordinate or Contained clause

Hence it follows that in transforming a Complex sentence to Compound, the Principal clause must be placed last, and the Subordinate (which now becomes a Co-ordinate) clause must be placed first

- | | | |
|---|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| { | <i>Complex</i> | I am certain that he will not recover |
| { | <i>Compound.</i> | He will not recover, and of this I am certain |
| { | <i>Complex.</i> | I have found the sheep that I had lost |
| { | <i>Compound.</i> | I had lost a sheep, but I have found it again. |
| { | <i>Complex.</i> | He is more a fool than a knave. |
| { | <i>Compound.</i> | He is something of a knave, but still more a fool. |

I. Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some **Cumulative** conjunctions, or the **Relative** pronoun in a **Continuative** sense, for combining the component clauses —

- 1 You may keep this book, when you have earned it as a prize
- 2 He will pay off all his debts in time, if only his creditors will have patience
- 3 The enemy fled as soon as our guns came in sight
- 4 Every man howled with pain, as he took his turn of the lash
- 5 When you have worked out this sum, you may go out to play
- 6 Could I but see that wonderful object, I would believe in its existence
- 7 If thou cuttest more or less than a just pound, nay, if the scale do but turn in the estimation of a hair, thou diest and all thy goods are confiscated — *Shakespeare*
- 8 As soon as the trumpet sounded, the battle commenced
- 9 He left for home yesterday as soon as he received that letter
- 10 We selected this boy as the best in the class, after we had examined all of them
- 11 He is still lying down on the very bed where we last saw him
- 12 He would prefer war to peace if war would bring him more honour
- 13 If the accused was guilty of that murder, he deserves to be hanged if he was innocent, the witnesses have perjured themselves
- 14 If he were commended for his work, it would encourage him to be equally industrious in future
- 15 We have had no trouble of any kind, since we came here
- 16 You may have everything in the house, if only you will leave me my mother's legacy
- 17 You shall not leave this room, till you have made an apology
- 18 I will make tea, when the water is boiling

II Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some **Adversative** conjunctions for combining the component clauses —

- 1 He could do this, if he tried
- 2 If our king should be slain on the battlefield, we still have his son to lead us against our enemies
- 3 Though you may not be able to conquer, I exhort you to fight bravely to the last
- 4 Brave as he is, he has few men around him, and may be defeated
- 5 Grievous words stir up anger, though a soft answer turneth away wrath — *Old Testament*
- 6 Though the waves dash ever so high, the ship will not be lost
- 7 Though the Israelites were carried captive to many foreign lands, yet in all places they maintained the creed and customs of their race
- 8 However fond I may be of my own country, I shall have to go abroad for the sake of earning a living
- 9 Bad as his disposition is, he is our master, and we must endure it.

- 10 I would have gone to see you, if I had known your house.
- 11 The sea is as deep as the mountains are high
- 12 Although he is a hard master, his intentions are good
13. If his theory was sound, he certainly did not act up to it

III *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound, using some **Alternative** conjunctions for combining the component clauses —*

- 1 If you do not hold your peace, you will be fined
- 2 Unless he speaks the truth in your behalf, you will not be acquitted
- 3 If we had helped him in the time of need, he would now be ready to give help to us
- 4 If I had known the extent of his demand, I would not have promised to pay him
- 5 Unless he works hard and in earnest, he will be certainly plucked
- 6 If he buys that house he will run into debt
- 7 If he acts so foolishly, he will certainly be ruined
- 8 You would not be acting fairly, if you refused to hear him on his defence
- 9 If you believe in my words, you will not be misled
- 10 The king cannot impose taxes, unless the parliament consents
- 11 He would have come to a miserable end, had not the law protected him

IV *Change the following sentences from Complex to Compound using some **Illative** conjunction for combining the component clauses —*

- 1 I must begin my book with a preface as other writers do
- 2 Now that every one is convinced of your honesty, you are free to go
- 3 Those bags should be carefully guarded, as every one is trying to steal them
- 4 Seeing that almost all our friends are dead, what is the use of life?
- 5 I bought to day's newspaper, that I might see the last news from the seat of war
- 6 The prince was not permitted to enter the cottage, lest any one should say that he demeaned himself by so doing
- 7 My orders were repeated three or four times, that there might be no misapprehension
- 8 The people will give all their votes to A, lest B should be elected
- 9 If he were here, I would tell him what I mean
- 10 If you were not my senior, I would endeavour to teach you better manners
- 11 He worked hard, as he had an object to work for
- 12 He was taken very ill, because he had lost his only son
- 13 He spoke the truth, because he feared the disgrace of falsehood

(16) *The Interchange of Principal and Subordinate clauses*

The Principal clause being that which is uppermost in the speaker's mind, and the Subordinate clause being merely a modification of it, we cannot usually put the one in the place of the other without altering the sense, and hence as a general rule no interchange of Principal and Subordinate clauses is permissible

Nevertheless, it may sometimes happen that the speaker is indifferent which clause takes precedence of the other, or the facts expressed by the two clauses may be so closely dependent on each other, that it is immaterial to the sense whether the one or the other is made the Principal. In such instances the Principal and Subordinate clauses may change places —

- { He is more eager to win a prize than to work for one
- { He is not so eager to work for a prize as to win one
- { He never borrowed what he did not afterwards repay
- { He always repaid whatever he borrowed

Rewrite the following sentences, making the Principal and Subordinate clauses change places —

- 1 No sooner did the sun rise than the mist cleared up
- 2 I always felt an appetite as soon as I heard the dinner bell
- 3 He had scarcely finished speaking, when his orders were obeyed.
- 4 He had hardly left the ship, when his old dog recognised him and ran to meet him
- 5 He never entered into a discussion, but he lost his temper
- 6 The audience shouted applause, till they made themselves almost hoarse
- 7 He reached the house about an hour after we had left it
- 8 Before we had gone far, the child began to complain of fatigue
- 9 The general cannot get more men, unless Parliament votes the money
- 10 Unless you amend your ways, you will get into trouble
- 11 He never promises what he does not intend to perform
- 12 The judge put several questions to the witness, which he (the witness) could not answer
- 13 He entered the room at the very moment when I was leaving it
- 14 The surgeon could not lance the wound, before it began to mortify
- 15 I was instructed to leave all those things in the place where I had put them
- 16 The patient is progressing as well as could be expected
- 17 He is not such a clever man as he was said to be
- 18 I like the climate of this place more than I ever did before

19. The stag never ceased running, till it had placed itself entirely out of danger
20. Victory seems nearer to us to-day than it did yesterday
21. I kept clear of that bull, which looked so fierce
22. The promise that we have made shall be faithfully kept
23. A tiger, which the bravest did not dare to attack, sprang out of the bush
24. You are bound in duty to defend these rights which were bequeathed to you by your ancestors
25. Thy descendants shall be masters of regions which Caesar never knew
26. I distrust that man because he is always talking about religion
27. You have been bold enough to do what very few persons would have undertaken
28. The masts of the ship are still seen in the place where it sank
29. Pope began to write verses when he was only ten or twelve years old
30. Our attack was maintained for ten hours before the walls of the enemy fell
31. My workmen live on the same kind of food that I take myself
32. The boy was sent back to his parents because he was taken seriously ill
33. Be careful in walking over these rocks, lest you should fall and injure your ankle
34. No one will trust you, unless he knows that you are rich
35. I will not send them away fasting to their houses, lest they should faint by the way
36. He cannot walk fast, because he is a little lame
37. I endured his censure, because it was just
38. He is such a false man, that no one will believe his words
39. He is so full of his books that he has forgotten to use his common sense

(17) *Miscellaneous examples on the Transformation of Sentences*

Rewrite the following sentences according to the directions indicated below —

1. Only the evening star has yet appeared (Replace "only" by "none")
2. Only the morning star has remained in sight (Replace "only" by "all")
3. He is so proud that he will not submit to correction (Replace "so" by "too")
4. After finishing the work, he asked for his pay (Substitute a participle for the gerund, and an infinitive for the preposition with its object)
5. After the pay had been given him, he put all he could spare into the savings bank (Use the absolute construction)
6. My son is now in his sixteenth year, and is almost qualified to enter some college (Substitute a cardinal for the ordinal, and a Gerund for the infinitive)

7 My hope was that he would not enter college till he had had some grounding in science (Cancel the "not")

8 Though this rain is out of season, it will do some good (Substitute "as" for "though")

9 I went out and took an airing as soon as the clock struck E R M (Use "soon" in the comparative degree)

10 Young men are taught English in these days for some other purpose than to become quill drivers (Insert 'not' before "taught")

11 Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.—*Milton* (Insert the Finite verb, begin the sentence with 'to reign,' and substitute "preferable" for "better")

12 Death before dishonour (Expand this into a complete sentence, and substitute some adjective in the comparative degree for "before")

13 I would prefer a good knowledge of a few things to a bad knowledge of many (Substitute an Infinitive verb for "knowledge," and "than" for "to")

14 But for the careful nursing that she gave him, he would not have recovered (Substitute a clause for "but," and a participle for "gave")

15 No sooner had the sun shown itself above the horizon than he got out of bed to commence work (Make the Adverbial clause the Principal one)

16 I have not seen him since last Thursday (Expand into two clauses, and change 'since' from a Preposition to an Adverb)

17 I last saw him three weeks ago (Substitute the preposition "for" for the adverb "ago")

18 I last saw him three weeks ago (Expand into two clauses, and substitute a conjunction for the adverb "ago")

19 I could not but feel sorry for what you had said (Substitute the verb "help" for "but")

20 Every person who was present can bear witness to my statement (Rewrite this, using "but" in a relative sense)

21 I am very desirous to meet you once more (Rewrite this in an exclamatory form, using "oh")

22 I wish that I could meet you once more (Rewrite this, substituting "like" for "wish," and changing "could" into an Infinitive verb)

23 The best scholar that ever left college, if he is discontented, is less to be envied than the poorest peasant who drives his plough in the field and finds some enjoyment in life (Make the Principal clause Adverbial)

24 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "too" for "so," and change the sentence to a Simple one)

25 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "very" for "so," and change the sentence to a Compound one)

26 He is so clever that I cannot keep pace with him (Substitute "such" for "so," and make the Adverbial clause a Co-ordinate one)

27 It was not till King Charles tried to seize the five members, that the Commons began to take him for an enemy instead of a king (Cancel "it was not," and reduce to a Simple sentence beginning with "the Commons")

28 It is better to have health without riches than to have riches without health (Substitute an adjective formed from "prefer" for "better")

29 Nothing is worth doing, if it is not worth doing well (Substitute an Adjective clause commencing with "but" for the conditional one)

30 He was more worthy of praise than any one else (Make this sentence a Negative one)

31 He was insolent enough to disobey his master (Expand this into a Complex sentence, in which the verb 'disobey' will be in the subordinate clause)

32 He gained his end less by honesty than by cunning (Substitute an adverb in the Positive degree for "less")

33 The striking events which preceded Napoleon's downfall have made his name one of the most memorable in modern history (Rewrite this sentence, commencing with "Napoleon's")

34 As soon as the storm commenced, the boat upset (Rewrite this as a Simple sentence)

35 As soon as the storm commenced, the boat upset (Make the Principal clause the Subordinate one, and use the adverb "hardly")

36 Our *loyalty* in duty increases with our *aversion* to work (Substitute adjectives for the nouns italicised, and use "the—the")

37 Having been idle for the whole of the past term, he could not get promotion (Supply the clause implied in the participle)

38 The doctor reached the house too late to find the patient alive (Make this sentence a Negative one, but let it remain a Simple one)

39 He was too late to help him (Expand this into a Complex sentence)

40 The whole of northern India was troubled, and its inhabitants perplexed, at the outbreak of the Indian mutiny (Rewrite this as a Simple sentence, making the outbreak the subject)

41 Your estate is twice as large as mine (Substitute some other adverb for *twice*)

42 It was my good *fortune* to find a friend in the time of need (Rewrite this, substituting an adjective for the noun italicised, and cancelling 'it was')

43 No man is more ready to tell tales about other men's affairs than he who is perpetually asking questions (Rewrite this, making "he" the subject of the principal clause)

44 Every man within the British Empire can claim the protection of the law (Rewrite this (a) in the form of a Negative sentence, (b) in the form of an Interrogative one)

45 Ah! what a fall was there, my countrymen! (Rewrite this in the Interrogative form)

46 If the Puritans suppressed bear fighting, it was not done out of mercy to the bears, but because they desired to put an end to all popular amusements—*Macaulay* (Make the first Adverbial clause the Principal, and change the sentence from Complex to Compound)

47 Work hard, or you will lose your place in the class (Change this from Compound to Complex)

48 But for the care taken by the doctor, your illness would have ended in your death (Change this from Simple to Complex)

49. We hope that better times are coming (Reduce this to a Simple sentence)

50. Although he was industrious, he failed in the final test. (Change "although" into "as")

51. We started at 12 o'clock for Calcutta, which we reached at 4 P.M. (Substitute an equivalent word or words for "which")

52. The child shrieked as if it were being killed (Insert the necessary clause after "as")

53. He glided quickly and quietly to the ground and escaped to another country, where he lived until the old sultan died (Substitute an equivalent word or words for "where," and change the final clause into a phrase)

54. He was an intelligent and quick lad, only he was very deficient in application (Rewrite the second clause using "but" for "only," and using the verb "have" in the place of "deficient")

55. He is supposed not to have done the exercise himself (Make "exercise" the subject of the sentence)

56. He is almost the best scholar in the class (Use the positive for the superlative)

57. He knows a good deal for a lad of ten. For all his wealth he is discontented. He has been educated for the bar. Oh for a lodge in some vast wilderness! (Substitute a clause for each of the italicised phrases)

58. The force was not strong enough to maintain order. It is not likely that he will fail. He was so bold as to defy his enemies (Substitute the noun form for each of the italicised words)

59. The Britons having long been unaccustomed to war, were easily conquered by the Saxons, after the departure of the Romans (Expand into three clauses)

CHAPTER XXIII—THE SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES

Synthesis is the process of binding the parts of a sentence into a whole. It is therefore the opposite to Analysis, which consists in breaking up the whole into its component parts.

The subject of Synthesis will be dealt with under the three headings shown below—

I To combine Simple sentences into a Simple sentence

II To combine Simple sentences into a Compound sentence

III To combine Simple sentences into a Complex or Mixed sentence

I. *To combine Simple sentences into a single Simple sentence*(a) *By using Participles*

- { *Separate* He had fled. He had seen a bear coming.
 { *Combined* Seeing a bear coming, he fled

(b) *By using Absolute Phrases*

- { *Separate* The sun rose. The fog dispersed
 { *Combined* The sun having risen, the fog dispersed

(c) *By using Prepositions with nouns or gerunds*

- { *Separate* He gave them his advice. He helped them liberally
 { *Combined.* Besides giving them his advice, he helped them liberally

(d) *By using Infinitives*

- { *Separate* He has three daughters. He must get them married
 { *Combined* He has three daughters to get married

(e) *By using Nouns or Phrases in apposition*

- { *Separate* He fled from his creditors. This was very dishonest.
 { *Combined* He fled from his creditors, —a very dishonest act

(f) *By using Adverbs or Adverbial phrases*

- { *Separate* He was unconscious of his faults. His unconsciousness was complete
 { *Combined* He was wholly (or utterly or completely or quite) unconscious of his faults

(a) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Participles.*

- 1 He worked hard. He felt tired
- 2 He drew his sword. He rushed at the enemy
- 3 He must confess his fault. Without making such a confession he will be hanged
- 4 He had half cut down the tree by 12 o'clock. He had still three hours left to finish it
- 5 I took this journey to London yesterday. I desire to get the best medical advice
- 6 I explained my case to the doctor. I was seated on a chair against the table at the time. I held my hat in my right hand
- 7 The three brothers were joint heirs to that estate. They lived in the same house. For that reason they did not divide the property
- 8 I met with an old friend unexpectedly. I was walking along the street at the time. It was then 10 o'clock A.M.
- 9 They were too late to catch the train. They tried therefore to

hire a conveyance They hoped by this means to reach the bank in time

10 He sat down to rest a little He had had a long and tiring walk.

11 The father was very careful to make a clear will before his death He left an equal share of his property to each of his sons

12 He first selected a site Then he levelled it Then he dug the foundations Finally he began to build a house

13 The coachman struck the horse on its hinder parts The horse was always inclined to kick The horse then threw up its hind legs It dashed one of them against the front springs of the carriage

14 Your letter never reached me It had been addressed to the wrong house

15 Turn to the left You will then find the house

16 The Spartan general fought bravely with a small band against the Persian host He then died gloriously for his country

17 Every now and then he came stealthily from behind the tree Each time he cocked his gun He was hoping to see some rabbit run by He was hoping to shoot any such rabbit

18 He at last found out the real facts He had inquired carefully into every point He had consulted every witness He had examined every document He had visited the spot He had seen it with his own eyes

19 I was seated safely on an elephant's back I saw behind a thicket the head of a tigress She was crouched in an attitude for making a sudden spring on a bull The bull was unconsciously grazing a little distance off

20 The bull heard the noise of something moving from the thicket It then threw up its horns It gored the tigress through her ribs

21 A leopard saw me aim my gun towards it It then sprang to one side In this way it avoided the intended shot

22 Men of long experience analysed the water Such analysis cannot lead to a false report as to the quality of the water

23 Cowper's pet dog plunged into the river It swam out to get a hilly That hilly was the one especially admired by the poet

24 I was disgusted with the manners of the people in this place I therefore decided to leave the place at once I decided to find some other place to live in

25 King Canute was arrayed in his royal robes He was attended by his courtiers He walked to the sea shore He took his seat upon a chair The chair was previously placed there for his reception

26 He was seated on the chair He was surrounded by his courtiers He was then told by them to await the influx of the tide

27 The tide came up It threatened to wash away the chair That chair was occupied by the king It forced the king to get up and go In this way it proved the courtiers to be a pack of dishonest flatterers

(b) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Absolute phrases —*

1 The agreement was signed All were satisfied

2 The creditors were ruined The bank had broke

3 The fog was very dense No one could see his way through the streets

4. The town was well stocked with provisions. The guns were well stocked with ammunition. The enemy were forced to raise the siege.

5. The siege was over. The enemy withdrew. The city opened its gates. By this means its trade and prosperity rapidly revived.

6. The real culprit has confessed his guilt. The accused is therefore acquitted of the charge.

7. The business will now prosper. He and I have come to terms.

8. There is no proof of guilt against you. The only course open to me is to dismiss the case with costs.

9. Your son has been ill during the greater part of this term. His studies have fallen into arrear. I am unable to give him promotion.

10. St Paul continued to preach at Rome. No man forbade him.

11. The plaintiff did not answer to his name. No one knows the reason of his absence. The court has decided to postpone the hearing of the case for the present.

12. The tents were pitched in a grove. The beds were placed inside the tents. A couple of blankets was supplied to each bed. In this way every one passed a warm and comfortable night.

13. The captain was mounted on an inferior horse. He was badly armed. The enemy had thus a good chance of gaining the day.

14. The captain was slain. The soldiers were therefore seized with a panic.

15. The peasant made his bow. The landlord had nothing more to say. The assessment was then fixed.

(c) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Prepositions with nouns or gerunds --*

1. He made a promise. He kept it also.

2. He must serve twenty five years. After that he can retire.

3. He must first serve twenty five years. He cannot retire without doing that.

4. He is sorrowful. He is still hopeful.

5. The sons of Jacob saw their brother Joseph once more in Egypt. They could not then refrain from weeping aloud and falling on his neck.

6. He was in bad health. He was therefore unable to attend school regularly.

7. We were defeated. We were much disappointed at this.

8. He was a rich man. He had much civility shown to him for this reason.

9. He was very rich. He was thus able to build himself a fine house.

10. He had every qualification for success but one or two. He was slow of understanding and undecided in character.

11. It rained all day. The travellers suffered much inconvenience.

12. An alliance was recently formed in Europe. The parties to the alliance were Germany, Austria, and Italy. It was called the Triple Alliance.

13. In the forest a woodman met me. He had a hatchet in his hand and a bundle of sticks on his back.

14. I declared him to be guilty. Every one else declared him to be guilty.

15. He must confess his fault. He will be heavily fined otherwise.

16. We were much surprised. He had entirely deceived us.

17. He made a great effort. At last he gained his end.

18. He is very rich. He is still discontented.

19. We searched for the book. We could not find it.

20. They were sailing along in the barque. They were almost driven ashore by the wind.

21. The police searched his house. They were allowed to see and examine every part of it.

22. That defeat dealt a deadly blow. Their reputation for courage never recovered from it.

23. Julius Cæsar was a distinguished man. His shrewdness, pertinacity of purpose, and skill on the battle field made him so.

24. The workmen saw the approach of a violent dust storm. They then took shelter in a hut. The hut was not far from the corner of the field.

25. I was visiting some relations. They then informed me of the news about my son. This was the first time I had been informed of the news.

26. The exploits of those famous warriors have been handed down to us in books. The books were written by ancient historians and poets.

27. Julius Cæsar entered the senate house. His mind was tranquil as usual. The senators went in immediately behind him. They were determined to assassinate him.

28. They walked together for more than a mile through the forest. They maintained a perfect silence to the end. Their minds were engrossed with the thought of the approaching conflict.

29. He heard the result. He demanded the reason. They then promised to give a full explanation of everything.

30. Every one was opposed to him. He never swerved from his purpose.

31. The result was altogether disastrous. Our side suffered the disaster.

32. The stag pricked up its ears. The sound of some one's feet made it do so.

33. The feats of the juggler were astonishing. Everyone standing by was astonished.

34. He did not succeed. He had made every effort.

35. The camels wanted their food. Bundles of leaves were brought. The peepul trees furnished the leaves.

36. He bought a new gun. Its cost was three pounds. It was made by a London firm.

37. This book was written by me. In doing so I used a quill pen.

38. Bind that man with manacles. They should be fastened round his hands.

39. He died at last at the age of forty-five. Fever was the cause of his death. He had almost died from the same cause five years before.

40. You helped me out of that difficulty. I should have been ruined otherwise.

41. He gave me a book. He had exchanged one with me.

42. That man going along there is a highwayman. He has disguised himself as a pilgrim.
43. You are defending my interests. You are injuring your own.
44. He had difficulties to meet. He grappled bravely with them.
45. I like a book of travels. I do not like a novel or work of fiction so well.
46. A cup of water will often do a man good. A glass of wine is not so frequently beneficial.
47. The Hindus have laws of their own. The Mussulmans have laws of their own. The two sets of laws are not the same.
48. Multiades was surnamed the Just. The name suited his character.
49. He is seriously ill. So at least he appears to be.
50. He might return this evening or he might not. I inquired of him which he would do.
51. My friend wrote a book. Its subject was proverbs. The proverbs contained in the book related to prudence, sanitation, and duty.
52. He must be a bad man. Your account of him leads me to infer this.
53. He is speaking the truth. His manner shows this.
54. He worked hard. He desired to earn his own living.
55. He lends out money. He charges six per cent.
56. She made the house ready. She was expecting her husband.
57. He saved up his money. An evil day might come.
58. Ceylon is an island. The nearest mainland is the southern coast of India.
59. The boat went out to sea. It left the shore two miles away.
60. He is a man of good character. He would not do anything mean.
61. He married a wife. She was of lower rank than himself.

(d) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Infinitives* —

1. He has lost his health. This added to his difficulties.
2. He had a large family. He must provide for them.
3. He could not prepare well for the examination. He had not sufficient time.
4. They sell their potatoes to green grocers. They plant them for this purpose.
5. Everyone should be honest and industrious. Our country expects this of every man.
6. He stayed at home and looked after his aged parents. This was his reason for staying there.
7. There is only one way. By that you may succeed.
8. The planets revolve round the sun in certain orbits. These revolutions have been observed by astronomers.
9. Julius Caesar was declared to be a usurper. Brutus declared this, Cassius declared this.
10. His house and goods were sold. His debts had to be paid.
11. The poor old ox has little strength left. It cannot draw the plough over this heavy soil.
12. Men cross deserts by camels. There is no other way.

13 Several thousand men may have died in that battle That was the report

14 We hear the cuckoo's voice in early spring In England it is a pleasant sound

15 In India men travelled hundreds of miles by palkees, that was the custom before the introduction of railways

16 He stayed up at nights working out problems in mathematics This was a pleasure to him

17 In a football match each side must have its captain The captain controls the game

18 I thoroughly distrust that man I must speak plainly at once on this point

19 A disease may be cured A disease may be prevented This is the better of the two

20 He must confess his fault He will be fined otherwise

21 He formed a resolution He resolved that he would drink no more wine

22 Some men can make a fortune out of small capital No one finds it easy

23 The French were far inferior to the English by sea This fact was well known

24 The head guides the rest of the body It was made for this purpose

25 My father was very much delighted He had heard of my brother's success

26 Your cousin had not much industry He could not therefore keep his place in the class He did not win a prize

27 The child grew wiser every day The parents were therefore grieved

28 The general has just come The inspection of the volunteers is his object

29 That man cheated all his creditors He must have been mad

30 The servant was desirous of showing his zeal So in his master's presence he was very attentive and diligent

31 The bank suddenly broke Matters were thus made worse

32 Suraj ud Doulah shut up a large number of prisoners in a suffocating dungeon In doing such a thing he was very cruel

(c) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Nouns or Phrases in apposition —*

1 Cromwell assumed the powers of a king He had once been a private gentleman Next he was a popular leader in the Long Parliament Then he was the commander of the Parliamentary forces Finally he was called Protector

2 Lord Clive commenced his career in India as a clerk In that capacity he was a writer in a merchant's office He ended his career with founding the British Empire in the east

3 Suraj ud-Doulah was nawab or viceroy of the Bengal province The sovereignty of the Emperor of Delhi was nominal He shut up his prisoners in the Black Hole. This was a suffocating dungeon in Calcutta.

4. Suraj-ud-Doulah perpetrated many atrocities. He oppressed the British merchants of Calcutta. He oppressed his own people no less. He was defeated at the battle of Plassey. This was a fit end to such an evil reign.

5. Byron had certainly some of the qualifications of a first rate poet. He possessed great command of language. He was a keen observer of nature. He had an accurate knowledge of men and manners.

6. Sometimes he travelled in Italy. Sometimes he travelled in Greece. Sometimes he travelled in Switzerland. He always carried with him the same moroseness of temper.

7. John Bunyan wrote the book called Pilgrim's Progress. He had once been a thoughtless youth. After that he became a religious penitent.

8. Francis Bacon was Lord High Chancellor of England. He wrote many learned books. He devised a new system of logic. He has nevertheless been accused of doing many things unworthy of his high position.

(f) *Combine into Simple sentences by using Adverbs or Adverbial phrases* —

1. He was wanting in application. This ruined him.

2. All the inmates escaped from the flames. This was fortunate.

3. The letter was addressed to the wrong house. It never reached me.

4. Notwithstanding his idleness in the past term he was confident of success. His confidence surprised me.

5. The rose is the sweetest of flowers. This is certain.

6. He begged for pardon. His request was not granted.

7. Most of the blame for that robbery was thrown on one of the house servants. The servant deserved the blame.

8. He wrote a severe letter to the school managers. That was his intention.

9. The boat was leaking. The sinking of the boat was unavoidable.

10. This boy is the cleverest in the school. No other boy can be compared with him.

11. He invested all his money in a single bank. The investment was not a prudent one.

12. By the breaking of the bank he lost all his money. The loss was necessary under the circumstances.

13. They defended themselves against the charge. Their defence was clever. Their defence was resolute.

14. Beware of wine. This is of the first importance.

15. He has been attending school this term. His attendance has been irregular.

16. He will return to us. He will not be long absent.

17. The tree was cut down. The cutting was gradual.

18. He searched for the lost watch in distant places. He searched for it in neighbouring places.

19. He dismissed his old ministers and advisers. This was a foolish act.

(9) Miscellaneous examples *Combine the following sets of sentences into Sample sentences, by any of the methods shown above —*

- 1 He is a wise man This is well known to all
- 2 The earth is round Men of science have proved this.
- 3 Our side was victorious Such was the result
- 4 He was fined for some reason The reason was unknown
- 5 I asked him to grant me a request He refused to grant it
- 6 Some of the students work hard All such students will get promotion
- 7 Moses was the Jewish lawgiver He was buried in a certain place No one could find it
- 8 We honour the name of Wellington He won the battle of Waterloo He destroyed the power of Napoleon
- 9 He suffered for certain debts His son had contracted them His son was an improvident youth
- 10 I have not much money I cannot spare any
- 11 They were in debt They were thrown into prison for that reason
- 12 The boy was determined to win a prize He worked very hard
- 13 I see he is working hard I am therefore much pleased
- 14 He was very quick in his answers He was never defeated in argument
- 15 He suddenly became rich His conduct fell under suspicion
- 16 He worked very regularly He aimed at gaining a prize
- 17 He labours day and night By this means he hopes to become rich
- 18 There was some fear of the failure of the plan Every precaution was taken
- 19 He fled across the border He would otherwise have been caught
- 20 He has had much experience He is none the less incompetent
- 21 The sea is deep Mountains are high The height and depth are equal
- 22 Pardon his fault You will thus show your usual forbearance
- 23 He returned to duty His leave had expired just before he did so
- 24 The city was taken The inhabitants fled
- 25 We have no dictionary We are therefore unable to look out the meaning of this word
- 26 Things are not now going on well They went on well previously At the time he had not been placed in charge
- 27 The whole house has been happy Some one had brought us good news This was the cause of the happiness
- 28 English at one time was not spoken in Britain It began to be spoken after the arrival of the Saxons
- 29 Our success is said to be certain This is by no means clear
- 30 He intended to return soon He told us so
- 31 A serious famine prevailed This was the cause of the riot
- 32 He managed to succeed somehow or other Did you inquire about the means?

33 Some things are known Others are unknown The former help us to understand the latter

34 The house is now out of repair It was taken by us two years ago

35 Much trouble has come to us from this regulation It ought to be cancelled

36 Their only hope of escape lay in the coming of the ship The ship now came fully into sight

37 A star appeared in the East Christ was born at that time

38 Death must be destroyed It is our last enemy

39 Their position was now hopeless They gave themselves up to the enemy in consequence

40 The boy had won a prize He was much pleased

41 He could not speak He was thoroughly ashamed of his misconduct

42 They had no hope of his recovery They all felt sad

43 They could not be proved guilty of the charge They were therefore acquitted

44 They heard him confess his fault They were therefore much surprised

45 The problem was a very difficult one It could not be solved

46 He is a clever boy No other boy is more clever

47 I will convict you In doing so I shall be guided by a sense of justice

48 On all occasions he prepared his lessons He did his best to prepare them well

49 He had found out his mistake He was very sorry It was then too late

50 The Mogul empire fell to pieces Aurangzeb's reign was over

51 The receipt has not been signed The money will not be paid without this

52 The English nobles remembered the example set them by their fathers This was set them in the reign of King John The government by Henry III was equally bad He had foreign favourites The nobles were determined to put an end to these things

53 Insurrections had come to an end Henry VII after this desired to marry his children He desired to amass money He devoted his attention to these two things

54 The king spent the following year in Normandy He desired to strengthen his position there He desired to secure the succession of his son The son was then eighteen years old

55 There were 300 persons on board Only one escaped All the rest went down with the ship One of the men drowned was Fitzstephen He was captain of the ship The man who escaped was a butcher of Rouen

56 Prince William had been drowned Henry had only one object after this His object was to secure the crown of England for his only daughter, Matilda She had been married to the emperor The emperor's name was Henry V He was now dead

57 Henry was fond of his children This was one strong point in his character His fondness for learning was another strong point In other respects his character was devoid of any commendable qualities

II. To combine Simple sentences into a Compound sentence —

(a) By using some **Cumulative Conjunction** —

- | | | |
|---|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | He was declared to be guilty by the magistrate
Even his best friends believed the verdict to be just |
| | Combined | Not only was he declared to be guilty by the magistrate, but even his best friends believed the verdict to be just. |

(b) By using some **Relative Pronoun or Adverb in a Continuatve sense** (see § 134) —

- | | | |
|---|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | We started for Calcutta yesterday We shall stop there four days |
| | Combined | We started yesterday for Calcutta, where we shall stop four days |

(c) By using some **Alternative Conjunction** —

- | | | |
|---|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | That animal may be a fish It may be a serpent
It must be one of them |
| | Combined | That animal is either a fish or a serpent |

(d) By using some **Adversative Conjunction** —

- | | | |
|---|----------|----------------------------|
| { | Separate | He is poor He is honest |
| | Combined | He is poor, but honest |

(e) By using some **Illative Conjunction** —

- | | | |
|---|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | At the sight of a cat the mouse runs into its hole The mouse fears the cat |
| | Combined | At the sight of a cat the mouse runs into its hole, for it fears the cat |

(f) By combining the above processes —

- | | | |
|---|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | The cat is meek The cat is silent The cat is sly The cat is cruel The mouse runs away at the sight of the cat The mouse enters into its hole |
| | Combined | The cat is meek and silent, but sly and cruel, and hence the mouse runs away at the sight of it and enters its hole |

Combine the following Simple sentences into one Compound sentence —

1 Two cats had stolen some cheese They could not decide how to divide it equally between them They decided on asking a monkey

to settle the dispute for them. They went to the monkey at once for that purpose. (Express by two Finite Verbs)

2 The monkey agreed to hear and decide the case. He called the two cats before him. He held out a pair of scales. He put one piece of cheese in one scale and one in another. (Two Finite Verbs)

3 He weighed the two pieces. He found one to be heavier than the other. He wished to make them of equal weight and size. He bit a piece off one of them. (Two Finite verbs)

4 He passed the examination. No one expected him to do so. He came out at the head of the list of passmen. (Two Finite verbs)

5 I was not the only person to hear this strange story. You heard it. You believed it to be true. I did not believe it. (Four Finite verbs, expressed or understood)

6 Every boy should learn how to swim. Swimming is a fine healthy exercise. Swimming is often the means of saving one's own life. Swimming is often the means of saving the life of others. (Three Finite verbs)

7 I am glad to see your love for gardening. The first thing to be done towards making a garden productive is to clear the soil of weeds. Nothing will grow well in an untidy soil. (Three Finite verbs)

8 You seem to have made up your mind to work hard this year. This is something quite new. I am glad to see it. I hope your good resolutions will not fail. (Four Finite verbs)

9 That hopping animal may be a frog. It may be a toad. It cannot be both. (Two Finite verbs, expressed or understood)

10 He rushed out of the room in time. He would have been crushed to death by the falling of the roof. The roof fell very suddenly. It gave scarcely any warning of the impending crash. (Two Finite verbs)

11 He is a rich man. He is not proud of his wealth. He makes no distinction between rich and poor. (Three finite verbs)

12 Look at the feet of a cat. You will see the reason of her skill in catching birds or mice. The feet are furnished with long, sharp claws. A bird or mouse once caught, cannot get loose from the claws. (Three Finite verbs)

13 The air of the plains of India is often very hot. The air on mountain tops in the same country is generally cool. This seems strange at first. The sun overhead is the same in either case. The sun shines on hills and plains alike. (Three Finite verbs)

14 A brave and honest man will speak out. He will not be afraid of the consequences. A timid man may keep silent at the time of danger. He may tell falsehoods. He is afraid of some harm coming to him. (Three Finite verbs)

15 In all labour there is profit. Mere talking tends only to failure. (Two Finite Verbs)

16 A certain rumour was current. He was said to have been taken seriously ill. He was quite well. He wrote to me that very day. He informed me by letter of his intention to extend his business. (Three Finite verbs)

17 In private life he was amiable. In private life he was even fond of amusement. In public life he was severe. In public life he was a rigorous dispenser of justice. (Two Finite verbs)

18 A blind man carried a lantern in his hand He carried a picher on his shoulder He was walking along one night alone He met a thoughtless young fellow He was asked to explain the reason why he carried a lantern, although he was blind (*Three Finite verbs*)

19 The Prince of Wales was the son of Henry IV of England He had a strong sense of justice He knew the duties of a subject He knew the duties of a prince He was hot tempered He was quick at taking offence He was fond of the company of profligate men On one occasion he struck Sir William Gascoigne Sir William Gascoigne was a judge He was at that time seated on the bench (*Two Finite verbs*)

20 Sir W Gascoigne knew the dignity and power of his position He resolved to do his duty at all hazards He instantly ordered the Prince of Wales to be committed to prison (*Two Finite verbs*)

21 The Prince was now conscious of his fault He submitted to the order He allowed himself to be led away to prison He had enough sense to know the necessity of obeying the law In so doing he set an example to princes in all future ages (*Three Finite verbs*)

22 Life has few enjoyments We cling to it (*Two Finite verbs*)

23 Some men die fighting on the battlefield Such men die on a bed of honour (*Two Finite verbs*)

24 At this time of the year I do not rise at five o'clock in the morning I rise a little before seven (*Two Finite verbs, expressed or understood*)

25 We would have entered that dark cave We would have explored thoroughly its inner parts We had no touches We were forced to give up the attempt (*Three Finite verbs*)

26 The battle was over Edward marched to Calais He besieged it by sea and land In the meanwhile Robert Bruce took advantage of Edward's absence He invaded England He was king of Scotland He was the ally of France (*Three Finite verbs*)

27 Calais was captured A truce was then made between France and England This was further prolonged by the outbreak of a plague The plague was called the Black Death (*Two Finite verbs*)

28 The northern states of America had a contest with the southern The contest lasted four years The northern States fought for freedom The southern States fought for slavery In spite of their long resistance, the southern States were finally defeated (*Two Finite verbs*)

29 I am young You are old and experienced I was afraid of your age and dignity I durst not speak my mind openly before you (*Three Finite verbs*)

30 The sluggard will not plough by reason of the toil He shall beg in harvest He shall have nothing (*Three Finite verbs*)

31 Cast thy bread upon the waters Thou shalt find it after many days (*Two Finite verbs*)

32 It was now six o'clock in the evening It was too late to start on our journey We postponed starting till the following morning (*Two Finite verbs*)

33 The people of this place are thrifty They are industrious, I

noticed the fertility of their fields. Then cottages were neat. Then persons were clean. (*Two Finite verbs*)

34 I have no knowledge of the person referred to. I am unable to say any good of him. I am unable to say any evil of him. (*Two Finite verbs*)

35 I am not the only person who has done wrong. You did wrong. You attempted to obtain a certificate on false pretences. (*Two Finite verbs*)

36 All the beams in the roof of this house are made of teak. Teak is the strongest kind of wood in the East. It is much prized for building wooden houses. These are very often used by Europeans in Burma. (*Four Finite verbs*)

37 You have never before heard of the Himalaya mountains. This is a very surprising fact. Your knowledge of geography must be very small. (*Two Finite verbs*)

38 You were promoted. You had worked hard all last year. Two other students carried off the class prizes. (*Two Finite verbs*)

39 The robber was notorious for his evil deeds. The hermit was known everywhere for his good deeds. This made the robber jealous of the hermit. The hermit's reputation was superior to the robber's. (*Three Finite verbs*)

40 Almost all the combatants were said to have been slain on the battlefield. A large number of them escaped alive. Many of these took up arms again in the following year. They wished to defend their country. They loved their country. (*Three Finite verbs*)

41 The boat seemed likely to sink. He did not lose his courage. He continued pulling the oars. He brought the boat safely to land. (*Three Finite verbs*)

42 He was clever, accomplished, and virtuous. He had one failing. He was of rather a timid disposition. (*Two Finite verbs*)

43 He caught the robbers. He never got back the stolen property. The property consisted of gold and silver ornaments. It was worth 150 rupees. (*Four Finite verbs*)

44 You made a deplorable mistake. You did it in ignorance of the facts and then consequences. You deserve pardon. (*Three Finite verbs*)

45 According to the rumour, he was killed by a flash of lightning striking his house. The house was not struck by lightning. He was not at all hurt. (*Three Finite verbs*)

46 We must reach Lucknow by four o'clock P.M. There is only one hour left. We must start at once. (*Two Finite verbs*)

47 The storm had now passed. The sun rose above the horizon. Every drop of dew sparkled like a diamond. The birds warbled their morning hymns. The streams were dancing down the rocks or through the glens. The little brooks tinkled like silver bells. The trees, fanned by the morning breeze, waved the ends of their huge branches in the blue sky. The birds hopped about chirping their cheerful notes. All nature seemed to have put on its brightest and most pleasing colours. (*Nine Finite verbs*)

48 He received all the pay promised him. He was dissatisfied. He filed a petition in court. (*Two Finite verbs*)

49 Henry was not in a position to follow up his victory. He had

gained this victory on the field of Agincourt. He proceeded to Calais. From Calais he proceeded to Dover. At Dover he was received with the greatest enthusiasm. (*Three Finite verbs*)

50 Perkin Warbeck was promised his life. He surrendered on that promise. He was carried in mock triumph to London. A confession of the imposture was published in London. The object of this publication was to satisfy the people. (*Two Finite verbs.*)

51 A poor Arab came suddenly upon a spring of sweet water. He had never before tasted any but brackish wells. He thought such sweet water fit only for a king. He filled his leathern bottle from the spring. He set off to present it to the Khalif. (*Three Finite verbs.*)

52 The courtiers pressed forward. They desired to taste this precious water. The Khalif forbade them to taste even a drop. The water had turned sour on the way. The Khalif did not desire to give offence to the peasant. The peasant was simple minded. The peasant was loyal. (*Four Finite verbs*)

53 You have finished the job before the time. You have done it in good style. This is more than I expected from you. You have never before shown so much quickness and energy. I have seen a great deal of you for many years past. (*Five Finite verbs*)

54 The Jews begged Pilate to release Barabbas. They begged him to condemn Jesus to death. Jesus was innocent. Barabbas was a robber. (*Three Finite verbs*)

55 He is a fool. He is a knave. (Combine these sentences in three different ways, so as (1) to give equal stress to both statements, (2) to give most stress to the first, (3) to give most stress to the second one.)

56 The monsoon failed. The tanks became almost empty. The fields could not be irrigated. No grain could be sown. A famine was feared. The ryots looked anxiously for the next monsoon. It proved more abundant than usual. The danger was averted. (*Madras Matriculation, 1888. Six Finite verbs*)

57 Henry III had several times confirmed the Magna Charta. He regarded that document as an encroachment upon the rights of a king. He broke its provisions on several occasions. He looked upon the English barons with suspicion as men desirous of lessening the kingly power. (*Three Finite verbs*)

58 A boat was lowered. The prince at once put off from the sinking vessel. The nobles put off. He heard the cries of his half sister. He returned to the vessel. His purpose was to save his half sister. (*Two Finite verbs*)

59 The nobles made Simon de Montford their leader. He had married Henry's sister. Her name was Eleanor. They attended a council at Westminster in full armour. There they demanded the redress of national grievances. (*Three Finite verbs*)

60 The barons were not content with having thus far humbled the king. They selected twelve of their number. The duty of these twelve was to act as a standing council. Good government was the object to be gained. These men did not consult the interests of the country. They usurped the royal power. They gave their chief care to the aggrandisement of their own families. (*Three Finite verbs*)

III To combine Simple sentences into a Complex or mixed sentence.

(a) The Noun-clause

A Noun-clause can be introduced by the conjunction "that" in the sense of Apposition, or by some Relative pronoun (or adverb) whose Antecedent is not expressed, or by some words quoted in the Direct Narration —

- | | | |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | <i>Separate</i> | The rose is the sweetest of flowers. This is certain |
| | <i>Combined</i> | It is certain <i>that</i> the rose is the sweetest of flowers |
| { | <i>Separate</i> | He is going to some place. No one knows it. |
| | <i>Combined</i> | No one knows <i>where</i> he is going |

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Noun-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate verb of the principal clause —

- 1 He will not return soon. He *declared* this to be his intention.
- 2 He will get us out of this difficulty in some way or other. His way of doing it *is known* to no one but himself.
- 3 Some one will be selected to watch my work. My reputation *will depend* on him.
- 4 Perhaps better luck is in store for us. We *hope* so.
- 5 Is there any hope of his success? That *was* my question.
- 6 He had made a serious mistake. He had caused much mischief thereby. Perceiving this he *confessed* his fault.
- 7 He was innocent. That *was* the verdict of the judge.
- 8 He is said to have committed some offence. He *desires* to be informed about it.
- 9 A man may steal my purse. In doing so he *steals* trash.
- 10 You have succeeded very well. This *was* news to us. It *gave* us much pleasure.
- 11 Moses was buried in some place. The place *was* never known.
- 12 He was dismissed from his post. The reason *was* clearly explained to him.
- 13 The meadow looks green and pleasant. *See* it.
- 14 A lazy man injures no one but himself. This *is* not true.
- 15 I have suffered many losses. No one *pities* me. This *is* a fact.
- 16 You have done an excellent day's work. I *was* much pleased to see it.
- 17 I *resolved* to be very careful. I say or do certain things in his presence.
- 18 A despised enemy may turn out a dangerous rival. This *has* often happened.
- 19 He will not remain here another day. He *told* them so.
- 20 Our friend will soon recover his health. There *is* no doubt of this.

21 He is going somewhere I do not *know* His best friends do not *know*

22 What do you desire to have? I *will* grant you anything

23 We can make our lives sublime Laves of great men all *remind* us of this

24 He cannot resist your claims He cannot deny your merits. Of this you *may be* sure

25 You require a certain amount of time for preparing your plans. You *shall be* granted it

26 The messenger told us something about that matter I *heard* it

27 It was your duty to make the best use of your time at school You *found out* this too late

28 Your hopes about your son's future may or may not be fulfilled Time alone *will show*

29 Some one has been making a great noise I *should like* to know the person

30 Columbus discovered America in a certain way He was provided with ships and men by a certain king He met with certain difficulties in the way I *should like* to be told about these things

31 You have come from a certain place You have come for a certain purpose You began your journey on a certain day You arrived here on a certain day Tell me about these things

32 The Russians, during the Chinese war, remained strictly on the defensive It is not difficult to perceive the reason

33 I have seen that man's face before somewhere I *am* sure of it

34 The earth moves round the sun The sun does not move round the earth It seems to move round the earth Men of science *have* clearly *proved* these points

(b) The Adjective-clause

An Adjective-clause is introduced by some Relative pronoun or Relative adverb used in a *Restrictive* (that is, a qualifying) sense

In composing an adjective-clause the student should remember that the Relative pronoun or Relative adjective should stand *as close as possible* to its antecedent, that is, no word should be placed between them, if it can be conveniently placed anywhere else

- | | | |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | <i>Separate</i> | A man once had a goose The goose laid every day a golden egg |
| | <i>Combined</i> | A man once had a goose, <i>that</i> every day laid a golden egg |

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Adjective-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate-verb of the principal clause —

- 1 The messenger had a duty to perform The duty *was* difficult
- 2 I suffered anxiety The anxiety *was* extreme
- 3 He has done much good to the public His services *cannot* be paid too highly
- 4 Daniel *came* alive out of the den In that den lions were kept
- 5 An orator should possess a clear voice My friend *does* not possess one
- 6 We *came* upon a certain cottage Here a shepherd was living with his family
- 7 The Saxon and Danish languages *were* dialects of a certain language This language was once widely spoken in Europe
- 8 Every one spoke well of that man thirty years ago He was then a fine young warrior Now he *has become* a confirmed drunkard
- 9 One of the great annual fairs is held at Muttra Muttra is visited on that occasion by many pilgrims from all parts of India Muttra is one of the most ancient cities of Hindustan
- 10 I *went* down a footpath At the end of the footpath there was a chasm The depth of the chasm was about twenty feet The dead body of a man was lying there A faithful dog was still seated by its side
- 11 A small rest house stood at the foot of the hill We *stopped* there for the night
- 12 The shipwrecked mariners *watched* for the appearance of a ship All their hopes of escape were centred on this vessel
- 13 He had received a good education This *raised* him above many men of his own age
- 14 In our ramble through the forest we *came* upon a thatched cottage A fine cedar tree was growing by its side
- 15 He has no money laid by He cannot borrow He cannot earn a good monthly income A man of that kind *must* not attempt to embark in trade
- 16 The Greeks were a nation of antiquity They *were* the first to become civilised
- 17 The body of conspirators *met* together secretly Their place of meeting was a private house Their object was to murder the king
- 18 The Indian Empire was acquired by the British in various different ways He briefly *described* the most important of these to the audience

(c) The Adverb Clause

An Adverb-clause can be introduced by any of the Subordinate conjunctions or by a Relative pronoun (or adverb) used in an adverbial sense (see § 284)

Subordinate conjunctions

- | | | |
|---|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | Separate | He left off trying to do his best He could not give satisfaction anyhow |
| | Combined | He left off trying to do his best, as he could not give satisfaction anyhow |

Relative pronouns.

- { *Separate* My son had no sleep last night. He must be very
 tired to-day
 { *Combined* My son, *who* had no sleep last night, must be
 very tired to-day

Combine into a Complex sentence containing one or more Adverb-clauses, and make the italicised verb the predicate-verb of the Principal clause —

1 All men must die and be forgotten. Why then *does* he *seek* for fame and riches?

2 He *gave* up most of his spare time to home preparation. He wished to gain a scholarship at the end of the term.

3 You must sign your name. He *will* then *agree* to your terms.

4 He became more and more rich. He *was* never contented.

5 He *is* a lazy boy. The other boys in the class are not equally lazy.

6 Men may sow much or little. They may sow prudently or imprudently. They *will* *reap* accordingly.

7 He found out his mistake. He *was* then very sorry.

8 He *learned* English very rapidly. He *astonished* his teacher thereby.

9 A thief *goes* about his work very cautiously. He does not wish to be caught.

10 I may perhaps be allowed to speak. I *can* then explain everything.

11 He has been very unfortunate. He *is* always cheerful.

12 He *is* a clever boy. No other boy in the class is more clever.

13 He was directed to do something in a certain way. He *did* it accordingly.

14 The school bell rang. All immediately *went* to their places.

15 Life may continue for some time. During such time there *is* still hope.

16 He *persevered* day and night. At last he *gained* his end.

17 The rain may or may not fall this month. With the fall of rain there *will* be no fear of famine.

18 He possessed enormous wealth. He *never enjoyed* peace of mind. He never enjoyed freedom from care.

19 A man gets more wealth. He then *wants* more.

20 You have treated me in a certain way. I *will treat* you in the same way.

21 The world may last for an indefinitely long period. During such period the sun *will continue* to rise.

22 He may or may not be careful. Without great care he *will come* to serious harm.

23 The branches of some trees grow to a great height. Their roots *are* not equally deep.

24 *Forgive* him. Thou art a man of mercy.

25 I *must have* your receipt. I then consent to paying the money.

26 He *continued* staring at that elephant. He seemed not to have seen one before

27 The mountains increase in height The air proportionately *increases* in coolness

28 Men may behave well or ill in this life. Hereafter they *will* be blessed or miserable accordingly

29 He was not yet seventeen years old He *could* not at that age take possession of his estates

30 He may give me leave He may not *give* me leave I *shall* go back to my parents in either case

31 India fell under British rule It *has* always from that time forward *been* free from invasion

32 Every green thing *began* to wither The hot weather had set in

(d) Miscellaneous examples of simple sentences to be combined into Complex, Compound, or Mixed sentences The italicised verb shows the predicate-verb of the Principal clause The other clauses in each sentence are either Co-ordinate or Subordinate

1 The murder was proved The judge then *ordered* the man to be executed The man had been four days under trial (One co ordinate clause)

2 The supply of pasture often runs short The nomads of Tartary then *went* then abroad They search for new pasture elsewhere (One subordinate clause)

3 We heard the sad news We immediately *started* for the afflicted house There we found the mourners (One co ordinate clause)

4 They spoke in defence of their absent friend They *could* not have spoken better (One subordinate clause)

5 He behaved prudently under the circumstances Few men *would* have acted so prudently (One subordinate clause)

6 Suraj-ud-Donlah was defeated He fled from the field of battle His horse *could* not carry him more than a few miles His horse was of the purest Arab blood (Two subordinate clauses)

7 His difficulties become greater and greater He *shows* more and more energy (One subordinate clause)

8 I *will* visit your house in June next You have frequently asked me to do so I will not disappoint you any longer (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

9 The followers of Suraj ud Don'ah *diverted* him They hated his cruelty and vices They had often praised him to his face. (One subordinate clause)

10 Richard I, the king of England, *was* seized with remorse He had rebelled against his father The father at that time was an old man He was much attached to all his sons (One co ordinate clause)

11 I *am* very sorry He has lost all hope He has given up work He worked hard last year He has excellent abilities. (Two subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

12. I *left* him to his fate. He persisted in refusing help I offered

him help on all occasions On such occasions he needed it (Three subordinate clauses)

13 The ships *were* in the greatest danger They had not been sufficiently warned A violent storm was rising Yesterday the wind was calm (One co ordinate and two subordinate clauses)

14 He is attacked unjustly He is blamed for serious faults He has not been guilty of such faults He *becomes* for this reason very much vexed (One subordinate clause)

15 The prince cannot increase his forces He *must* first raise the money He cannot pay his men without this He cannot without this induce them to fight cheerfully for his cause (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

16 You may still perhaps succeed in your object You *must* persevere steadily Success is impossible without this (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

17 We expostulated with him He *could* not yield He kept to his own purpose This purpose was certain to work much mischief (Two co ordinate clauses)

18 He puts on a grave face At heart he *is* a foolish fellow No one trusts him He has disappointed us a hundred times already (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

19 The result may be of this kind or that We at least *are* now out of danger (One subordinate clause)

20 I *gave* the man the same instructions again and again I wished him to avoid making mistakes Mistakes at such a time might be fatal (Two subordinate clauses)

21 They *adopted* very decisive measures They wished to put an end to all further difficulties (A simple sentence)

22 We found that the worst dangers were over For this reason we *were* greatly relieved (One subordinate clause)

23 He was armed with a coat of mail Hence the blows of his assailants *had* no effect The blows fell thickly upon him (Two subordinate clauses)

24 You may open your eyes anywhere You *will* see on all sides signs of famine The famine has been caused by the want of seasonable rain (One subordinate clause)

25 He *kept* his class in good order Hence they did not all speak at once Only one spoke at a time The one who spoke, spoke in his proper turn (Three subordinate clauses)

26 He acts in a certain way From acting in that way he *seems* to be guilty (One subordinate clause)

27 The authors of this outbreak *are* disappearing They are melting away The mist in the same way melts before the sun Clouds in the same way are broken by the wind Leaves in the same way are scattered by the breeze (One co ordinate and three subordinate clauses)

28 He *wept* at the sad news A child would have wept in the same way (Two subordinate clauses)

29 The people *were* not ill prepared for war Every man had been trained to arms once in his life That was the law of the country That law was always faithfully observed (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

30 His sons and daughters *were* much distressed. He was led away before their eyes. They thought he was being led away to his death. (One subordinate clause)

31 They *were* much delighted. They saw him come back. He held in his hand the king's pardon. (A simple sentence)

32 The lion was let out of its cage for the amusement of the spectators. It *did* not then run at Androcles to devour him. It came up quietly. It fawned upon him. A dog fawns in the same way upon its master. It licked his hand. He had been kind to it in the forest. It remembered this. (Three co ordinate and two subordinate clauses)

33 I walked with him to the sea shore. The wind at that time *was* sighing mournfully around us. It seemed to sympathise in our sorrow at his leaving us so soon. (One subordinate and one co ordinate clause)

34 They had now finished their meal. They at once *resumed* their journey. They walked another ten miles. They then stopped and rested. (One co ordinate and two subordinate clauses)

35 The heretics could not be convinced of their error. Hence attempts *were* made to compel them to recant. The means used *were* fire and sword. All such attempts failed. The heretics remained unconvinced as before. (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

36 The dog could not enter the kennel. The hole *was* too small. It had been made for a smaller animal. The purchaser had not widened it. (Two co ordinate clauses)

37 There is no longer any fear of invasion. The army *may* be reduced. The ships *may* return into port. The sailors *may* go back to their homes. (One subordinate and two co ordinate clauses)

38 He is now an old man. He cannot learn. He could have learnt in his younger days. (One co ordinate clause)

39 The wind was strong. It drove the ship ashore. The ship *struck* into the sand. It remained fixed there for several days. (One co ordinate clause)

40 The town of Upsala *is* looked upon as an historic centre of this there is no doubt. Here the sanctuaries of Paganism once flourished. Many monuments of them still survive within and around the modern town. (Two co ordinate clauses)

41 For an hour he *continued* telling them stories of absorbing interest. They all had the element of mystery. All of them dealt with crimes. The crimes thus dealt with *were* atrocious. They were equally inexplicable. (Two co ordinate clauses and one subordinate)

42 I have devoted my life to teaching. To a man in my position there is something exciting in finding himself in sight of an ancient university. This *is* a fact. (Two subordinate clauses)

43 The next two months *were* most pleasantly spent in this lovely island. During that time we made many friends amongst the planters. We also enjoyed their hospitality. They are noted for being hospitable. (Two co ordinate and one subordinate clause)

44 Henceforth Axel's progress in his studies *was* surprising. In comparison with other boys he could devote little time to them. Considering this fact his progress *was* indeed surprising. (One subordinate clause)

45 Mr Merriman *left* the cottage. He crossed the river. He returned almost immediately. He was accompanied by five Dyaks. He had met them in the Chinese quarter. They had arrived there with a boat load of commodities collected from the jungle. (One coordinate clause and two subordinate clauses)

46 Marsupials are a kind of animal. They have pouches for carrying their young. They *were* once scattered all over the world. Most of them have long since become extinct. The survivors are thus confined to two quarters of the globe. One quarter is Australia. Here we find kangaroos, wombats, etc. The other quarter is a limited portion of America. Here we find only one small group. This group is the opossums. (Five clauses besides the principal)

47 In the opossums the pouch is very small. It is thus useless as a receptacle for the little ones. The mother carries these on her back. The mother carries as many as a dozen. Their tails are lashed round hers. (One clause besides the principal)

48 In former times there *was* a class of persons. They were called knights errant. They were clad in coats of mail. They rode about singly. One object was to fight with each other at tournaments. The other object was to redress the wrongs of persons. These persons sought their assistance. (Three clauses besides the principal)

49 (a) In those times two strong and valiant knights came from opposite directions. They met at a certain place. In that place a statue was erected. (One clause besides the principal) (b) In the arm of the statue *was* a shield. One side of the shield was of iron. The other side was of brass. The two knights approached the statue from opposite quarters. Each saw only one side of the shield. (Four clauses besides the principal) (c) They immediately *fell* into conversation in regard to the statue before them. One declared that the shield was made of iron. The other corrected him. It was made of brass according to his assertion. (Two clauses besides the principal)

50 (a) Two persons sometimes attempt to decide a dispute by fighting. One man may be right on the disputed question. The other may be wrong. To settle such a question by fighting is very absurd. You *will* think so. (Three clauses besides the principal) (b) But persons may be ignorant. They may be proud. They may be conceited. Among such people that mode of settlement *has been* a common practice in the history of mankind. A long and furious combat now ensued between the two knights. They fought earnestly over this petty question. They would not have fought more earnestly for their lives or honour. (This clause besides the principal) (c) They had fought for a long time. Both *were* at last exhausted. Both were unhorsed. Both lay bleeding on the ground. They then found out something new. It surprised and vexed them greatly. The sides of the shield were of different metals. They might have saved themselves the trouble of quarrelling and wounding each other for nothing. But they had not taken the trouble at first to look at both sides of the shield. (Five clauses besides the principal)

PART IV.—WORD-BUILDING AND DERIVATION

CHAPTER XXIV —COMPOUND WORDS

439 A word that cannot be reduced to a simpler form is called a *simple* or primary word, as, *join, good, drink, man, hope*. Such words are called also *Roots*.

440 When two Roots or Simple words are joined together, the word so formed is called a *compound* word, as *ink-pot, door-step, horse shoe, drinking-water*.

441 Compound words are subdivided into two classes —

I **Unrelated**, or those in which the Simple words are not connected together by any grammatical relation (These have been also called Juxta-positional)

II **Related**, or those in which there is some grammatical relation between the component words (These have been also called Syntactical)

I UNRELATED OR JUXTA-POSITIONAL COMPOUNDS

442 In all compounds of this class the word that stands *first* defines the one that stands *second* —

Thus "*horse-race*" means that kind of race which is ran by *horses*, and not by boats or by men or by anything else. But "*race horse*" means that kind of horse which is used for *running*, and not for ordinary riding or for drawing a carriage.

443 Nouns can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A noun preceded by another noun —

Oil-lamp, lamp oil, ear ring, ring-finger, rail-way, way-side, trap-door, door step, jaw bone, bone handle, sign post, post-man.

(2) A noun preceded by a Gerund —

Cooking stove, looking glass, drinking water, bathing place, spelling book, stepping stone, sealing wax, writing desk, walking stick, schooling fee, sticking plaster, blotting paper

Note — Sometimes for the sake of shortness the “ing” in the middle of the word has been dropped —

Wash house for washing-house, grind stone for grinding stone, tread mill for treading mill, stand point for standing point, store house for storing house, saw mill for sawing mill, workshop for working shop

(3) A noun preceded by an adverb (Such compounds must be classed as Unrelated, because adverbs do not qualify nouns see § 224 and page 276)

By word, by law, by path, under tone, under wood, up land, in land, in mate, in side, after glow after thought, after life, over dose, over coat, counter part, counter check

444 Adjectives can be made up in the following ways —

(1) An adjective or participle preceded by a noun The noun may denote —

(a) Some point of resemblance, as *milk-white*, that is, white like milk —

Snow white, blood red, coal black, sky blue, ice cold, stone blind, sea green

(b) Some point of reference, as *tongue-tied*, that is, tied in the tongue —

Air tight, water tight fire proof, head strong, heart broken, top heavy, colour blind, blood thirsty, penny wise

(c) The cause or source of the quality denoted by the adjective, as *home-sick*, that is, sick on account of home —

Bed ridden, purse proud, heaven born

(d) The extent or measure of the quality denoted by the adjective, as *skin-deep*, that is, as deep as the skin and no more —

World wide, breast high, life long

(2) A noun preceded by a noun The second noun must have *d* or *ed* at the end of it, as *eagle-eyed*, that is, one whose eye is like that of an eagle (see § 203)

Chicken hearted, hook nosed, ox tailed, web footed, cow houghed, dog faced, honey mouthed

(3) An adjective or participle preceded by an adjective

Here the adjective that stands *first* qualifies the one that stands second, as per § 442 (Such compounds come under the class of Unrelated, because in grammar an adjective qualifies a noun, and not another adjective)

Red hot, dark brown, bright blue, dead alive, luke warm, worldly wise, free spoken, fresh-made, ready-made, wide spread, thorough-bred, dear bought, fool hardy, full grown, high-born, thick set, new laid

445 Verbs can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A verb preceded by a noun —

To *hen peck*, said of a woman who annoys her husband, as a hen sometimes pecks a cock

To *brow beat*, to threaten or frighten a person with scowling and disdainful looks

To *top dress*, to dress or manure land on the surface without digging it in

To *back bite*, to bite any one at the back, hence to speak ill of him in his absence

To *hood wink*, to make a person wink or shut his eyes by throwing a hood over him, hence to deceive him by false words or false appearances

To *way lay*, to lie in wait for a man on the way, hence to stop a man on the road for an evil purpose

(2) A verb preceded by an adjective —

To *safe guard*, to guard a thing or person so as to make it safe

To *rough hew*, to hew wood into a certain shape, but so that it still remains rough and unfinished

To *white wash*, to wash or daub a wall with a liquid which gives it a white colour when it is dry

To *rough shoe*, more commonly used in the participial form "rough shod, shod with pointed shoes"

To *dumb found* or *dumb founder*, to confound or confuse a person so as to make him dumb. This is more commonly used in the participial form "dumb founded" or "dumb founded."

II RELATED OR SYNTACTICAL COMPOUNDS

446 Nouns can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A verb Transitive followed by its noun in the Objective case —

A tell-tale (one who tells tales, a snick), a cut throat, a pick pocket, a skin flint, a turn key, a pass time, a make shift, a stop gap, a break fast, a break-water

(2) A verb Transitive preceded by its noun in the Objective case (Here the suffix "er" is added to the verb.)

(a) *A Common noun signifying an agent* —

Shoe maker, man eater, tax payer, snake charmer, purse holder, brick layer, sooth sayer, rat catcher, fox hunter, screw-driver, pen wiper, engine driver, tax-gatherer, watch-maker

(b) *A Verbal or Abstract noun ending in "ing"* —

Shoe making, snake charming, watch making, engine driving, tax gathering, house building, etc

Note — Sometimes the "er" under (a) and the "ing" under (b) are omitted for the sake of shortness, as in *tooth pick* for *tooth picker*, *blood-shed* for *blood-shedding*, *hero worship* for *hero worshipping*

(3) *A verb qualified by an adverb (see § 238)*(a) *When the adverb precedes the verb* —

An out turn, an out look, an out fit, an up start, an in let, an in come, off spring, in oil set, an oil set, an out break

(b) *When the adverb is placed after the verb* —

A run away, a cast away, a break down, a break up, a keep sake, a fair well, a look up, a draw back, a stand still, a go between

Note — Some compounds of this class have two forms, *set off* or *off set*, *turn out* or *out turn*, *look out* or *out look*

(4) *A noun qualified by an adjective* —

A noble man, a half penny, a mad man, a strong hold, free trade, mid day, a sweet heart, dumb bells, proud flesh, low lands, quick silver, quick sand, etc

(5) *A noun qualified by a participle* —(a) *Present Participle* —

Humming bird, loving kindness, spinning top, finishing stroke

Note — Sometimes the final "ing" is dropped, as in *scream owl*, for *screaming owl*, *muck bird* for *mocking bird*, *glow worm* for *glowing-worm*

(b) *Past or Passive Participle* (Here the final "ed" is dropped)

Compound noun for compounded noun, hump back for humped back, lock jaw for locked jaw, char coal for charred coal, rack rent for racked rent, foster child for fostered child, skim milk for skimmed milk

(6) *A noun qualified by a Possessive noun (see § 286)*
(Here however the apostrophe *s* is dropped)

Sales-man (for sale's man), bats man, ours man, trades man, kins man, herds man, crafts man, bees wax, states man, sports-man, hunts-man

Note 1 — In the following words the apostrophe *s* has been retained — *stone's-throw*, *king's-bench*, *cat's-paw*, *heart's-ease*, *land's-end*,

The noun *spoke's-man* has been formed by a false analogy, as there is no such word as "spoke" for "speech."

Note 2 —The following compounds, since the first word does not take the Possessive form, belong to the class of Unrelated compounds — *boat-man, sea man, oil man, wood man, cart man, plough man, head-man, watch man, foe man, fire-man, horse man*

(7) A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun —

Washer-man, washer woman, he goat, she goat, man-servant, maid servant, gentleman farmer, child wife, lady doctor, peasant proprietor, barber surgeon, oak tree, boy magistrate

(8) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition —

After noon (that part of the day which comes after noon, or after twelve o'clock), fore noon (that part of the day which comes before noon)

447 Adjectives can be made up in the following ways —

(1) A noun preceded and qualified by an adjective (Here the participial suffix "ed" is added to the noun, as has been shown in § 203)

Evil hearted, hot headed, long tailed, one eyed, red coloured, long legged, bare footed, quick sighted, public spirited, thick skinned, sharp edged narrow minded

(2) A noun preceded and governed by the Present participle of some Transitive verb —

A *man eating* tiger, a *heart rending* sight, a *time serving* man, a *soul stirring* story, a *mind expanding* subject, a *self sacrificing* act

(3) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition —

An *over land* (over the land, and not by water) journey, an *under-hand* trick, *over time* work (work done beyond or over the time), *up hill* work, an *out of door* occupation

448 Verbs can be compounded with adverbs —

(a) When the adverb precedes the verb (Uncommon)

Back-slide, cross-question, over awe, over hear, under-state, under-value, over estimate, with hold, with draw

(b) When the verb precedes the adverb This is very common The two words are generally written separately, as *turn out, come on*, etc., but in *doff* (=do + off), and *don* (=do + on) they are amalgamated.

Exercise in Compound Words

Say whether each of the following compounds belongs to the class of *Related* or of *Unrelated*, and, if it belongs to the former, show what the grammatical relation is —

Uphill, single logged, lockjaw, outlet, bricklayer, pickpocket, hard fought, chicken hearted, penny wise, pound foolish, tread mill, sunstroke, shoe making, salem m, pastime, bloodshed, post man, whitewash backbite, underground, undergrowth, after life, afternoon, humpback, mock bird

CHAPTER XXV—PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

449 A Derivative word is called *Primary*, when it is formed out of some root or Primary word by making some change in the body of the root, as, *stride*, *stroke*

It is called *Secondary*, when some Prefix or Suffix or both are added to it

450 Nouns have been formed in the following ways —

(1) From verbs by changing the sound of the inside vowel

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
Bite	bit	Shut	shut	Bless	bliss
Write	writ	Snack	snack	Click	clerk
Gape	gap	Bur	bur	Crack	crack
Scrape	scrap	Dole	dole	Sit	seat
Skin	skin	Lot	lot	Sing	song
Say	saw *	Lend	loan	Shine	shin
Sell	sale	Lend	loan	Strike	stroke
Tell	tale	Drive	drive		

* Note —Here *saw* signifies a 'wise saying' or "maxim"

(2) From verbs by changing the sound, and sometimes the spelling also, of the last Consonant from flat to sharp

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
Dig	dig	Use	use	Grind	grind
Stick	stick	Advise	advice	Behove	behoof
Speak	speech	Practice	practice	Prove	proof

Similarly from the noun *arc* we get another noun of allied meaning *arch*

(3) From verbs by changing not only the sound of the last consonant, but also the sound or spelling of the *inside* vowel.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>
Lave	life	Lose	loss	Break	breach
Dig	dike	Hold	hilt	Weave	web, or
Cloth	cloth	Wake	watch		woof.
Choose	choice	Bake	batch	Seethe	sud

451 Adjectives have been formed from verbs or nouns by changing the vowel or last consonant of the root.

<i>Root</i>	<i>Adject</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Adject</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Adject</i>
Pride	proud	Flit	fleet	Fill	full
Heat	hot	String	strong	File (as in	} foul
Heal	hale	Wing	wrong	defile)	
Milk	milch	Wit	wise	Chill	cool

452 Verbs have been formed in the following ways —

(1) From nouns by changing the inside vowel —

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>
Blood	bleed	Chop	chip	Sniff	snuff
Brood	breed	Gold	gild	Sop	sip
Food	feed	Roll	roll	Rest	roost
Bond	bind	Whole	hcal	Shake	shock
Knot	knt	Chop	chip	Knoll	knoll

(2) From Nouns by changing the sound of the last consonant from sharp to flat —

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>
Bulk	bulge	Half	halve	Grease	grease
Dog	dodge	Calf	calve	House	house
Sooth	soothe	Thief	thieve	Shelf	shelve
Wreath	wreathc	Grief	grieve	Strife	strive

(3) From Nouns by changing not only the sound of the last consonant from sharp to flat, but also the sound or spelling of the inside vowel —

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>
Glass	glaze	Hook	hitch	Drag	diedge
Grass	graze	Brath	breathc	Clug*	clench
Bath	bathc	Hound	hunt	Wring*	wrench

* Note — These two words are verbs (not nouns) out of which other verbs have been formed

(4) From other verbs by prefixing some augment, as *s, t, c, g* —

Lash	slash	Plash	splash	Rumple	crumple.
Smash	smash	Quash	squash	Wag	swag
Melt	smelt	Rob	crib	Wing	swing
Nip	snip	Tumble	stumble	Whirl	swirl
Rumble	grumble	Twirl	switch		or twirl

(5) Intransitive verbs have received a Transitive or

Causal sense by changing the inside vowel, and sometimes the final consonant (see § 157) —

<i>Intrans</i>	<i>Trans</i>	<i>Intrans</i>	<i>Trans</i>	<i>Intrans</i>	<i>Trans.</i>
Quail	quell	Droop	drip or drop	Lie	lay
Drink	drinch			Stand	stay
Suck	soak	Stoop	stop	Cling	clenoh
Dip	dive	Sit	set	Rise	raise or rouse
Wend	wind	fall	fell		

CHAPTER XXVI—SECONDARY DERIVATIVES SUFFIXES AND PREFIXES

453 When a particle is added to the beginning or to the end of a root, or to both, the word so formed is called a **SECONDARY DERIVATIVE**, as, *un-man-ly*

Particles added to the *end* of a root are called **Suffixes**, as, "good," "good-*ness*"

Particles added to the *beginning* of a root are called **Prefixes**, as, "deed," "*mis* deed"

454 The three sources from which most of the Suffixes and Prefixes have come are —

I English itself

II Latin or French

III Greek

§ 1—ENGLISH SUFFIXES

Nouns

455 An Agent or Doer —

er *ar*, *or* *bak er*, *do or*, *bagg ar*, *li ar*, *tail or*, *sail-or*, *cloth-er*, *court-er*, *law y er*, *saw y er*

ster (*fem*) *spin ster* It is not feminine, but merely marks the agent in *song ster*, *malt ster*, *trick ster*, *young ster*, *huck ster*, etc

-en (*fem*) *vix en*, formerly the feminine of "fox", now denotes a cunning and spiteful woman

ard, *art* *cow ard*, *drunk ard*, *slugg ard*, *dot ard*, *bragg art* (This suffix implies excess and sometimes contempt)

-nd (*old ending of present participle*) *he nd*, *irre nd*, *erra-nd*, *wi nd*

ter, *ther*, *der* *daugh ter*, *fa ther*, *mo ther*, *spi der* (*spin-der*), *ru(d) der* (*from row*)

456 Abstract Nouns, marking *state*, *action*, *condition*

dom *wis dom*, *king dom*, *free dom*, *martyr-dom*, *serf-dom*.

hood, *head* *god head*, *man-hood*, *child hood*, *neighbour-hood*, *mother hood*, *widow hood*

-rie : bishop-*rie*. (This denotes jurisdiction.)

-ledge, -lock know *ledge*, wed *lock*

-ing : learn *ing*, writ-*ing*, walk *ing* (Gerundial Suffix.)

-ter laugh *ter*, slaugh *ter* (from *slay*)

-ness good *ness*, holi-*ness*, wit-*ness* (from *wis* or *wit*)

-red hat *red*, kind *red*

-ship, -scape friend *ship*, lord-*ship*, wor-*ship*, land *scape*

-th heal-*th*, steal *th*, bread *th*, dep *th*, wid-*th*, tru *th*, leng-*th*

-t, or -d heigh *t*, sigh *t*, dee *d* (from *do*), ou *d* (from *chew*)

457 Diminutives —

-en, on chick *en* (from *cock*), kitt *en* (from *cat*), maid-*en*, beac *on* (from *beck*), wag *on*

-ing faith-*ing*, tith *ing*, shill *ing*, whit *ing*, wild *ing*

-ling duck-*ling*, gos *ling*, dar *ling*, strip *ling*, suck *ling*, seed-*ling*, under *ling*, hure *ling* (Endearment, or contempt)

-kin lamb *kin*, tir *kin*, Peter *kin* or Per-*kin*, nap *kin*

-ock hill *ock*, bull *ock*, padd *ock* (from *park*),

-ie, y bird-*ie*, lass *ie*, bab *y*, dadd *y*, Will-*ie*, Ann *ie*, mann *i kin*, lamb *i kin* (Endearment) The last two are double diminutives

-el, le sack, watch *el*, coin, kⁱⁿ *el*, scythe, sick *le*, nave, nav *el*, spark, spark *le*, speck, speck *le*, freak, treck *le*

Note —In the following words these suffixes denote the means or result of some action —shov *el*, gard *le*, spind *le* from spin, shutt *le* from shoot, hand *le*, thumb *le* from thumb, sadd *le* from sit, sett *le* from sit or set, bund *le* from bind

458 Adjectives

ed (*like, having*) wretch *ed*, letter *ed*, land *ed*, gift *ed*, ragged

en (*made of*) wood *en*, birch *en*, cloth *en*, silk *en*, wax *en*

ful (*full of*) fear *ful*, play *ful*, hope *ful*, wil *ful*, truth *ful*

ish (*somewhat like*) girl-*ish*, whit *ish*, self *ish*, brut *ish*, snobb *ish*, wolf *ish*, pal *ish*, snapp *ish* (This suffix often implies contempt.)

ish (*nationality*) Engl *ish*, Span *ish*, Turk *ish*

ly (*like*) god *ly*, love *ly*, king *ly*, sick *ly*, kind *ly*, friend-*ly*

like god *like*, war-*like*, lady *like*, business *like*

-less (*without*) shame *less*, house *less*, hope *less*, cease-*less*, sleep *less*, cause *less*, resist-*less*, worth *less*

-y (*pertaining to, abounding in*) hill *y*, storm *y*, bush *y*, rock-*y*, wool-*y*, smok *y*, wood *y*, trust *y*, feather *y*

-some (*full of, inclined to*) game *some*, win *some*, burden-*some*, trouble *some*, hand *some*, frolic *some*, quarrel *some*

-ward (*turning to*) fro *ward*, south *ward*, down *ward*, for-*ward*, way-*ward*, heaven *ward*, home *ward*

-teen, ty (*ten*) nine *teen*, twen *ty*, thir *teen*, etc

-th (*order*) six *th*, seven *th*, etc

-fold (*repeated*) two *fold*, man^y *fold*, hundred *fold*

-era (*direction to*) east-*ern*, north *ern*, etc.

459 Adverbs

ly (*like*) god-*ly*, miser *ly*, bad-*ly*, on *ly*

ling, -long (*wise, -ways*) head *long*, dark-*ling*, side *long*

meal (*division*) *piece-meal*, *inch meal*, *lamb meal* (Shaks)
-ward, wards (*turning to*) *for ward*, *up wards*, *down-wards*
N B —The adv is usually formed by "*wards*", the adj by "*ward*"
-wise (*manner, mode*) *other wise*, *no wise*, *like wise*
-way, -ways *al-ways*, *straight way*, *any way*, *no way*
s, ce *need s*, *twi ce*, *beside s*, *el se*, *on ce* (sign of Possessive)
n *whē n*, *the n-ce*, *he-n ce* (I here are two suffixes in *thence*, *hence*)
-om *scid om*, *whil om* (This way once a case-ending)
re *whē re*, *the re*, *he re*
ther *whi ther*, *thi ther*, *hi ther*

Verbs

460 Frequentative (sometimes in diminutive sense) —

k *tal k* from *tell*, *hai k* from *hear*, *stal k* from *steal*
le, l *dibb le*, *spark le*, *start le*, *kneel*, *crack le*, *shuff le*, *cack le*,
wrigg le, *pratt le*, *daw-le*, *draw l*, *nubb le*, *sniv el* (from sniff)
er *lung er* from *long*, *flutt er* from *flit*, *talt er* from *fall*, *clamb er*
from *climb*, *shimin er* from *shine* *ghitt er* from *glint*, *sputt er* from
spit, *hank er* from *hang*, *spatt er* from *spot*
on, om, m *bloss om* from *blow*, *glac m* from *glow*, *scu-m* from
sew, *reck on*, *blaz on*

461 Causative or Factitive —

en *fatt en*, *short en*, *length en*, *gladd en*, *black en*, *thick en*

§ 2 — ENGLISH PREFIXES

462 A (*on, in*) *a bud*, *a shore*, *a sleep*, *a way*, *a stu*
A- (*off, up, from*) *a rise*, *a wake*, *a man*, *a light*, *a rouse*, *a-new*
Intensive — *a music*, *a wary*, *a shamed*, *a cursed*
Al (*all*) *al one*, *al one*, *al most*, *al so*, *al ready*, *al together*
At (*to*) *at one*, *at one ment*
Be (*by*) (1) It forms Transitive verbs *be calm*, *be dew*, *be friend*,
be ht, *be dew*, *be moan*, *be numb*, *be guilt*, *be fool*, *be night*
(2) It gives an intensive force to verbs *be drub*, *be smear*, *be seech*,
be get, *be stir*, *be sprinkle*, *be stow*, *be take*, *be duck*
(3) It forms a part of some nouns, adverbs, and prepositions *be-*
half, *be quick*, *be low*, *be neath*, *be sides*, *but*, *be fore*, *be tween* (twain)
Note — In the word "*be head*" this "*be*" has a privative sense
By (*on the side*) *by path*, *by word*, *by stander*, *by election*
For (*through, thorough*) *for give*, *for give*, *for-bear*, *for-sake*, *for bid*
Fore (*before*) *fore cast*, *fore tell*, *fore see*, *fore head*, *fore lock*, *fore*
thought, *fore runner*, *fore stall*, *fore man*, *fore ground*, *fore leg*
Forth *forth coming*, *for ward*, *forth with*
Gain (*against*) *gain say* (speak or say against)
In *in-to*, *in sight*, *in land*, *in let*, *in mate*
Mis (*wrongly*) *mis deed*, *mis lead*, *mis take*, *mis judge*, *mis lay*
N- (*negative*) *n one*, *n either*, *n ever*, *n or*
On *on set*, *on slaught*
Out *out cast*, *out side*, *out landish*, *out look*, *out come*, *out let*, *out-*
break, *out post*, *out house*, *out cry*

It makes Intransitive verbs Transitive *out-live* (=live beyond), *out run* (=run ahead of), *out shine* (surpass in brightness), *out-vote* (=defeat by votes), *out weigh*

Over- (*above, beyond*) *over eat, over flow, over hear, over coat, over-charge, over step, over awe, over look*

To (*to, for*) *to day, to night, to-gether, to ward, un-to ward, to-morrow*

Un (*not*) *un truth, un real, un wise, un told, un ripe*

Un (*back*) *un bolt, un-tie, un-lock, un twine, un do*

Note—In the word “*un loose*,” the “*un*” is merely intensive

Under *under go, under stand, under hand, under ling, under-neath, under mine, under-sell, under take*

Up *up right, up ward, up on, up lands, up hold, up shot*

Well (*in good state*) *well fare, well-come*

With- (*against, back*) *with draw, with hold, with stand*

§ 3—LATIN AND FRENCH SUFFIXES

Nouns

463 Agent —

ain, en, an *capt ain, chief en, guardi an, citiz en, librari an, ary, ar, aire* *dignit ar, mission ary, secret ary, vic ar, schol ar, million air, doctum air*

-ee, y *trust ee, devot ee, pay ee, deput y, jur y, liv y, attorn ey*

Note—These words have a *Passive* signification. Thus “*trust ee*” means one who is trusted “*jur y*” means one who is sworn. But there is no *Passive* meaning in the words “*absent ee*” (one who is absent), “*refug ee*” (one who has taken refuge)

eer, ier *engin eer, auction eer, volunt eer, sold eer, financ eer*

-our, eur, or, er *savi our, empti or, govern or, preach er, robb er, act or, doct or, monit or, cens or, ancest or, amat eur*

trix (*fem*) *even trix, testa trix, prosecu trix*

ess (*fem.*) *song str ess, poet ess, tigr ess, hon ess*

ive, iff *capt ive, fugit ive, nat ive, plaint iff, cart iff*

ant, ent *merch ant, serv ant, stud ent, presid ent, parti ent*

-ate, -ite, it *candid ate, advoc ate, Israel ite, Jesu it*

464 Abstract Nouns —

age *bond age, com age, hom age, mairi age, pilgrim age*

Cost of action *post age, freight age, broker age, halt age*

Result of action *break age, leak age, mess age, pull age*

ance, ence *disturb ance, endur ance, repent ance, obedi ence*

innoc ence, abs ence, pres ence, depend ence, dilig ence, pati ence

ancy, -ency *const ancy, brilli ancy, ten ancy, excell-ency, rug ency,*

ing ency, frequ ency, insolv ency, emerg ency, innoc ency

ess, ice, ise *serv ice, larg ess, rich ess, prow ess, merchand ise,*

exerc ise, just ice, pract ice, coward ice, avar ice, not ice

tion, son, som *benedic tion, beni son, por tion, poi son, redemp-*

tion, ran-som, ora-tion, ori son, tradi-tion, trea son

sion *conver-sion, cohe sion, occa sion, compul sion, proces sion,*

illu-sion, man sion, colli sion, confu sion, admis sion

lence . pesti-lence, vio lence, viru lence, turbu-lence, opu-lence
 ment conceal-ment, enchant ment, nourish-ment, nutri-ment.
 mony cere mony, acri mony, matri-mony, testi-mony
 -our, -or fav our, hon our, err or, langu or, col our
 -sur grand sur, liqu sur (The last is not an abstract noun.)
 ry, ery chival ry, poet ry, slav ery, treach-ery, cook ery
 tude longi tude, apti tude, alti tude, multi tude, servi-tude
 -ure creat ure, veid-urr, meas-ure, vest-ure, seiv ure, agricult-ure
 -y harmon y, stud y, victor y, miser y, industr y, env y
 ity, ty fals ity, real ity, cruel ty, frail ty, boun ty, un ity
 -al, als refus al, propos al tri al, nupti als, credent als
 -acy priv acy, accur acy, intlic acy, obstin acy, intim acy

465 Collectives, Nouns of Place —

ery, ry machin ery, caval ry, jewel ry, gent ry, tenant-ry, in
 fant ry, station ery, shrubb ery, bak ery, comet ery, spic ery, lock-ery
 ary, arium libr ary, gran ary, semin ary, sanctu ary, gloss-ary,
 diction ary, sinit arium, aqu arium
 ory fact ory, doimut ory, aim ory, territ ory, observat ory
 age assembl age plum age, foli age, vill age, hermit age, cott-age
 -ade colonn ade, balustr ade, caval ade, brig ade, crus ade

466 Diminutives —

aster poet aster, oli aster
 el, le duns el, east le, mod el, citad el, mois el, parc el
 icole, cule art icle, part icle, animal icle, curr icole, curr iculum,
 cut icle, corpus cle, pinna cle, cod icle, domi cle
 icle glob icle, pill icle, nod icle, caps icle
 et, let lock el, lanc el, pock el tick el, turi el, coron el, thick el,
 brace let, steam let, brook let, leaf let, rivu let, ring let, root-let
 ot fagg ot, chan ot, parr ot, magg ot, ball ot, piv ot
 ette etiqu ette, statu ette, cigar ette, waggou ette, bruu ette

467 Adjectives

al joy-al leg al, roy al, rig al, equ al, mort al, vit al
 an, ane, ain hum an, hum ain cit ain, pig an, Rom an
 ar sol ar, lun ar, regul ar, singul ar, vulg ar, vernacul ar
 -ant, ent vac-ant, indign ant, ramp ant, pati ent, innoc ent,
 curr ent, confid ent, tru ant, vagr ant
 ary, arious, arian contr ary, ordin ary, necess ary, tempor-ary,
 solit ary, nei arious, greg arious, agr arian, humanit arian
 ate fortun ate, separ ate, desol ate, priv ate, accur-ate
 ble, able sta ble, ter ble, turri ble, mov able, laugh-able, eat-able
 (edi ble), service able, lov able, drink able (Generally in a Passive
 sense)
 -ese Chin ese, Malt ese, Burm ese, Siam ese, Portugu ese, Geno-ese.
 -ile serv ible, frag ible, doc ible, puer ible, fac ible, juven ible
 eel, il, le gent eel, gent le, civ il, lia ible, cru el, subt le
 -ine div ine, infant ine, leon ine, can-ine, clandest-ine
 -ian Austral ian, Ind-ian, Christ ian
 -ive act ive, capt ive, sport-ive, relat-ive, nat ive, posit ive.

-ous, -ous verb-ous, joc-ous, monstr-ous, danger-ous, glori-ous,
ponder-ous, dexter-ous, courte-ous
-ory, -orious compulsi-ory, transit-ory, curs-ory, dilat-ory, lab-
or-ous, cons-orious (Generally in an *Active* sense)
-ble, -ple dou-ble, tre-ble, sim-ple, tri-ple
-ic, -ique publi-c, rust-ic, un-ique, obl-ique, ant-ique
-lent pesti-lent, vio-lent, turbu-lent, fraudu-lent, corporu-lent
-fic- terri-fic, horri-fic, beati-fic, sopori-fic, honori-fic (*Active* sense)
-escent conval-escent, efferv-escent, incand-escent
-aneous simult-aneous, instant-aneous, contempor-aneous
-erious delet-erious
-id ac-id, pall-id, squal-id, rig-id, plau-id, morb-id
-ite oppos-ite, favour-ite, Vishnu-ite, exquis-ite
-ete, -et compl-ete, obsol-ete, discr-ete, discr-et
-bund, bund, bond iubi-cund, mori-bund, vaga-bond

468 Verbs

ate agit-ate, captiv-ate, moder-ate, stimul-ate, cre-ate
ish fin-ish, nour-ish, pun-ish, publ-ish, van-ish
fy magni-fy, signi-fy, simpli-fy, modi-fy, terri-fy (*Transitive*)
ite, it exped-ite, cold-it, met-it, inhab-it
-esce efferv-esce, cold-esce (*Denote* growing or becoming)

§ 4 —GREEK SUFFIXES

Nouns

469 Agent —

-ot patri-ot, zeal-ot, idi-ot (big-ot, doubtful)
-ist dent-ist, the-ist, egot-ist, alarm-ist, extrem-ist, optim-ist
-ast enthusi-ast, iconocl-ast
-ic heret-ic, script-ic, crit-ic, cler-ic (=clerk)

470 Abstract Nouns —

-ic, -ics log-ic, mag-ic, mus-ic eth-ics, mathemat-ics, polit-ics
-ism patriot-ism, barbar-ism, magnet-ism, the-ism, critic-ism
-asm enthusi-asm, pleon-asm, saic-asm, ch-asm
-sis, -sy, -se drop-sis, pal-sy, paraly-sis, bac-sis, ecchips-esis, ellipsis
-y monarch-y, philosoph-y, democrac-y, energ-y

471 Diminutives —

-ish, -esque aster-ish, obel-ish, statu-esque, burl-esque

472 Adjectives

ic dramat-ic, cosm-ic, com-ic, trag-ic, polit-ic
-esque arab-esque, grot-esque, pictur-esque

473 Verbs

-ise, -ize civil-ize, scrutin-ize, fertil-ize, real-ize, theor-ize

§ 5 —LATIN AND FRENCH PREFIXES

474 A-, ab-, abs- (*away from*) ab-hor, ab-use, ab-surd, ab-nor-
mal, ab-stract, abs-ent, abs-cund, abs-tain, a-vert, a-voul-

Ad- (to) By assimilation *ac*, *af*, *ag*, *al*, *an*-, *ap*-, *ar*-, *as*, *at*-,
ad-vice, *ad* join, *ad* monish, *ad* ore, *ad* here, *ad* opt
ac custom, *ac* cept, *ac* cede, *ac* cent, *ac* cuse, *ac* quire, *ac* know-
ledge

af-ford, *af* fix, *af* fiction, *af* filiate, *af* fair, *af*-firm
ag grieve, *ag* gravate, *ag* gregate, *ag* gressor, *ag*-grandise
al lege, *al* lot, *al* lure, *al* low, *al* lay, *al* leviate
an nounce, *an* nex, *an* noy, *an* nul, *an* nihilate
ap-proach, *ap* peal, *ap* peal, *ap* point, *ap* pease *ap* pri
ar rive, *ar* rears, *ar* rest, *ar* rogant *ar* ray, *ar* range
as sent, *as* sert, *as* sume, *as* certain, *as* sail, *as* sets
at-tend, *at* tun, *at* tinct, *at* tach, *at* tempt, *at* tack
a spect, *a* scribe, *a* spire (here the *d* has been lost)

Ambi-, amb, **am** (around) *ambi* dexterous, *amb* ition, *am*-
putate

Ante, anti (before) *ante* chamber, *ante* cedent, *anti* cipate

Bene (well) *bene* fit, *bene* volent, *bene* diction, hence *bene* izon

Bi, bis, bin *bi* ped, *bis* eunt, *bi* sect, *bi* annual, *bin* ocular

Circum, circu (around), *circum* licence, *circu* it, *circum* stance

Com, con, co (with) by assimilation, *col*, *cor*, *cog*, *cto*

Com pete, *com* bit, *com* mune, *com* part, *com* mand

Con tend, *con* trive, *con* fluit, *con* cern, *con* fluence

Co alesce, *co* hen, *co* habit, *co* eternal, *co* exist

Col lapse, *col* lege, *col* lect, *col* lague, *col* lision

Cor rupt, *cor* rect, *cor* rods, *cor* respond, *cor* roborate

Cog nate, *cog* nize, *cog* nition

Coun sel, *coun* cil, *coun* tenance

Contra, contro, counter (against) *contra* dict, *count*er act,
contra st, *contro* versy, *count*erfeit, *count*er part, *count*er sign

De (down) *de* part, *de* scend, *de* form, *de* ter, *de* merit

„ (reversal) *de* bark, *de* camp, *de* thron, *de* tach

Dis, di, dif (apart, not) *dis* honour, *dis* please, *dis* sever, *dis*
locate, *dis* like, *dis* vers, *dis* diminish, *dis* gest, *dis* fi, *dis* ficult

Dis (reversal) *dis* close, *dis* mount, *dis* aim, *dis* appear, *dis* con
tinue

Ex, e, ef (out of, from) *ex* alt, *e* lect, *ex* pel, *ex* amine, *e* ducate,
ex fort, *ex* fulgent, *ex* fresser, *ex* king, dethroned king

Extra (beyond) *extra* ordinary, *extra* work, *extra* ngui

In, en, em (in, into, on) *in* vent, *in* vade, *in* pose, *em* press,
in pute, *in* lusion, *in* raption, *in* rigate, *en* tice, *em* ploy, *em* brace,
em bark, *em* barrass. *In* close or *en* close, *in* dors or *en* dors, *in*
quire or *en* quire, *in* trust or *en* trust, *in* twine or *en* twine, *in* circle
or *en* circle, *in* bitter or *em* bitter

Note—This prefix, placed before a noun or adjective, makes a
Transitive verb—*in* dear, *en* rich, *en* large, *en* slave, *en* title, *em*
body, *in* peril, *en* danger

In (not) *in* firm, *in* tant (not speaking), *in* noble, *in* legal, *in*
pious, *in* regular, *in* rational, *in* nominy, *in* literate, *in* passive

Note—The Latin “*in*” and the English “*un*” are so much alike,
that some words are spelt both ways—*in* frequent or *un* frequent,
in cautious or *un* cautious, *in* stable or *un* stable

Inter, intro-, enter- (within) *inter*-course, *inter*-preter, *inter*-

rupt, *inter-pose*, *intro duce*, *intro spection*, *enter tain*, *enter-prise*,
intel lect

Juxta- (*near*) *juxta-position*

Male-, **mal** (*ill, badly*) *male factor*, *mal treat*, *mal ignorant*

Mis (from Lat *minus*, less) *mis chief*, *mis fortune*, *mis-conduct*,
mis-named, *mis use*, *mis calculate*

Ne, **neg** *ne farious*, *neg lect*, *neg ative*

Non- (*not*) *non sense*, *non existent*, *non ago*, *non-compliance*

Note — "Non" is much less emphatic than "in" or "un" Compare "non-christian" and "un christian", "non professional" and "un professional", etc

Ob (*in front of, against*) *ob ject*, *ob stinate*, *oc cupy*, *oc casion*,
of fer, *of fend*, *op pose*, *op press*

Per-, **pal-** (*through*) *per forci*, *per spire*, *per form*, *pel lucid*

Pene (*almost*) *pen insula*, *pen ultimate*

Post (*after*) *post date*, *post script*, *post pone*, *post humour*

Pre (*before*) *pre dict*, *pre caution*, *pre pare*, *pre judice*

Preter (*beyond*) *preter natural*, *preter ite*

Pro, **por**, **pol**, **pur** (*forth*) *pro ject*, *pro pose*, *pro noun*, *pro-mise*, *por-tend*, *pol lute*, *pur-pose*, *pur sue*, *pur port*, *pur-loin*

Re, **red** (*back, again*) *re join*, *re act*, *re new*, *red cem*, *red ound*,
red undant

Note — The insertion of a hyphen alters the meaning Compare "recover" and "re cover", "rejoin" and "re join", "redress" and "re dress", "reform" and "re form", "recollect" and "re col-lect", "recount" and "re count", "return" and "re turn"

Retro- (*backward*) *retro spect*, *retro grade*, *retro cession*

Se-, **sed-** (*apart*) *se clude*, *se parate*, *sed ition*, *se cret*, *se cure*

Semi, **demi** (*half*) *semi circle*, *demi god*, *demi official*

Sine (*without*) *sine curi*

Sub (*under*) *sub ject*, *suc cour*, *suc cess*, *suf fer*, *suf fice*, *sug gest*,
sub committee, *sub tain*, *sub pend*, *sub port*, *sub reptitious*

Note — In words like "sub tropical" the "sub" means "rather" In words like "sub judge" the "sub" denotes an officer of lower rank

Super-, **sur** (*above, over, beyond*) *super structure*, *super ficial*,
sur vive, *sur pass*, *sur vive*

Subter (*beneath*) *subter fuge*

Trans-, **tra** (*across*) *trans figure*, *trans gress*, *trans form*, *trans it*,
trans mit, *trans late*, *trans parent*, *tra verse*, *tra dition*, *tra duce*

Tri (*three*) *tri angle*, *tri literal*, *tri nity*

Ultra (*beyond*) *ultra liberal*, *ultra marine*

Vice, **vis** (*instead of*) *vice regent*, *vis count*, *vice-roy*

Quasi (*pretence*) a *quasi judge* (a sham or pretended judge)

Quondam (*formerly*) a *quondam judge* (a former judge)

475 Disguised Prefixes (Latin or French)

Ante- (*before*) *an cestor* for *ante cessor*

Bi (*twice*) *ba lance*

Con, **co** (*together*) *con sum*, *con sery* (verb), *co-ver*, *co-venant*,
co-unt (verb and noun), *con-eh*, *co st*

Dis, **di** (*apart*) *des cant*, *des-patch* (or *dis patch*), *de-feat*, *de-luge*

Ex-, e- (out) *a* mend (but *e* mendation), *a*-bash, *a*-fraid, *a*-ward, *as* tonish, *es* cape, *es*-cheat, *e*-say, *is* sue, *s* ample, *s*-carce, *s* corch.

Extra (outside) *stra* nge, *stra*-nger

Enter- (within) *entr*-ails

In (not) *en* emy (hence adj *in* imical)

Juxta- (near) *joust*

Non- (not) *um* pure (old French, *nom* per)

Per (through) *par* don, *par* amount, *par* son, *per* gram

Post (after) *pu* ny

Pre (before) *pre* ach, *pro* vost

Re (back) *re*-dor, *r* ansom, *r* ally

Retro (back) *rea* guard

Sub (under) *so* journ, *sub* den, *s* ombre

Super (above) *sopr* uo, *sovr* eign (older spelling, *sovr* an).

Trans (across) *tr*ans, *tre* ason, *tra* sic

Ultra (beyond) *out* agi

§ 6 —GREEK PREFIXES

476 Amphi (about, on both sides) *amphi* theatre, *amphi*-bious

An, am, a (not, without, like English *an*) *an* archy, *a*-theism, *a* pathy, *am* brusal, *a* trophy, *an* omalous

Ana, an (up to, against) *ana* tomy, *ana* logy, *ana*-lysis, *an* curism

Anti-, ant (against) *anti* podes, *anti* pathy, *ant* agonist

Apo-, aph (from) *apo* logy, *apo*-state, *apo* strophe, *aph* orism

Arch-, archi- (chief, head) *arch* heretic, *arch* enemy, *arch* test

Auto, auth (self) *auto* graph *auto* biography, *auth* entic

Cata, cath, cat (down) *cata* lect, *cath* edral, *cata* strophe, *cat*-echism

Dia (through) *dia* meter, *dia* logue, *dia* dem, *dia* gonial

Di- (in two) *di*-syllable, *di*-phthong, *di* kuma

Dys (ill) *dys* pptic, *dys* entery

Ec, ex (out, from) *ex*odus, *ec* centric, *ex*lipse, *ec*logue

En (in) *en*thusiasm, *em*phasis, *el*ipsis, *en*commum

Eu, ev (well) *eu*phony, *eu*phrasmi, *ev*angelist

Epi, eph, ep (upon) *epi*gram, *ep*och, *epi*taph, *eph*emeral, *epi*stle

Endo (within) *endo*gamous, *endo*genous

Exo (without) *exo*gamous, *exo*tic

Hemi (half) *hemi*sphere

Hepta, hept (seven) *hepta*gon, *hept*archy

Hetero- (different) *hetero*dox, *hetero*genous

Hexa (six) *hexa*meter

Homo, hom (same) *homo*geneous, *hom*onym

Hyper (above) *hyper*-bole, *hyper*-critical

Hypo, hyph (under) *hypo*crite, *hypo*thesis, *hyp*hen

Meta, meth, met (after, substitution) *meta*phor, *meth*-od, *met*-onymy

Mono, mon- (single, alone) *mono*graph, *mon*-archy, *mon*-astery, *mon*k

Pan, panto- (all) *pan*theist, *pan*oply, *pan*-orama, *panto*mime

Para, par- (beside) *para*phrase, *para*ble, *par*allel, *para*rite

Penta- (*five*) *penta* meter, *penta* polis
Peri- (*around*) . *peri*-meter, *peri*-phrasis, *peri*-od
Poly- (*many*) *poly* syllable, *poly*-theist, *poly* glot.
Pro- (*before*) *pro*-gramme, *pro*-logue, *pro*-phet, *pro* bascis
Pseudo-, *pseud* (*false*) *pseudo*-critic, *pseud* onym
Syn (*with*) *syn*-thesis, *syn* tax, *syn* pathy, *syl*-lable, *sys*-tem.
Tele (*afar*) *tele*-graph, *tele*-phone, *tele* gram
Tri (*thrice, or three*) *tri* pod, *tri*-syllable, *tri* sect

477 *Some General Results*

(a) List of Prefixes and Suffixes denoting the possession of some quality in a moderate degree —

ish, English suffix *black ish* (rather black), *sweet ish* (rather sweet)

ly, English suffix *clean ly* (disposed to be clean), *sick ly* (liable to be sick at times)

Sub, Latin prefix *sub* acid (rather acid), *sub* tropical (almost or slightly tropical)

(b) List of Prefixes signifying the reversal or undoing of something done —

Un, English prefix *un* bolt, *un* tie, *un* lock, *un* told

Dis, or **di**, Latin prefix *dis* mount, *dis* appear, *dis* arm

De, Latin prefix *de* throne, *de* camp, *de* tach

(c) List of Prefixes and Suffixes denoting a negative —

Un, English prefix *un* happy, *un* safe, *un* ready

less, English suffix *hap less*, *law less*, *hope less*

N, English prefix *n* on, *n* ever, *n* either, *n* or

For, English prefix *for* bid

Dis, **di**, Latin prefix *dis* quiet (opposite to quiet), *dis* content (not easy), *dis* content (not content), *dis* honour

In, Latin prefix *in* human, *in* regular, *in* mortal, *in* legible

Ne-, **neg**, **non**, Latin prefix *ne* furious, *ne* glect, *non* sense

A-, or **an**, Greek prefix *a* pathy, *an* archy, *an* brosis

(d) List of Suffixes indicating the Feminine gender —

ster, English suffix *spin ster*

en, English suffix *vir en*

ess, French suffix *lion ess*, *temple ess*, *tiger ess*

(e) List of Prefixes indicating something bad —

Mis, English prefix (from *mas*) *mis* take, *mis* deed, *mis* hap

Male, **mal**, Latin prefix *male* factor, *mal* treat

Mis-, Latin prefix (from *minus*) *mis* use, *mis*-fortune

Dys, Greek prefix *dys* entery, *dys* pepsia

(f) List of Prefixes indicating something good —

Well, English prefix *well* fare, *well* come, *well* being

Bene-, Latin prefix *bene*-volent, *bene* fit, *bene*-diction

Eu-, Greek prefix *eu*-phemism, *eu* angelist, *eu* phony

(y) List of Prefixes and Suffixes by which Transitive verbs can be formed from an adjective or noun —

Be, English prefix *be* friend, *be* calm, *be* mean, *be* little

en, English suffix *dark-en*, *length-en*, *hast-en*, *lik-en*

In, **en**, Latin and French prefixes *in-peril*, *en-dear*, *em-* or *im-bitter*

-fy, Latin suffix *magnify*, *modify*, *stupefy*

ise or **ize**, Greek suffix *human-ise*, *brutal-ise*, *galvan-ise*

478 Latin and Greek equivalent Prefixes

Latin	Greek	Meaning
Ambi , amb ignous	Amphi , amphi bious	On both sides
Ab , ab solute	Apo , apo logy	From
Ex , ex amine	Ec , ec stacy	Out of
In , in unction	En , Em , em phanis	Into
Semi , demi , demi god	Hemi , hemi sphere	Half
Super , super vise	Hyper , hyper bole	Above
Sub , sub stantive	Hypo , hypo thesis	Under
Pro , pro portion	Pro , pro phet	Before or for
Tri , tri angle	Tri , tri pod	Thrice

I Show the difference of meaning in each of the following pairs of abstract words formed with different suffixes—

(a) *English suffixes* —

Dearth, dearthness Drought, dryness Sloth, slowness Slight, alyness. Truth, trueness Hardness, hardihood Witness, wisdom

(b) *Latin suffixes* —

(1) Impress ment, impress ion, (2) content ment, content ion, (3) degener at ion, degener acy, (4) creat ure, creat ion, (5) post ure, position, (6) eject ment, eject ion, (7) stat ure, stat ion, (8) impost-ure, impost ion, (9) fract ure, fract ion, frag ment, (10) serv-itude, serv ice, (11) intim at ion, intim acy, (12) acquitt ance, acquitt al, (13) depart ment, depart ure, (14) apparit ion, appear ance, (15) fixt ure, fix ity, (16) compos ure, compos ition, (17) admitt ance, admiss ion, (18) vac ancy, vacat ion, (19) expos ure, expos ition, (20) dispos al, disposit ion, (21) observ ance, observ ation, (22) committ al, commiss ion, (23) benefact ion, benefic ence, (24) continu ance, continuat ion, (25) propos al, propos ition, (26) signific ance, signific ation, (27) destin y, destin ation

(c) *Latin and English suffixes* —

(1) Exact ness, exact ion, (2) appropriate ness, appropriat ion, (3) apt ness, apt itude, (4) lax ity, lax ness, (5) pall or, pale ness, (6) human ity, humane ness, (7) secure ness, secur ity, (8) remiss ness, remiss ion, (9) quiet-ude, quiet ness, (10) close-ness, clos-ure; (11) direct ion, direct ness, (12) just ness, just ice, (13) till age, tilth, (14) proceed-ure, proceed ing, (15) complete ness, complet ion, (16) distinct ness, distinct-ion, (17) false hood, fals-ity

(d) *Greek and Latin suffixes* —

Fatalism, fatal-ity Barbarism, barbar-ity Vulgarism, vulgar-ity. Communism, commun-ity Formalism, formal-ity

II *Give the difference of meaning, if any, in each of the following pairs of adjectives formed with different suffixes* —

(1) Temporal, temporary, (2) industrial, industrious, (3) virtual, virtuous, (4) official, officious, (5) sensual, sensuous, (6) continual, continuous, (7) popular, populous, (8) verbal, verbose, (9) momentary, momentous, (10) innocent, innocuous, (11) beneficial, beneficent, (12) notable, notorious, (13) ordinal, ordinary, (14) elemental, elementary, (15) sensitive, sensible, (16) illusive, illusory, (17) sanitary, (18) imperial, imperious

III *Substitute a single word (an adjective) for the words printed below in italics* —

- (a) This writing is *such as cannot be read*
- (b) The plan you mention *cannot be put into practice*
- (c) He is *one who cannot according to the rules be elected*
- (d) That herb is *fit to be eaten*
- (e) The colour is *beyond my perception*
- (f) You are *liable to be called to account for your actions*
- (g) The plan you propose is *open to objection*
- (h) That word is *no longer in use*
- (i) This is a *bird of passage*
- (j) Your office is *one for which no salary is paid*
- (k) His motive was *merely to get some money*
- (l) His position was *beyond all hope of improvement*
- (m) His manners are *more like those of a woman than of a man*
- (n) He is *one who takes no trouble about his work*
- (o) His style is *too full of words*
- (p) He is *inclined to find fault*
- (q) A wolf is *an animal that cannot be tamed*
- (r) That problem is *one which is never likely to be solved*
- (s) His character has *an evil reputation*
- (t) The use of opium is *likely to do much injury*

IV *To each of the verbs, nouns, or adjectives given below, add the appropriate abstract suffix or suffixes* —

Seize, coward, right, grand, eri, miser, apt, victor, repent, acrid, just, merchant, trick, pass, seize, try, judge, compel, admit, regent, bankrupt, accurate, poor, rely, captive, fragile, facile, felon, sole, assist, scarce, secret, defy, pater (father), real.

V *Form Diminutive nouns out of the following by adding to each of them its appropriate Diminutive suffix* —

Animal, code, pouch, brook, poet, cigar, vase, lance, globe, mode, pill, bull, car, cellar, statue, part, song, sign, table, home, wag, hump, park, maid, cut, lamb, hull, change, bird, lad, scythe, corn, freak

VI Point out the six different senses of the suffix "age" as exemplified in the following words —

Herbage, hermitage, courage, postage, breakage, personage

VII Describe the four uses of the suffix "en" as exemplified in the following words —

Maiden, flaxen, vixen, fatten

VIII In the following sentences, the meaning of the word to which "re" has been prefixed depends upon whether a hyphen has or has not been placed between the prefix and the verbal root. Substitute some other verb or phrase in each sentence —

- (1) { I have never remarked this before
The box must be re marked
- (2) { My losses were soon recovered
The tents must be re covered
- (3) { He has rejoined his post
He has re joined the two planks
- (4) { Their wrongs were soon redressed
The doll must be re dressed
- (5) { His character was reformed
The classes were re formed
- (6) { I cannot recollect this
You must re collect all the coins that have been lost
- (7) { I will not recount my sorrows
You had better re count all those rapiers
You must return that book
- (8) { Having turned the verse into prose, he re turned the prose into verse
This has been reserved for future use
- (9) { The summons, which he could not then receive, must be re served upon him
- (10) { A went out of office and was re placed by B
A has been re placed in his appointment

IX Define and distinguish the three meanings of the prefix "sub" in the following words —

(a) Sub terranean, sub montane, (b) sub acid, sub tropical, (c) sub-judge, sub deputy

X Show the difference of meaning implied in the following words by the prefix "non" and the prefix "in" or "un" —

(a) Non-active, inactive, (b) non effective, ineffective, (c) non Christian, unchristian, (d) non famous, infamous, (e) non-professional, unprofessional

XI Form sentences showing the difference of meaning between —

Confidant, confident, dependant, dependent.

CHAPTER XXVII.—HISTORICAL OUTLINE LATIN AND GREEK ROOTS

479 The English used at the present day throughout the British Empire is based upon the language that was spoken by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, who invaded and permanently occupied Britain from about 450 A D

This language has been called Anglo Saxon or Old English. It was a branch of the Low German, as distinct from the High German spoken to this day in most parts of Germany.

The German or Teutonic stock belongs to the great family of languages known as Aryan or Indo Germanic, to which Persian, Sanskrit, and many more also belong.

480 Notwithstanding the introduction of a great many new words borrowed from many different sources—Keltic, Danish, Latin, French, Greek, etc.—the grammatical framework of the language is still Teutonic or purely English, and not Latin.

All the inflections of nouns and verbs are Teutonic, all the pronouns, all the numerals, almost all the prepositions, almost all the conjunctions, all adjectives of irregular comparison, the forms of the comparative and superlative degrees, the auxiliary verbs, all verbs of the strong conjugation, many verbs of the weak conjugation, many of the prefixes and suffixes, all the adverbial suffixes, and most of the words that are in commonest use.

481 The stages of change through which the language has passed have been marked by the following periods —

I Old English or Anglo-Saxon A D 450-1066

In this period the foreign elements were very few, and the language was highly inflexional.

II Early English or semi-Saxon A D 1066-1250

During this period, owing to the Norman Conquest, many words of French or neo Latin origin came into use, the spelling of many words was changed, and inflexions became fewer.

III Middle English A D 1250-1485

During this period most of the Anglo Saxon inflexions that still remained finally disappeared, and many Strong verbs were replaced by Weak ones.

IV. Modern English from A D 1485

This period is sometimes subdivided into two parts, the earlier of which is called Tudor English, extending from A D 1485 to 1600.

482 Latin and French Words —The bulk of our borrowed words are of Latin or neo-Latin (that is, French) origin. These came into the language at different times and in different ways, as shown below —

(a) The first and smallest instalment came through the military occupation of Britain by the Romans, during the four centuries which preceded the invasion of Angles, Saxons, and Jutes

To this period we owe the names of places ending in *chester*, as Manchester (from Latin *castrum*, a fortified camp), the word *street* (from *stratum*, a paved road), the word *wall* (from *vallum*, a rampart), *colony* (from Latin *colonia*, a military settlement)

(b) The second instalment came with the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity, of which Latin was the sacred language

To this period (A D 596 1066) we owe a great many ecclesiastical words, such as *alma*, *altar*, *apostle*, *epistle*, *bishop*, *chapter*, *candle*, *cloister*, *clerk*, *cried*, *crow*, *disciple*, *feast*, *monk*, *pagan*, *priest*, *saint*, and a great many more

We also owe the names of many articles of foreign production, the use or knowledge of which the Roman missionaries brought into England with them —*butter*, *churn*, *pepper*, *cedar*, *chalk*, *crystal*, *elephant*, *elm*, *fig*, *lavrel*, *lily*, *lion*, *marble*, *mule*, *oyster*, *palm*, *pearl*, and a great many more

(c) The third and greatest instalment came with the Norman conquest in A D 1066. The Norman invaders brought with them shoals of words of Latin or neo-Latin origin, and it was through the violent friction of Norman-French with the indigenous English that many of the English inflexions were rubbed off and lost by the year A D 1250

(d) The fourth instalment, from A D 1460, began with the revival of learning, by which a great many new words, relating to art, science, and classical literature generally, were introduced. The influx is still going on.

483 Greek Words —These came in chiefly through the Latin for the Latin language itself was largely indebted to Greek during the most brilliant period of its history

Greek words, however, are still being borrowed, and this directly from the Greek language itself, whenever we

require a new technical word to express some new fact or notion in art or science

484 Hybrids—As a general rule English prefixes or suffixes are added to English roots, Latin or French to Latin or French, and Greek to Greek

But all these prefixes and suffixes have now become naturalised in English, and hence many Derivative words are of mixed origin. Such words are called Hybrids or half-breeds

(a) In the following short list, which may serve as a specimen, the nouns, some of English and some of Latin origin, have been made adjectives by receiving the *English* or *Saxon* suffix "*ful*" and the *Latin* suffix "*ous*" —

Noun	Adjective	
Wonder (<i>English</i>)	{ wondrous,—used chiefly in poetry wonderful,—same meaning as "wondrous"	(Hybrid)
Plenty (<i>Latin</i>)	{ plenteous,—used chiefly in poetry plentiful,—same meaning as "plen- teous"	(Hybrid)
Beauty (<i>neo Latin</i>)	{ beauteous, for persons, used in poetry beautiful,—for persons and things alike	(Hybrid)
Bounty (<i>Latin</i>)	{ bounteous,—used chiefly in poetry bountiful,—same meaning as "bounteous"	(Hybrid.)
Pity (<i>Latin</i>)	{ piteous,—exciting pity, as "a pit- eous moan" pitiful,—{ exciting pity, as "a" { pitiful excuse" { feeling pity, "as a pitiful { nature"	(Hybrid)
Grace (<i>Latin</i>)	{ gracious,—showing grace or favour, kind graceful,—elegant in form	(Hybrid)

(b) English roots with Latin or French prefixes —

En body, *en*-dear, *en* snare, *de*-bar, *de* file, *dis* band, *dis* burden, *per* haps, *demi* god, *re* call

(c) English roots with Latin or French suffixes —

Starv *ation*, stream *let*, godd *ess*, joy *ous*, scrumm-*age*, drink-*able*, treach-*ery*, block *ade*

(d) Latin roots with English prefixes —

Under-estimate, *over*-flow, *un*-deceive, *be*-siege, *a*-cross, *after* piece, *fore*-close

(e) Latin roots with English suffixes —

False hood, priest-craft, quarrel some, rapid ly, merci-ful

485 English and Latin words in pairs — Words some times go in pairs, one being of English, the other of Latin origin But there is generally a difference of meaning —

<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French</i>
Abode,	domicile	Eat,	consume
Answer,	respond	East,	orient
Ask,	inquire	Edge,	margin
Bargain,	covenant	Embody,	incorporate
Begin,	commence	Empty,	vacant
Belief,	{ faith, trust, persuasion	End,	conclusion
Bemoan,	deplore	Enlighten,	illuminate
Bent,	curved	Enough,	sufficient
Blunder,	error	Fall,	lapse
Boldness,	fortitudo	It,	copulent
Bright,	radiant	Fearful,	timid
Brow,	front	Feather,	plume
Build,	construct	Feel,	experience
Building,	edifice	Feeling,	consciousness
Burial,	funeral	Fellow feeling,	sympathy
Bury,	inter	Foul,	quarrel
Calling,	vocation	Fewness,	paucity
Check,	restrain	Fight,	conflict
Choice,	selection	Finger,	digit
Clasp,	embrace	Fit,	flute
Clothes,	vestiture	Fit,	adapted
Cold,	frigid	Fit,	convulsion
(Very) cold,	gelid	Flag,	invariant
Coming,	advent	Flaw,	defect
Corner,	angle	Flood,	deluge
Cunning,	astute	Flying,	fugitive
Dale or dell,	valley	Foe,	enemy
Danger,	peril	Food,	victuals
Dark,	obscure	Forerunner,	precursor
Deadly,	mortal	Foreright,	prudence
Death,	disease	Foreknowledge,	prescience
Deck,	adorn	Foretell,	predict
Deed,	act	Forgetful,	oblivious
Deem,	judge	Freedom,	liberty
Deep,	profound	Full,	replete
Die,	expire	Further,	ulterior
Doer,	agent	Gainsay,	contradict
Dread,	terror	Gather,	collect
Drill,	discipline	Get,	obtain
Drink,	imbibe	Ghost,	spirit
Drive,	impel	Gift,	present
Dwell,	reside	Gird,	encircle
		Go,	proceed

<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French.</i>
Green,	verdant	Naked,	nude
Grow,	increase	Nearness,	proximity
Guard,	defend	Need,	necessity
Guess,	conjecture	Needy,	indigent
Guide,	direct	Niggard,	miser
Guilt,	criminality	Old,	ancient
Handbook,	manual	One,	unit
Handle,	manipulate	Outflowing,	efflux
Hang,	suspend	Outlive,	survive
Hap,	chance	Outward,	external
Happen,	eventuate	Place,	locality
Harm,	injury	Plunge,	immerse
Haste,	celerity	Quake,	tremble
Hate,	detest	Quench,	extinguish
Hateful,	odious	Quick,	rapid
Heap,	mass	Quiver,	tremble
Help,	assistance	Rich,	opulent
Hide,	conceal	Ripe,	mature
High,	elevated	Rise,	origin
Hinder,	impede	Rooms,	apartments
Hopeless,	desperate	Rot,	putrefy
Horseman,	equestrian	Same,	identical
Hostile,	inimical	Scatter,	disperse
Hurtful,	noxious	See,	perceive
Husband or wife,	spouse	Set free,	emancipate
Illness,	disease	Shake,	agitate
Ill will,	malice	Shame,	disgrace
Inward,	internal	Share,	portion
Judgment,	sentence	Short,	brief
Keep,	maintain	Show,	evince, display
Last,	ultimate	Shy,	timid
Lasting,	durable	Sight,	spectacle
Laughter,	derision	Sim,	iniquity
Lean,	meagre	Skill,	art
Learned,	erudite	Skilful,	expert
Learner,	disciple	Slanting,	oblique
Lessen,	diminish	Slaughter,	carnage
Look,	appear, into	Slack,	remiss
Looker on,	spectator	Slip,	lapse
Loth,	reluctant	Slow,	tardy
Loving,	affectionate	Smell,	odour
Lowly,	humble	Snake,	serpent
Luck,	chance	Speech,	oration
Mad,	insane	Spread,	extend
Maiden,	virgin	Spring,	fountain
Mar,	damage	Step,	grade
Mate,	companion	Stick,	adhere
Meed,	recompense	Stiff,	rigid
Meet,	suitable	Stir,	move
Mishap,	accident	Storehouse,	depot
Mistrust,	diffidence	Stream,	current

<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Latin or French</i>
Strengthen	confirm	Twist,	contort
Strife,	contention	Twofold,	double
Strive,	endeavour	Unearth,	disinter
Strong,	robust	Unfold,	disclose
Struggle,	effort	Unhkeily,	improbable
Sweet,	fragrant	Wander,	stray
Swell,	dilate	Warlike,	martial
Swift,	rapid	Warm,	tepid
Swollen,	tumid	Warn,	admonish
Talk,	converse	Wary,	cautious
Teach,	instruct	Wash,	lave
Teachable,	docile	Wave,	undulate
Tell,	relate	Weakness,	debility
Thanks,	gratitude	Wedlock,	matrimony
Thick,	dense	Wet	humid
Think,	imagine	Whole,	total
Threat,	menace	Wink,	connive
Threefold,	triple	Wise,	judicious
Thrift,	frugality	Wish,	desire
Tired,	fatigued	Withstand,	resist
Tool,	implement	Womanish,	effeminate
Top,	summit	Womanly,	feminine
Trade,	commerce	Wonder,	astonishment
Track,	artifice	Wonderful,	stupendous
Trust,	confidence	Work,	operate
Try,	attempt	Yield	submit

486 Latin adjectives to English nouns—Some examples of these (together with the Latin roots) are given below —

<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>
Cat	feline	<i>felis</i>	Moon	lunar	<i>luna</i>
Country	rural	<i>rus</i>	Mouth	oral	<i>os</i>
Cow	vaccine	<i>vacca</i>	Name	nominal	<i>nomen</i>
Dog	canine	<i>canis</i>	Nose	nasal	<i>nasus</i>
Ear	auricular	<i>auris</i>	Ox	bovine	<i>bos</i>
Egg	oval	<i>ovum</i>	Place	local	<i>locus</i>
Eye	ocular	<i>oculus</i>	Sea	marine	<i>mare</i>
Fox	vulpine	<i>vulpes</i>	Son	filial	{ <i>filius</i> <i>filia</i>
Gospel	evangelical	<i>evangelium</i>	Daughter		
Husband	marital	<i>maritus</i>	Sun	solar	<i>sol</i>
Head	capital	<i>caput</i>	Sheep	ovine	<i>ovis</i>
Hearing	audible	<i>audio</i>	Side	lateral	<i>latus</i>
Horse	equine	<i>equus</i>	Sight	visible	<i>video</i>
Kind	generic	<i>genus</i>	Spring	vernal	<i>ver</i>
Knight	equestrian	<i>eques</i>	Stream	fluvial	<i>fluvius</i>
Light	lucid	<i>lux</i>	Tongue	lingual	<i>lingua</i>
Lip	labial	<i>labrum</i>	Tooth	dental	<i>dens</i>
Mankind	human	<i>homo</i>	Tree	arboreal	<i>arbor</i>

<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>
Wife	conjugal	conjug	Wheel	rotatory	rota
Husband			Womb	uterine	uterus

487 Two adjectives to the same noun—Some nouns of English origin have two sets of adjectives, one of English, the other of Latin origin. But the meanings of the two adjectives have generally some shade of difference—

<i>English Noun</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Latin Noun</i>
Air	airy	aerial	aei
Blood	bloody	sanguine, sanguinary	sanguis
Body	bodily	corporeal	corpus
Brother	brotherly	fraternal	frater
Burden	burdensome	onerous	onus
Child	childish	puerile	puer
Cloud	cloudy	nebular	nebula
Day	daily	diurnal	diei
Earth	earthly	terrestrial	terra
Father	fatherly	paternal	pater
Fear	fearful	timorous	timor
Fire	fiery	igneous	ignis
Flesh	fleshy	carnal	caro
Friend	friendly	amiable	amicus
Frost	frosty	glacial	glacies
God	godlike	divine	deus
Hand	handy	manual	manus
Heart	heartly	cordial	cor
Heaven	heavenly	celestial	caelum
Home	homely	domestic	domus
King	kingly	regal, royal	rex
Life	lively	vital	vita
Milk	milky	lacteal	lac
Mother	motherly	maternal	mater
Night	nightly	nocturnal	nox
Skin	skinny	cutaneous	cutis
War	warlike	bellicose	bellum
Water	watery	aqueous, aquatic	aqua
Will	willful	voluntary	voluntas
Woman	{ womanly womanish	feminine	femina
		effeminate	
World	worldly	mundane	mundus

488 Sometimes compound verbs go in pairs, one being of English, the other of Latin origin—

(a) In the following list the English verbs are compounded with English *Adverbs*. The Latin verb (which is

shown in brackets) is usually compounded with a Latin prefix. Whenever the verb is transitive, some noun is placed after it as object

Back up (support) one's claims	Cry up (extol) any one
Bear out (substantiate) a charge	" out (exclaim)
Beat off (repel) an attack	Cut down (reduce) expenditure
Block up (obstruct) a passage	" off (destroy) the enemy
Blot out (obliterate) a word	" up (dissect) a body
Blow up (explode)	" out (surpass) a rival
" out (extinguish) a candle	Deal out (distribute) the loaves
Break down (fail) in an exam	Dig out (excavate) a tunnel
Break up (dissolve) a meeting	" (disinter) a corpse
" " (disperse/disappear)	Done up (fatigued) with toil
Breathe out (exhale)	Draw near (approach)
Bring under (reduce) the fever	" off (divert) attention
" forth (produce) fruit	" up (compile) a code
" out (elicit) facts	" " (arrange) an army
" out (publish) a book	" back (recede)
" in (introduce) a new custom	" in (contract or shorten)
" to (resuscitate) a sick man	" out (extract) a tooth
" on (cause) a debate	" " (prolong) a speech
" up (educate or rear) a child	" forth (elicit) applause
" forward (produce) arguments	Drive out (expel) the enemy
Buy back (redemption)	Eat up (consume) victuals
Call over (recite) the names	EGG on (instigate) any one
" off (divert) one's attention	Fill out (supplement) an income
" in (invite) a doctor	Fall off (deteriorate, decrease)
" up (recollect) a matter	" down (collapse)
" forth (evoke) applause	" away (revolt)
Carry on (conduct) a business	" in (conquer) with a man's opinion
" out (execute) an order	" back (retreat)
" through (accomplish) a work	" out (quarrel)
" off (destroy) by sickness	Fill up (complete) a list
Cast out (expel) from society	Find out (discover) a reason
" down (dejected) with grief	Get in (collect) rents
" off (discard) clothes	Get on (advance, make progress)
" aside (reject) facts	" forward (proceed, advance)
Cheer up (encourage) any one	" back (recover) money
Clear up (explain) a problem	" " (return) to a place
" off (disperse) (<i>Int.</i>)	" down (descend)
Come back (return) home	" up (ascend)
" round on to (recover)	" " (master) a book
" in (enter)	" off (escape)
" about (occur)	Give out (emit) a smell.
" down (descend)	" " (announce) a fact.
" off (escape)	" " (distribute) tickets.
" on (advance)	" away (present) prizes
Cry down (depreciate) any one	" over (transfer) charge
	" " (relinquish) an attempt

Give back (restore) anything	Make over (transfer) charge
" up (surrender) a point	Melt away (dissolve)
" in (submit, yield)	Mislead (seduce) a person
Go down (descend)	Ooze out (transpire)
" up (ascend)	Outlive (survive) a person
" on (continue) working	Pass on (proceed)
" " (progress)	Pick out (select) the best man
" in (enter)	Pine away (languish)
" over (migrate) to a new place	Put out (extinguish) a light
" by (observe) directions	" " (disconcert) a person
" away (depart) from a place	" off (postpone) a journey
" aside (deviate) from a course	" on (assume) haughty airs
" forward (proceed)	" down (suppress) a rebellion
" back (deteriorate)	" up (propose) a candidate
" " (return) to a place	" in (introduce) a pretext
Hand down (transmit) a name	" forth (exert) one's strength
" over (deliver) anything	" back (retard) anything
Hang up (suspend) anything	" away (divorce) a wife
Help on (promote) a cause	Take up (resuscitate) old quarrels
Hold in (restrain) a horse	Run down (depreciate) a person
" on (continue, persevere)	Send off (despatch) a messenger
" out (endure)	" up (submit) a petition
" " (extend) one's arm	" away (dismiss) a servant
" up (sustain) anything	Give out (distribute, allot) food
" back (restrain) a person	Set forth (explain) one's views
" forth (exhibit) anything	" put (reserve) some money
" over (postpone) a case	" aside (reject) a claim
Keep up (maintain) one's energy	" oil (unharness) a person or thing
" on (continue)	" down (record) in writing
" under (suppress) a cough	" up (suborn) false witnesses
" back (reserve) a portion	" off on out (depart)
" off (repel) a snout	" on (imitate) a dog
Knock up (fatigue) a person	" up (erect) a pillar
Lay down (resign) an office	Show off (display) one's goods
" " (surrender) one's arms	" up (expose) one's faults
" out (invest) money	Shut out (exclude) the rain
" up (deposit) money	" in (enclose) cows
Leave off (discontinue)	" up (confine) a prisoner
" out (omit) a word	Spin out (prolong) a story
Let off (remit) a fine	Stand out (resist)
" " (release) a person	" " (project)
" " (discharge) an arrow	Stir up (excite) sedition
" in (admit) a person	Strike off (remove) one's name
" out (liberate) a prisoner	" in (interpose)
" " (divulge) a secret	Take in (admit) a person
Lie down (recline)	" " (deceive) a person
Lift up (exalt) a man	" " (comprehend) one's meaning
Light up (illuminate) a house	" up (occupy) one's time
" upon (discover) a thing	" " (commence) some work.
Make out (discover) one's meaning	" " (arrest) a person.
" up (concoct) a false charge	
" " (complete) an account	

Take over (receive) charge
 " away (remove) anything
 " off (ridicule) a person
 Talk over (convert) a man
 Think out (devise) a plan
 Throw out (reject) a bill
 " down (demolish) a wall
 " up (erect) a wall
 " " (resign) an appointment
 " off (discard) a friend

Trump up (concoct) a false charge
 Turn away (avert) one's anger
 " out (eject) a tenant.
 " " (prove to be) clever
 " off (dismiss) a servant.
 " on (admit) steam
 Ward off (remove) a danger
 Withdraw (retreat) into a corner
 " (cancel) a claim
 Work out (solve) a problem

(b) In the following examples the English verbs are followed by English *prepositions*. The Latin verb is usually preceded by a Latin prefix. A few of the Latin verbs are followed by the same preposition as the English ones

Ask for (request) a favour
 Bear with (tolerate) a man's temper
 Beg of (entreat) a man to, etc
 Call for (demand) an explanation
 " on (visit) a man at his house
 Come after (succeed) one's father
 " at (attain) something
 " by (acquire) something
 " into (enter) a house
 " upon (encounter) a person
 " near (approach) a person
 Crow over (triumph over) an enemy
 Cry to (implore) heaven
 Do away with (abolish) a rule
 Dwell in (inhabit) a country
 Fall upon (assail) the enemy
 " to (apply oneself to) work
 Get at (obtain) the facts
 " over (surmount) a difficulty
 " through (accomplish) a work
 Glance over (peruse cursorily) papers
 Go after (pursue) the deer
 " against (resist, oppose) the enemy
 " along with (accompany) a person
 " beyond (exceed) a limit
 " over (examine) a place
 " up to (approach) a person
 Hold to (adhere to) an opinion
 Jeer at (deride) a person
 Jump at (eagerly accept) an offer
 Keep from (refrain from) evil
 " to (adhere to) a promise

Laugh at (deride) any one
 Lay to (impute to) one's charge
 Live in (inhabit) a country
 Long for (desire) rest
 Look at (behold) anything
 " down on (despise) any one
 " for (expect) anything
 " into (inspect) anything
 " on (regard) him as wise
 " over (examine) accounts
 " up to (respect) any one
 Make away with (destroy) the prince
 " away with (squander) money
 " for (conduce to) well being
 " up for (compensate for) a loss
 " up to (approach) a person
 Meet with (encounter) any one
 Pitch upon (select) a site
 Pry into (scrutinise) a secret
 Put up with (endure) hostility
 See about (attend to) some business
 " into (discern) one's motives.
 " through (penetrate) one's motives
 Set upon (assail) an enemy
 Stand by (support) a friend
 " to (adhere to) one's word.
 Take after (imitate) one's father
 Talk over (discuss) a subject.
 Think of (recollect) a point.
 " over (consider) a subject
 Tide over (surmount) a difficulty
 Wait on (attend) a person

469 Doublets are words which have the same derivation, but differ in form and almost always in meaning. The following are examples of doublets (*a*) of English origin, (*b*) of Latin and French origin, (*c*) of Greek origin —

(*a*) *Doublets of English origin*

Ant, emmet	Gabble, jabber	Morrow, morn	Skirt, shirt
Bench, bank	Grove, groove	Naught, not	Sop, sup, soup
Block, plug	Guard, ward	Rover, robber	Stant, stunt
Car, cart, chariot	Guest, host	Scatter, shelter	Stove, stew
Deck, thatch	Gaule, wile	Scratch, grate	Tight, tant
Dell, dale	Hale, whole	Screech, shriek	Tithe, tenth
Dole, deal	Lithesome, lissom	Skiff, ship	Treachery, trick
Drill, thrill	Load, lade	Skirmish, scrim	Tioth, truth
Evil, ill		mage	Wagon, wain

(*b*) *Doublets of Latin and French origin*

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
Abbreviate	shorten	Abridge	shorten
Aggravate	make worse	Aggrieve	give pain to
Assimilate	make like	Assemble	collect
Benediction	prayer for blessings	Benison	prayer for blessings
Cadence	falling	Chance	accident
Captive	prisoner	Cattiff	mean fellow
Calumny	false charge	Challenge	defiance
Chart	piece of paper	Card	piece of paste board
Capital	{ accumulated wealth	{ Chattels	movable property
Cavalry	horse soldiers	Cattle	cows
Captain	head of a company or of a ship	Chivalry	knightly valour
		Chieftain	head of a clan
Complacent	satisfied	Complaisant	desirous to please
Comprehend	understand	Comprise	include
Compute	reckon up	Count	reckon up
Conception	act of conceiving	Conceit	extravagant notion
Describe	depict in words	Desery	espy
Desiderate	feel the want of	Desire	feel the want of
Dissimulate	hide the facts	Dissemble	hide the facts
Diurnal	daily	Journal	diary
Debit, debt	what is owed	Due	what is owed
Extraneous	foreign, external	Strange	uncommon
Fact	reality	Feat	performance
Faction	political party	Fashion	custom
Fidelity	faithfulness	Fealty	service to a king

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
Fragile	physically weak	Frail	morally weak
Granary	storehouse for grain	Garner	to store up grain
Hospital	house for the sick	{ Hostel Hotel	{ lodging house house for travellers
Implicate	involve in	Employ	give work to
Invidious	hateful, unworthy	Envious	jealous
Indict (in dit)	prosecute for crime	Indite	put into writing
Legal	authorised by law	Loyal	faithful in service
Lecton	reading	Lesson	the thing read
Major	military title	Mayor	municipal title
Malediction	curse	Malison	curse
Native	born in a place	Naive	ingenuous, frank
Obedience	obeying an order	Obeisance	doing homage
Oration	speech	Orison	prayer
Par	equal	{ Pair Peer	{ couple nobleman
Pauper	destitute	Poor	not rich
Penitence	regret, remorse	Penance	pain inflicted as a penalty for sin
Persecute	harass	Pursue	follow up
Piety	godliness	Pity	compassion
Plaintive	expressing sorrow	Plaintiff	one who brings a suit
Potion	something drunk	Poison	a deadly drink
Pungent	pricking to the taste	Poignant	pointed, keen, satirical
Portico	colonnade	Porch	covered entrance
Potent	powerful	Puissant	powerful
Predicate	affirm	Predic	deliver a sermon
Prolong	lengthen out	Prolong	filch
Provide	one who provides	Provideur	one who provides
Propose	make an offer	Purpose	intention
Ratio	proportion	Reason	cause, explanation
Redemption	buying back	Ransom	the price paid
Regal	belonging to a king	Royal	king like
Regulate	direct	Rule	govern
Respect	regard	Respite	cessation, pause
Secure	safe	Sure	certain
Senior	older	Sir, sure	title of respect
Separate	disjoin	Sever	disjoin
Servant	one who serves	Serjeant, or serjeant	military title
Strict	rigorous	{ Straight Strait	{ not crooked close, narrow
Superficies	term in Euclid	Surface	outer part

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
Suppliant	one who entreats	Suppliant	one who entreats
Tempt	put to the test	Taunt	jeer at
Tract	division of land	Tract	distinguishing feature
Tradition	what is handed down orally	Treason	betrayal of confidence
Treble	threefold	Triple	threefold
Vocal	pertaining to the voice	Vowel	not a consonant

(c) Doublets of Greek origin

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
Adamant	unbreakable stone	Diamond	valuable gem
Balsam	resin from a tree	Balm	anything that soothes
Canon	law of the church	Cannon	artillery
Canvas	strong cloth	Canvass	scrutinise
Chord	string or tone of music	Cord	rope
Crypt	underground vault	Grot, grotto	cave, recess
Disc, disk	a flat round plate	Dish	for holding food
Eremite	anchorit	Dais	raised platform
Fantasy	wild notion	Hermit	anchorit
Jealous	envious	Fancy	imagination
Monastery	abode of monks	Zalous	ardent in a cause
Phantasm	mental image	Minster	cathedral
Scandal	what causes offence	Phantom	ghost
		Slander	false charge

490 LATIN ROOTS AND DERIVATIVES

Acer (*sharp*) acid, acrimony, acid
Edes (*house*) editure, editure
Equus (*level*) equal, equity, equitable, iniquity, iniquitous, equivalent, equitation
Estim-o, estimatum (*to value*) esteem, estimate, aim
Ey-um (*agr*) coeval, primordial
Ager (*field*) agriculture, agrarian
Ag-o, act-um (*to do, set in motion*) agent, agile, agency, agility, ambiguous, act, active, ex-act, agitate
All-us (*other*) alibi, alien, alienate
Alter (*one or other of two*) alteration, alter, alternate, altruism
Alt-us (*high*) altitude, exalt
Am-o, amat-um (*to love*), **amicus** (*friend*) amity, amatory, amiable, amat-sur, amemy, in amical, amicable
Ang-o (*to choke*) anguish, anger
Anim-a (*breath*), **anim-us** (*mind*) animal, animate, magnanimous

Ann-us (*the year*) annual, annal, biennial, anniversary, perennial
Apert-o, apert-um (*to open*) April, aperture, over, aperture
Appell-o, appellat-um (*to call*) appeal, appellative
Apt-us (*fit*) aptitude (hence attitude), apt, in-apt, adaptation
Aqua (*water*) aqueous, aquatic, aque duct
Arbor (*tree*) harbour, arboreal
Arc-us (*bow*) arc, arch
Ard-eo, ars-um (*to burn*) ardent, arson, aridour
Art-us (*skill*) art, artifice, artist
Art-us (*joint*) article, articulate
Asper (*rough*) asperity, exasperate
Aud-io, audit-um (*to hear*) audit, audible, audence, auditor, obedient, obey, obedi-ence
Aug-eo, auct-um (*to increase*) augment, auct-ion, author, author-ity

Auxilium (*help*) auxili-ary
Avarus (*greedy*) avarice, avaricious.
Bellum (*war*) re-bel, belligerent, bell icose

Bini (*two by two*) binary, com bine
Brevitas (*short*) brief, brev ity, ab-brevi-ate, abridge
Caballus (*horse*) caval ry, chival ry, cavalc-ade.

Cad o, cas um (*to fall*) casc, cas ual, oc-cas-ion, ac-cid-ent, cad ence (hence chance), co in cide

Cad o, casso um (*to cut or make to fall*) au-cide con cise pro cise, pro cision, homi-cide, cesa ura, (e ment.

Campus (*plain*) camp, en-camp, camp-aign

Cand-eo (*to be white or shine*), cend o cens um (*to burn*) candi-ly, cand id, cand out, in cense, in cend lary

Cant o, cant um (*to sing*) cant-o, cantat um (*to sing*) chant, canticle, re-cant, cant, ac-cent, en-chant ment

Cap-io, capit um (*to take*) cap able cap-acious, in cip ient, eman cip ate ac-cept re-cept, re-ceive, re-capt acle, mun-icip-al

Caput capit-is (*the head*) caput chap let, capit-al, cap-tain chief, chief-tain, chap-ter pre-capit-ate, de-capitate

Carn-o carn-is (*flesh*) carnal carn-age, in carn-ate carn-iv-er, charn-er house.

Cari-us (*dear*) cheer cher-ish, cari-ous, char-ity

Causa (*reason*) cause, ex-cause, re-cause

Cav-us (*hollow*) cav-ity, con-cave cave, ex-cav-ate

Ced o, cesso um (*to go or yield*) cede, con-cede, con-cess-ion ac-cess de-cess ac-cede, pro-ceed, in-cessant cess-

Cent-um (*a hundred*) cent cent-um

Cern o, cern um (*to sift or judge*) dis-cern, dis-creet dis-creet-ion dis-crete, se-crete, de-crete, con-cern

Cert-us (*sure*) cer-tain, cer-tain-ty, as-certain

Charta (*paper*) chart, charter, cart-oon

Cing-ere (*to surround*) pue-cints, suc-cinct, cinet-ure

Civ-is (*citizen*) civil civic, civ-ity

Claud-o, claus um (*to shut*) clau-der, close, clo-ure, cloist-er eloc-ute, ex-clude, non-clus-ion, (on-clus-ion

Cognosco o (*to examine*) re-cog-nise, cognis-ant, cognit-ion

Col o, cult um (*to till*) cult-ure, col-ony, cult-ivate, agri-cult-ure, cl-own

Commod-us (*convenient*) commodi-ous ac-commod-ate, in-commod-

Cor, cord-is (*the heart*) core, cord-ial, ac-cord, con-cord, dis-cord

Coron-a crown, coron-ation

Corp-us, corpor-is (*body*) corpse corse, cors-et, corse-let, corpus-cle, cor-

por-eal, in-corpor-ate, corpor-ation, corp-alent.

Cred-o, credit um (*to believe*) creed, credit, credit-able, in-cred-ible, cred-ence

Cresco-o (*to grow*) in-cresce, de-cresce, cresc-ent, ac-crescion

Crux, cruce-is (*cross*) cross, cruci-fy, cruc-ial, crus-ade, ex-cruciate

Culp-a (*fault*) culp-able, in-culpate, ex-culpate

Cura (*care*) cure cur-ious, ac-cure, in-cur-able, care, care-ful

Curr o, curs um (*to run*) course, curr-ent, (curr-ent), pre-curs-or curr-icle, oc-cur, suc-cour curr-iculum, curs-ory

Damn o, damnat um damn, con-demn damnat-ion, damn-age

Deb-ito, debit um (*to owe*) debt, debit due, debit-able

Decem (*ten*) decem-ber, decim-al, decim-ate

Dic-o dict um (*to say*) dict-ation, contra-dict, in-dict dict-ion pre-dict

Dies (*day*) diurn-us (*daily*) di-ary, di-ally diurn-al (hence journal), ad-journ

Dign-us (*worthy*) dign, con-dign, dign-ity

Do dat um (*to give*) date ad-d, dat-ive, ed-ict ad-dit-ion, ren-dit-ion ren-d-er

Doc-o, doct um (*to teach*) doc-ile, doct-or

Dolor (*grief*) dol-ful, dolor-ous, con-dole

Domin-us (*master*) domin-ion dom-ain domi-nate

Dub-ius (*doubtful*) dubious, doubt, in-dub-itable

Duc o, duct um (*to lead*) duke, duct, con-duct, duct-ile, re-duce, intro-duct-ion, e-duc-ate

Dur o, durat um (*to last*) during, en-dure durat-ion, dur-able

Ed-o (*to eat*) edible esculent

Em-o, empt um (*to buy*) ex-empt, pro-mpt, red-empt red-emption (hence ransom), per-empt-ory

Esse, esse (*to be*) est (*it is*) abs-ent, cul-ity, escent-ial, es-sen-cial, abs-en-co-inter-est

E-o, it um (*to go*), ions (*going*), it-er, itin-erary (*journey*) amb-ulant, amb-it-ion, ex-it, trans-it, in-it-ial, per-ishi, itin-erary, circu-it

Equ-us (*horse*) equ-ine, equ-estrian, equ-erry

Err o, errat um (*to wander*) err, error, errat-ic, ab-erration erroneous

Exempl um ex-ample, sample, exem-plary

Exper-i (*to try*) experience, experi-ment, expert

Fac-ies face, facial, sur-face, super-ficial

Facil is (*easy*) *facul*ty, dif-ficul^t, facil itate

Fac io, **fact** um (*to make*) *fact*, *fact* af-fect, *fact*-or, *per*fect, *fact*-ory, of *fact*, *bene*fic, *bene*-fit, *bene*fact-or *honor*ific, *magni*ficent, *magni*fy, *horri*fy, *cou*nterfact

Fam-a (*report*) *fame*, in *fam*ous, de *fam*-ation

Femin a (*woman*) *fem*u^mine, ef *femin*ate

Fend-o *fens* um (*to strike*) *fend*-er, of fence, fence de *fend*, in de *fens*ible

Fer o, *lat* um (*to bear or bring*) *re*fer, *su*tile con *fer* con *fer*ence *auri*ferous, dif *fer*-ence, di *lat*, *re*late, *trans*late *super*lat *ive*

Ferr um (*iron*) *ferr*ica *ferr*uginous **Ferv**-eo (*to be hot*) *ferv*id, *ferv*ent, ef *ferv*ence

Fid es (*trust*) *faith*, *faith*ful news, *fid*-elity (hence *faith*), in *ful*el, con *fid*e, *per*fidy, de *fy* di *ban*ce

Fig o, *fix* um (*to fix*) *fix*, *fix*ure, *pre*fix, *sub*fix, *fix*ity

Fill us (*son*) *fil*ial, af *fil*iate

Fing-o *fiot* um (*to pretend*) *fiot*ion, *fiot*ilous *feign* figure

Fin is (*end*) *fin*ish *fin*ite, *fin*al, in *fin*itive

Fisc-us (*treasury*) *fi*scal, con *fi*scati

Flect o, *flex* um (*to bend*) *re*-flect, *if* flex, *flex*ible, in *flex*ion, *re*fect *ion* *circu*mflex, *re*flex *ive*

Flos (*flower*) *flor*id, *flor*ish

Flu o, *flux* um (*to flow*) *flu*ctus (*a wave*) in *flua*, *flu*ctuate, *flu*id, *flow*, *flu*id

Fort us (*strong*) *fort*isly, *fort*ress *fort*itude

Frang o, **frag** **fract** um (*to break*) *frag*ment, *fra*gile (hence *frail*) *fract*ion, in *fringe* in *fringe*ment

Frons *front*, af *front*, con *front*, *front*is piece

Fru o **fruit** um (*to enjoy*) *fruct*us (*fruit*) *frug*al, *fruct*ion, *fruct*, *fruct*ity

Fug io, **fugit** um (*to flee*) *fug*it *ive*, *re*fugce, *re*fuge

Fund o, *fus* um (*to pour*) *pro*-fundus *ible*, *re*fund, con *fund*, con *fus*ion, *dif*fuse, *found* *re*

Fund us (*bottom*) *found*, *found*ation, *pro*found

Gen us, **gener** is (*kind*), **gens**, **gent**-is (*race*) *gener*al, *gen*al, *gen*eration, *indi*genous, *gen*tle, *gent*ile *gent*le, in *gen*ous *pro*geny, *re*geni-ate, *gend*-er, en *gend*er

Gero, **gest** um (*to bear*) *gest*-ure, *sug*-gest, *bell*gerant

Glacies (*ice*) *glacial*, *glac*, *glacier*

Grad ior, **grass** us (*to step*) *grad*ual, de *gree*, *grad*ation, *trans*gress, *pro*gress

Grav is (*heavy*) *grief*, *grief*-ous, *grave*, *grav*-ate, *ag* *grav*-ate

Grex, **greg** is (*a flock*) *ag* *greg*ate, *e*-gregious, *greg*-arious, con-*greg*-ation

Hab-eo, **habit**-um (*to have*), **habit**-o, **habitat** um (*to dwell in*) *have*, *habit*, *ex*hibuit, *hab*iliment, *pro*-hibuit, in *habit*, *habitat*ion, *habit*-able

Hære eo, **hæsit** um (*to stick*) *ad* *hæ*re, *hæ*sitate

Hæres *heir*, in *her*it, *hered*itary

Hom o **homin** is (*man*) *honn*ido, *hum*an, *hum*-ane

Hosp-es, **hospit** is (*a guest or host*) *hosp*-ital, *hospit*-able, *host*, *host*-el, *hosp*ital

Hum us (*ground*) *ex* *hume*, *post*humous, *hum*ile

Imper o, **imperat** um (*to command*) *imperi*al *imperi*ous, *empire*, *emper*-or, *imperat* *ive*

Ingen um (*talent*) *engine* *ingen*ious

Insul a *island*, *isle*, *insul*ate (hence *isolate*) *insul*ar

Integer (*whole*) *integr*al, *integr*ity, *entire*

Ir-a (*anger*) *ire*, *ir*-ate, *ir*ascible

Jac eo (*to let down*) *ad* *jac*-ent, *gist*

Jac io **jaot** um, **jacul** o (*to throw*) *e*jacul-ate, *ob*ject, *re*ject, *pro*ject, *pro*jectile *ad*jective *di*jected, con *ject*ure

Judex, **judic** is (*judge*) *jud*ge, *jud*gment *jud*icial, *judic*ious *pre*judic

Jug um (*yoke*) con *jug*al, con *jug*ate, *jug*um

Jung o, **junot** um (*to join*) *junot*ure, con *junot*ion, *ad* *junot*, *joint*, *join*, *ad* *join*

Jur o, **jurat** um (*to swear*) *jur*is, *ab*jure *per*juris, con *jure*, *ad* *jurat*ion

Jus **jur** is (*equity*) *just*, *justice*, in *jury* *jur*isdiction

Lap or, **laps** us (*slide*) *lapse*, *col*lapse *re*lapse

Lead-o, **læs**-um (*to hurt*) *les*ion, *e*lide, *collis*ion

Lat us, **later** is (*a side*) *later*-al, *equi*lateral, *col*lateral

Leg o, **legat** um (*to depu*te) *logate* *leg*atus, *legat*ee, *legat*ion, *al* *lege*, *de*legate

Leg-o, **lect** um (*to read or choose*) *leg*end *di*ligent, *lect*, *col*lect, *neg*lect, *leg*ible, *intel*lect, *intel*ligible, *man*ifest

Lev is (*light*) *re*lieve, *re*lieve, *lev*ity, *al*leviate

Lex, **leg** is (*law*) *leg*al, *loy*al, *leg*islate, *law*, *law*ful, *out*law

Liber (*free*) *lib*er-al, *lib*erty, *de*liber

Liber (*a book*) *lib*rary, *lib*el

Libr-a (*balances*) *de*liberate

Lig-o, **ligat** um (*to bind*) *ligat*-ure, *leag*ure, *lig*-ament, *ob*ligat *ion*, *ob*-lige, *re*-lig *ion*

Lingua (*tongue*) linguist, language
Liter-a letter, liter-ate, liter-ature,
 liter-al

Loc-us (*a place*), loc-o, locat um (*to place*), loc-al, loco-motion, loc-al-ity, loc-ate, locat-ion, col locat ion
Loqu-or, loquit-us (*to speak*) e-loquent-ion, e loqu-ence, loqu-acious, col loquy

Lud-o, lus um (*to play*) e lude, lud-icrous, al lus ion, col lus ion, de-lude, il lusionary

Lun-a (*moon*) lun-ar, lun atic
Lu-o, lut-um (*to wash*) pol-lute, di-lute ab-lut ion, de-lu-tio, al-luv-ial
Ma-chin-a machine, machin-ation
 mechan-ic, mechan-ism

Magister (*a master*) magist-er
 magistr-ac-y, master, master-ful, magister-ial, master-y

Magn-us, (*great*) magn-i, mayor, magn-ate, magn-ify, maj-esty

Man-eo, mans um (*to stay*) mans-ion
 re-main, per-man-ent, re-mains, im-min-ent, e-mul-ent

Man-us (*the hand*) man-ual man-acle, manu-script, man-tain, e-man-icipate, manu-facture, a manu-cript, man-age, man-tain

Mar-e (*the sea*) mar-ine, sub-mar-ine, marin-er, mari-time

Mater (*mother*) mater-nal, mater-nity, matr-on, matri-mon-y

Mens, ment-is (*the mind*) men-tal, de-ment-id

Merg-o, mors um (*to dip*) sub-merg-o, e-merg-ent, im-merse, im-mer-ion

Met-ior, mens us (*to measure*) mea-sure, im-measure, mens-uration, com-mens-urate

Merx, mero is (*goods for sale*) merch-ant, com-merce, merchandise, mar-tal

Min-oi (*less*) min-oi, minut-um (*to make less*) min-or-it, min-or, minute, di-min-ish, im-min-ute

Misc-eo, mixt um (*to mix*) mix-ture, mis-cellaneous, mix, pro-misc-uously

Mitt-o, misa um (*to send*) ad-mit, mis-ion, mis-ion-ary, pro-mise, promise, pro-miss-ory, mis-sile

Mod-us (*a measure*) mod-erate, mod-est, mod-el, mod-ify, mood, mode

Mol-a (*that which grinds*) mill, meal, mol-ar, im-mol-ate, e-mol-ument

Mon-eo, monit-um (*to advise*) monit-or, ad-moni-ish, mon-ument

Mons mount, mount-ain, sur-mount, pro-mont-ori

Mord-eo, mors um (*to bite*) mors-el, re-morse

Mors, mort is (*death*) mor-tal, mort-ify, mort-gage

Mos mor-is (*custom*) mor-al, mor-al-ity, de-mor-alize

Mov-eo, mot-um (*to move*) mot-ion, re-mote, com-mot-ion, re-move, move-ment, mo-ment, mot-ive

Musa (*goddess of poetry*) mus-ic, a-muse, mus-ium

Mun-us, mun-er is (*a gift*) re-mun-erate, mun-ificent, com-mune, com-mon
Muso-or nat-us (*to be born*) nat-ive, nat-al, nasc-ent, in-nate, cog-nate, nat-ure nation

Nav-is (*a ship*) navi-gate, naut-ical, nav-y, nav-ty, nav-al

Neg-o, negat um (*to deny*) negat-ive, negat-ion, re-negade

Noc-eo (*to hurt*) in-noc-ent, noc-ious, nuis-ance, per-nic-ious

Nos-co not um (*to know*) nomen (*name*) noun, name, no-ble, ig-nom-iny, note, not-ice

Nov-us new, nov-el, re-nov-ate, in-nov-ation, nov-ice

Nox (*night*) noct-urnal, equi-nox

Null-us (*none*) null-ity, au-ul, null, null-ity

Nutr-io nutrit-um (*to nourish*) nutrit-iment, nour-ish, nour-ishment, nutr-a, nutrit-ious

Ocul-us (*eye*) ocul-ar, ocul-ist, in-ocul-ate

Offic-ium (*duty*) offic-e, offic-ial, offic-ious, offic-iate

Ole-um oil ole-aginous

Omen (*omen*) omi-nis, ab-om-i-ate

Omni-s (*all*) omni-potent omni-bus

On-us (*burden*) on-er-ous, ex-on-er-ate

Orb-is (*circle*) orb-ital, ex-orbit-ate

Or-eo, olot um or ult um (*to grow*) red-ol-ent, ol-iva, ol-iv-a, ad-ult

Or-o orat um (*to speak or pray*) ad-ori ad-orat-ion, orat-ion (hence oris-on), orat-or

Or-ior ort-us (*to arise*) or-ient, or-ient-al or-ient, ab-or-ive

Os or-is (*the mouth*) or-al, or-ifice, or-cillate (in also or-cillate)

Pand-o pans um or pass um (*to spread*) ex-pand, ex-pause, ex-pans-ion, com-pans-tres-pans-pans-pace

Pang-o pact um (*to prick*) im-pinge, com-pact

Par (*equal*) com-pare com-par-ison, peer, com-peer, dis-par-ity, pair, im-pare

Par-io, part um (*to bring forth*) par-ent, pari-par-ous, vivi-par-ous (hence vi-par), part-urition

Par-o parat-um (*to get ready*) par-ade, ap-paiat-us pre-part, pre-parat-ion

Part, part-is (*part or share*) part-ial, un-part-ial, part-part-ur, a part-ment, par-ice, part-ice, part-icular

Pater (*father*) pater-nal, patr-on, patr-mon-y, patr-ician

Patri-a (*native land*) patri-ot, ex-patri-ate

Pati-or, pass us (*to suffer*) pati-ent, pass-ive, pass-ion, com-pat-ible

Pax, pac-is (*peace*) ap-pease, peace, paci-fy, peace-ful

Puls-o, puls-um (*to drive*) com pul, pulse, im pulse, ex puls ion, re puls-iv.
Pend in or eo, **pens-um** (*to pay or hang*) sus pend, sus pense, pend ent, de-pend, ex pend, dis pense, im pend ing, per-pend icular.

Pes, ped is (*foot*) ped estrian, im pede, ped estal, bi ped, quadru ped, centi pede, ex ped ient, ex pedite.

Pet-o, petit-um (*to seek*) petit ion, com pete, com pet ent, ap pet ite, im pet-nous.

Plac eo, placit-um (*to please*) plac id, com plac ent, complais ant, please.

Ple-o, plet-um (*to fill*), **plen us** (*full*) plen ary, plen itude, sup ply, sup ple ment, com ply, com ple ment, complete, replete, re plenish.

Plic-o, plicat-um, or plect o plex-um (*to fold*) com plex, com plicat -i, ap plic-ant, ex plic it, im plicate, im ply, sim ple, dou ble, tri plex, tri ple or tre ble, quadru ple sinu plic ity.

Plus, plur is (*more*) plural, plus, sur plus.

Pena (*punishment*) pen al, pain, re pent, pen itence.

Pon o, posit-um (*to place*) sup pone, sup posit-ion, post, de posit, di posit ion, de pon ant, op-pon-ant, ap posite, ap posit-ion, re pose, up posit, post pone, pre posit ion.

Popul us (*people*) popul ace, popul ation, de popul ate, popul-ar, peopl-e, publi sh.

Poss-um or **pot-is-um** (*to be able*) possible, poss ibility, pot ent, pot enti al, omni pot ent, pot-ent.

Pre-t-um (*price*) preti-ous, de price, price.

Preh-end do, **prehens-um** (*to take or grasp*) com prehend, com prehens ible, re prehens-ible ap prehens-um, pris on, sur prise, prize.

Pre-or, precat-us (*to pray*) pray, prayer, im precat ion.

Prim us (*first*) prim itive, prime, prim-eval.

Prob o, probat-um (*to try or test*) probat-ion, prove, proof, prob-able, im prob-ate re proof, ap probat-ion, up prov-al, dis-ap, prov al.

Propri-us proper, proper ty, propri-ety, ap propri-ate.

Pugn o (*to fight*) im pugn, pugn acious, re pugn-ant.

Pung-o, punct-um (*to prick*) punct ual, punct ifious, point, pung-ent, ex punge, punct-uation.

Put-o, putat-um (*to cut or think*) am putate, dis pute, dis put-ant, dis putat ion, re pute, re-putat-ion, com pute (hence co-unt).

Quer-o, quæsit-um (*to seek*) query, ac quire, ac-quæsit-ion, ex-quisite in quest, in-quir-y, in-quisit-ive, quest-ion.

Quæst-o, quæsit-um (*to shake*), quæst, dis cuss, per-quis-ion.

Quat-uor (*four*) **quadra** (*square*) quadru ped, quad-rant, quart, squadr-on, quadru-jle.

Rad ins (*a stream of light*) ray, rad iant, rad iate, rad lance.

Rado, ras-um (*to scrape*) ras-or, e-rase, e ras ure.

Rap io, rapt-um (*to seize*) rap-id, rapt ura, rapt, rap acious, sur rept-itions, rav-enous.

Reg o rect-um (*to rule*) reg ular, reg ulation, rule, cor rect, rect-angular, right, right-angled di rect, in-di rect, reign reg al (hence roy-al).

Res (*thing*) re al, reality, really, re public.

Riv us river, riv ulet, de rive, riv al.

Rog o, rogat-um (*to ask*) rogat-ion, inter-rogate inter rogat-ive pro rogo.

Rot-a (*a wheel*) rot ation, ro und, roll.

Rump o rupt-um (*to break*) rupt ure, route rout, rote, ab rupt, bank rupt, ban rupt-ur.

Rus, rur us (*country*) rur al, rus (to, rus tic).

Sacer sacer-dotal, sacri lege, sacri fice.

Sal to salt-um (*to leap*) sal ly, sal ient, as salt re salt, ex ult, as sal, sal mon, in salt.

Sanct us (*holy*) sanct ify, saint, saint ly sancti monious, sanct uary.

Sangu is, sanguis (*blood*) sangu ine, sangu inary.

Sap io, sap-or (*taste*) sa-vour, sap ic it in sap-id.

Sat, satis (*enough*) satis fy, satis factory sat-iate.

Sci-o (*to know*) sci-ence, pre sci-ence, con science, omni sci-ent.

Scrib o script-um (*to write*) script, scrib-e, scrib-ible, post-script, in script ion de scribe, scriv-ener manu script.

Sec o, sect-um (*to cut*) seg-ment, sect ion, bi sect, dis sect, sect, sect-arian.

Sed co sess-um (*to sit*) sedi ment, seat, set tle, sess ion re side, re sid-ent, pre sid ent, super sede, secl-an, pos sess, as sid uous.

Sent io, sens-um (*to feel*) senti ment, sense, sens ation con-sent, com sens us, sent ence, re sent, re sent ment, dis sens ion, non sense, scent.

Sequ-or, secut-um (*to follow*) sequ-ence, con sequ-ence ex-ecute, pro secute, sequ-el, par-sue, eu-sue, pur su-ance.

Ser-o, ser-um (*to set in a row*) ser-mon, series, ser-ial, in sert, ex-ert, ex-ert ion.

Serv us (*a slave*), **serv io, servit-um** (*to be a slave*) serv-ice, serv-itude, serve, serf, de serve.

Serv-o, servat-um (*to keep*) pre serve, pre servat-ion, ob-serve, ob-serv ant, ob-servat-ory

Sign-um (*a sign*) sign-al, sign-ify, sign, as-sign, as sign-ment, con sign-ment, de sign, en sign

Simil-is (*like*) simil-ar, re sem-ble, as-simil-ate, simul-ate

Sist-o (*to stop or stand*) as sist, de sist, re sist, con sist-ent, per sist-ent, re sist-ance

Solv-o, solut-um (*to loosen*) solve, re solve, re solut-ion, dis solve, solu-bil, ab solute, dis solute, re soluta, ab solve

Sparg-o spars-um (*to scatter*) spars-e, spars-ely, dis pers-e, dis pers-ion, as pers-ion

Spati-um space, spac-ious ex-pati-at

Spec-io, spect-um (*to see*) spec-ies, spect-acle, re spect, su-spec-ion, spec-ul, de spise, spect-ator, spec-imen, a spect

Spir-o, spirat-um (*to breathe*) spir-it-us (*in earth*) spirit spir-it-uous, spirit-u-al, con spire ex-pire, in spire, con spirat-or, sprite

Spond-o, spons-um (*to promise*) spons-or, spouse ■ spou-se de spond-re spouse, con re spond-ent, re spond-ible

Stern-o, strat-um (*to throw down*) strew, pro strate, strat-ally, con stern-ation

St-o, stat-um (*to stand*) state stat-ue, stat-ion, sta-ble, sta-bility, di-stant sub-stance, am-bi-ble, in-sti-tute, sol-able

String-o, striat-um (*to bind*) strict strat, straight, string-ent is-trin, cut, strict-ure, in strict, con-strin

Stru-o, struct-um (*to build*) struct-ure, con-struct-ion, de-struct in-struct-ment, con-struct

Sum-mus (*highest*) sum sum-mit, con sum-mit

Sum-o, sumpt-um (*to take*) con sum-as sumo, as sumpt-ion, pro sume, pro sumpt-uous

Super (*above*) super-or, super-lum, hence sver-ely super-nu-ary

Surg-o, surrect-um (*to rise*) source, re source, in surg-ent, in surrect-ion, re surrect-ion

Tang-o, tact-um (*to touch*) tact, tang-ible, con tact, con-ta-uous, ta-ent, con-ta-ion

Teg-o, teat-um (*to cover*) teg-um-in, pro tect, pro tect-ion

Temper-o, temperat-um (*to control*) temper, temper-ate, temper-ate

Temp-us, tempor-is (*time*) tem-er, tempor-al, con-tem-por-ary, tem-por-ary, ex-tem-por-ary

Tend-o, tens-um (*to stretch*) por-tent, tent, por-tend, tens-ion, tend, at-tend, at-tent-ion, in-tense

Ten-en, tent-um (*to hold*) ten-ure,

ten-ant, con-tin-ent, con-tin-ual, con-tin-uous, con-tent, con-tain, re-tent-ive, ten-able, ten-acious obs-tin-ate

Ter-o, trit-um (*to rub*) trite, con-rite, de-tri-ment

Terr-a (*the earth*) in-ter, terr-estrial, terr-ier, terr-ace

Terr-o (*to frighten*) terr-or, terr-ify, de-ter de-terr-ent

Test-is (*a witness*), test-or, testat-us (*to witness*) test-ament at test, at testat-ion, de test, in testate, test-ify, con test test test-i-mony

Tex-o, text-um (*to weave*) text, text-ure, tex-tile, con-text, pro-text

Torqu-o, tort-um (*to twist*) dis-tort, tort-tort-ure, con-tort-ion, tor-ment

Trah-o, tract-um (*to draw*) por-tray, por-trait, tract, tract-able, con-tract, tract, treat ab-tract

Tu-eor, tuit-um (*to see*) tuit-ion, tut-or tut-elage

Ultra (*beyond*) out-rage ult-imate, pen-ult-imate, ultimatum, ultra-or

Umb-ra (*shade*) umbr-ella, umbr-ace

Un-us (*one*) un-ity, un-ite, un-iverse, un-ion un-ique

Und-a (*water*) und-ulate, ab-ound, red-ound, red-und-ant ab-und-ant, in-und-ite

Ungu-o, unct-um (*to smear*) oint-ment, an-oint, unct-ion, unct-uous, ungu-ent

Urb-es (*city*) urb-an, sub-urb, urb-ane, urb-anity

Vacc-a (*cow*) vac-cine, vac-cination

Vac-o, vacat-um (*to be unoccupied*) vac-ant, vacate, vacat-ion, vac-uum, ■ vac-uate

Vag-or (*to wander*) vag-rant, vague, vag-abund vag-ary extra vag-ant

Val-co (*to be strong*) val pre-vail, val-id, val-dictory, equi-val-ent, con-val-escent val-ue, val-uable

Veh-o, vect-um (*to carry*) veh-ement, veh-icle, con-vey in-vec-tive

Vell-o, vuls-um (*to pull*) con-vuls, re-vuls-ion

Vel-um (*covering*) veil, re-veal, de-velop

Ven-io, vent-um (*to come*) vent-ure, pre-vent, ad-vent ad-vent-ure, con-vent-ant, a-vent-ure, super-vene, inter-vent-ion

Verb-um verb, word, verb-al, pro-verb, verb-ose

Vert-o, vers-um (*to turn*) ad-vert, vert-ex, con-vert, con-verse, re-vert, re-verse, di-verse, di-verse, ad-vert-ise

Via (*a road or way*) de-viate, voy-age, tri-vial (hence trifle), pre-vi-ous, vi-voy

Vid-uo, vis-um (*to see*) vis-age, vis-ion vis-ible, e-vid-ent, ev-ey, sur-vey, pro-vid-e pro-vid-ent (hence prudent), pro-vis-ion

Vinc o, vict um (to conquer) vict-ory, con vict, con vince, in vinc ible, vanq uish

Vir (a man) vir ile, vir tue, trium vir, vir-ago

Viv o, viat um (to live) vict uals, viv acious, re vive sur vive

Voc-o, vocat-um (to call) vocal-ion, in voke, ad voc ate, voc-al, vow el, voice.

Vol-o (to be willing) volit ion, bene-vol-ant, vol untary

Vol-v-o, volut um (to roll) re-volve, in volut ion, vol ume, re volut ion, in volve, volu ble

Vor-o (to eat up) de-vour, vor-acious, carnî vor ous

Vov eo, vot-um (to vow) vote, de vote, de vout, de vot ion, de vot ee, vot-ary, vow, a vow, a vow el

491. GREEK ROOTS AND DERIVATIVES

Agon (struggle) agon y, ant agon ist

Akr os (top) acr obat, acr opolis

Angel os (messenger) angel, ev angel

Anthrop-os (man) anthrop-ology,

anthropo-

Aster (a star) aster ish, dis-aster,

astro nomy

Athl on (contest) athl etc, athl etic

Arch-e (rule) mon-arch, archi tect,

hept arch y

Auto (self) auto-crat, auto graph,

auto nomy

Bail o, bol-e (theme) sym bol, hyper

bol-e, para ble pro blem, em blem

Basis (treading, support) basis, base,

base ment

Bibil on (book) biblic biblio graphy,

biblio pole

Bi-os (life) amphi bi ous, bio logy,

bio graphy

Chor-os (band of singers) choir, chor

ater chorus

Chron-os (time) chrono meter, chrono

logy chron icle ana chronism

Dem os (people) dem agogue, demo

cracy, demo graphy (in dem ic

Dox a, dog ma (an opinion) hetero

dox, para dox dogma, dog matic

Dra u (to act) dras tic dra ma

Dynam is (power) dynam ics dy

nam ics

Eidol-on (an image) idol, idol ize,

idol stry

Eleemosyn-on (pity) alms, ele mosyn

ary

Ethn os (race) heathen, ethn ic,

ethno logy

Erg on (work) en erg y, lit urg y,

cheir urg-eon (hence surg-eon) metall

urg y

Gam os (marriage) mono gamy, poly

gamy, bi gamy

Ge (the earth) geo-graphy, apo-ge,

ge ology, ge-ometry

Gon is (an angle) penta gon, hexa

gon, dia-gon al

Graph o (to write), gram ma (some

thing written) epi gram, mono gram,

téle gram, téle graph, gram mar, bio

graph y, geo-graph y, graph ic, auto-

graph

Hod-os (way) meth od, peri od, ex

od us, epin ode

Hol os (entire) cat hol ic, holo-caust.

Hudor (water) hydr-ant, hydro

statics hydro meter, hydro gen, dropy,

hydro phobia

Idi-os (peculiar) idl ot, idl-om, idl

osyncrasy

Is os (equal) is osceles, iso-thermal

Kentr-on (point) centra, centr-al,

ec-centr ic, centri fugal

Klimax (ladder) climax, climac teric

Kosm os (the world) cosm etic cosm

polite cosmogrophy cosmo gony

Krat-os (power) demo crat, demo

cracy, aristo crat

Krit es (a judge) cris is (judgment)

hypo cris y, crisis, hypo crite, crit-ic,

crit-icism

Krypt o, kruph (to hide) crypt, apo

crypt-ic

Kukl os (a circle) en cyclo pedia,

cycle, bi cycle, by cycl ist

Leg o, lect (speak), log os (word)

dia logue pro logue, dia lect, lex icon,

log ic, antho log y, geo log y, sec lect ic,

dia lect ic

Leip o leaps (to fast) eo lipse, el lipse,

el lipt-ical

Lith-on (a stone) mono lith, litho

graph

Lus is (a loosening) ana lys is, ana

lyse, para lys is, (hence pals y).

Metr on (measure) baro meter, geo

metr y, metr

Naus (ship) naus-es naut ical

Ne os (new) neo phyte, neo logy, neo

Latin

Neur on (nerve) neur-algia

Nom os (law) astro nom y, eco nom y,

gastro nom y

Od e (a song) mon-od y, ep-ode, pro-

od y, par od y

Oik os (a house) eco-nom y, di-oc

ese

Onom-a (a name) syn-onym, an-onym

ous

Organ on (an instrument) organ, or

gan ise, organ ic

Ops is (right) opt-omai (to see) opt-

ics, opt ical, syn opsis, syn optical

Orth os (right) ortho graphy

Path-os (feeling) sym path y, anti

path y, path tic

Pais, paid os (a boy) ped agogue, ped

ant, ped-antic

Phan-o, phant (*to appear*) phen omanon, phantasm (hence phant-om), phant-asy (hence fan cy), phase

Phem-i (*to speak*) pro phet, prophes-y, blas-phemy, eu phem ism.

Phil-os (*friend*) philo sopher, Indophilus (friend of India) Russo phile (friendly to Russians), phil anthropology

Phon-e (*voice*) phon etic, sym phon y **Phus-in** (*nature*) phys ic, phys ics, meta phys ics, phys ical neo phyte

Poi-ee, poet (*to make*) poet, poet ry, poesy, poem onomatopoeia

Poi-ee (*to sell*) monopo ly, monopolist, bibliopole

Poi-ee (*a city or state*) police, politics cosmopolite

Pods, pod-ee (*foot*) antipod es, tripod, poly pus

Pras-o, prakt (*to do*), **pragm-a** (*a deed*) pract ice, pract ice, practical

Prot-ee (*first*) proto type, protomartyr

Psuch-e (*soul or life*) metam psychosis, psych ical, psych ology

Scop-ee (*to see*) scope tele scope, microscope, episcopal, bishop

Soph-ee (*wise*) soph ism, soph ist, philosoph-er, philo soph y

Sphair-e (*a ball*) sphere, hemi-sphere, spher ical

Stas-in (*standing*) ec stasy, apostasy, system.

Stell-o (*to send*) apo-stile, epi-stile, epi-stolar y, apo-stolic

Stroph-e (*a turning*) apo-stroph-e, cata stroph e

Takt-o (*manage*) tact, tact-ics, syntax.

Techn-e (*an art*) techn ical, pyroterin ics

Tele (*far off*) tele scope, tele gram

The-ee (*rod*) theosophy theolgy, the ist, pan the ist, poly the ist, a the ist, mono the ist.

Thes-is, them-a (*a placing*) syn thesis, thine hypo thesis, hypothesis

Tom-e (*a cutting*) a tom, tome, autotomy

Ton-ee (*a note, a stretching*) ton ic, monotonie monotonous, tone

Top-ee (*place*) top-ic topo graphy

Trop-e (*a turning*) trop ic, trop ics, holo tropic.

Typ-ee (*stamp*) type, typ ical, typify, anti type, stereo type

Zo-on (*animal*) zo diac, zoophyte, zoology

PART V—FIGURES OF SPEECH, POETIC DICTION, PROSODY

CHAPTER XXVIII—FIGURES OF SPEECH

492 A Figure of Speech (or of Rhetoric, as it is sometimes called) is a deviation from the ordinary use of words, with a view to increasing their effect

Thus, we can say, "There are *six pillars* to the verandah of this house." Here the word *pillars* is used in its ordinary or literal sense

Again, we can say, "That man is a *pillar* of the state."

Here *pillar* is used in a figurative or non literal sense and signifies "support."

493 Simile—A Simile consists in giving *formal* expression to the likeness between two different objects or events

The formality peculiar to a Simile consists in using some word or words for drawing attention to the likeness. The words commonly used for this purpose are *as, as—so, like*

Errors, *like* straws, upon the surface flow,
He that would search for pearls must dive below —Dryden
True ease in writing comes from art, not chance,
As those more casual who have learnt to dance —Pope
And *as a hare*, whom hounds and horns pursue,
Pants to the place from whence at first she flew,
So I had hopes, my long vexations past,
Here to return, and die at home at last —Goldsmith

494 Metaphor—An *informal* or implied Simile

(a) *Nouns* —

Our eldest son is the *star* (brightest member) of the family
He is the *vulture* (plunderer) of the province
He is now in the *sunset* (decline) of his days
His rash policy let loose the *hounds* of war
Hold fast to the *anchor* of faith, hope, and charity
The news you bring is a *dagger* to my heart.
We must be guided by the *light* of Nature
The wish is *father* to the thought

A ray of hope, a shade of doubt, a flash of wit, an outburst of temper, the fire of passion, a gleam of delight, the light of knowledge, a flight of fancy, the gloom of despair, the wreck of his hopes, the spur of ambition, the torments of jealousy, the reins of office

(b) *Adjectives* —

A golden harvest, a golden opportunity, a golden sunset, golden silence, a golden rainfall

Iron courage, iron firmness, brazen impudence, a stony heart, a rosy complexion, a lame excuse, snowy locks

A fiery temper, fiery speech, burning passion, an angry sore, a piercing wound, a brilliant piece of eloquence, a stormy discussion, a dead silence, a crystal stream, a transparent falsehood

(c) *Verbs* —

A new thought has suddenly struck me

The town was stormed after a long siege

He was fond of blowing his own trumpet (praising himself)

He swam bravely against the stream of popular applause

Canst thou not minister to a mind diseased,

Pluck from the memory a rooted sorrow — *Shakespeare*

495 Personal Metaphors—A metaphor is said to be personal, when it speaks of inanimate objects as if they were living persons

(1) Personal epithets applied to impersonal nouns —

A traitorous calm, a sullen sky, a frowning rock, pitiless cold, cruel heat, a learned age, the thirsty ground, a virgin soil

(2) Personal nouns in connection with impersonal ones —

The childhood of the world, the anger of the tempest, the ductfulness of riches, wine is a mocker

(3) Personal verbs used as predicates to impersonal subjects —

Everything smiled on him

Wearry wave and dying blast

Sob and moan along the shore,

And all is peace at last

496 Sustained Metaphor—Sometimes a metaphor is sustained or prolonged through a series of images, all bearing upon some central point of resemblance —

Let us (since life can little else supply

But just to look about us and to die)

Expatriate free o'er all the scene of man,

A mighty maze, but not without a plan,

A wild, where weeds and flowers promiscuous shoot,

A garden tempting with forbidden fruit,

Together let us beat the ample *field*,
 Try what the *open*, what the *covert* yield,
 The *latent tracks*, the *giddy heights* explore
 Of those who blindly creep or sightless soar — *Pope*

497 Confused Metaphors—Sometimes we find two or more metaphors coming close together in the same sentence. This is a defect in composition.

- (1) I *bridle* in my struggling muse with pain,
 That longs to *lurch* into a bolder strain — *Addison*

Here, in the first line the poet compares his muse to a horse, and in the second line to a ship and to a musical instrument—three ideas confused together in a couple of lines.

- (2) There is not a single view of human nature, which is not sufficient to *extinguish* the seeds of pride — *Addison*

Here the writer confuses the idea of extinguishing a flame with that of picking seeds out of the ground.

498 Constant or Delayed Metaphors—Some metaphors have become so well established in popular use, that their metaphorical character is no longer noticed.

Thus we say—To *employ* means, to *contract* habits, to *carry* a matter to extremes, to *cast* one's eye upon a thing, to *prosecute* studies, to *pass over* in silence, to *pick* an insult, to *pick* a quarrel, to *carry* favour, to *harbour* malice, to *cultivate* an acquaintance, to *indulge* in hopes, to *strike* the tents, to *strike* a bargain, to *catch* a cold or fever, to *play* the fool, etc. His efforts were *crowned* with success. He *triumphed* over every difficulty. He *stuck* to his point. He was *overwhelmed* with grief. He *plunged* into business.

499 Fable, Parable, Allegory—These are the same at bottom. An Allegory is a series of metaphors or symbols continued *throughout an entire story* so as to represent or describe one series of facts by another series that is analogous to it in its main features.

In most cases the object of such a story is to exemplify and enforce some moral truth.

Thus the Parable of the Good Samaritan (St. Luke's Gospel, chapter x 30-37) was intended to give an answer to the question—“Who is my neighbour?”

The Parable of the Lost Lamb, which Nathan the Prophet communicated to king David (Old Testament, II Sam. xli) was intended to bring the king to a sense of his guilt by relating to him a parallel case.

The Fables of classical literature, in which birds and beasts are made to think, speak, and act like men, all teach some moral. The Fable of the Old Man, his Sons,

and the Ass (for example) shows the folly of attempting to please every one. The Fable of the Bundle of Sticks, which the young men could not break so long as they remained tied together, shows the power and value of union.

In English literature the *Pilgrim's Progress*, by Bunyan, is one prolonged allegory, representing by the story of a pilgrim the difficulties and struggles through which the Christian must pass before he can finally reach the land of promise.

The following may be quoted as an example of a short allegory —

The days of his youth rose up before him in a vision, and he recalled the solemn moment when his father had placed him at the entrance of two roads, one leading into a peaceful, sunny land, covered with a plentiful harvest, and resounding with soft, sweet songs, the other leading the wanderer into a deep dark cave, whence there was no issue, where poison flowed instead of water, and where serpents hissed and crawled — *Jean Paul Richter*

500 Personification — By this figure we ascribe intelligence and personality to inanimate things (see § 45) —

But yonder comes the powerful *king* of day,
Rejoicing in the east The lessening cloud,
The kindling sun, and the mountain's brow
Illumed with fluid gold, *his* near approach
Betoken glad — *Thomson*

A lower and less marked kind of personification is seen in such phrases as the following — The *smiling* morn the *sullen* sky, the *frowning* rock, the *furious* wave, the *angry* ocean, the *prattling* brook, the *dimpling* waves, the *blushing* rose, the *laughing* harvest, the *raving* tempest, a *happy* period a *learned* age, the *thirsty* ground, a *melancholy* disaster, the *childhood* of the world, the *remorseless* heat, the *pitiless* cold, an *uneasy* law.

Note 1 — Such expressions as the above are examples of the Personal Metaphor described in § 493 for a Personal Metaphor necessarily involves some kind of Personification.

Note 2 — On the genders ascribed to personified things, see § 56

501 Met'-on-ym'y, or the substitution of the thing named for the thing meant (The prefix "*meta*" means substitution, see page 368)

(a) *The sign for the thing signified* —

He succeeded to the *crown* = the monarchy
He is too fond of *red tape* = official routine

From the *cradle* to the *grave* = from childhood to death
Leather (= shoe-making) pays better than learning
Gray hairs (= old age or old men) should be respected

(b) *The instrument for the agent* —

The *crown* would not yield to the *mitre* (The king would not yield to the priest.)

Give every man thine *ear*, but few thy *voice* = Pay heed to what every man says, but say little yourself

The *pen* is stronger than the *sword* = Those who use the pen have more influence than those who use the sword

(c) *The container for the thing contained* —

He drank the *cup* = the contents of the cup

He is too fond of the *bottle* = the liquor contained in the bottle

The conquerors smote the *city* = the inhabitants of the city

The *kettle* (= the water in the kettle) boils

(d) *An effect for a cause* —

I have never read *Homer* = the works of Homer

May a favourable *speed* ruffle the mirrored mast of the ship. (Here *speed* is put for *wind*) — *Tennyson*

502 Synec'doche, or "the understanding of one thing by means of another" This figure usually consists in changing one noun for another of kindred meaning

(a) *A part or species substituted for a whole or genus* —

He manages to earn his *bread* = the necessities of life

All *hands* at work, the royal work grows warm — *Dryden*

A fleet of fifty *sail* = fifty ships

(b) *A whole or genus substituted for a part or species* —

He is a poor *creature* (that is, man)

In the same way *vessel* is used for ship, a *measure* is used for a dance or for poetry, the *smiling year* for the smiling season or spring, the *Christian world* for the Christian Church as a whole

(c) *An individual substituted for a class* Here a Proper noun is used as a Common noun (see § 36) —

He is the *Nestor* (the oldest man) of his service

He is the *Newton* (the greatest astronomer) of this century

A *Daniel* (a very wise judge) come to judgment — *Shakspeare*

(d) *The Concrete substituted for the Abstract* Here a Common noun denoting a person is used in an Abstract sense (see § 357) —

There is a mixture of the *tiger* and the *ape* in the character of a Frenchman — *Voltaire*

I do the most that friendship can,
 I hate the *Viceroy*, love the man. — *Swift*.

An English muse is touched with generous woe,
And in the unhappy man forgets the foe — Addison

(e) *The Abstract substituted for the Concrete* Here an Abstract noun is used as a Common noun (see § 43) —

All the *rank* and *fashion* came out to see the sight

The *authorities* put an end to the tumult

The people's *prayer*, the glad diviner's *theme*,

The young men's *vision*, and the old men's *dream* — Dryden.

The same figure appears in such phrases as — His Majesty for "king," her ladyship for "lady," his lordship for "lord," His Excellency for a governor or viceroy, His Holiness for "Pope," His Grace for an archbishop

(f) *The material substituted for the thing made* Here a Material noun is used as a Common noun (see § 41) —

A foeman worthy of his *sword* = his sword

The *marble* speaks, that is, the statue made of marble

He was buried under this *stone* = this tablet made of stone

503 Transferred epithets — The epithet or qualifying adjective is sometimes transferred from a person to a thing —

The ploughman homeward plods his *weary* way

He lay all night on his *sleepless* pillow

He closed his *busy* life at the age of seventy six

The prisoner was placed in the *condemned* cell

He was engaged in a *dishonest* calling

Such phrases are common — A *virtuous* indignation, a *happy* thought, an *unlucky* remark, a *foolish* observation, a *mortal* wound, a *learned* book

Note — This is the same figure of speech as the weaker form of Personification referred to in § 500

504 Eu-phemism — By this figure we speak in gentle and favourable terms of some person, object, or event, which is ordinarily seen in a less pleasing light —

A partial historian, in speaking of Henry VIII, the second of the Tudors, who divorced two and beheaded two more of the six wives to whom he was married in succession, describes him as having been "*singularly unfortunate in all his relations with women*"

A sympathetic writer, alluding to the madness of Cowper, describes the event by a series of euphemistic metaphors —

Discord fell on the music of his soul the sweet sounds and wandering lights departed from him, yet he wore no less a loving face, although he was so broken hearted

505 Climax — This is a Greek word signifying a ladder By the figure so-called the sense rises by succes-

sive steps to what is more and more important and impressive —

It is an *outrage* to bind a Roman citizen, to scourge him is an *atrocious crime*, to put him to death is almost a *parricide*, but to crucify him, what shall I call it?

Anticlimax or **Bathos**—This is the opposite to Climax, and signifies a ludicrous descent from the higher to the lower —

Here, thou great Anna ! whom three realms obey,
Dost sometimes counsel take—and sometimes *tea* —*Pope*
A man so various, that he seemed to be
Not one, but all mankind's epitome,
Who in the course of one revolving moon
Was lawyer, statesman, *fiddler*, and *buffoon*. —*Dryden*

506 Interrogation—This is a rhetorical mode of affirming or denying something more strongly and emphatically than could be done in ordinary language —

Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? —*Old Testament*

Oh ! was there ever such a knight
In friendship, or in war,
As our sovereign Lord, King Henry,
The soldier of Navarre? —*Macaulay*

Who is here so base that would be a bondman? Who is here so rude that would not be a Roman? Who is here so vile that will not love his country? —*Shakespeare*

507 Hyper'-bo-le' or Exaggeration—By this figure things are represented as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are. Such language (if appropriate at all) is more suited to poetry than to prose —

David in his lament for Saul and Jonathan says — "They were *swifter than eagles*, and *stronger than lions*." —*Old Testament*

The terror of a scout at the sudden appearance of the enemy is thus described in Ossian — "I saw their chief tall as a rock of ice, his spear, the *blasted fir*, his shield, the *rising moon*, he sat on the shore like a cloud of mist on the hill." —*Ossian*

The sky *shrunk upward* with unusual dread,
And trembling Tiber *dived beneath* his bed —*Dryden*

508 Exclamation or the strong expression of feeling —

O what a fill was there my countrymen !
Then I and you and all of us fell down,
Whilst bloody treason flourished over us —*Shakespeare*

509 An-ti-the-sis, or "the setting of one thing against

another"—This figure consists in an *explicit* statement of an *implied* contrast —

A bird in the *hand* is worth two in the *busk*.—*Proverb*

He can *bribe*, but he cannot *seduce*, he can *buy*, but he cannot *gain*, he can *lie*, but he cannot *deceive*

A *friend* exaggerates a man's *virtues*, an *enemy* his *crimes*

Between *fame* and *true honour* there is much difference, the former is a *blind* and *noisy applause*, the latter is an *internal* and *more silent homage*

As *Cæsar* loved me, I weep for him, as he was *fortunate*, I rejoice at it, as he was *valiant*, I honour him, but as he was *ambitious*, I slew him There is *tears* for his *love*, *joy* for his *fortune*, *honour* for his *valour*, and *death* for his *ambition*—*Shakspeare*

Though *deep*, yet *clear* though *gentle*, yet not *dull*,
Strong without *rage*, without *overflowing full*—*Denham*

510 Epigram—This figure is closely allied to Antithesis It couples words which *apparently* contradict each other The language of epigram is remarkable for its brevity

The *child* is *further* to the man —*Proverb*

By *merit* rused to that *bad eminence* —*Milton*

Language is the art of *concealing* thought —*Loche*

Natural beauty, when *unadorned*, is *adorned* the most —*Thomson*

Conspicuous by its *absence* —*Disraeli*

In the midst of *life* we are in *death* —*Proverb*

He lived a life of *active idleness*

'Tis all thy *business*, *business* how to *shun* —*Pope*

Art lies in *concealing art* —*Latin Proverb*

Fame is the spur that the *cleat* spuit doth raise

(That last *infirmity* of *noble minds*)

To scorn *delights* and live *libonous days* —*Milton*

Ambition first sprung from your *blest* *rhodes*,

The *glorious fault* of *angels* and of *gods* —*Pope*

He who lives *without folly* is not so *wise* as he *imagines* —*Proverb*

Affected simplicity is *refined artfulness* —*Proverb*

Defend me from my *friends*

Silence is sometimes more *eloquent* than words

Owe no man anything but to love one another — *New Testament*

Murder, though it have no *tongue*, will yet *speak*

A rule more *honoured* in the *breach* than in the *observance*

Great wits will sometimes *gloriously offend*,

And *rise* to *faults* which critics dare not *mend* —*Pope*

The following phrases, all of common occurrence, can be classed under the heading of epigrammatic — *White lie*, *solemn trifling*, a *silent rebuke*, *masterly inactivity*, an *open secret*, a *tedious amusement*, a *pious fraud*, *noble revenge*, *expressive silence*, *shabby genteel*

511 Pun—This consists in a play on the various meanings of a word, and is seldom used except for jest —

Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard its spots?

Yes, the leopard changes its spots, whenever it goes from one spot to another

512 Irony, or Sarcasm—This figure consists in making damaging remarks about some person or thing, in words, which, if they were taken literally, would imply commendation. It is expected, however, that their intended meaning will be understood from the sneering accent or manner of the speaker, or from the well-known character of the person or thing referred to —

An argument to prove that the abolition of Christianity may, as things now stand, be attended with some inconveniences, and perhaps not produce the many good effects proposed thereby —
Swift

When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept
Ambition should be made of sterner stuff,
Yet Brutus says he was ambitious,
And Brutus is an honourable man —*Shakespeare*

513 Litotes or the using of a negative to indicate a strong affirmative —

He is *no dullard* (= decidedly clever)

A citizen of *no mean* (= distinguished) city

Note—By this figure such words as “infamous,” “unprofessional,” “unchristian,” all of which have merely negative prefixes, are used in a strongly affirmative sense (See § 474, under “non”)

514 Apostrophe—By this figure the speaker *addresses* some inanimate thing or some abstract idea as if it were a living person, or some absent person as if he were present

It therefore includes Personification, besides possessing the peculiar property of *address* —

Hast thou a charm to stay the morning star
In his steep course? so long he seems to pause
On thy bold awful head, O Sovran Blanc! —*Coleridge*

How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! O Jonathan,
thou wast slain in the high places I am distressed for thee, my
brother Jonathan! very pleasant hast thou been to me, thy
love to me was wonderful —*Old Testament*

O Luxury! thou curst by heaven's decree,
How all exchanged are joys like these to thee! —*Goldsmith*

515 Pros-o-po-pæ'ia—By this figure the writer or speaker, in relating something past, or in describing some

anticipated future, employs the *present* tense instead of the *past* or *future*, and thus makes it appear as if the event were actually passing before his eyes. Hence this figure is sometimes called *Vision*.

(a) *Some anticipated future* —

I seem to behold this great city, the ornament of the earth and the capital of all nations, suddenly involved in one conflagration. I see before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens lying unburied in the midst of the ruined country. The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view, while with a savage joy he is triumphing in your miseries — *Cauro*

(b) *Some past event* — This is called the *Historic Present* (see § 374, c) —

The sack and carnage of Delhi lasted from three o'clock in the morning until three in the afternoon. The streets echo with the shouts of brutal soldiery, and with the cries and shrieks of the inhabitants. The atmosphere reeks with blood. Houses are set on fire, and hundreds perish in the flames. Husbands kill their wives, and then destroy themselves. Women throw themselves into the wells. Children are slaughtered without mercy, and infants are cut to pieces at their mothers' breasts — *Wheeler's India*

516 Alliteration — This consists in the repetition of the same letter or syllable at the beginning of two or more words —

By apt Alliteration's artful aid — *Pope*

Run seize thee, ruthless king! — *Gray*

A strong man struggling with the storms of fate — *Addison*.

His heavy dotted hammock shroud — *Tennyson*

Glittering through the gloomy glades — *Pope*

A load of learning lumbering in his head — *Pope*

517 On-om'-a-to-poe-ia — This is the name given to that artifice of language, by which the sound of the words is made to suggest or echo the sense —

(1) *Read with tremendous sound your ears asunder*

With gun, drum, trumpet, blunderbuss, and thunder

Here the vowel sounds in the second line suggest the idea of a loud and thundering noise

(2) *A needless Alexandrine ends the song,*

Which like a wounded snake drags its slow length along

An Alexandrine is a line of twelve syllables. The tedious length of the line suggests the slowness of a needless Alexandrine or the slow crawling of a wounded snake

- (3) The tallest pines,
Though rooted deep as high, and sturdiest oaks
Bowed their stiff necks, loaded with stormy blasts,
Or torn up sheer — Milton

The stiffness of the third line suggests the stiffness with which the trees resisted the storm, while the lightness of the fourth suggests the suddenness with which a tree is torn up by the roots.

- (4) When Ajax strives some rock's vast weight to throw,
The line too labours, and the words move slow — *Pope*

The labour of reading the first of these two lines suggests the labour with which a rock is hauled

- (5) Eternal wrath
Burnt after them to the bottomless pit — *Milton*

Here the sudden drop of the accentuation at the close of the second line, where an accent is indispensable to the metre, suggests the sudden and precipitate fall of the rebellious angels from heaven to hell

518 Periphrasis, or Circumlocution — This consists in expressing some fact or idea in a roundabout way, instead of stating it at once Euphemism (see § 504) often takes the form of Periphrasis

The wingless couriers of the air = the winds — *Shakespeare*.
That statement of his was purely an effort of imagination = a fiction or falsehood

He resembled the animal that browses on thistles = an ass
His prominent feature (= his nose) was like an eagle's beak

519 Tautology, or Pleonasm — This consists in repeating the same fact or idea in different words Such redundancy is almost always a fault in composition, but is lawful, when it adds force, clearness, or balance to a sentence

I rejoiced at the happy sight
It is the privilege and birthright of every citizen in a free commonwealth to be allowed to have a voice in public affairs

CHAPTER XXIX — POETRY, PROSODY, AND METRE

§ 1 THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF POETRY

520 Pastoral — This kind of poetry deals with anything that concerns the life of shepherds, herdsmen, and husbandmen Such poems are usually in the form of a dialogue or a monologue

Spenser's *Shepherd's Calendar* (A.D. 1552-1559) Pope's *Pastorals* (1688-1744) Collins's *Eclogues* (1721-1759) Shenstone's *Pastorals* (1714-1763)

521 Descriptive—This kind of poetry describes the seasons of the year, scenes of historical interest, cities, places, countries, etc., and gives expression to the thoughts suggested by the various scenes and objects as they arise. Descriptive poetry does not usually narrate events. If narrative is sometimes introduced, this is done by way of episode or for the sake of variety.

Sidney's *Arcadia* (1554 1588) Goldsmith's *Traveller* and *Deserted Village* (1728 1774) Parnell's *Hermit* (1679 1718) Crabbe's *The Village* and other poems (1761 1832) Rogers' *Italy* (1763 1855) Byron's *Childe Harold* (1788 1824)

522 Narrative—In this (as the name implies) narrative is the chief aim, and description is merely subsidiary. Poems of this character may be roughly classified under three headings—

(a) **Epic or Heroic**, dealing with one great, complex action, in a lofty style, and in fulness of detail—

Milton's *Paradise Lost* (1608 1674) Dryden's *Æneid*, translated from Virgil (1691 1700) Pope's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, translated from Homer Southey's *Joan of Arc*, *Roderick*, and other poems (1774 1843) Keats's *Endymion* and *Hyperion* (1795 1821)

(b) **Romance, Legend, or Tale**, a lighter and shorter kind of narrative poetry than the Epic—

Pope's *Rape of the Lock* (a kind of mock Epic) Thomson's *Castle of Indolence* Scott's *Lady of the Lake*, *Marmion*, and other poems (1771 1832) Moore's *Lalla Rookh* (1779 1852) Byron's *Siege of Corinth* and other poems Campbell's *Gertrude of Wyoming* Tennyson's *Idylls of the King* Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome* Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner* (1772 1834)

(c) **Ballads**—This is the lightest and shortest form of narrative poetry. It deals with short anecdotes, local legends, etc., and tells them in the simplest language and in a light metre—

Sidney's *Cherry Chase* Cowper's *John Gilpin* Wordsworth's *Lyrical Ballads* (1770 1800) Southey's *Ballads of the Rhine* Scott's *Border Minstrelsy*

523 Reflective—Poems of this character may be roughly classified under two headings—

(a) **Longer poems**, as below—

Young's *Night Thoughts* (1684 1765) Akenside's *Pleasures of Imagination* (1721 1770) Cowper's *Task*, *Table-talk*, *Conversa-*

tion, Retirement, etc Johnson's *Vanity of Human Wishes* Campbell's *Pleasures of Hope* (1777 1844) Tennyson's *In Memoriam* Wordsworth's *Excursion* (1770-1850)

(b) Elegiac poems, always of a serious, and frequently of a plaintive, character —

Milton's *Lycidas* Gray's *Elegy written in a Country Churchyard* (1716 1771) Cowper's *Wreck of the Royal George*, and *Lines on Receipt of his Mother's Picture* Shelley's *Adonais* (1792 1822) Wolfe's *Burial of Sir John Moore* (1791-1823) Southey's *Holly Tree*

524 Dramatic, or the poetry of the stage —

Shakespeare's Plays, subdivided into Tragedies, Comedies, and Histories (1564 1616) Ben Jonson's Plays Addison's *Cato* (1672 1719) Goldsmith's *The Sloop to Conquer* Byron's *Sardanapalus*, *Manfred*, and other dramas Tennyson's *Bucket*, etc

Under the head of dramatic we must include poems which have been written in the form of a drama, but were not intended to be acted —

Milton's *Comus* and *Samson Agonistes* Taylor's *Philip Van Artevelde*, and other poems George Eliot's *Spanish Gypsy*

525 Lyrical — Short poems written in a rapid and irregular metre, fit to be sung or recited. Such poems are often called odes. They are of a much higher order than "ballads," and may be either descriptive or narrative

Milton's *L'Allegro* and *Il Penseroso* Dryden's *Ode on Alexander's Feast* Pope's *Ode on St Cecilia's Day* Thomson's *Rural Britannia* Gray's *The Bard*, *The Progress of Poesy*, *On the Prospect of Eton* Collins's *Ode to Evening*, *Ode on the Passions* Cowper's *Ode on Queen Boudicca* Campbell's *Hohenlinden*, *The Battle of the Baltic* Ye Mariners of England Moore's *Irish Melodies* Keats's *Ode to a Nightingale*, *Ode to Autumn*, *On a Grecian Urn*, etc Shelley's *The Cloud*, *Ode to a Skylark*, etc Tennyson's *Ode on the Duke of Wellington*

526 Didactic — Instruction given in verse —

Dryden's *Hind and Panther* and *Religio Laici* Pope's *Essay on Criticism*, *Essay on Man*, *Moral Essays* Armstrong's *Art of Preserving Health* Somerville's *Chaucer* (1692 1742)

527 Satire — Censures the faults of individuals or communities. The style may be jocose or serious

Butler's *Hudibras* (1612-1680). Dryden's *Absalom and Achitophel* Pope's *Dunciad*

§ 2. PROSODY OR THE LAWS OF METRE

528 Prosody is that part of grammar which treats of the laws of metre or versification.

529 Versification depends upon two main factors —

- (a) The accentuation of syllables
- (b) The number of accented syllables to a line

530 A specific combination of accented and unaccented syllables is called a *foot*. The number of syllables to a foot may be either two or three, but it cannot be less than two or more than three.

This gives rise to four different kinds of feet—Iambus, Trochee, Anapæst, and Dactyl —

(a) An **Iambus** consists of one unaccented syllable followed by an accented one, as,

Ap pear', be sides', at tack', sup ply'

(b) A **Trochee** consists of one accented syllable followed by an unaccented one, as,

Ho' ly, up' per, grand' eur, fail' ing

(c) An **Anapæst** consists of two unaccented syllables followed by an accented one, as,

Col on nade', re ap pear' on a hill'

(d) A **Dactyl** consists of one accented syllable, followed by two unaccented ones, as,

Mes' sen ger, mei' ri ly, prop' e ti ty, in' fa mous

531 To scan a line is to divide it into its several feet, and say *what kind* of feet they are and *how many* of them there are in the line.

Note —A line consisting of a fixed number of feet may have a rhyming syllable at the end of them, but this additional syllable does not count as a separate foot.

Shep' herds | all' and | maid' ens | fair,
'Fold' you | flocks' up, | for' the | air
'Gins to | thick' en, | and' the | sun
His' great | course' has | near' ly | run

Here we have four trochaic lines, each of which consists of three feet with a rhyming syllable at the end.

532. In scanning a line two short syllables coming together are often pronounced as if they were one for the sake of the metre.

Wing'd with | red light' - | ning and | impet' | vour rage.
 Hovering | and blaz' - | ing with' | delu' - | sive light.
 The mul' - | titud' | snous sea' | incarn' | adine
 Slides in' - | effect' | ual down' | the snow' | y vale.

Sometimes, in order to reduce two syllables to one, a consonant or even a whole syllable is omitted. Thus we have *e'en* for *even*, *ta'en* for *taken*, *e'er* for *ever*, *'gan* for *began*, *'is* for *it is*, *'twas* for *it was*, *we'll* for *we will*, *o'er* for *over*, *neath* for *beneath*, *'twixt* for *between*, etc.

When two vowel sounds belonging to different words come to gether, they are often slurred over and pronounced as one

Impressed' | the efful' | gence of' | his glo' | ry abides
 By her' | ald's voice | explained, | the hol' | low abyss
 About' | ma' | ble, unnot' | ter' | ble, and worse'
 To insult' | the poor' | or beau' | ty in' | distress
 May I | express' | thee unblamed, | since God' | is light ?

Iambic Metre

532 The Iambic metre is the prevailing measure or metre in English poetry, and is more extensively used than any other

The number of Iambic feet in an Iambic line may vary from two to seven

534 *Two feet*, or four syllables —

- (1) With rav' | shed cars'
 The mon' | arch hears,
 As rumes' | the God',
 Afflicts' | to nod',
 And seems' | to shrink' the spheres' — *Dryden*
- (2) In wood' | s rang'er,
 To joy' | a stranger

535 *Three feet*, or the trimeter, six syllables —

- (1) Thy way', | not mine', | O Lord',
 However' | en daik' | it be',
 Lead me' | by thine' | own hand',
 Choose out' | the path' | for me'
- (2) Alive' | to ev' | ery fi el' ing,
 The wounds' | of sor' | row heal' ing

536 *Four feet*, or the tetrameter, eight syllables —

The way' | was long', | the night' | was cold',
 The min' | stel was' | infirm' | and old',
 The harp', | his sole' | remain' | ing joy',
 Was car' | ried by' | an or' | phan boy' — *Scott*

Note — An Iambic trimeter may alternate with an Iambic tetrameter —

Confu' | sion, shame', | remorse' | despair',
 At once' | his bos' | om swell',

The damps' | of death' | bedewed' | his brow',
He shook', | he groaned', | he fell'

537 Five feet, or the pentameter, ten syllables. This is the most dignified measure in English verse, and is much used in Epic and Dramatic poetry

It may be used either with rhyme or in blank (that is, unrhymed) verse

(a) **With rhyme**

The rhythmical form in which this metre has been most used is the celebrated Heroic couplet —

There was' | a time', | when Æt' | na's at | lent fire'
Slept un' | perceived', | the moun' | tain yet' | entire',
When con' | scious of' | no dan' | ger from' | below'
She topped' | a cloud' | capt pyr' | amid' | of snow' —*Cooper*

In Elegiac poetry the rhyming lines of the Iambic pentameter often occur alternately —

The cur' | few tolls' | the knell' | of part' | ing day',
The low' | ing herd' | winds slow' | ly o'er | the lea',
The plough | man home' | ward plods | his way' | y way'
And leaves' | the world | to duk' | ness mid' | to me'
—*Gray's Elegy*

(b) **In blank verse**

Now sin' | the fire' | and close' | the shut' | ters fast
Let fall' | the m' | tains, wheel' | the so' | fa round',
And while' | the bub' | bling and' | loud hur' | ring urn'
Throws up, | a ste am' | y col' | umn, and' | the cups'
'That cheer' | but not | ine' | briate wait' | on each',
So let' | us wel' | come peace' | ful ev' | ning in' —*Cooper*

Note — The blank verse pentameter is the metre of Milton's *Paradise Lost* and of all the best dramatic poetry

538 Six feet, or the hexameter twelve syllables. This is never seen in the form of blank verse

This kind of line is often seen as the last line of an Heroic triplet, or of a Spenserian stanza (for which see § 547). Such a line is called an "Alexandrine"

The sa' | cred lake' | of Triv' | is from' | afar,
The Ve' | line foun' | tains and' | sulphur' | eous Nar',
Shake at' | the bale' | ful blast', | the sig' | nal of' | the war

539 Seven feet, or the Heptameter fourteen syllables —
Attend' | all ye' | who wish' | to hear' | our no' - | ble Eng' | land's
praise,

I sing' | of the' | thrice fa' - | mous deeds' | she wrought' | in an' - |
cient days,

When that' | great fleet' | invin' | cible' | against' | her bore' | in
vain
The rich' | est spoils' | of Mex' | ico', | the stout' | est hearts' | of
Spain

This metre, however, can be and often is subdivided into stanzas like the following, in which an Iambic line of four feet is followed alternately by another of three feet. This is much used in Ballad poetry

Attend' | all ye' | who wish' | to hear'
Our no' | ble Eng' | land's praise,
I sing' | of the' | thine fa' | mous deeds'
She wrought' | in au' | unt days,
When that' | great fleet' | invin' | cible'
Against' | her hote' | in vain
The rich' | est spoils' | of Mex' | ico',
The stout' | est hearts' | of Spain

540 The Iambic metre is not always perfectly carried out, that is, the alternation of an unaccented syllable with an accented one is not regularly observed

(a) The first foot is often a Trochee instead of an Iambus —

Daughter | of God' | and man', | accom' | plished Eve

(b) Sometimes two long or accented syllables come together instead of a short and long. Such a foot is called a *Spondee*, but this is not one of the feet recognised in English poetry. It is rather a deviation from the Iambus or Trochee

(c) Sometimes the first foot of an Iambic line consists of a monosyllable, in contravention of the rule stated in § 530, that a foot cannot have less than two syllables —

Stay', | the king' | hath thrown' | his war' | der down — *Shakespeare*
Wough' | the ves' | sel up'
Once dread' | ed by' | our foes,
And min' | gle with' | our cup
The tear | that Eng' | land owes — *Couper*

The Trochaic Metre

541 In a Trochaic line the *first, third, and other odd* syllables are accented. The line (as in the Iambic metre) may be of various lengths

(a) *One foot, followed by a rhyming syllable —*

Dread' ful | gleams,
Dis' mal | screams,

Fires' that | glow,
 Shrieks' of | woe,
 Sul' len | moans,
 Hol' low | groans — *Pope*

(b) *Two feet*, the last of which rhymes with the line following —

Rich' the | treas' ure,
 Sweet' the | plea' sure — *Dryden*

(c) *Three feet* — This kind of Trochaic line is seen in two different forms. Either there is a rhyming syllable that comes after the third foot, or the third foot itself rhymes with the third Trochee in the line following.

First form. This is the most common form of Trochaic verse —

When' the | Brit' ish | wa' rior | queen,
 Blod' ing | from' the | Ro' man | rods,
 Sought' with | an' in | dig' nant | men
 Coun' sel | of' her | coun' try's | gods

Second form —

Now' they | stood' con | found' ed,
 While' the | bat' tle | sound' ed

(d) *Four feet* — Four feet, the last of which rhymes with the line following. This is uncommon.

May', thou | month' of | 10'-sy | beau' ty,
 Month' when | pleas' ure | is' a | du' ty,
 Month' of | bees' and | month' of | flow' ers,
 Month' of | bloe' som' | la' den | bow' ers

A four-footed Trochaic line like the above can be alternated with a three-footed Trochaic line ending in a rhyming syllable. This kind of stanza is not at all uncommon.

Tell' me | not' in | mourn' ful | num' bers
 Life' is | but' an | emp' ty | dream,
 For' the | soul is | dead' that | slum' bers,
 And' things | are' not | what' they | seem — *Longfellow*

(e) *Five feet* — This is uncommon.

All' that | walk' on | foot' or | ride' in | char' iots,
 All' that | dwell' in | pal' a | ces' or | gar' rets

(f) *Six feet* — This too is uncommon.

On' a | moun' tain | stretched' be | neath' a | hoar' y | wil' low
 Lay' a | shep' herd | swain' and | viewed' the | 101' ling | bil' low

The Anapaestic Metre

542 In an Anapaestic line the accent falls on the third, sixth, and ninth syllables. The first two syllables, and

those coming between the third and sixth or between the sixth and ninth are unaccented.

(a) *One foot*, three syllables Very uncommon.

'Tis in vain'
They complain'

(b) *Two feet*, six syllables Not common

- (1) All our la' | bours must fail',
If the wick' | ed prevail
- (2) In my rage' | shall be seen'
The revenge' | of a queen'
- (3) In the cave' | of the moun' tain
By the side' | of the foun' tain

(c) *Three feet*, nine syllables This is the most common form of anapaestic verse

I am mon' | arch of all' | I survey',
My right' | there is none' | to dispute',
From the cen' | tre all round' | to the sea'
I am lord' | of the land' | and the brute' — *Couper*

Note — Observe that in the first foot of the second line an Iambus ("my right") has been given for an Anapaest. This is very common in the anapaestic metre.

In the following stanza an Iambus is substituted for an Anapaest in three lines out of four —

How fleet' | is the glanc' | of the mind
Compared' | with the speed' | of its flight' |
The tem' | pest itself | lags behind'
And the swift' | winged j' | rows of light'

(d) *Four feet*, twelve syllables

The Assy' | ran came down' | like a wolf' | on the fold',
And his co' | borts were glam' | ing in pur' | ple and gold',
And the shen' | of their spears' | was like stars' | on the sea',
When the blue' | wave rolls night' | ly on deep' | Galilee'

Note — In the four footed or tetrameter verse, an Iambic foot is often substituted for an Anapaest —

Not a drum' | was heard', | not a fu' | neral note',
As his corpse' | to the ram' | parts we hur' ried,
Not a sol' | did discharged' | his fare' | well shot'
O'er the grave' | where our he' | roes were buried

Here the second foot of the first line, and the third and fourth feet of the third line, are all Iambics.

Observe, too, that in the above stanza a trimeter line alternates with a tetrameter.

The Dactylic Metre

543 This is very uncommon. A Dactyl is the converse of an Anapaest, hence in a dactylic line the first and fourth syllables are accented

Mer' rily | mer' rily | shall' I live | now
 Un'-der the | blos' som that | hangs' on the | bough.
—Shakespeare

§ 3 *Special Metres*

544 The Heroic Couplet.—In this metre the lines rhyme together in pairs, and each line consists of five Iambic feet (see example, quoted in § 537, a)

This is called "Heroic" because it has been much used in translating Epic or Heroic poetry, as in Dryden's translation of Virgil, and Pope's translation of Homer

545 The Sonnet—Each line consists of five Iambic feet, and the number of lines to a sonnet is fourteen. The last two lines are always a couplet, the other twelve rhyme alternately or in couplets. The same rhyme may be repeated three or four times.

The subject of a sonnet is usually either reflective or amatory.

546 Ottava Rima—This is a stanza consisting of eight lines, and was borrowed from Italy. It begins with six Heroic couplets which rhyme three and three alternately, and ends with a couplet.

'Tis sweet to hear the watch dog's honest bark
 Bay deep mouthed welcome as we near our home,
 'Tis sweet to know there is an eye will mark
 Our coming, and look brighter when we come,
 'Tis sweet to be awakened by the lark,
 Or lulled by falling waters' sweet the hum
 Of bees, the voice of girls, the song of birds,
 The lisp of children and their callist words —Byron

547 The Spenserian Stanza—This is called Spenserian from its originator, the poet Spenser, who used it in composing his great allegorical poem *The Faery Queen*. It has since come into very general use.

Roll on', | thou deep' | and dark' | blue O' | cean, roll,
 Ten thou'- | sand fleets' | sweep o' | ver thee' | in vain
 Man marks' | the earth' | with ru' | in, lus' | control
 Stops with' | the shore', | upon' | the wa' | tery main
 The wrecks' | are all' | thy deed, | nor doth' | remain
 A shad'- | ow of' | man's rav' | age save' | his own,
 When for' | a mo' | ment like' | a drop' | of rain
 He sinks' | into' | thy depths' | with bub' | bling groan,
 Without' | a grave', | unknell'd', | uncoof' | fined, and' | unknown
—Byron

The student will see (a) that the first eight lines are all pentameters or lines in five iambic feet, (b) that the first and third lines rhyme together, then the second, fourth, fifth, and seventh, then the sixth, eighth, and ninth, and (c) that the ninth line is an Alexandrine, or line consisting of six iambic feet

CHAPTER XXX—POETIC DICTION

548 Poetry is distinguished from prose not only by metre, but by diction or the choice of words and constructions

549 Metre, without poetical diction, does not make poetry. The following is a specimen of the most prosaic language put together in the most perfect form of metre and rhyme —

Something had happened wrong about a bill,
Which was not drawn with sound commercial skill,
So, to amend it, I was told to go
And seek the firm of Clutterbuck and Co — Crabbe

550 The chief peculiarities of poetic as distinct from prose diction are shown below —

I The use of archaic or less common words—This arises from the fact that poetry pays little or no attention to changes in the colloquial or spoken language, and hence it retains words, which were used by former poets, after they have gone out of common use

Nouns—Poetry generally uses *swain* for *peas*, *swain* for *peasant* or *husbandman*, *billow* for *wave*, *main* for *sea* or *ocean*, *maiden* for *girl*, *nuptials* for *marriage*, *dale* for *valley*, *steed* or *charger* for *horse*, *we* for *anger*, *woe* for *sorrow* or *misery*, *thrall* for *distress*, *might* for *strength*, *marge* for *margin*, *spouse* for *wife*, *numbers* for *verse* or *metre*, *bower* for *summer house*, *quest* for *search*, *guile* for *deceit*, *bliss* for *happiness*, *bane* for *poison* or *mischief*, *ken* for *perception*, *troth* for *veracity* or *faithfulness*, *chanticler* for *cock*, *combat* for *battle*, *goblet* for *cup*, *aught* for *anything*, *naught* for *nothing*, *eve* for *evening*, *need* for *reward*, *morn* for *morning*, *mead* for *meadows*, *realm* for *kingdom*, *scribe* for *writer*, *vector* for *conqueror*, *foe* or *foeman* for *enemy*, *yeoman* for *peasant* or *husbandman*, *till* for *tillage* or *agriculture*, etc

Adjectives—Poetry often uses *lone* or *lonesome* for *lonely*, *drear* for *dreary*, *dread* for *dreadful*, *lovesome* for *lovely*, *intrepid* or *daimless* for *brave*, *yonder* for *yonder*, *rapt* for *delighted*, *hallowed* for *holy*, *daleful* for *pernicious*, *doleful* for *sorrowful*, *artless* for

innocent; *hapless* for *unlucky*, *lowly* for *low* or *humble*, *forlorn* for *distressed*, *sylvan* for *woody*, *sequestered* for *retired*, *joyless* for *unhappy*, *jocund* for *merry*, *vicarious* for *vicary*, *stilly* for *still*, *reckless* for *careless*, *bootless* for *unprofitable*, *ingrate* for *ungrateful*, *recreant* for *unfaithful*, *mute* for *silent*, *darksome* for *dark*, *quenchless* for *extinguishable*, *fond* for *foolish*, *wrathful* for *angry*, *dread* for *dreadful*, etc

Adverbs — Poetry often uses *scarce* for *scarcely*, *haply* for *perhaps*, *sore* for *sorely*, *oft* for *often*, *erst* or *whilom* for *formerly*, *of yore* or *of old* for *in ancient times*, *scantly* for *scantily*, *anon* for *at once*, *amain* for *violently or suddenly*, *hurl by* for *close or very near*, *full* for *very*, as in "full many a gem," etc., *right* for *very*, or *precisely*, as in "right against the eastern gate."

Verbs — Poetry often uses *quit* for *leave*, *was* for *grow*, *quoth* for *said*, *list* for *listen*, *sojourn* for *lodge or dwell*, *trout* for *believe*, *tarry* for *remain or stay*, *hearken* for *hear or attend*, *obscure* for *darken*, *fare* for *walk*, *vanguish* for *conquer*, *quaff* for *drink luxuriously*, *cleave* for *split*, *hie or spirit* for *hasten*, *smite* for *hit or strike*. *Est* and *ath* are still commonly used for the second and third persons respectively. The older or Strong forms of past tenses are used in preference to the modern or Weak ones, as *wrought* for *worked*, *bade* for *bid*, *begat* for *begot*, *clut* for *clift*, *cru* for *crowned*, *drove* for *drove*, *throve* for *thrued*, *clumb* for *climbed*, *stov* for *staved*, *clut* for *clothed*. Chap. v, § 12.

Conjunctions — Poetry often uses *what though* or *albeit* for *although*, *ere or on ere* for *before*, *notwith* for *nevertheless*, *an if* for *if*.

II Omission of various Parts of Speech — In the examples given below the omitted word is shown in brackets, such omissions are made chiefly for the sake of metre

The brink of (the) haunted stream	} Article
Creeping like (a) snail unwillingly to school	
(He) who steals my purse steals trash	
Lives there (the man) who loves his pain	} Noun or Pronoun
For is there aught in sleep (that) can charm the wise?	
'Tis distance (that) lends enchantment to the view	} Relative as Subject to a Verb
Mean though I am, (I am) not wholly so	
Happy (is) the man, whose wish and care, etc.	} Finite Verb
To whom thus Adam (spoke)	
Soldier rest, thy warfare (being) o'er, etc	} Participle
My ramble (being) ended, I returned	
He knew himself (how) to sing	} Conjunction
Permit (that) I marshal thee the way	
He mourned (for) no recreant friend	} Preposition.
Through the dear night of Him that walked (on) the waves	
Despair and anguish fled (from) the struggling soul	

In poetry a verb is often used alone, where in prose it would have an auxiliary verb attached to it

Long *die* thy happy days before thy death !
 (*May* thy happy days die, etc)
 This day *be* bread and peace my lot !
 (*May* peace and bread be, etc)
 Gives not the hawthorn bush as sweet a shade ?
 (*Does* it not *give*, etc)
 Tell me not in mournful numbers
 (*Do* not tell me, etc)
 He goes to do what I *had* done, if, etc
 (What I *should* have done, if, etc)

III The use of uncommon constructions

(a) An Adjective substituted for an adverb to qualify a verb (see above, p 276) —

First they praised him *soft* and *low* — *Tennyson*
 The green hills whispered *low* and *mild* — *Longfellow*

Note — Sometimes an Adjective is coupled with an Adverb —

Trip it *deft* and *merrily* — *Scott*

(b) The use of the Imperative in the first or third person. In older English this was not so uncommon, in modern it is seldom seen except in poetry (see § 180, *note*) —

Thither our path lies, and *we* up the hight — *Browning*
 " Now rest *we* here," Matilda said — *Scott*

(c) The formation of Comparative adverbs by changing "ly" into "er" This is never done in prose, and rarely even in poetry

You have taken it *wiselier* than I meant you should — *Shakespeare*
 Destroyers *rightlier* called the plagues of men — *Milton*.
 Strange friend, past, present, and to be,
 Loved *deeplier*, dark*lier* understood — *Tennyson*

Note — This form of the Comparative adverb occurs, however, in the familiar word "earlier," which can be either an adverb or an adjective

(d) The employment of a pronoun as well as a noun for the same verb This is rather common in poetry

My banks—*they* are furnished with bees — *Shenstone*
They tremble—the sustaining crags — *Tennyson*
The smith a mighty man is *he* — *Longfellow*
 Tired nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep,
He, like the world, his ready visit pays,
 Where fortune smiles — *Young*

(e) The substitution of an epithet (adjective) for the noun or thing qualified by it —

Below the chestnuts, when their buds
Were glistering to the breezy *blue* (=sky) — *Tennyson*.
The dread *vast* (=expanse) of night — *Milton*
The palpable *obscure* (=darkness) — *Milton*
The kindling *azure* (=sky) — *Thomson*
From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe* — *Pope*

(f) The formation of new compound words —

Hast thou not heard
That haughty Spain's *pope* consecrated fleet
Advances to our shores — *Sheridan*
The *always* wind obeying deep — *Shakespeare*
With rocks *unscaleable*, and roaring waters — *Shakespeare*
Or in the *violet* embroidered vale — *Milton*

(g) A freer use of impersonal verbs for personal ones, as *methinks* for *I think*, *methinks* for *it seems to me*, *methinks* for *it seems to me*

(h) A freer use of Personal or Reflexive pronouns after Intransitive verbs (see § 155 and § 340, Note 2) —

Then Satan first knew pain,
And *writhed him* to and fro — *Milton*
The shepherd *kissed him* home

(i) The use of the Superlative degree as a substitute for the Positive degree preceded by "very" —

Or where the gorgeous east with *richest* hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold — *Milton*

(j) The substitution of a Possessive noun for an adjective —

Pity and *woman's* (=womanly) compassion — *Longfellow*
The *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althea — *Lowell*

(k) The use of a Personal pronoun, where in prose a Reflexive would be used —

I thought *me* (=myself) richer than the Persian king
— *Ben Johnson*
How close she veils *her* (=herself) round — *Keble*

(l) The use of "and" in an Interrogative sentence, to express a passionate sense of grief —

And art thou cold and lowly laid — *Scott*
And wilt thou weep, when I am low ! — *Byron*

IV A change in the regular order of words.

(a) By placing the adjective after its noun —

Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
 Showers on her kings *barbaric* pearl and gold — *Milton*.
 Here *barbaric* is intended to qualify "kings," and not "pearl."

(b) By placing the verb before its subject —

Roar the mountains, *thunders* all the ground
Again returned the scenes of youth
As shines the moon in clouded skies

(c) By placing the object before its verb and the subject after it —

A transient *calm* the happy *scenes* bestow
 No *hive* hast *thou* of hoarded sweets

(d) By placing a qualifying phrase before, instead of after, the noun that it qualifies —

Thou sun, *of this great world* both eye and soul — *Milton*

(e) By placing the preposition after its noun, instead of before it —

They dashed that rapid torrent *through*
 Where Echo walks steep hills *among*
 Like children bathing on the shores
 Buried a wave *beneath*

(f) By placing the Infinitive before the verb on which it depends —

When first thy sire *to send* on earth
 Virtue, his darling child, designed — *Gray*

(g) By placing the complement before its verb, instead of after it, in sentences where the complement is not emphatic —

Grieved though thou art, forbear the rash design
Fresh blows the wind, a western wind

(h) By placing an adverb before an Intransitive verb instead of after it (see § 312) —

Merrily, merrily goes the bark,
Full lowly did the herdsman fall — *Scott*

(i) By placing an adverb before, instead of after, the verb with which it is compounded —

Up springs from yonder tangled thorn
 A stag more white than mountain snow — *Scott*
Out spake the victor then — *Campbell*

(j) By using *or*—*or* for *either*—*or*, and *nor*—*nor* for *neither*—*nor* —

Remote, unfriended, solitary, slow,
Or by the lazy Scheldt, or wandering Po —*Goldsmith*
Nor grief nor pain shall break my rest.

V The use of adjectives or participles instead of clauses This is done for the sake of terseness

(1) He can't combine each well *proportioned* part.

That is, he cannot make the different parts proportionate to each other and then combine them into a symmetrical whole

(2) See that your *polished* arms be primed with care

That is, see that your arms (or weapons) are well polished and primed with care

(3) Forth goes the woodman, leaving unconcerned
The *cheerful* haunts of men

Here "*cheerful*" means "*however cheerful they may be*"

(4) From his *slack* hand the garland wreathed for me
Down dropped, and all the faded roses shed

Here "*slack*" stands for "*which had become slack*"

(5) But he who hurts a *harmless* neighbour's peace,
Insults *fallen* worth or beauty in distress

Here "*harmless*" stands for "*though he is harmless,*" and "*fallen*" for "*when it is fallen*"

(6) From *loveless* youth to *unrespected* age
No passion gratified except his rage

Her youth was devoid of love, the peculiar grace of youth, and her old age was devoid of respect, the peculiar privilege of age, she gratified no passion except her evil temper

(7) The jay, the rook, the daw,
And each harsh pipe, discordant *heard alone*,
And the full concert

Here *heard alone* means "*when it is heard alone*"

Notes —In paraphrasing poetry into prose one of the first things to be done is to convert such adjectives or participles as those quoted above into verbs, adding such Relatives or Conjunctions as may be necessary

VI The use of epithets for the sake of ornament
This peculiarity is in keeping with the chief aim of poetry, which is to please rather than to instruct. An epithet is *ornamental*, when it is in no respect essential to the sense

The breezy call of *incense breathing* morn,
The swallow twittering from its *straw-built* shed,
The cock's shrill clarion, and the echoing horn,
No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed —*Gray*

Here the epithets "breezy," "twittering," "shrill," and "echoing" are all conducive to the sense, but *incense-breathing* and *straw-built* serve no purpose other than that of ornament.

Ornamental epithets are italicised in the following lines —

- (1) Oh mother Ida, *many fountain'd* Ida,
Dear mother Ida, hearken ere I die
- (2) Then answer made the *bold* Sir Bedivere

In the following lines the italicised epithets are essential —

As shines the moon in *clouded* skies,
She in her poor attire was seen

The *golden* harvest, the *swift* stag, the *tawny* lion, the *briny* deep, the *mighty* deep, etc., are all stock phrases common in poetry. The epithets are merely ornamental.

Note — In paraphrasing poetry into prose the student should take care to give greater prominence to the essential than to the ornamental epithets.

VII The use of graphic or picturesque language
This peculiarity, too, arises from the desire to please. Language is graphic or picturesque, when it calls up some image to the mind by dwelling on the particular rather than on the general or abstract.

Arise, my love, my fan, and come away, for, lo! the winter is past, the rain is over and gone, the flowers appear on the earth, the time of the singing of birds is come, and the voice of the turtle is heard in our land, the fig tree putteth forth her green figs, and the vines with the tender grapes perfume the air. Arise, my love, my fair, and come away — *The Song of Solomon*

VIII A freer use of Figurative language than in Prose The different figures of speech have been described in Chapter xxvii, and need not now be recapitulated.

APPENDIX A

CERTAIN GRAMMATICAL TERMS

Aph-ér'-e-sis the removal of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word, as *'tween* for *between*, *'gan* for *began*

Ap-oc'-o-pe' the removal of a letter or syllable from the end of a word, as *th'* for *the*

Dí'-a-lect' a provincial or local form of any language

El-lp'-sis the idiomatic omission of a word or words, as,
I told you (that) you would succeed

Eu'-pho-ny the use of words or syllables that have a pleasing sound

Hom'-o-nym' a word that is spelt and pronounced in the same way as another, but has an entirely distinct meaning, and is in fact a distinct word, as *bear* (the animal), *bear* (to produce or endure)

Impropriety the use of a word in a sense that does not properly belong to it, as, "to *perpetrate* a virtuous act" (This verb is used only for bad actions)

Par'-o-nym' a word, not spelt the same as another, but pronounced exactly alike, as *hair*, *hare*

Parenthesis literally "an insertion by the way", that is, a clause or phrase wedged into a sentence, in passing

Purity the use of words sanctioned by the best modern writers. This rule excludes barbarisms of all kinds, such as the needless use of foreign words (as *a propos* for *in reference to*), or of classical words (as *de novo* for *anew*), or of obsolete words (as *erst* for *formerly*)

Solecism a violation of Syntax,—a grammatical blunder, as, "*whom* do men say that I am?" (Here *whom* should be *who*) Or, a violation of idiom, as, "*Die with* fever" (Here *with* should be changed to *of*)

Syn'-co-pe' the removal of a letter from the middle of a word, as *tu'en* for *taken*

Syn'-o-nym' a word having the same or nearly the same meaning as another, as *improbable*, *unlikely*

Tautology an unnecessary repetition, as,

The day declines, the sun is going down.

APPENDIX B

In the following pairs of words, the *noun* or *adjective* takes the accent on the *first* syllable, the *verb* on the *second*

Ab'sent , not present	Fre'quent , occurring often.
Ab'sent (oneself), to go away	Pre'quent , to visit often
Ab'stract , an abridged statement.	Im'port , a thing imported
Ab'stract' , to take from, or pilfer	Im'port , to bring in for sale
Ac'cent , stress laid on a syllable	Im'press , a stamp or impression.
Ac'cent' , to lay stress on a syllable	Im'press' , to make an impression
Ad'fix , an appended particle	In'cense , a perfume.
Ad'fix' , to append something	In'cense' , to arouse to anger
At'tribute , an ascribed quality	In'crease , an augmentation
At'trib'ute , to ascribe a quality	In'crease , to be augmented
Aug'ment , an increase	In'sult , an effusive remark
Aug'ment , to make larger	In'sult' , to offend by a remark
Com'mune , the Commons	Ob'ject , anything seen, etc
Com'mune' , to meditate	Ob'ject' , to oppose
Com'pound , a mixture	Per'fume , an odour or scent
Com'pound' , to mix	Per'fume' , to give a sweet scent
Con'cert , a musical entertainment	Per'mit , a written permission.
Con'cert' , to arrange a plan	Per'mit' , to allow
Con'duct , behaviour	Per'vert , one perverted
Con'duct' , to lead or direct	Per'vert' , to bring to a wrong opinion
Con'fine , a border or boundary	Pre'fix , a particle placed before
Con'fine' , to limit or shut off	Pre'fix' , to place anything before
Con'flict , a struggle or contest	Pre'mise (s) , a proposition
Con'flict' , to strive with or oppose	Pre'mise (z) , to make a proposition
Con'sort , wife or husband	Pre'sage , an indication of the future
Con'sort' , to associate with	Pre'sage' , to predict the future
Con'test , a struggle or dispute	Pre'sent , a gift.
Con'test' , to dispute	Pre'sent' , to give
Con'tract , an agreement.	Pro'ceeds , profits from an investment.
Con'tract' , to draw together	Pro'ceed' , to go forward
Con'trast , dissimilarity	Pro'duce , the thing produced
Con'trast' , to compare dissimilar things	Pro'duce' , to bring into existence
Con'verse , the opposite to	Pro'gress , advance
Con'verse' , to talk with	Pro'gress' , to make an advance.
Con'vert , a man converted	Pro'ject , an undertaking
Con'vert' , to bring round to an opinion	Pro'ject' , to stand out.
Con'vict , a man convicted	Pro'test , a remonstrance
Con'vict' , to declare guilty	Pro'test' , to remonstrate
Con'voy , an escort	Reb-el , one who rebels
Con'voy' , to escort for protection	Re-bel , to resist authority
De'crease , a diminution	Re'cord , a written statement
De'crease' , to become less	Re'cord' , to state in writing
Des'ert , a barren tract	Re'fuse (s) , rejected matter
Des'ert' , to abandon	Re'fuse (z) , to reject or decline
De'tail , a particular item	Re'tail , sale in small quantities
De'tail' , to relate the particulars	Re'tail' , to sell in small quantities
Di'gest , an analysis	Sub'ject , one under authority
Di'gest' , to assimilate food	Sub'ject' , to place under authority
Dis'count , a reduction from an amount	Sur'fix , a particle placed after
Dis'count' , to make a reduction	Sur'fix' , to fit or place after
Es'cort , a guard in travelling.	Sur'vey , a general view
Es'cort' , to guard in travelling	Sur'vey' , to take a general view
Es'say , a composition	Sus'pect , a man suspected
Es'say' , to try or attempt	Sus'pect' , to hold under suspicion.
Ex'ile , one who is banished	Tor'ment , excessive pain
Ex'ile' , to banish a man	Tor'ment' , to inflict excessive pain
Ex'port , a thing exported	Trans'fer , the act of transferring
Ex'port' , to send out for sale	Trans'fer' , to send across
Ex'tract , a thing extracted	Trans'port , a state of ecstasy
Ex'tract' , to draw a thing out	Trans'port' , to send or carry across
Fer'ment , a state of heat	Un'dress , a light kind of dress
Fer'ment' , to be changed by heat	Un'dress' , to take off one's clothes
Fore'cast , a prediction	Up'set , the state of being overthrown
Fore'cast' , to foresee or predict.	Up'set' , to throw anything over

In the following pairs of words, the *noun* takes the accent on the *first* syllable (as before), and the *adjective* on the *second*.

Au gust, name of month
Au gust, venerable.
Com pact, agreement.
Com pact, tight and close
Ex pert, a skilful person
Ex pert, skilful

In stinct, untaught ability
In stinct, animated
In va lid, a sick person
In val'id, not binding.
Min ute, sixty seconds
Min ute, very small

Note — "An a'ged man" means "a very old man." "He has aged (adj) much" means "He looks much older than he did"

APPENDIX C — ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>A</i> or <i>Ans</i>	Answer	<i>Con</i>	Against, opposed
<i>Abp</i>	Archbishop	<i>CS I</i>	Companion of the Order of the Star of India
<i>A D</i>	Anno Domini, in the year of our Lord	<i>Cwt</i>	A hundredweight
<i>A D C</i>	Aide de-camp	<i>D C L</i>	Doctor of Civil Law
<i>Æt</i>	Ætatis, of his age, aged	<i>D D</i>	Doctor of Divinity
<i>A M</i>	Ante Meridiem, before noon	<i>Dec</i>	December
<i>Anon</i>	Anonymous	<i>D M</i>	Doctor of Music
<i>App</i>	Appendix	<i>Do</i>	Ditto, the same
<i>Augt</i>	August	<i>D I'</i>	Deo Volente, if God wills
<i>B A</i>	Bachelor of Arts	<i>Dut</i>	Pennyweight
<i>Bart</i>	Baronet	<i>Ed</i>	Edition, Editor
<i>B C</i>	Before Christ	<i>cg</i>	Exempli gratia, for the sake of example
<i>B C L</i>	Bachelor of Civil Law	<i>E L</i>	East Latitude
<i>B D</i>	Bachelor of Divinity	<i>Eq</i>	Esquire
<i>B L</i>	Bachelor of Law	<i>Etc or &c</i>	Etcetera, and the rest, and so on
<i>Bp</i>	Bishop	<i>Feb</i>	February
<i>Bros</i>	Brothers	<i>F R A S</i>	Fellow of the Royal Astronomical Society
<i>B Sc.</i>	Bachelor of Science	<i>F R C S</i>	Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons
<i>Canab</i>	Of Cambridge	<i>F R S</i>	Fellow of the Royal Society
<i>Capt</i>	Captain	<i>Gall</i>	Gallon
<i>C B</i>	Companion of the Bath	<i>H M</i>	Honorary Magistrate
<i>C E</i>	Civil Engineer	<i>Hon., Honble</i>	Honourable
<i>Cent</i>	Centum, a hundred	<i>Ib or Ibid</i>	Ibidem, in the same place or author
<i>Cf</i>	Confer, compare	<i>Id</i>	Idem, the same
<i>Ch</i> or <i>Chcp</i>	Chapter	<i>I e</i>	Id est, that is
<i>C I E</i>	Companion of the Order of the Indian Empire	<i>Incog</i>	Incognitus, unknown
<i>Cir</i>	Circum, about	<i>In loc</i>	In loco, in the place
<i>C M G</i>	Companion of the Order of St Michael and St George	<i>Inst</i>	In the current month
<i>Co.</i>	Company		
<i>Col</i>	Colonel		

<i>I O U</i>	I owe you, an acknowledgment of a debt	<i>Oct</i>	October
<i>Jan.</i>	January	<i>O T</i>	Old Testament
<i>J P</i>	Justice of the Peace	<i>Oxon</i>	Of Oxford
<i>Jr or Jun</i>	Junior, younger	<i>Oz</i>	Ounce
<i>K B</i>	Knight of the Bath	<i>Per</i>	By, as per annum
<i>K C B</i>	Knight Commander of the Bath	<i>Per cent</i>	Per centum, by the hundred
<i>K C I E</i>	Knight Commander of the Order of the Indian Empire	<i>P M</i>	Post Meridiem, afternoon
<i>K C S I</i>	Knight Commander of the Order of the Star of India	<i>P P C</i>	Pour prendre congé, to take leave
<i>K G</i>	Knight of the Garter	<i>P W D</i>	Public Works Department
<i>K G C</i>	Knight of the Grand Cross	<i>Pro</i>	For, in favour of
<i>K R G</i>	Knight of the Red Cross	<i>Pro tem</i>	Pro tempore, for the time being
<i>Lb</i>	A pound in weight	<i>Propr</i>	In the coming month
<i>L or l or £</i>	A pound in money	<i>P S</i>	Postscriptum, post script
<i>Lieut or Lt</i>	Lieutenant	<i>Qu or Q</i>	Query, or question
<i>Lieut Col</i>	Lieutenant Colonel	<i>Q C</i>	Queen's Council
<i>Lieut Gen</i>	Lieutenant General	<i>Q E D</i>	Quod erat demonstrandum, which was to be demonstrated
<i>Lieut-Gov</i>	Lieutenant Governor	<i>Q</i>	Quarter
<i>LL B</i>	Bachelor of Laws	<i>Q V</i>	Quod Vide, which see
<i>LL D</i>	Doctor of Laws	<i>R A</i>	Royal Academy, or Royal Artillery
<i>Long</i>	Longitude	<i>R E</i>	Royal Engineer
<i>Lat</i>	Latitude	<i>Rev</i>	Reverend
<i>M A</i>	Master of Arts	<i>R H A</i>	Royal Horse Artillery
<i>May</i>	Major	<i>R N</i>	Royal Navy
<i>May Gen</i>	Major General	<i>Rt Rev</i>	Right Reverend
<i>M B</i>	Bachelor of Medicine	<i>Rt Hon</i>	Right Honourable
<i>M D</i>	Doctor of Medicine	<i>Sept</i>	September
<i>M P</i>	Member of Parliament	<i>S L</i>	South Latitude
<i>M R A S</i>	Member of the Royal Asiatic Society	<i>Sq Ft</i>	Square foot
<i>M R C S</i>	Member of the Royal College of Surgeons	<i>St</i>	Stet, let it stand
<i>MS</i>	Manuscript	<i>St</i>	Saint, as St. Paul
<i>Mt</i>	Mount, mountain	<i>Supt</i>	Superintendent
<i>N B</i>	Nota bene, note well	<i>S W</i>	South West
<i>Nem. con</i>	Nemine contradicente, unanimously	<i>S E</i>	South East
<i>N Lat</i>	North Latitude	<i>T O</i>	Turn over
<i>No</i>	Number	<i>Ult</i>	Ultimo, last month
<i>Nov</i>	November	<i>U S A</i>	United States of America
<i>N T</i>	New Testament	<i>Ven</i>	Venerable
		<i>Viz.</i>	Videhæc, namely
		<i>W. L</i>	West Latitude
		<i>Xmas</i>	Christmas

I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS

The references are to pages

- Absolute participle**, 11, 135, 141
 - Impersonal, 11, 141
 - Imperative, 11, 65
 - Infinitive, 11, 70
 - case, 274
- Abstract nouns** —
 - used as Proper, 15
 - used as Common, 14
 - expressed by Adjective, 174
 - expressed by Gerund, 15, 75
 - expressed by Infinitive, 15, 69
- Abstract suffixes** —
 - English, 360
 - Latin, 363
 - Greek, 365
- Accent defined**, 12
- Active and Passive**, 57
- verb in Passive sense**, 58
- Adjective clause**, 86, 124
- Adjectives, kinds of**, 81
 - verbal, 9, 71
 - comparison of, 36-8, 174 6, 398 1
 - used as nouns, 172 4
 - substitutes for, 86
 - two uses of, 35
 - position of, 142 5
 - Latin to English nouns, 378
 - two to one English noun, 378 9
- Adjective substituted for adverb**, 137, 276
- Adjective suffixes** —
 - English, 361
 - Latin, 363
 - Greek, 365
- Adjuncts, to Subject**, 112
- to verb of Predicate**, 114
- Adverb, defined**, 7, 93
 - kinds of, 94
 - two uses of, 100
 - sentence qualified by, 93
 - prepositions qualified by, 93, 204 6
 - substituted for adjective, 276
 - comparison of, 96 7
 - forms of, 97 9
 - pairs of adverbs 99
 - position of, 145-7
 - object to preposition, 100 1
 - special uses of Simple, 193 9
- Adverb-clause**, 125 6
- Adverbial phrases**, 98, 99, 190
- suffixes**, 361
- Adverbial objective**, 186
 - adjuncts to Predicate, 114
- Adverbs compounded with** —
 - nouns, 94
 - verbs, 94, 379
 - repeated, 278
- Adversative conjunctions**, 105
- Agent, suffixes denoting** —
 - English, 360
 - Latin, 363
 - Greek, 365
- Alexandrine**, 408, 413
- Allegory**, 345
- Alliteration**, 402
- Alternative conjunctions**, 105
- Analysis of sentences** —
 - simple, 110 14
 - compound, 117 18
 - complex, 121 6
- Anapaest**, 406
- Anapaestic metre**, 410-11
- Antecedent** —
 - to Demonstrative pronoun, 42
 - to Relative pronoun, 47
 - understood, 47
 - position of, 149
- Antichmax, Bathos**, 399
- Antithesis**, 399 400
- Apostrophe, figure of speech**, 401
- Apostrophe in punctuation**, 157
- Apostrophe s, omission of**, 21, 22, 186
- Apposition**, 8, 135, 186
- Articles, origin of**, 8
- idiomatic use of**, 108 72
- Assertive sentences**, 5
- Attributive** —
 - use of adjectives, 85
 - use of adverbs, 100
 - use of participles, 141
 - use of infinitives, 70, 141
- Auxiliary verbs, defined**, 51
- conjugated**, 85 92
- BRACKETS in punctuation**, 158
- CAPITALS**, 12, 152, 156
- Cardinals used as nouns**, 278
- Case, defined**, 21
 - the three cases, 21 23
- Causal use of Intransitive verbs**, 55-6

Circumlocution, 493
 Clause, defined, 6
 Noun-clause, 121-2
 Adjective-clause, 124-5
 Adverb-clause, 125-6
 Climax, 398-9
 Cognate object, 54-5
 Collective nouns, 13
 Colon in punctuation, 155-6
 Comma in punctuation, 151-3
 Commas, inverted, 156
 Common gender, 17, 19, 20
 Common nouns, 13
 other nouns used as, 13, 14, 15
 Comparatives, irregular, 87, 88
 Latin, 88
 decayed, 175-6
 different senses of, 176
 Comparison of adjectives, 36-8
 adverbs, 96-7
 Complement, defined, 10, 52
 Subjective, 54
 Objective, 54
 position of, 54, 145
 Complex sentences, 121-5
 Compound words, Related, 355-7
 Unrelated, or Juxtapositional, 358
 sentences, 117-8
 prepositions, 102
 Concrete nouns, 12, 14
 Conjugation of verbs, 78-84
 Conjunction, defined, 7, 104
 Co-ordinative, 104-5
 Subordinative, 105-9
 Conjunctions, uses of, 245-53
 less commonly used, 258
 Continuative use of "who," 48, 117
 Continuous forms of tense, 60-1
 Contracted sentences, 117
 Correlative words in phrases, 274-5
 Cumulative conjunctions, 104-5

 DACTYL, foot, 406
 Dactylic metre, 411-2
 Dash in punctuation, 158
 Dative or Objective of Interest, 161
 Defective verbs, defined, 51
 conjugated, 85-92
 Definite article, 169-71
 Numeral adjectives, 92-53
 Demonstrative adjectives, 33-4
 Demonstrative pronouns, 42-6
 Demonstrative adverbs, 95
 Dependent clauses, 105, 121
 Derivatives, Primary, 358-60
 Secondary, 360, etc
 Descriptive adjectives, 32
 Diminutive suffixes —
 English, 361
 Latin, 364
 Greek, 365
 Direct Narration, 287
 Direct object to verb, 52
 Disguised prepositions, 102-3
 Disguised prefixes, 367-8
 Distributive adjectives, 34-5
 phrases, 167-8

Double Parts of Speech, 9
 object to verbs, 52
 Feminines, 79
 Doublets of English origin, 368
 of Latin origin, 368-5
 of Greek origin, 365
 Doubt, in Subjunctive, 67

 ELLIPSES of verbs or clauses, 187-9
 Elliptical phrases, 284
 Emphasis, 12, 275-6
 shown by change of order, 275
 English language, stages of change, 373
 nouns with Latin adjectives, 378
 Epigram, 400
 Euphemism, 398
 Exclamation, expressed by —
 Infinitive, 70, 110
 Subjunctive, 110
 Adverb "how," 96, 110
 Pronoun "what," 49, 110
 figure of speech, 399
 Exclamatory sentence, 5, 298, 300-1

 FABLE, defined, 389
 Factitive verbs, 10, 52-3
 Feminines, how formed, 17-9
 foreign, 19
 exceptional, 19
 Figures of speech, defined, 398-408
 Finite verb and moods, 8, 58, 60, 64, 65
 First Personal pronouns, 39
 Foot defined, 406
 Foreign Plurals, 26
 Feminines, 19
 Forms of adverbs, 97-9
 of prepositions, 101-2
 of subject, 10, 261
 of object, 10, 51-2
 Full stop, 156
 Future tense —
 Indefinite, 68
 Perfect, 179

 GENDRE, three marks of, 17
 Gerund, double part of speech, 9, 74
 distinct from verbal noun, 76
 preceded by a Possessive, 75
 preceded by a preposition, 75, 217
 followed by objects, 75
 used as adjective, 38, 137
 Gerundial Infinitive, 70, 141
 Gerundive use of Participles, 76, 141
 Greek prefixes, 368-9
 suffixes, 365
 plurals, 26
 roots, list of, 391-2

 HEROIC couplet, 412
 Historical present, 177, 402
 Hybrids, 374-5
 Hyperbole, Exaggeration, 399

 IAMBIC foot, 406
 metre, 407-9
 Illative conjunctions, 105
 Imperative, uses of, 64-5

- Imperative in Indirect Narration, 292-3**
 sentences, 5, 292
Impersonal verbs, 82
 absolute, 141
Incomplete predication —
 Facitive verbs, 52
 Intransitive verbs, 54
Indefinite article, 8, 163
 adjectives, 166 7
 pronouns, 45 6
 tenses, 61-8
Indicative mood, 60-3
Indirect —
 object to verb, 59
 Narration, 287 295
Infinitive, two kinds of, 60 70
 further uses of, 181 4
 after Relative pronouns, 184
 after Relative adverbs, 184
Interjections, 100, 110
Interrogation —
 in punctuation, 157
 figure of speech, 399
Interrogative adverbs, 96
 sentences, 5, 292
Intransitive verbs, 11, 54-6
 with complement, 54
 in causal sense, 55 6
Introductory adverb, 11, 198
Inverted commas, 156 7
Irony, sarcasm, 401
LATIN plurals, 26
 comparatives, 88
 roots, list of, 886 91
 prefixes, 865 7
 suffixes, 863 5
Latotes, figure of speech, 401
MEANINGS of Possessive 159-60
Metaphor, defined, 393
 personal, 394
 sustained, 394 5
 confused, 395
 constant or decayed, 395
Metonymy, defined, 396 7
Mixed conjugation, 81 2
Modes of expressing condition 297
 of expressing a concession, 298
Moods, four kinds of, 58 9
Multitude, nouns of, 12
NARRATION —
 Direct, 287
 Indirect, 287 95
Nominative case, 135
Note of Exclamation, 157
 Interrogation, 157
Noun, kinds of, 12
 verbal, 76
 Infinitive, 69
 used as adjective, 137
Noun-clause, 10, 17, 121-8
Nouns, substitutes for, 16 17
Noun suffixes —
 English, 860 1
 Latin, 863-4
 Greek, 865
Number and Person, 59, 188, 150
Nominal adjectives, 32-3, 164-5
OBJECT, position of, 52, 149
Object, omission of, 52, 124
Objective case, 186 7
Objective complement, 54
Objects to verbs, five kinds, 57, 72, 75, 136
 forms of, 19, 51
Obsolete words in phrases, 279
Onomatopoeia, 402-3
Optative sentence, 5
Ottava Rima, 413
PAIRS of English and Latin words, 375
Parable, figure of speech, 395
Parenthesis, 70, 158, 420
Parsed sentence, 142
Parang chart, 135 5
Participles, double character, 9, 71
 three uses of, 141
 forms of, 71
 meanings implied in, 73
 with implied noun, 278
Parts of Speech, defined, 11 8
 same word as different, 130-2
Passive voice, 57 8
Past Indefinite, uses of, 177
 Perfect, uses of, 177 9
Periphrasis, 403
Personal pronouns, 39 43
Personification, 15, 20, 22, 396
Phrase, defined, 6
 adverbial, 11, 98 9, 199 204
 prepositional, 11, 211 18
 conjunctive, 11, 24, 38
 interjectional, 11, 110
 absolute, 11
 distributive, 40, 167-8
Pleonasm, 403
Plurals how formed 23 25
 special sense of, 27, 28
 double, 26
 foreign, 26
 true, 29
Poetic diction, 413 9
Poetry, kinds of, 403-5
Positive degree, 36, 174 5, 299
Possessive case —
 of nouns, 21 3
 of pronouns, 40 1, 274
 double, 23 41
 before a gerund, 75
 syntax of, 136
 omission of, 22, 25, 186
 of Interest, 161
Predicate, defined, 6, 111
 parts of, 113
Predicative, uses of —
 adjectives, 35, 137
 adverbs, 100, 133
 participles, 141
Prefixes —
 English, 862 3
 Latin, 865-8
 Greek, 868 9

Prefixes —
 Latin and Greek equivalents, 370
 disguised, 367 8
Preposition, defined, 8, 100
 Noun clause as object, 101
 adverb as object, 101
 phrase as object, 104
 position of, 149
 forms of, 101-3
 uses of, 216-19
 relations denoted by, 206 11
 nouns followed by, 220-6
 adjectives followed by, 225 81
 verbs followed by, 281 8
 adverbs followed by, 238
Prepositional phrases, 211 18
 verbs, 56
Present Indefinite, uses of, 177
 Perfect, uses of, 177 9
Principal verbs, 61
 clause, 121
Pronoun, defined, 6, 38
 kinds of, 39
 syntax of, 138, 140
Proper adjectives, 81
 nouns, 18
 used as Common nouns, 13
Prosopoeia, 401 2
Prosody, defined, 406
Puu, 401
Purpose, conjunctions of, 100
QUALITY —
 Nouns of, 14
 Adjectives of, 82
 Adverbs of, 92
Quantity —
 Adjectives of, 82,
 Adverbs of, 96
REFLEXIVE pronouns —
 forms of, 41 2, 269
 omitted after Transitive verb, 53
 object to Intransitive verb, 55
 use of verbs, 184
Relative pronouns, 46 8
 adverbs, 90
 position of, 149
Related or Syntactical compounds, 355
 Restrictive use of "who", 48, 124
 Retained object, 57
Root, defined, 853
SEMICOLON, 154 5
Sentence, defined, 5
 five kinds of, 5
Sequence of tenses —
 after Past tense, 189
 after any other tense, 189 90
Similar words in pairs, 280

Simile, defined, 308
Simple adverbs, 94
 Infinitives, 69
 Singulars, true, 28, 29
 Sonnet, 412
Specialised expressions, 285
Spenserian stanza, 412
Strong conjugation, 78-81
Subject, various forms of, 10, 113
 position of, 147 9
Subjective complement, 54
Subjunctive mood, forms, 65-6
 uses, 66 7
Subordinate clause, 121
Subordinative conjunctions, 105
Substitutes for nouns, 16, 17
 for adjectives, 86
Substitution of pronouns for nouns, 162
Suffixes —
 English, 360-1
 Latin, 363 5
 Greek, 365
Superlative degree —
 adjectives, 28-7, 175, 300
 adverbs, 97
Supposition expressed by —
 Imperative, 65
 Subjunctive, 97
Synecdoche, 387
Synthesis, defined, 390
 examples of, 381 52
TAUTOLOGY, 403
 Tense, three kinds of, 59
 four forms of each kind, 60
Tenses, Indicative—forms, 60-8
 uses of, 177 81
Transferred epithets, 398
Transformation of sentences, 295
Transitive verbs, defined, 10, 61
 how made Intransitive, 58
 with Double object, 52
Trochee, foot, 406
Trochaic metre, 409-10
Two Singulars with Plural verb, 189
UNRELATED compounds, 353-5
VERBAL nouns, 76
 Verb and Subject, 59, 138 9
Verbs, kinds of, 61
 conjugation of, 78 84
 Impersonal, 92
 in pairs, English and Latin, 379
 followed by adjectives, 277-9
Voice, Active and Passive, 57 8
WORDS used in bad sense, 231-3
 in pairs, English, Latin, 275-8

II INDEX OF WORDS AND PHRASES

The references are to pages

A, *an*, 84, 180, 166, 168-9
A (prepos), 75, 102 3, 180
A (prefix), 192, 195, 196
 Abash, 868
 About, 83, 206
 Above, 206
 Above all, 199
 Above board, 199
 Absent oneself, 185
 According as, 252
 Across, 206
 Address oneself, 186
 Administratrix, 19
 Admit, admit of, 289
 A dozen, 165
 Advices 28
 A few, the few, 164
 Afraid, 808
 After, 207, 218
 After all, 200
 Again, 197
 Again and again, 200
 Against, 207, 258
 Ago, 196
 Ains, 28, 281
 A lack a day, 110
 Albert, 253
 A little, 168 4, 194, 204
 All, 189, 204
 All along of, 204
 All of them, 258
 All the same, 252
 Almost, 204
 Alms, 28, 391
 Along, 204, 207
 Alphabet, 27
 Already, 197
 Altogether, 204
 Am or was to go, 188
 A many, 164
 Amend, 308
 Amends, 29
 Avoid, amidst, 207
 Among, amongst, 207, 218
 Ancestor, 367
 And, 118, 256
 And so on, 270
 An if, 258
 Any, 180, 168, 166 7
 Any other, 167

Anything but, 268
 Apart, 204
 A piece, 168
 Apply oneself, 187
 Around, round, 207
 As, 47, 180, 250, 259
 As it were, 200
 As long as, 246
 Associate oneself, 186
 As soon as, 246
 As sure as, 252
 As thee, as me, 259
 Astonish, 368
 As usual, 259
 As well as, 245
 As yet, 200
 At, 207, 218
 At a time, 168
 At all, 200
 At best at the best, 260
 Athwart, 207
 At once, 200
 At present, 200
 At sixes and sevens, 173
 At ten years old, 260
 Attend, attend to, 299
 At the same time, 252
 Avail oneself, 185
 Avenge oneself, 186
 Award, 163
 Away, 205

 BALANCE, 367
 Be (verb), 85
 Be (prefix), 102, 162
 Bear, bear with, 289
 Because, 247
 Beever, 28
 Before, 196 7, 208, 218, 247
 Before long, 200
 Begun, begun with, 239
 Behind, 208
 Beholden, 80
 Believe believe in, 339
 Bello, 19
 Below, 208
 Beneath, 88, 208
 Beside, 208
 Besides, 208, 218
 Betake oneself, 182

Bethink oneself, 186
 Better, 68, 181
 Between, 208, 218
 Beware, 92
 Beyond, 208
 Bid fair to, 260
 Black and blue, 173
 Body natural, 144
 Both, 181
 Both—and, 245
 Both of them, 268
 Break oneself of, 186
 Brethren, brothers, 25, 27
 Briefly, 270
 But (*adverb*), 249
 " (*preposition*), 103, 181, 208
 " (*conjunction*), 48, 181, 249
 But also, 245
 But he, 260
 But what, 261
 By, 208, 218
 By and by, 300
 By far, 268
 By little, 261
 By the by, 201
 By two, by twos, 168
 By thousands, 263

 CALL, call on, 289
 Came to pass, 261
 Can, 89
 Catch, catch at, 289
 Close (*adverb*), 205
 Close, close with, 289
 Cloth, clothes, 27
 Colours, 28
 Come, go, 262
 Come to grief, 262
 Conscience sake, 22
 Commence, commence with, 289
 Compasses, 28
 Consult, consult with, 289
 Cost, 367
 Cough, 367
 Could have seen, 162
 Count, 289, 367
 Count on, 289
 Covenant, 367
 Cover, 367
 Curry, 367
 Custom, 28, 367
 Customs, 28

 DARE, 90
 Deal, deal in 289
 Decidedly, 205
 Defeat, 367
 Delight, delight oneself, 186
 Deluge, 367
 Dependent on, independent of, 262
 Descant, 367
 Despatch, 367
 Dice, dies, 27
 Directly, 252
 Dispense, dispense with, 289
 Distinctly, 205
 Dive, dip, 56, 360

Do, did, 62, 64, 88
 Doubt that, doubt but, 262
 Down, 206, 208
 Drink, drunch, 56, 360
 Drop, drop, 56, 360
 During, 263

 EACH other, 167 8, 267
 Eat, eat into, 289
 Eaves, 28
 Effect, effects, 28
 Either, 181
 Eldest, oldest, 176
 Else, 181
 Enemy, 367
 Engage oneself, 187
 Enough, 28, 181, 194
 Entirely, 205
 Entrails, 268
 Escape, 368
 Exhaust, 368
 Essay, 368
 Ever, so ever, 47
 Ever so, never so, 266
 Every, 85
 Every other, 85
 Every six hours, 35
 Exactly, 205
 Except, 101, 263
 Excuse, excuse not, 268
 Executrix, 19

 FALL, fall, 56
 Far, 38, 205, 268
 Far and away, 201
 Far and near, 201
 Far from, 263
 Farther, further, 176
 Fast and loose, 178
 Feed, feed oneself, 186
 Feel, feel for, 289
 Few, 164
 First and foremost, 201
 First importance, 264
 Folk, 27
 For (*preposition*), 206, 219
 For any one to, etc., 184
 For as much as, 263
 For better, for worse, 178
 Forcible, 28
 For good and all, 173
 For long, 201
 Forth, 38
 For to, 184
 From, 209, 219
 From bad to worse, 178
 From first to last, 173
 Furniture, 27

 GAIN, gam on, 289
 Gallows, 29
 Gauluses, genil, 27
 Good bye, 110
 Good looking, 264
 Goodness sake, 22
 Goods, 28
 Go to the dogs, 262

Governor-General, 144
 Grasp, grasp at, 239
 Greatly, 205
 Guard, guard against, 289
 Guard oneself, 180
 Guess, guess at, 239

HALF, 181, 205
 Hanged, hung, 80
 Hard by, 205
 Hardly before, 246
 Has come, is come, 62
 Have, 85
 Have or had to go, 183
 He, 42
 He to deceive me, 264
 Heir apparent, 144
 Hers, 40
 Himself, her own, 41, 209
 High and low, 178
 Hight, 92
 Himself, his own, 41, 209
 His, its, 264
 Howbeit, 258
 However, 250
 How to write, 184

I swo to, 264
 I take it, 264
 I was given to understand, 265
 If, 247, 248
 Immediately, 205
 In (*prepos.*), 209, 218-9
 In (*adverb*), 88, 100
 In (*prefix*), 362, 363
 In a temper, 268, 284
 In as much as, 252
 In black and white, 179
 In case, 252
 Indeed, 190, 251
 Indexes, indices, 27
 Indulge oneself, 186
 Information, 27
 Inuical, 368
 Innings, 29
 In order that, 247, 252
 Inquire, inquire into, 239
 In respect of, 265
 In so much that, 253
 In that, 253
 In thorough working order, 265
 In the long run, 201
 In time, 261
 Into, 209, 218
 Intrude oneself, 186
 Irons, 28
 Issue, 27, 368
 It, 42, 43, 45
 Its, 246
 Itself, its own, 41
 It s me, 265

Join oneself to, 187
 Joust, 368

Keep oneself to, 187
 Kine, 25

Knight-errant, 25, 144
 Knights Templars, 28

Largest, last, 176
 Last importance, 264
 Less, lesser, 265
 Least, 250
 Letters, 28
 Letters patent, 145
 Lie, lay, 56, 360
 Little, 181, 168 4, 194
 Long, 205
 Lord paramount, 145
 Lords justices, 28
 Lords temporal, 144

MALICE prepense, 144, 279
 Manners, 28
 Many, many a, 164
 May, 88
 May or might have seen, 182
 Means, 29
 Meditate, meditate on, 239
 Meet, meet with, 289
 Mine, 40, 41
 More, 181
 More than, 265
 Much, 181, 193, 205
 Must, 90 #
 Mutual friend, 260
 Myself, my own, 41, 269

NAY, 245
 Nathless, 263
 Near, 181, 187
 Nearest, next, 176
 Need, 90
 Needs, 91, 182
 Neither, 181
 Nether, nethermost, 35
 Never so, 266
 News, 29
 No, none (*adverbs*), 266
 No less than, 245
 None of them, 366
 No sooner than, 246
 Notary public, 144
 Not but what, 261
 Not only but also, 245
 Notwithstanding, 102
 Now, 246
 Now and again, 208
 Now and then, 202
 Numbers, 28

O (*preposition*), 102
 Odds, 29
 Of, 23, 40, 209, 267
 Of course, 202
 OH, 210
 Off and on, 202
 Offspring, 27
 Of my doing, 75
 Of yours, 41
 On, 202, 310
 Once, 98, 199, 362
 Once again, 208
 Once and again, 208

Once for all, 208
 Once more, 208
 One, ones, 44, 45, 132, 166, 267
 One and the same, 267
 One another, 167 6, 267
 One more—and, 267
 On high, 101, 202
 Only, 132, 147
 On the alert, 202
 On the contrary, 202
 On the defensive, 208
 On the morrow, 204
 Or, nor, 248, 268
 Or ere, or ever, 263
 Or rather, 246
 Or so, 166, 270
 Other than, other besides, 268
 Ought, 89
 Ours, 40, 41
 Ourselves, 41, 269
 Out, 38, 205
 Out and out, 201
 Out of, 205, 210
 Out of temper, 268, 284
 Outrage, 368
 Over, 210
 Over again, 208
 Over and above, 203, 273, 281

PARAMOUNT, 145, 365
 Pardon, 368
 Parson, 368
 Partly, 205
 Parts, 28
 Past, 102
 Pending, 102
 Physics, 28
 Pilgrim, 368
 Plume oneself, 185
 Poetry, 27
 Point blank, 145
 Possess oneself of, 187
 Preach, 368
 Precisely, 206
 Premises, 28
 Prepare, prepare for, 289
 Prepare oneself, 187
 Presently, 200
 Previous, previously, 203
 Price current, 145
 Pride oneself, 187
 Provide oneself, 187
 Provost, 368
 Puny, 368

QUAIL, quail, 56, 360
 Quarters, 28
 Quite, 190, 206
 Quoth, 91

RALLY, 366
 Hansom, 368
 Rather, 68
 Rear-guard, 368
 Render, 368
 Repair, repair to, 240
 Rest oneself, 187

Returns, 28
 Riches, 28
 Rise, raise, rouse, 56, 390
 Right (*adverb*), 206
 Right and left, 178
 Right or wrong, 178
 Round, 182

SAMPLE, 368
 Same as, same that, 47
 Sands, 26
 Save (*preposition*), 102
 Save he, save we, 266
 Scarce, 368
 Scarcely before or when, 246
 Scenery, 27
 Scorch, 368
 Search, search for, 240
 See, see to, 240
 Self, selves, 41, 269
 Send, send for, 240
 Set oneself to, 187
 " " up, 187
 Settle oneself, 187
 Several people, persons, 270
 Shall, 68, 85
 Shall I, 179
 Shall be, 180
 Shall have seen, 179, 182
 Shall you, 180
 Shortly, 206, 270
 Shot, shots, 28
 Should have seen, 183, 188
 Since, 182, 195, 210, 216, 219, 247
 Sit, set, 56, 360
 Slow and steady, 173
 Snatch, snatch at, 240
 So, 44, 95
 So as to, 270
 Soak, suck, 56, 360
 So and so, 870
 Sojourn, 368
 So kind as to, 271
 Sombre, 368
 Some, 133, 167
 Somehow or other, 271
 Somewhat, 271
 So much, so much for, 271
 Soon, sooner, 69, 206
 Sooner or later, 201
 Soprano, 368
 So so, 270
 So that, 252, 253
 Sovereign, 368
 Spectacles, 28
 Spinster, 19
 Staff, staves, 28
 Strange, stranger, 368
 Strike, strike at, 240
 Strip oneself, 187
 Such, 44, 182, 165
 Such as, 47
 Sudden, 368
 Summons, 29
 Sum total, 145

TASTE, taste of, 240

- Testatrix, 19
 Than (*prepos.*), 103, 132, 210
 Than (*conjunc.*), 107, 132
 That (*pronoun*), 43, 47, 48, 274
 " (*conjunc.*), 106, 122, 274
 That's him, 265
 The (*article*), 84, 132, 169, 170, 174
 The (*adverb*), 95, 96, 132
 Theirs, 40, 41
 The long and short, 173
 Themselves, 41, 269
 The other, 166
 The other day, 166
 The same, 43, 166, 267
 Then, 132
 There, 11, 198
 They, 46
 Thine, 40, 41
 This, that, etc., 43, 166
 Though, yet, 252
 Through, 210
 Through and through, 203, 273
 Through thick and thin, 173
 Thus, 95
 Thyself, 41, 269
 To, 68, 210
 To and fro, 204
 To be mistaken, 271
 To be sure, 271
 To-morrow, 204
 Too, 132, 194, 294
 To the contrary, 202
 Touch, touch upon, 240
 Towards, 210
 Traffic, 868
 Treason, 868
 Treason, 868
 Trust oneself to, 187
 Two and two, 168
 UMPIRE, 868
 Under, 210
 Unless, 247
 Until, 216
 Up, 38, 206, 210
 Upper, 38
 VEAR, 193, 273
 Vespers, 23
 Vicaroy elect, 144
 Vixen, 19
 WAS to have gone, 183
 Well, 132, 206, 246
 Well to be sure, 210
 Were to see, 184
 What, 47, 49, 132
 What not, 204
 What was what was not, 272
 What with, 272
 When, where, 251
 When to come back, 184
 Where to begin, 184
 Whether, 49
 Which, what who 46, 48, 49, 126
 While, 105, 246, 249
 Why, 199
 Who, that, 48
 Will, 41, 87
 Will he, 180
 Will I, 170, 180
 Will or would have seen, 179, 183
 Will you, 180
 Wit, 91
 With, 210, 218
 Within, 210, 219
 Without, 210
 With respect to, 265
 Wont, 92
 Work, work at, 240
 Work oneself up, 187
 Worth, 91
 Write you, write to you, 272
 YETTER, 92
 Yes, no 197
 Yet, 132, 200
 Yours, 40
 Yourselves, 41, 260

THE END

MESSRS. MACMILLAN AND CO.'S

TEXT-BOOKS FOR INDIAN SCHOOLS.

READING.

The Anglo-Oriental Series of English Readers. By J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

PRIMER, in Diglott form, English Urdu, 40 pp	Price 3 annas
PRIMER, in Diglott form, English Hindi, 40 pp	Price 3 annas
FIRST READER. Illustrated 64 pp	Price 5d net
SECOND READER. " 80 pp	" 6d "
THIRD READER. " 96 pp	" 8d "
FOURTH READER. " 112 pp	" 10d "
FIFTH READER. " 128 pp	" 1s "

Approved by the Provincial Text Book Committee of North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for use in Anglo-Vernacular schools in North Western Provinces and Oudh

Adopted for use in Anglo Vernacular Schools in Central India states

Glossaries, to each of the Primers and Readers of the Anglo-Oriental Series, giving the Urdu and Hindi renderings of the more difficult English words and phrases. These glossaries will be found of the greatest help to the student

Middle English Readers, with copious notes and explanations. Adapted to the standard of the Middle Scholarship Examinations in Indian Schools.

PART I, PART II, PART III 1s net each part

Approved by the Provincial Text Book Committee of the North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for the Middle Scholarship Examination in North Western Provinces and Oudh

Macmillan's New Literary Readers Illustrated

PRIMER I (82 pp)	4d	READER III (176 pp)	1s.
PRIMER II (48 pp)	4d	READER IV (208 pp)	1s. 8d
INFANT READER (72 pp)	6d	READER V (240 pp)	1s 6d
READER I (112 pp)	8d	READER VI (256 pp)	1s 6d
READER II (128 pp)	10d		

BOARD TEACHER—"Able edited, these Readers supply a distinct want. Their special feature is indicated in their title. The matter is copyright, and of a high, yet attractive and suitable literary character. We heartily recommend them."

EDUCATIONAL NEWS—"The extracts are skilfully varied, and in some instances judiciously condensed. The illustrations are artistic. There are sixty lessons in each, and each lesson bears the mark of high talent or notable genius. The binding is bright, the type clear, the paper good, and in every way the books do credit to compiler and publishers. The teacher who chooses them will bring within his pupils reach specimens of cultured thought and graceful style."

GRAMMAR.

SERIES OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS By J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

Book I The Parts of Speech with numerous Examples, and Questions and Answers on the text. For the use of elementary classes in European and other English teaching schools. 5d net.

The same in Diglott form (Urdu English or Hindi English), for the use of elementary classes in Anglo Vernacular schools

Book II Easy Parsing and Analysis, with numerous Examples and Parsing Models. For the use of Upper Primary and Lower Middle Classes in European and other English teaching schools. 8d net.

The same in Diglott form (Urdu English or Hindi English), for the use of the corresponding classes in Anglo-Vernacular schools

Book III. (a) Idiom and Grammar for Middle Schools, with numerous Examples, and Parsing Charts. For the use of Upper Middle Classes preparing for the Middle Scholarship Examinations in Indian provinces. 1s. net.

(b) Key to the above, consisting of—Part I. Salient Rules and Definitions. Part II. Questions and Answers on Parsing. Part III. Solution of Examples in the text. Part IV. Questions from Middle Examinations with their Answers. 1s. net.

Book IV (a) Idioms, Grammar, and Synthesis a manual of practical and theoretical English for High School and University Students, in five parts. Part I Accidence, Analysis, Syntax, and Punctuation. Part II Idiom in Words, Phrases, and Constructions. Part III The Transformation and Synthesis of Sentences. Part IV Word building and Derivation. Part V Figures of Speech, Poetic Diction, and Prosody 2s net.

(b) Key to the above, Part I Salient Rules and Definitions. Part II Questions and Answers in Parsing. Part III Solution of Examples in the text. 1s net.

The English Grammars have been approved by the Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh, for use in Anglo Vernacular and European schools.

The English Grammars have also been approved by the Punjab Text Book Committee and recommended by the Director of Public Instruction for use of schools in the Punjab.

* * The above Grammar Series has already run into several editions, and has received the approval of Head Masters and Managers throughout Upper India.

HISTORY

The History of India. By Sir ROPER LETHBRIDGE, K C I E. With chapters on the Physical Geography, the ancient and modern political divisions and places of interest, and 'India in 1893,' its people, their condition, resources, institutions, and forms of Imperial, Provincial, and Municipal Government. New edition, 1893. With maps, cloth 2s, sewed 1s 6d.

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee North Western Provinces and Oudh, and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for use in schools. Prescribed by the University of Allahabad for the Entrance Examination.

THE TIMES OF INDIA—"Messrs. Macmillan and Co. have ready a new edition, with maps, of Sir Roper Lethbridge's popular *History of India*. The first edition was printed by this firm in 1876, it was twice reprinted in 1876, thrice in 1877 and 1878, twice in 1879 and 1880, twice in 1881 and 1882, and twice in 1883, 1887, 1889, and 1893—a record which sufficiently attests its adaptability to the requirements of the entrance or Matriculation examination of the Universities.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"The whole book forms perhaps the best and most comprehensive School History of India available."

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"Instead of the dull, dreary compilation of bare facts which an experience of Indian histories in general had made us to dread, we were pleased to find that this work supplied a long felt want, and combines agreeable reading with a really valuable and comprehensive sketch of Indian history treated in a spirit of philosophic continuity. In fact we should feel inclined to recommend a student who aspires to a general knowledge of the history of India to confine himself to this work."

Collage History of India Asiatic and European By J TALBOYS WHEELER. Cloth, 8s, sewed, 2s 6d.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"This book has two of the qualities of a good text-book, viz. accuracy and lucidity. It opens with an ingenious 'Plan of India,' and the student is guided with confidence through the maze of names and events which usually make the history of India so bewildering to the learner. The book besides is extremely interesting owing to the fact that the writer largely draws from the original sources. The student is to be congratulated who sets out with such a competent and satisfactory guide."

A Primer of Indian History Asiatic and European By J TALBOYS WHEELER, late Assistant Secretary to the Government of India, Foreign Department, and late Secretary to the Government of British Burma. 1s.

The College History of India and Primer of Indian History have been approved by the Calcutta and Madras Text Book Committees.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"A good illustration of the fact that it requires a master of a subject to write a good primer of Indian History."

History of England for Beginners By ARABELLA B BUCKLEY. With Coloured Maps and Chronological and Genealogical Tables. 8s.

Prescribed by the University of Calcutta for the Entrance Examination.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE—"In the small space allowed me in this little book I have tried to set before young readers a connected history of the rise and development of England. While giving as far as possible the chief facts required by students, I have been especially anxious to present a vivid picture of the life, the difficulties, and the achievements of our ancestors, showing how our laws, our constitution, our trade, and our colonies have arisen."

THE SCHOOL GUARDIAN says:—"One of the best school histories that we have met with, and it is certain to become popular with young students. It is not, as are too many text-books on this subject, a collection of cut-and-dried isolated statements of facts, but a continuous and intelligible whole."

A Primer of English History By ARABELLA B. BUCKLEY Very popular 1s.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"The very latest of Macmillan's remarkable Primers. Though the History is compressed into 150 pages, the perspective of events is marvellously maintained and the writer's clear and interesting style stands her in good stead."

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"A handy compendium of English History from the pen of a pleasing and well-known writer. It will be found useful for school boys and old students who wish to recall rapidly the salient points of our history. The maps trace the growth of the Empire. A chronological table closes this handsome little book."

History of England. By EMILY THOMPSON Historical Course for Schools. With Coloured Maps. 2s. 6d.

ATHENÆUM—"This manual is the best sketch of English History for the use of young people we have yet met with."

GEOGRAPHY

The Elementary School Atlas By J. BARTHOLOMEW 24 Maps 4to 1s.

MADRAS JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"This handy little atlas with its strong limp covers containing forty maps we can strongly recommend for use in schools. The maps are beautifully executed, each name standing out clear and distinct. Maps showing the well-defined physical features accompany most of the political maps. The atlas has two special features which should recommend it, viz. an excellent index, and a series of as many as seven full sized maps allotted to India showing the political divisions."

Geography Primer By SIR GEORGE GROVE. Pott 8vo 1s.

Class Book of Geography By C. B. CLARKE, F.R.S. Maps, cloth, 2s. 6d., sewed, 2s. Without Maps, sewed, 1s. 6d.

Prescribed by the University of Calcutta for the Entrance Examination

A Geographic Reader By C. B. CLARKE, F.R.S. With Nine Coloured Maps. Cloth, 2s. 6d. Contents: Part I—General Geography. Part II—Astronomical Geography. Part III—Chartography. Part IV—Physical Geography.

Recommended by the Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh for use in schools.

Prescribed by the University of Allahabad for the Entrance Examination

INDIAN JOURNAL OF EDUCATION—"It is well printed, the maps are very clear, and the matter in it is very well arranged. The book, which contains 149 pages, gives the Physical and Political Geography of the World, and there are special chapters devoted to Astronomical and Physical Geography and Chartography."

Reader in General Geography By C. B. CLARKE, F.R.S. Cloth 1s. Very popular.

The Teaching of Geography A Practical Handbook for the use of Teachers.

By SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S. Cloth, 2s.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"A valuable treatise on principles and methods for the use of teachers."

Elementary General Geography By HUGH ROBERT MILL, D.Sc. Illustrated.

Cloth, 3s. 6d.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"A good General Geography, with thirty capital illustrations."

Geography of India, Burmah, and Ceylon By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. Cloth, 1s. 9d.

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD—"Mr. Blanford has been specially successful in his introductory chapter on the geographical position of India and in his account of plants, animals, populations, and matters bearing on commerce. The book has twenty-seven illustrations, including the Shore Ghaut and a group of Maratha Pundits."

ARITHMETIC.

Arithmetic for Indian Schools By Rev J. B. LOCK. Edited and arranged for use in India, by Prof. T. O. LEWIS, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, late Principal, Government College, Lahore, Director of Public Instruction, North Western Provinces and Oudh. 8s.

* * Every school in India, Burma, and Ceylon, should use this Popular Arithmetic for Indian Schools.

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee, North Western Provinces and Oudh.

Approved by the Punjab Text-Book Committee and prescribed for use in the Punjab by the Director of Public Instruction.

Approved by the Text-Book Committee of the Madras Presidency

Approved by the Central Text-Book Committee, Calcutta.

Approved for use in the Bombay Presidency by the Director of Public Instruction

Prescribed for use in Travancore State by the Director of Public Instruction

Authorised for use in Mysore State by the Educational Secretary

The Educational Inspector of the Central Division, Bombay Presidency, writes —

"An excellent manual in which great pains have been taken to meet the wants of Indian students."

MADRAS JOURNAL OF EDUCATION — "We would strongly recommend the use of the work in schools in this Presidency. The printing, paper, and the general get up leave nothing to be desired."

Algebra for Beginners By H S HALL, M.A., and S R KNIGHT, B.A. Globe 8vo Special Edition for Indian Matriculation students 2s 6d, sewed, 2s.

EDUCATIONAL TIMES — "Algebra for Beginners is dealt with on the same lines as the earlier and somewhat more advanced book. The learner is introduced as soon as possible to the practical and more interesting side of the subject, such as equations and problems, while work which largely consists in the manipulation and simplification of elaborate expressions is postponed till later on. The examples for practice are copious and have been newly composed for this particular book, and, as heretofore, the explanations are clear, concise, and simply expressed. Indeed, without hesitation, we pronounce this book the best of its size which we have seen."

Elementary Algebra for Schools By H S HALL, M.A., and S R KNIGHT, B.A. Sixth Edition Globe 8vo Without Answers, 3s 6d, with Answers, 4s 6d. Answers, 1s —Key, 8s 6d

Algebraical Exercises and Examination Papers To accompany the Elementary Algebra By H S HALL, M.A., and S R KNIGHT, B.A. Globe 8vo With or without Answers 2s 6d

Elementary Algebra By CHARLES SMITH, M.A. New Edition, revised Globe 8vo 4s 6d —Key, 10s 6d

EUCLID AND GEOMETRY

A Text-Book of Euclid's Elements By H S HALL, M.A. and F H STEVENS, M.A. Book I, 1s Books I and II, 1s 6d Books I III 2s 6d, paper, 2s, Books II and III, 2s, Books I IV, 3s, paper, 2s 6d, Books III and IV 2s, Books III VI, 4s, Books V, VI, and XI, 2s 6d, Books I VI and XI, 4s 6d, Book XI, 1s —Keys, to Books, I VI, 6s 6d, Books VI and XI, 3s 6d Complete 8s 6d

Books I IV prescribed by the University of Calcutta for the Entrance Examination

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee of North Western Provinces and Oudh, and recommended by the Director of Public Instruction for use in schools

BOMBAY EDUCATIONAL RECORD — "Nothing has been left undone to make these editions a model of all that is required in a School Euclid. Probably the best collection of exercises ever made. These editions, we should say, will clear and hold the field."

The Elements of Euclid By I TODDUNTER, F.R.S. Post 8vo 8s. 6d —Key, 6s 6d Books I and II, 1s

The First Four Books of Euclid With Notes, Appendices, and Exercises. By I TODDUNTER, F.R.S. Post 8vo 2s

BOOK KEEPING

Primer of Book keeping By J THORNTON Post 8vo 1s

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee of North Western Provinces and Oudh and prescribed by the Director of Public Instruction for the Middle English examination

First Lessons in Book keeping By J THORNTON Crown 8vo 2s 6d

Approved by the Provincial Text-Book Committee of North Western Provinces and Oudh

Prescribed by the Allahabad University for the School Final Examination.

Easy Exercises in Book keeping By J THORNTON Post 8vo 1s

PRACTICAL TEACHER — "They are eminently practical. The common sense views, the short, crisp sentences in which directions are given, the genial manner in which difficulties are explained, the unconventional illustrations, bespeak the attention of the learner, and prove the author to be a master of his subject, a teacher full of resource, and endowed with the bonhomie of a happy enthusiast."

SCHOOLMASTER — "The questions attached to each set of exercises are noteworthy features."

MACMILLAN AND CO, LONDON.

वीर सेवा मन्दिर

पुस्तकालय

काल न० 415 NES
लेखक Nesfield, J.C.
शीर्षक Idiom Grammar And
Synthesis
खण्ड कम संख्या 3477